

A Word to Mazda Owners

Thank you for choosing a Mazda. We at Mazda design and build vehicles with complete customer satisfaction in mind.

To help ensure enjoyable and trouble-free operation of your Mazda, read this manual carefully and follow its recommendations.

Regular servicing of your vehicle by an expert repairer helps maintain both its roadworthiness and its resale value. A world-wide network of Authorised Mazda Repairers can help you with their professional servicing expertise.

Their specially trained personnel are best qualified to service your Mazda vehicle properly and exactly. Also, they are supported by a wide range of highly specialized tools and equipment specially developed for servicing Mazda vehicles. When maintenance or service is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

We assure you that all of us at Mazda have an ongoing interest in your motoring pleasure and in your full satisfaction with your Mazda product.

Mazda Motor Corporation
HIROSHIMA, JAPAN

Important Notes About This Manual

Keep this manual in the glove compartment as a handy reference for the safe and enjoyable use of your Mazda. Should you resell the vehicle, leave this manual with it for the next owner.

All specifications and descriptions are accurate at the time of printing. Because improvement is a constant goal at Mazda, we reserve the right to make changes in specifications at any time without notice and without obligation.

Please be aware that this manual applies to all models, equipment and options. As a result, you may find some explanations for equipment not installed on your vehicle.

©2022 Mazda Motor Corporation
November 2022 (Print1)

How to Use This Manual

We want to help you get the most driving pleasure from your vehicle. Your owner's manual, when read from cover to cover, can do that in many ways.

Illustrations complement the words of the manual to best explain how to enjoy your Mazda. By reading your manual, you can find out about the features, important safety information, and driving under various road conditions.

The symbol below in this manual means “Do not do this” or “Do not let this happen”.



Index: A good place to start is the Index, an alphabetical listing of all information in your manual.

You'll find several WARNINGS, CAUTIONS, and NOTES in the manual.



A *WARNING* indicates a situation in which serious injury or death could result if the warning is ignored.



A *CAUTION* indicates a situation in which bodily injury or damage to your vehicle, or both, could result if the caution is ignored.

NOTE

A NOTE provides information and sometimes suggests how to make better use of your vehicle.

The following symbol, located on some parts of the vehicle, indicates that this manual contains information related to the part.

Please refer to the manual for a detailed explanation.



Table of Contents

Pictorial Index

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

1

Essential Safety Equipment

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

2

Before Driving

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

3

When Driving

Information concerning safer driving and stopping.

4

Interior Features

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

5

Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

6

If Trouble Arises

Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

7

Customer Information

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

8

Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

9

Index

10

1

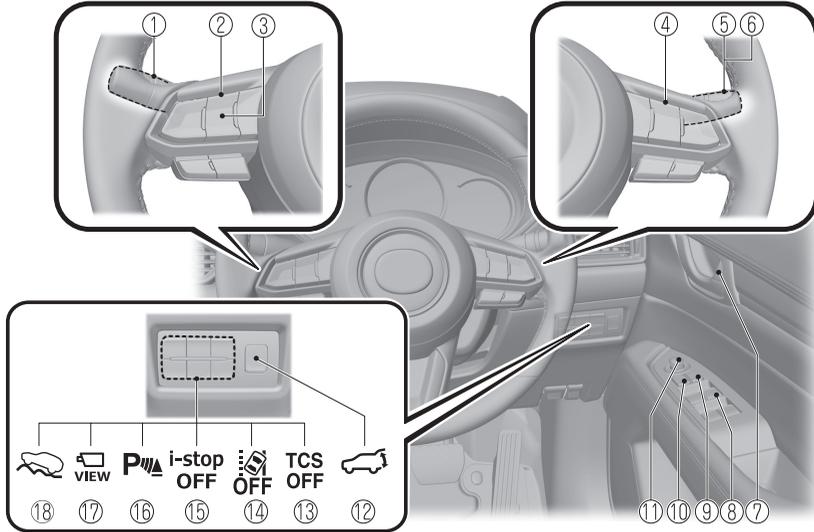
Pictorial Index

Interior, exterior views and part identification of your Mazda.

Interior Overview.....	1-2	Exterior Overview.....	1-7
Interior Equipment (View A).....	1-2	Front.....	1-7
Interior Equipment (View B).....	1-3	Rear.....	1-8
Interior Equipment (View C).....	1-4		
Interior Equipment (View D).....	1-5		
Interior Equipment (View E).....	1-6		

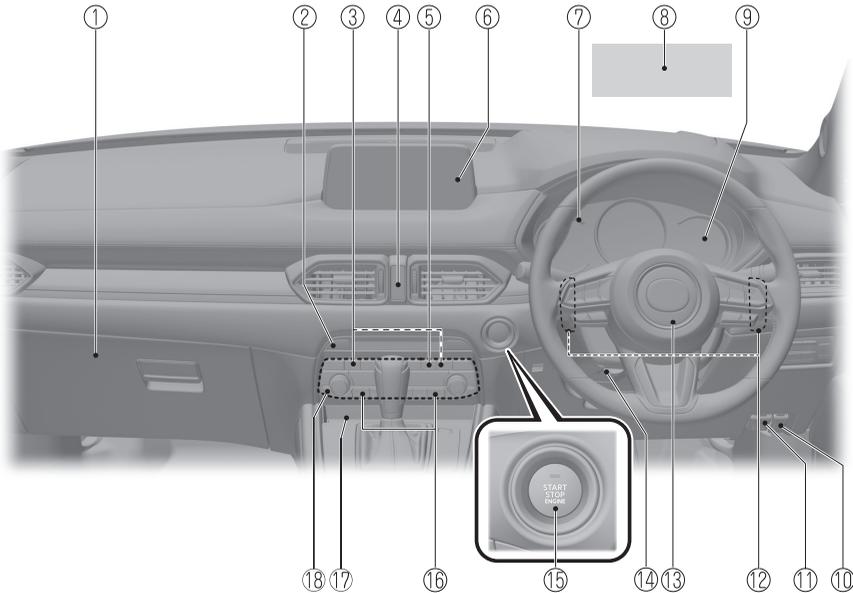
Interior Overview

Interior Equipment (View A)



- ① Wiper and washer lever..... page 4-72
- ② Audio remote control switches..... page 5-20, 5-37
- ③ INFO switch.....page 4-21, 4-39
- ④ Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) switches.....page 4-138
- ⑤ Lighting control.....page 4-67
- ⑥ Turn and lane-change signal.....page 4-71
- ⑦ Door-lock knob..... page 3-13
- ⑧ Power window switches..... page 3-33
- ⑨ Power window lock switch..... page 3-33
- ⑩ Outside mirror folding switch..... page 3-30
- ⑪ Outside mirror switch.....page 3-30
- ⑫ Power liftgate switch..... page 3-16
- ⑬ TCS OFF Switch.....page 4-90
- ⑭ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF switch..... page 4-175
- ⑮ i-stop OFF switch..... page 4-16
- ⑯ Parking sensor switch..... page 4-286
- ⑰ 360° View Monitor switch.....page 4-200
- ⑱ Off-Road Traction Assist switch..... page 4-94

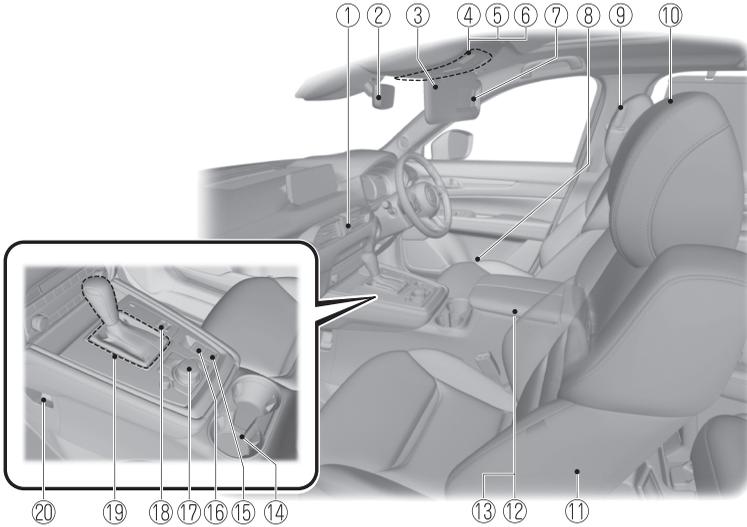
Interior Equipment (View B)



① Glove compartment.....	page 5-62
② Heated steering wheel.....	page 2-34
③ Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-31
④ Hazard warning flasher switch.....	page 4-77
⑤ Rear window defogger switch.....	page 4-75
⑥ Mazda Connect.....	page 5-14, 5-31
⑦ Instrument panel illumination knob.....	page 4-25, 4-42
⑧ Active driving display.....	page 4-55
⑨ Instrument cluster.....	page 4-19
⑩ Remote fuel-filler flap release.....	page 3-28
⑪ Bonnet release handle.....	page 6-8
⑫ Steering shift switches.....	page 4-61
⑬ Horn.....	page 4-76
⑭ Lock release lever.....	page 2-5
⑮ Push button start.....	page 4-4
⑯ Seat ventilation switches.....	page 2-33
⑰ Wireless Charger (Qi).....	page 5-56
⑱ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-2

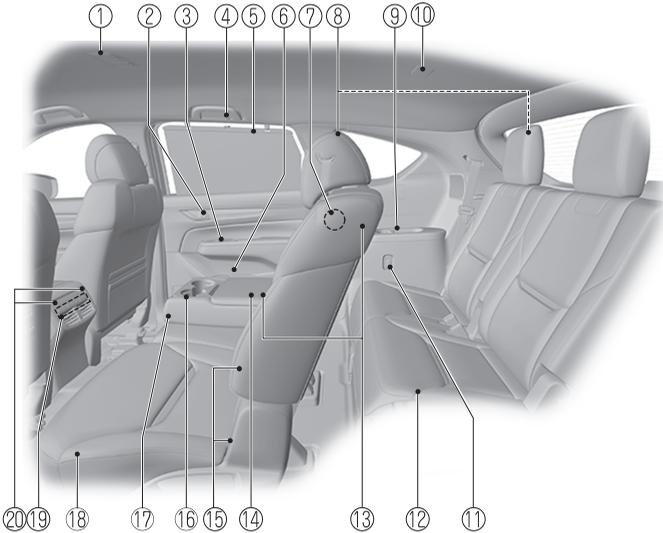
Interior Overview

Interior Equipment (View C)



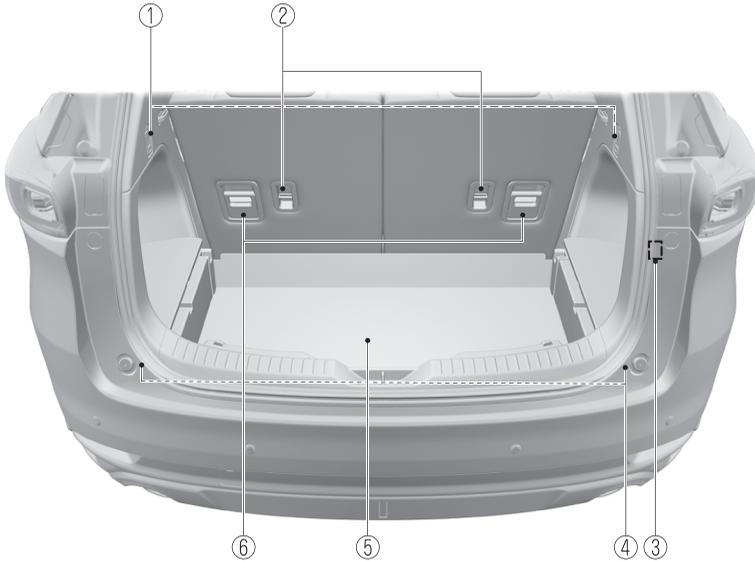
① Vent.....	page 5-3
② Rearview mirror.....	page 3-31
③ Sunvisor.....	page 5-48
④ Front overhead lights.....	page 5-48
⑤ Overhead console.....	page 5-62
⑥ Sunroof switch.....	page 3-36
⑦ Vanity mirror.....	page 5-48
⑧ Bottle holder.....	page 5-61
⑨ Seat belt.....	page 2-35
⑩ Head restraint.....	page 2-28
⑪ Front seat.....	page 2-5
⑫ Centre console.....	page 5-63
⑬ Auxiliary jack/USB port.....	page 5-14, 5-31
⑭ Cup holder.....	page 5-60
⑮ AUTOHOLD switch.....	page 4-84
⑯ Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch.....	page 4-79
⑰ Commander switch.....	page 5-19, 5-35
⑱ Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) switch.....	page 4-95
⑲ Selector lever.....	page 4-57
⑳ Accessory socket.....	page 5-53

Interior Equipment (View D)



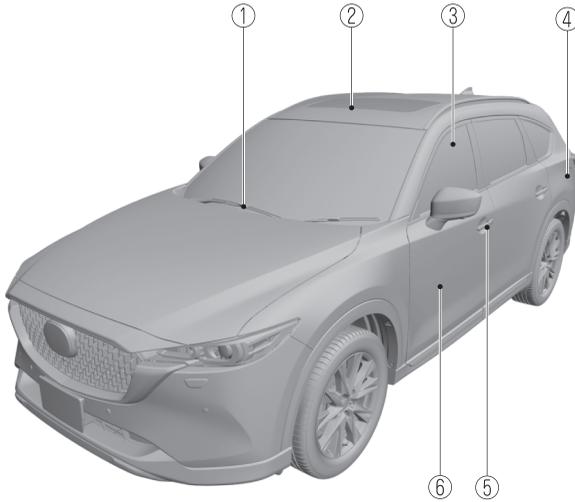
① Centre map lights.....	page 5-48
② Door-lock knob.....	page 3-13
③ Power window switch.....	page 3-33
④ Rear coat hook.....	page 5-66
⑤ Sunshade.....	page 5-67
⑥ Bottle holder.....	page 5-61
⑦ Child safety lock.....	page 3-14
⑧ Head restraint.....	page 2-28
⑨ Cup holder.....	page 5-60
⑩ Rear overhead light.....	page 5-48
⑪ Cargo securing loops.....	page 5-64
⑫ Third-row seat.....	page 2-26
⑬ USB power outlet.....	page 5-54
⑭ Armrest box.....	page 5-63
⑮ ISOFIX anchors.....	page 2-62
⑯ Cup holder.....	page 5-60
⑰ Armrest.....	page 2-17
⑱ Second-row seat.....	page 2-16
⑲ Air-conditioning system.....	page 5-9
⑳ Seat warmer switches.....	page 2-31

Interior Equipment (View E)



① Shopping bag hook.....	page 5-66
② Anchor brackets.....	page 2-57
③ Accessory socket.....	page 5-53
④ Cargo securing loops.....	page 5-64
⑤ Cargo sub-compartment.....	page 5-64
⑥ Lever.....	page 2-26

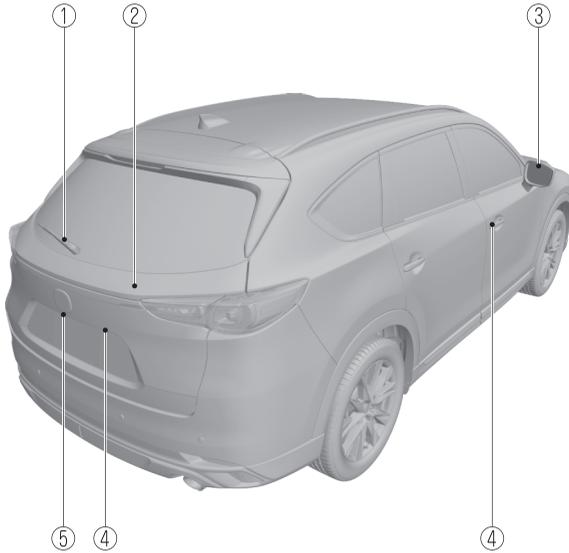
Front



① Windscreen wiper blades.....	page 6-20
② Sunroof.....	page 3-36
③ Window.....	page 3-33
④ Fuel-filler flap.....	page 3-28
⑤ Request switch.....	page 3-11
⑥ Door.....	page 3-10

Exterior Overview

Rear



- ① Rear window wiper blade.....page 6-22
- ② Liftgate..... page 3-14
- ③ Outside mirror..... page 3-30
- ④ Request switch.....page 3-11
- ⑤ Electric liftgate opener..... page 3-15

Important information about safety equipment, including seats, seat belt system, child-restraint systems and SRS air bags.

Seats.....	2-2	Child-Restraint System	
Seat Precautions.....	2-2	Installation.....	2-48
Front Seat.....	2-5	Child-Restraint System Suitability	
Second-row Seat (6:4 Split		for Various Seat Positions	
Adjustable-type Bench Seat		Table.....	2-52
Type).....	2-16	Installing Child-Restraint	
Second-row Seat (Captain Seat		Systems.....	2-57
Type).....	2-21		
Third-row Seat.....	2-26	SRS Air Bags.....	2-66
Head Restraints.....	2-28	Supplementary Restraint System	
		(SRS) Precautions.....	2-66
Seat Warmer/Seat Ventilation/Heated		Supplementary Restraint System	
Steering Wheel.....	2-31	Components.....	2-72
Seat Warmer*	2-31	How the SRS Air Bags Work.....	2-73
Seat Ventilation*	2-33	SRS Air Bag Deployment	
Heated Steering Wheel*	2-34	Criteria.....	2-76
		Limitations to SRS Air Bag.....	2-77
Seat Belt Systems.....	2-35	Front Passenger Occupant	
Seat Belt Precautions.....	2-35	Classification System.....	2-79
Seat Belt.....	2-39	Constant Monitoring.....	2-84
Seat Belt Warning Systems.....	2-40		
Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load		Active Bonnet.....	2-85
Limiting Systems.....	2-41	Active Bonnet precautions.....	2-85
		How the Active Bonnet	
Child Restraint.....	2-43	Works.....	2-87
Child-Restraint Precautions.....	2-43		

Seat Precautions

WARNING

Make sure the adjustable components of a seat are locked in place:

Adjustable seats and seatbacks that are not securely locked are dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the seat or seatback could move, causing injury. Make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward and rocking the seatback.

Never allow children to adjust a seat:

Allowing children to adjust a seat is dangerous as it could result in serious injury if a child's hands or feet become caught in the seat.

Do not drive with the seatback unlocked:

All of the seatbacks play an important role in your protection in a vehicle. Leaving the seatback unlocked is dangerous as it can allow passengers to be ejected or thrown around and baggage to strike occupants in a sudden stop or collision, resulting in severe injury. After adjusting the seatback at any time, even when there are no other passengers, rock the seatback to make sure it is locked in place.

Adjust a seat only when the vehicle is stopped:

If the seat is adjusted while the vehicle is being driven, the seating posture may become unstable and the seat could move unexpectedly resulting in injury.

Do not modify or replace the front seats:

Modifying or replacing the front seats such as replacing the upholstery or loosening any bolts is dangerous. The front seats contain air bag components essential to the supplementary restraint system. Such modifications could damage the supplementary restraint system and result in serious injury. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if there is any need to remove or reinstall the front seats.

Do not drive with damaged front seats:

Driving with damaged front seats, such as seat cushions torn or damaged down to the urethane, is dangerous. A collision, even one not strong enough to inflate the air bags, could damage the front seats which contain essential air bag components. If there was a subsequent collision, an air bag may not deploy which could lead to injuries. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect the front seats, front seat belt pretensioners and air bags after a collision.

Do not drive with either front seats reclined:

Sitting in a reclined position while the vehicle is moving is dangerous because you do not get the full protection from seat belts. During sudden braking or a collision, you can slide under the lap belt and suffer serious internal injuries. For maximum protection, sit well back and upright.

Do not recline a second-row seatback when the third-row seat is occupied:

Reclining the second-row seatback when the third-row seat is occupied is dangerous. Because the clearance in the third-row seat is limited, occupants in the third-row seat could be hurt seriously on a reclined second-row seatback.

Do not place an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back:

Putting an object such as a cushion between the seatback and your back is dangerous because you will be unable to maintain a safe driving posture and the seat belt cannot function at its full capacity in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Do not place objects under the seat:

The object could get stuck and cause the seat to not be fixed securely, and result in an accident.

Do not stack cargo higher than the seatbacks:

Stacking luggage or other cargo higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. During sudden braking or a collision, objects can fly around and become projectiles that may hit and injure passengers.

Make sure luggage and cargo is secured before driving:

Not securing cargo while driving is dangerous as it could move or be crushed during sudden braking or a collision and cause injury.

Additionally, if the air bags deploy, the cargo may scatter which could result in serious injury or death.

Never allow a passenger to sit or stand on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving:

Driving with a passenger on the folded seatback is dangerous. Allowing a child to sit up on the folded seatback while the vehicle is moving is particularly dangerous. In a sudden stop or even a minor collision, a child not in a proper seat or child-restraint system and seat belt could be thrown forward, back or even out of the vehicle resulting in serious injuries or death. The child in the baggage area could be thrown into other occupants and cause serious injury.

Seats



- *When operating a seat, be careful not to put your hands or fingers near the moving parts of the seat or on the side trim to prevent injury.*
- *When moving the seats, make sure there is no cargo in the surrounding area. If the cargo gets caught it could damage the cargo.*
- **(Manual Seat)**
 - When moving the seats forward and rearward or returning a rear-reclined seatback to its upright position, make sure you hold onto the seatback with your hand while operating. If the seatback is not held, the seat will move suddenly and could cause injury.*
 - *When inserting your hand under the seat to clean the cabin or pick up something you dropped under the seat, be careful not to hurt yourself. If you contact the moving parts of the seat rail or seat frame, it could result in injury.*

NOTE

- *When returning a rear seat to its original position, place the seat belt in its normal position. Verify that the seat belt pulls out and retracts.*
- **(Power Seat)**
 - The seat-bottom power adjustment is operated by motors. Avoid extended operation because excessive use can damage the motors.*
 - *To prevent the battery from running down, avoid using the power adjustment when the engine is stopped. The adjuster uses a large amount of electrical power.*
 - *Do not use the switch to make more than one adjustment at a time.*

Front Seat

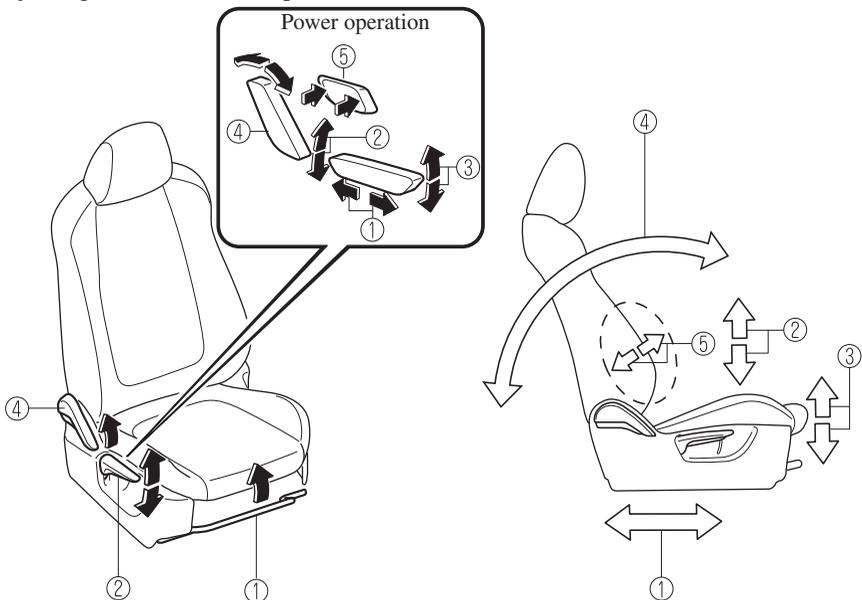
▼ Adjusting the Driver's Seat

Using the driving position set up procedure recommended by Mazda allows you to maintain a relaxed posture, drive the vehicle for longer periods without feeling tired, and make quick operations naturally.

Also, you can be assured of a clear view in the forward direction to help you drive more safely and comfortably.

The adjustments for the driving position recommended by Mazda are done using the following procedures.

1. Moving the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.
2. Adjusting the seatback angle.
3. Adjusting the seat position forward and back.
4. Adjusting the seat height.
5. Adjusting the steering wheel position.
6. Adjusting the head restraint position.



① Seat Slide (Manual Seat)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Seats

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

(Power Seat)

To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.

② **Height Adjustment**

(Manual Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down.

(Power Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the slide lifter switch up or down.

③ **Height Adjustment for Front Edge of Seat Bottom (Power Seat)***

To adjust the front height of the seat bottom, raise or lower the front of the slide lifter switch.

④ **Seat Recline**

(Manual Seat)

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

(Power Seat)

To change the seatback angle, press the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.

⑤ **Lumbar Support Adjustment (Power Seat)**

To increase the seat firmness, press and hold the front part of the switch to the desired position, then release it.

Press the rear part of the switch to decrease firmness.

Before making adjustments to the driving position recommended by Mazda

Before making adjustments, move the steering wheel and seat to their default positions.

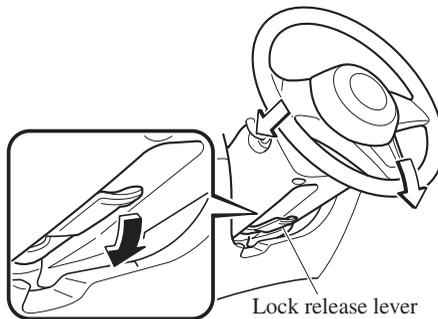
How to move the steering wheel to its default position**⚠ WARNING*****Never adjust the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving:***

Adjusting the steering wheel while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Moving it can very easily cause the driver to abruptly turn to the left or right. This can lead to loss of control or an accident.

After adjusting the steering wheel position, make sure it is securely locked by trying to move it up and down:

Driving with the steering wheel not securely locked in position is dangerous. If the steering wheel moves unexpectedly while driving, you could lose control of the steering resulting in an accident.

Lower the lever, move the steering wheel to the lowest position, and then push it down and all the way back.

**How to move a driver's seat to its default position**

1. Slide the seat all the way back.
2. Lower the seat to its lowest height.
3. Sit squarely in the seat and rest your back against the seatback.

Seats

Seat adjustment procedure for the driving position recommended by Mazda

Adjusting the seatback angle (reclining)

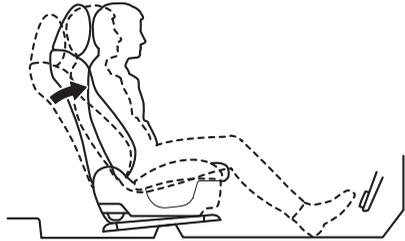
Adjust the seatback to the angle providing a comfortable seated posture.

1. With your posture slightly slouched, move the seatback forward to the angle where your waist feels slightly cramped.

Manual Seat

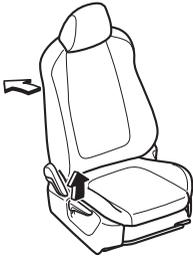


Power Seat

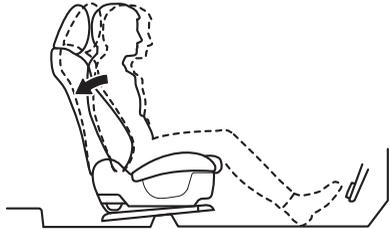
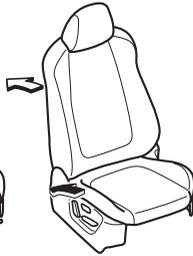


2. Move the seatback backward to a comfortable seated posture without any feeling of cramping in your waist.

Manual Seat



Power Seat



Adjusting the seat position forward and back (sliding)

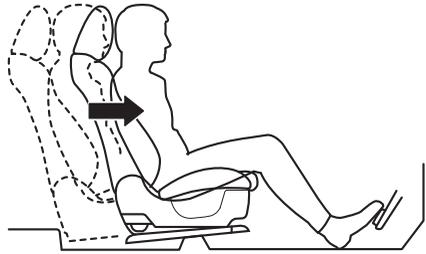
Adjust the seat to the position best for operating the accelerator and brake pedals.

1. Place your left foot on the footrest, your right foot between the accelerator and brake pedals, and position your heel to the position allowing easy switching between the pedals.
2. With your heel set on the floor, set your right foot on the brake pedal and move the seat forward as far as possible until you feel a slight cramping in your ankle.

Manual Seat

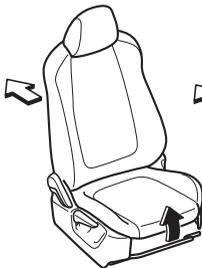


Power Seat

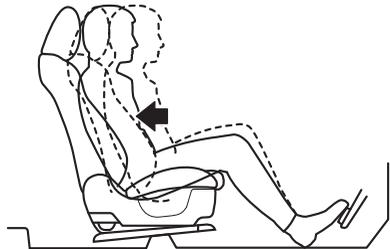
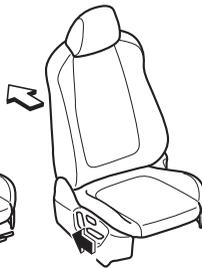


3. With your right foot set on the brake pedal, move the seat back until you no longer feel cramping in your ankle.
4. With your heel set on the floor, make sure you can move your foot between the brake pedal and accelerator pedal smoothly.
5. Depress the accelerator pedal completely with your heel set on the floor and make sure that your ankle does not feel over-stretched.

Manual Seat



Power Seat



Seats

Adjusting the seat height

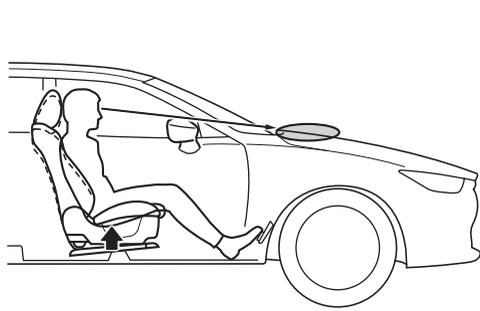
Adjust the seat height to a position where you have a clear forward view and you can drive the vehicle easily.

1. With your back resting against the seatback, raise the seat to the height where you can see the rear edge area of the bonnet surface from the windscreen.

With the manual seat, if you raise the seat height, the seat moves forward. Adjust the seat forward or back again.

Manual Seat

Power Seat



Adjusting the steering wheel position

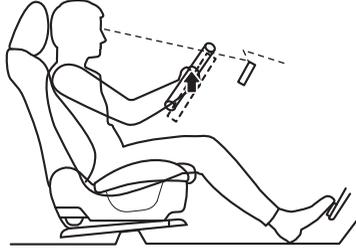
Adjust the steering wheel to the position where it can be operated easily and the gauges can be viewed easily.

1. With your back resting against the seatback, extend both arms, place them on the top of the steering wheel, and pull the steering wheel towards you to the position of your wrists.



2. Adjust the steering wheel height so that the gauges can be viewed easily.

3. Raise the lever to securely lock the steering wheel.



Adjusting the head restraint position

To prevent shock to the head and neck, adjust the head restraints to their correct positions. Refer to Height Adjustment on page 2-28.

Seats

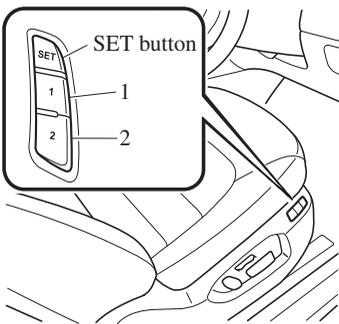
▼ Driving Position Memory*

The desired driving position can be called up after programming the position. The following driving positions can be programmed.

- Driver's seat position (seat slide, height adjustment, front edge of seat bottom, seat recline)
Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
- Active driving display (display position, brightness level, display information)
Refer to Active Driving Display on page 4-55.



Do not place fingers or hands around the bottom of the seat while the seat memory function is operating. The seat moves automatically while the seat memory function is operating and fingers or hands could get pinched and injured.



A driving position can be programmed or operated using the buttons on the side of the seat or the key.

NOTE

- Lumbar support adjustment cannot be programmed.
- A driving position can be programmed to the buttons on the side of the seat and the key in use for driving the vehicle.
- If the vehicle has been serviced and the battery leads disconnected, the programmed seat positions will have been erased. Re-programme the seat positions.

Programming

1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Adjust the seat and the active driving display to the desired driving position.
5. Press the SET button on the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
6. Perform one of the following settings within 5 seconds of completing step 5 above:

· **Programming using a button on the side of the seat**

Press the button you want to programme, either button 1 or 2, until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

· **Programming using the key**

Press the key unlock button until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

NOTE

If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

To move the driving position to a programmed position**(Using a button on the side of the seat)**

1. Make sure the parking brake is on.
2. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
3. Start the engine.
4. Press the programming button for the driving position you want to call up (button 1 or 2).
5. A beep sound is heard when the driving position adjustment is completed.

NOTE

- *If the driving position movement is not changed, only the beep sounds.*
- *A seat position can be called up even with the engine not running.*
- *The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:*
 - *Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.*
 - *The SET button is pressed.*
 - *Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.*
 - *The key lock button or unlock button is operated.*
 - *The vehicle starts moving.*
 - *The active driving display is adjusted.*

(Using a programmed key)

1. Unlock the doors by pressing a request switch or the key unlock button.
2. After unlocking the doors, the seat position adjustment begins within 40 seconds of opening the driver's door,

and a beep sounds when the operation is finished.

3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Make sure the selector lever is in the P position.
5. Start the engine.
6. The active driving display adjustment begins.

NOTE

- *If there is no driving position movement, a beep is not heard.*
- *The driving position adjustment is cancelled in the following cases:*
 - *Any of the seat adjustment switches is operated.*
 - *The SET button is pressed.*
 - *Programming button 1 or 2 is pressed.*
 - *The key lock button or unlock button is operated.*
 - *The vehicle starts moving.*
 - *The active driving display is adjusted.*

Erasing programmed driving positions**(Erasing the driving positions programmed to the key)**

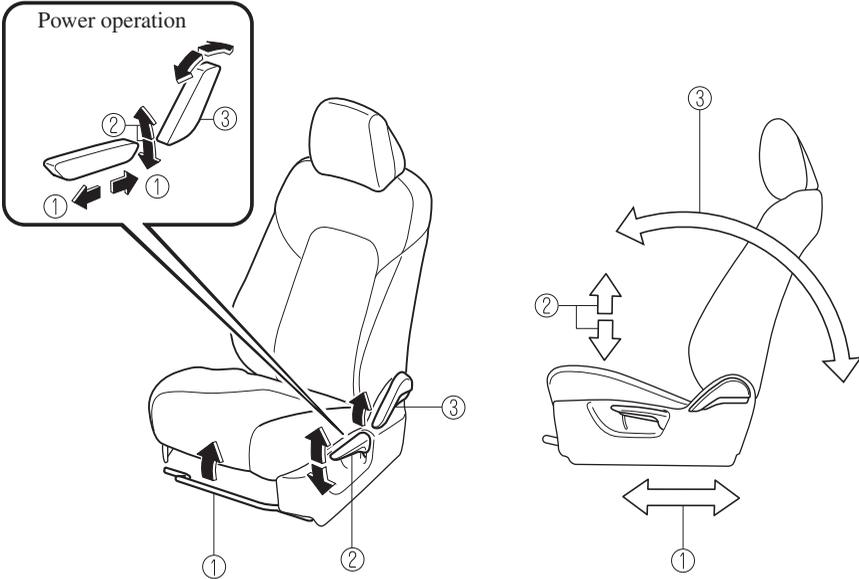
1. Switch the ignition OFF.
2. Press the SET button on the side of the seat until a beep sound is heard 1 time.
3. After the beep sounds, press the key lock button within 5 seconds until a beep sound is heard 1 time.

NOTE

If a beep sound is heard 3 times, the operation is cancelled.

Seats

▼ Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat



① Seat Slide

(Manual Seat)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

(Power Seat)

To slide the seat, move the slide lifter switch on the outside of the seat to the front or back and hold it. Release the switch at the desired position.

② Height Adjustment

(Manual Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the lever up or down.

(Power Seat)

To adjust the seat height, move the slide lifter switch up or down.

③ Seat Recline

(Manual Seat)

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

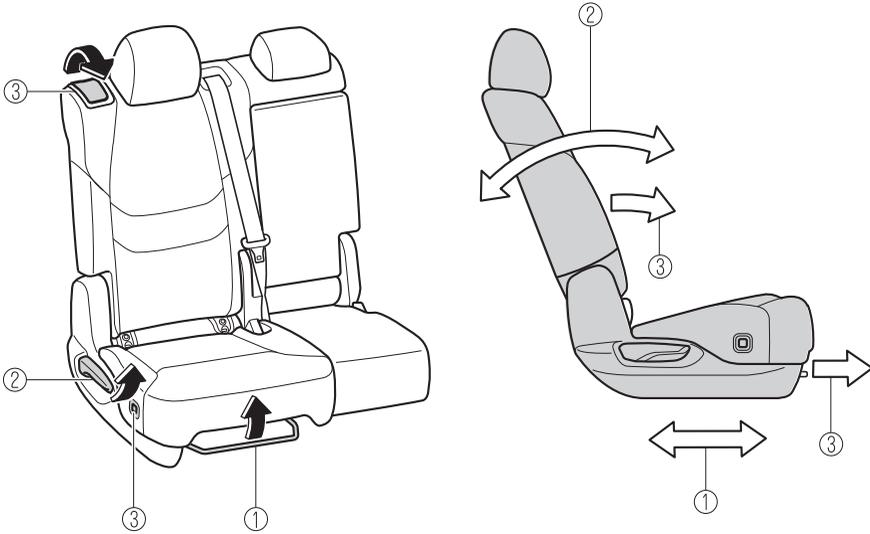
(Power Seat)

To change the seatback angle, press the front or rear side of the reclining switch. Release the switch at the desired position.

Seats

Second-row Seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)

▼ Seat Operation



① Seat Slide (Forward-back adjustment)

To move a seat forward or backward, raise the lever and slide the seat to the desired position and release the lever.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

② Seat Recline

To change the seatback angle, lean forward slightly while raising the lever. Then lean back to the desired position and release the lever.

The lever can also be used when flattening down the seats.

Refer to Split Folding the Second-row Seats on page 2-19.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seatback is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

③ Third-row Seat Access

(Lever)

Pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to fold the seatback and slide the seat forward.

Refer to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-17.

Make sure the lever returns to its original position and the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

(Switch)*

Press the switch to fold the seatback forward and release the seat slide lock. Then slide the seat forward.

Refer to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-17.

Make sure the seat is locked in place by attempting to push it forward and backward.

▼ **Armrest**

The armrest in the centre of the second-row seatback can be used (no occupant in the centre seat) or placed upright.



! WARNING

Never put your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest: Putting your hands and fingers around the moving parts of the seat and armrest is dangerous as they could get injured.

! CAUTION

➤ When storing the armrest, make sure that any leads connected to the USB power outlets in the armrest box are stored away in the armrest box.

If the leads are not stored away in the armrest box, the leads and connection devices may become damaged when storing the armrest.

➤ *Be careful not to apply excessive force to the armrest such as by sitting on it. Otherwise, it could be deformed or damaged.*

▼ **Third-row Seat Access**

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seats easily by sliding the second-row seats forward.

! WARNING

Make sure there is nobody in the second-row seat area before operating a lever or pressing a switch:

Not checking the second-row seat area for persons before folding a seatback with a lever or switch is dangerous. The second-row seat area is difficult to see from the rear of the vehicle. Operating a lever or pressing a switch without checking could cause injury to a person when a seatback suddenly flips forward.

! CAUTION

➤ *When operating the seat, be careful not to get your hand or foot caught, or hit your head.*

Seats

- Before moving the second-row seat, make sure that the head restraint is at the lowest position. If the second-row seat is folded forward while the head restraint is pulled up, there will not be enough space for getting in or out of the vehicle which could cause an occupant to trip and fall resulting in injury.
- Check the position of a front seat before folding a second-row seatback. Depending on the position of a front seat, it may not be possible to fold a second-row seatback all the way down because it may hit the seatback of the front seat which could scratch or damage the front seat or its pocket. Remove the head restraint on the second-row outboard seat if necessary.

Entering/exiting the third-row seat area

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.
2. **(Lever)**
Pull up the lever on the side of the head restraint to unlock the seat, fold the seatback forward, and slide the seat forward.



(Switch)

To unlock the seat, press the switch continuously until a sound is activated,

release it, fold the seatback forward, and slide the seat forward.

NOTE

When any of the following conditions is met, a beep sound is activated continuously and the switch operation is cancelled.

- The door on the side where the switch was operated is closed.
- The switch is pressed continuously for 5 s or more.
- The vehicle is being driven.
- The selector lever is in a position other than P, and the parking brake is off.
- The battery has deteriorated.
- There is a system problem.



NOTE

A second-row seatback cannot be completely folded down flat while it has been unlocked by operating the lever on the side of the head restraint or the switch on the side of the seat even if the reclining lever is operated. To completely fold down a second-row seatback, first raise the seatback to its most upright position, slide the seat rearward, lock the seat, and then operate the reclining lever.

After getting in or out of the vehicle

Move the seatback rearward, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.

 **CAUTION**

After entering/exiting the third-row seat area, return the second-row seatback to its upright position and lock it after sliding it rearward.

Make sure it is locked by attempting to lightly move it back and forth.

Otherwise, it could move unexpectedly and cause injury.

▼ Split Folding the Second-row Seats

To create a flat luggage compartment space, fold the seatbacks forward.

 **WARNING**

Make sure the adjustable components of a second-row seat are locked after folding down the seatback:

A second-row seat that is not securely locked is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, the second-row seat could move, causing injury.

After folding down the seatback of a second-row seat, make sure the adjustable components of the seat are locked in place by attempting to slide the seat forward and backward.

 **CAUTION**

Check the position of a front seat before folding a second-row seatback.

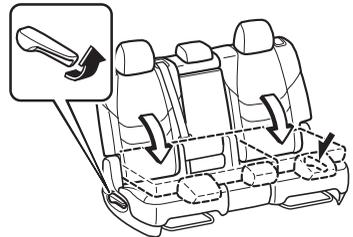
Depending on the position of a front seat, it may not be possible to fold a second-row seatback all the way down because it may hit the seatback of the front seat which could scratch or damage the front seat or its pocket. Remove the head restraint on the second-row outboard seat if necessary.

NOTE

The seats cannot be flattened down while the second-row seats are unlocked even if the lever on the side of the head restraint is operated and the reclining lever is operated. Before folding down the second-row seats, move the seatback forward once, slide the seat rearward, and lock the seat.

Folding the seatbacks

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.
2. Raise the lever on the side of the second-row seat to fold down the seatback.



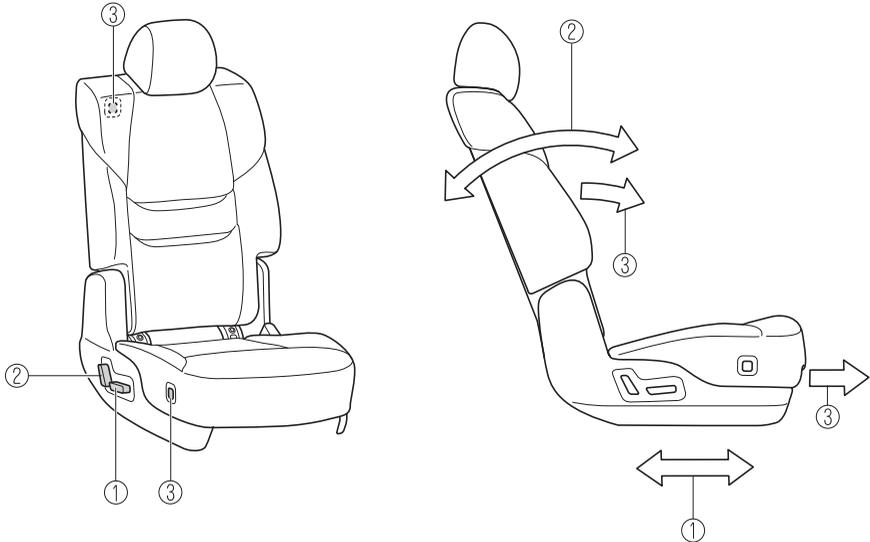
Seats

To return the seatback to its upright position

Press the seatback rearward and lock it in place. After returning the seatback to its upright position, make sure it is securely locked.

Second-row Seat (Captain Seat Type)

▼ Seat Operation



① Seat Slide (Forward-back adjustment)

NOTE

Under the following conditions, the switch operation for the seat slide (forward-back adjustment) is disabled.

- The seat is moving.
- The seat is in a position for getting in or out of the third-row seat area.
- The system loses the seat position.
- The battery has deteriorated.
- The system is malfunctioning.

If the switch operation is disabled, perform the Switch operation is disabled procedure. Refer to Switch operation is disabled on page 2-22.

② Seat Recline

NOTE

Under the following conditions, the switch operation for the seat recline is disabled.

- The seat is moving.
- The seat is in a position for getting in or out of the third-row seat area.

Seats

- The seatback is tilted forward.
- The system loses the seat position.
- The battery has deteriorated.
- The system is malfunctioning.

If the switch operation is disabled, perform the Switch operation is disabled procedure. Refer to Switch operation is disabled on page 2-22.

③ Third-row Seat Access

NOTE

- With the seat slide (forward-back adjustment), the seat does not move to the position for getting in and out of the third-row seat. Press the switch on the side of the seat or the switch on the seatback to operate.
- The second-row seats cannot be flat-folded.

Switch operation is disabled

If the switch operation is disabled, perform the following procedure. If the switch operation does not become enabled even after performing the following procedure, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

- Slide the seat all the way back using the seat slide (forward-back adjustment).
- Perform the procedure to access the third-row seat area using the switch on the side of the cushion or on the seatback with the seatback in the upright position.

▼ Third-row Seat Access

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seats easily by sliding the second-row seats forward.



When operating a second-row seat, make sure that an occupant is not seated on the seat:

If a second-row seat is operated while an occupant is seated in the seat, the seatback could fold down suddenly which could cause an accident.

Do not press the switches on the side of the seat or on the seat back when getting in the second-row seat or accessing the third-row seat:

Otherwise, the seat may move suddenly resulting in an accident.

Do not sit on the second-row seat with it in the position to access the third-row seat:

Otherwise, the seat belt may not function properly which could lead to an accident. Because a beep sound is activated continuously, press the switch on the seatback or the switch on the side of the cushion to move the seat to an appropriate position.

Do not get in or out of the third-row seat while the second-row seat is moving:

Otherwise, an occupant may get caught between the seats which could lead to an accident.

Do not operate the switch with the seat belt fastened:

If you operate the switch and move the seat while the seat belt is fastened, the seat may not operate normally which could lead to an accident.


CAUTION

- Before moving the second-row seat, make sure that the head restraint is at the lowest position. If the second-row seat is folded forward while the head restraint is pulled up, there will not be enough space for getting in or out of the vehicle which could cause an occupant to trip and fall resulting in injury.
- Do not apply excessive force to the seat while the second-row seat is moving. Otherwise, the seat will be overloaded and may stop operating or move in the opposite direction. Also, it could result in a malfunction.
- Always make sure that there is no cargo on the second-row seat or in the direction it is moving when operating the second-row seat. Otherwise, the seat will be overloaded and may stop operating or move in the opposite direction.
- When operating the second-row seat, check the position of the front seat. If the second-row seat is operated with the front seat slid back or the seatback of the front seat folded back, the second-row seat may contact the front seat and stop operating.
- Make sure that there are no objects contacting the switches. Otherwise, the switch may malfunction or operate by mistake.

- If the second-row seat is moved when a large object is placed in the seatback pocket of the front seat, it may cause the object to become damaged.
- Always raise the seatbacks after getting in or out. Because the seats are not secured when the seatbacks are tilted forward, the seats could move unexpectedly resulting in injury.

NOTE

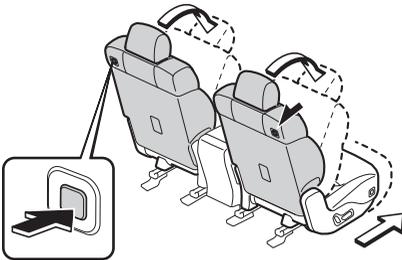
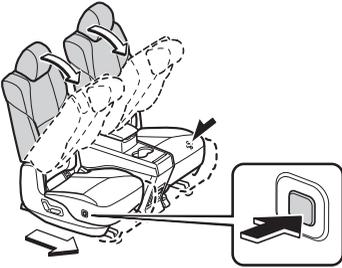
- If the seat operation for getting in or out of the third-row seat area is stopped in a very short time, the system may lose the seat position and not operate normally. In this case, perform the Switch operation does not function procedure. Refer to Switch operation is disabled on page 2-22.
- Under the following conditions, a beep sound activates continuously when the seatback is raised. In this case, perform the Switch operation is disabled procedure. Refer to Switch operation is disabled on page 2-22.
 - The seat is in a position for getting in or out of the third-row seat area.
 - The vehicle is being driven (beeps faster than normal).
 - The system loses the seat position.
 - The system is malfunctioning.

Getting in or out of the third-row seat area

1. Lower the head restraint all the way down.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

Seats

2. Press the switch on the side of the seat or the switch on the seatback continuously until the beep sound activates one time and then release it. The seatback automatically tilts forward.



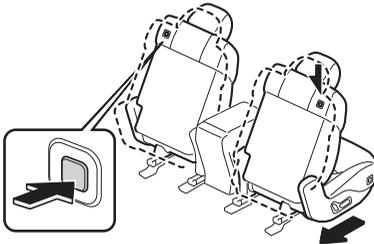
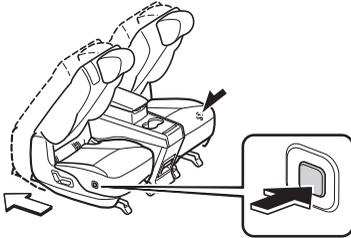
3. The seat slides forward and a long beep sound is activated when the operation is completed.

NOTE

- Getting in or out of the third-row seat is not possible while a child-restraint system is installed on a second-row seat. Move the second-row seat which does not have a child-restraint system installed on it to get in or out of the third-row seat.
- When any of the following conditions is met, a beep sound is activated continuously and the switch operation is disabled.
 - The switch is pressed continuously for about 5 seconds or longer.
 - The door on the side of the seat where the switch was operated is closed.
 - The seat is moving.
 - The seatback is tilted forward.
 - The vehicle is being driven.
 - The selector lever is in a position other than P, and the parking brake is off.
 - The battery has deteriorated.
 - The system is malfunctioning.
- When any of the following conditions is met, a beep sound is activated continuously and the operation stops.
 - Any switch on the seat is operated.
 - The seat back is raised.
 - The vehicle is being driven.
 - The selector lever is in a position other than P, and the parking brake is switched off.
 - Cargo gets caught in the seat.
 - The vehicle is stopped on a steep upslope.
 - The cabin temperature is extremely low.
 - The battery has deteriorated.
 - The system is malfunctioning.

After getting in or out of the third-row seat area

1. Press the switch on the side of the seat or the switch on the seatback continuously until the beep sound activates one time and then release it. The seat slides rearward automatically and a long beep sound is activated when the operation is completed.



2. Raise the seatback.

NOTE

- When any of the following conditions is met, a beep sound is activated continuously and the switch operation is disabled.
 - The switch is pressed continuously for about 5 seconds or longer.
 - The seat is moving.
 - The seatback is being raised.
 - The system loses the seat position (beep sound is not activated).
 - The battery has deteriorated.
 - The system is malfunctioning.

If the beep sound is not activated and the switch operation is disabled, perform the *Switch operation is disabled procedure*. Refer to *Switch operation is disabled* on page 2-22.

- When any of the following conditions is met, a beep sound is activated continuously and the operation stops.
 - Any switch on the seat is operated.
 - The seat back is raised.
 - Cargo gets caught in the seat.
 - The vehicle is stopped on a steep downslope.
 - The cabin temperature is extremely low.
 - The battery has deteriorated.
 - The system is malfunctioning.

Cancelling the seat operation

If the seat operation is cancelled, perform the following procedure. A beep sound is activated continuously and the seat operation can be cancelled.

- The switch on the side of the seat or the switch on the seatback is pressed.
- The seat slide/seat recline switch is pressed.
- The seatback is raised.

After cancelling, press the switch on the side of the seat or the switch on the seatback again to move the seat.

Seats

Jam-safe function



Make sure that there is no person or cargo before operating the seat:

The jam-safe function detects a person or obstruction to prevent the person or object from getting caught. The system may not detect certain objects depending on the way they are positioned and their shape. Be especially careful with children.

When the seat is sliding automatically and an obstruction such as a person or cargo is detected, a beep sound is activated continuously and the condition of the seat becomes one of the following.

Sliding forward: Emergency stop.

Sliding rearward: The second-row seat slides forward automatically and a long beep sound is activated when the operation is completed.

Third-row Seat

▼ Third-row Seat Access

Occupants can get into and out of the third-row seat area by sliding the second-row seats forward.

Refer to Third-row Seat Access on page 2-17.

▼ Split Folding the Third-row Seats

To create a luggage compartment space, fold the third-row seats forward.



Do not apply load to the head restraint with it in the upright position and the seatback folded down. Otherwise, it could cause damage to the head restraint.

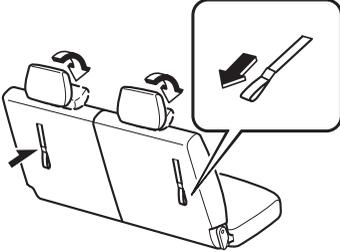
NOTE

When folding the seatbacks forward, fold them in two steps.

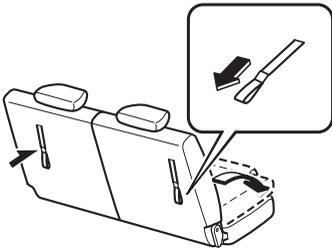
Folding the seatbacks (With strap)

1. Secure the third-row seat seat belts into their holders.
Refer to Unfastening the Seat Belt on page 2-39.
2. Slide the second-row seat all the way forward.

3. Pull the strap to fold down the head restraint.



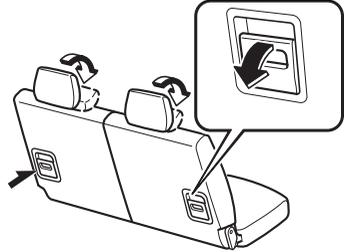
4. Pull the strap further to fold the third-row seat forward.



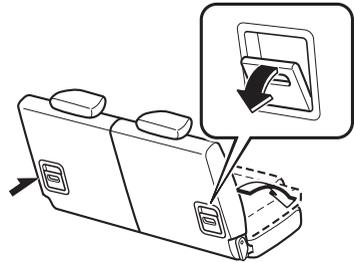
Folding the seatbacks (With lever)

1. Secure the third-row seat seat belts into their holders.
Refer to Unfastening the Seat Belt on page 2-39.
2. Slide the second-row seat all the way forward.

3. Lower the lever to fold down the head restraint.

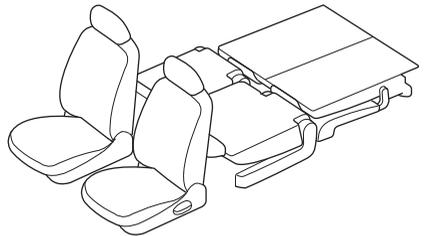


4. Lower the lever further to fold the third-row seat forward.



NOTE

To create a flat luggage compartment space from the rear of the vehicle to the back of the front seats, fold the second-row and third-row seats (page 2-19).



Seats

To return third-row seat to its original position

1. Return the seatback to its original position by pulling the strap/lever on the back of the seatback.
Make sure the seatback is secured by attempting to lightly move it forward and back.
2. Lift the head restraint upward to its upright position.

Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints on all outboard seats and the second-row centre seat. The head restraints are intended to help protect you and the passengers from neck injury.

WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly adjusted. In addition, always raise the head restraints on all second-row seats when they are being used:

Driving with the head restraints adjusted too low or removed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

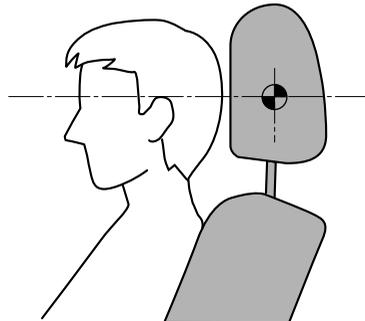
NOTE

(Third-row seat)

The head restraints are non-adjustable.

▼ Height Adjustment

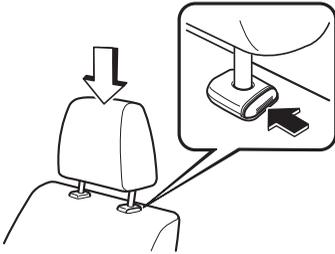
Adjust the head restraint so that the centre is even with the top of the passenger's ears.



To raise a head restraint, pull it up to the desired position.

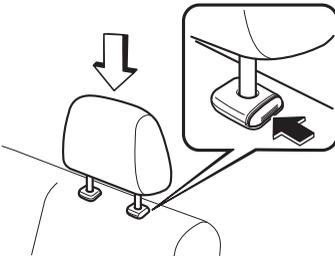
To lower the head restraint, press the stop-catch release, then push the head restraint down.

Front outboard seat

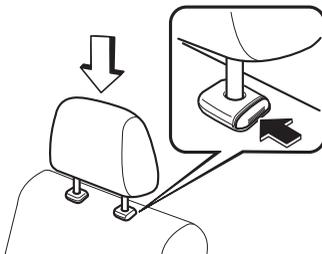


Second-row outboard seat

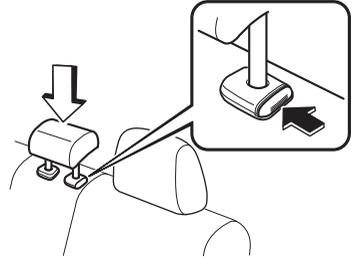
(6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



Second-row centre seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



▼ Removal/Installation (Front outboard seat/Second-row seat)

To remove the head restraint, pull it up while pressing the stop-catch.

To install the head restraint, insert the legs into the holes while pressing the stop-catch.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints installed when seats are being used and make sure they are properly installed:

Driving with the head restraints not installed is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

After installing a head restraint, try lifting it to make sure that it does not pull out:

Driving with an unsecured head restraint is dangerous as the effectiveness of the head restraint will be compromised which could cause it to unexpectedly detach from the seat.

Seats

⚠ CAUTION

- When installing a head restraint, make sure that it is installed correctly with the front of the head restraint facing forward. If the head restraint is installed incorrectly, it could detach from the seat during a collision and result in injury.
- The head restraints on each of the front and second-row seats are specialized to each seat. Do not switch around the head restraint positions. If a head restraint is not installed to its correct seat position, the effectiveness of the head restraint during a collision will be compromised which could cause injury.

▼ Foldable Head Restraints (Third-Row Seat)

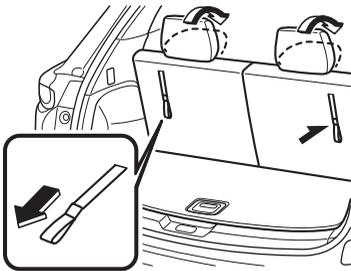
The third-row seats are equipped with foldable head restraints.

NOTE

The foldable head restraints cannot be adjusted or removed.

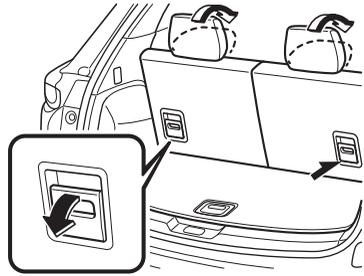
(With strap)

To fold the head restraint, pull the strap and fold the head restraint downward.



(With lever)

To fold the head restraint, lower the lever down.



To return the head restraint to its upright position, lift it upward.

⚠ WARNING

Always drive with the head restraints in their upright positions when the third-row seats are occupied, and make sure they are securely locked in place:

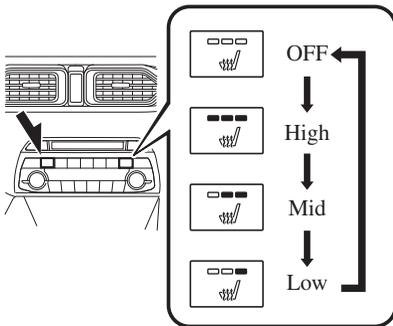
Driving with the head restraints folded down is dangerous. With no support behind your head, your neck could be seriously injured in a collision.

Seat Warmer/Seat Ventilation/Heated Steering Wheel

Seat Warmer*

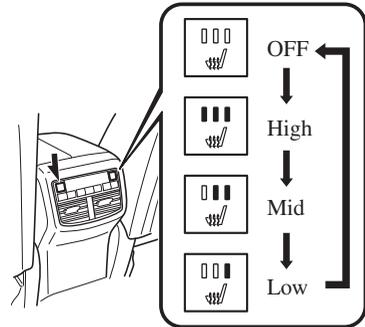
The front/second-row seats are electrically heated. The ignition must be switched ON. Press the seat warmer switch while the ignition is switched ON to operate the seat warmer. The indicator lights turn on to indicate that the seat warmer is operating. The mode changes as follows each time the seat warmer switch is pressed.

Front

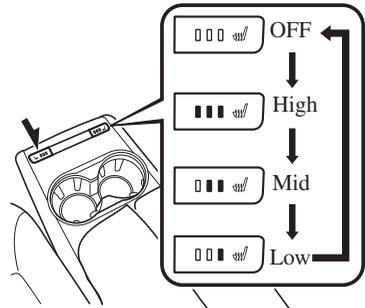


Second-row seat*

(6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



! WARNING

Be careful when using the seat warmer:

The heat from the seat warmer may be too hot for some people, as indicated as follows, and could cause a low-temperature burn.

- Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people
- People with delicate skin
- People who are excessively fatigued
- People who are intoxicated

Seat Warmer/Seat Ventilation/Heated Steering Wheel

- *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*

Do not use the seat warmer with anything having high moisture-retention ability such as a blanket or cushion on the seat:

The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not use the seat warmer even when taking a short nap in the vehicle:

The seat may be heated excessively and cause a low-temperature burn.

Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it:

This could cause the seat to become excessively heated and result in injury from a minor burn.



➤ **(Second-row seat)**

Before folding a second-row seatback, make sure that the second-row seat warmer switch is off. If a second-row seatback is folded while the second-row seat warmer is in operation, it may heat the seat excessively and damage the seat surface.

- *Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the heater.*

NOTE

- *Use the seat warmer when the engine is running. Leaving the seat warmer on for long periods with the engine not running could cause the battery power to be depleted.*
- *When the engine is stopped while the seat warmers are operating and then the ignition is switched ON, the seat warmers will not turn back on automatically. To turn the seat warmers back on, press the switch. In addition, the second-row seat warmer operation stops automatically after the seat warmers have operated for about 90 minutes.*
- *The temperature of the seat warmer cannot be adjusted beyond High, Mid and Low because the seat warmer is controlled by a thermostat.*
- *The seat warmer cannot be used at the same time as the seat ventilation.*

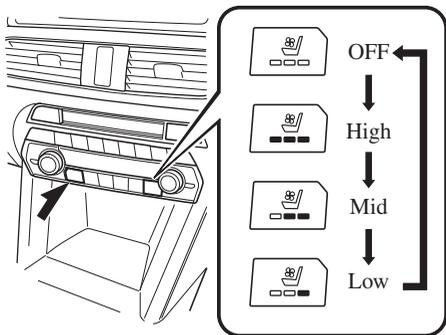
Seat Warmer/Seat Ventilation/Heated Steering Wheel

Seat Ventilation*

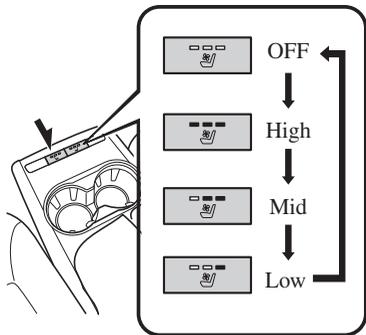
The seat ventilation uses fans installed in the seats to draw air around the seat surface and ventilate them. The ignition must be switched ON.

Press the seat ventilation switch while the ignition is switched ON to operate the seat ventilation. The indicator lights turn on to indicate that the seat ventilation is operating. The mode changes as follows each time the seat ventilation switch is pressed.

Front seat



Second-row seat (Captain Seat Type)



CAUTION

- Do not use organic solvents to clean the seat. It may damage the seat surface and the seat ventilation parts.
- Do not place heavy objects with sharp projections on the seat, or insert needles or pins into it.

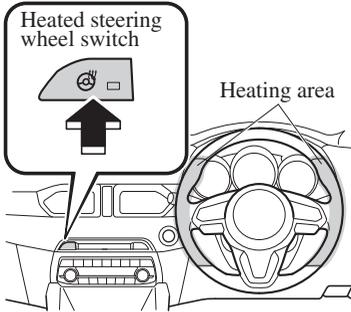
NOTE

- Use the seat ventilation when the engine is running. Leaving the seat ventilation on for long periods with the engine not running could cause the battery power to be depleted.
- When the engine is stopped while the seat ventilations are operating and then the ignition is switched ON, the seat ventilations will not turn back on automatically.
- The seat ventilation cannot be used at the same time as the seat warmer.

Seat Warmer/Seat Ventilation/Heated Steering Wheel

Heated Steering Wheel*

The grips on the left and right of the steering wheel can be warmed up.



The ignition must be switched ON.

Press the switch to turn on the heated steering wheel. The heated steering wheel operates for about 30 minutes and then turns off automatically.

The indicator light illuminates when the heater is operating.

To turn off the heated steering wheel before the 30 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.

CAUTION

The following types of persons should be careful not to touch the steering wheel. Otherwise, it could cause a low-temperature burn.

- *Infants, small children, elderly people, and physically challenged people*
- *People with delicate skin*
- *People who are excessively fatigued*
- *People who are intoxicated*
- *People who have taken sleep-inducing medicine such as sleeping pills or cold medicine*

Seat Belt Precautions

Seat belts help to decrease the possibility of severe injury during accidents and sudden stops. Mazda recommends that the driver and all passengers always wear seat belts.

All the seats have lap/shoulder belts. These belts also have retractors with inertia locks that keep them out of the way when not in use. The locks allow the belts to remain comfortable on users, but they will lock in position during a collision.

The second-row outboard seat belt retractors operate in two modes, emergency locking mode and, for child-restraint systems, automatic locking mode.

WARNING

Always wear your seat belt and make sure all occupants are properly restrained:

Not wearing a seat belt is extremely dangerous. During a collision, occupants not wearing seat belts could hit someone or things inside the vehicle or even be thrown out of the vehicle. They could be seriously injured or even killed. In the same collision, occupants wearing seat belts would be much safer.

Do not wear twisted seat belts:

Twisted seat belts are dangerous. In a collision, the full width of the belt is not available to absorb the impact. This puts more force on the bones beneath the belt, which could cause serious injury or death. So, if your seat belt is twisted, you must straighten the seat belt to remove any twists and to allow the full width of the belt to be used.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:

Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

Do not operate a vehicle with a damaged seat belt:

Using a damaged seat belt is dangerous. An accident could damage the belt webbing of the seat belt in use. A damaged seat belt cannot provide adequate protection in a collision. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect all seat belt systems in use during an accident before they are used again.

Seat Belt Systems

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:

Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

Positioning the Shoulder Portion of the Seat Belt:

Improper positioning of the shoulder portion of the seat belt is dangerous. Always make sure the shoulder portion of the seat belt is positioned across your shoulder and near your neck, but never under your arm, on your neck, or on your upper arm.

Positioning the Lap Portion of the Seat Belt:

The lap portion of the seat belt worn too high is dangerous. In a collision, this would concentrate the impact force directly on the abdominal area, causing serious injury. Wear the lap portion of the belt snugly and as low as possible.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

Instructions for Use of Seat Belt Assemblies:

Seatbelts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

Seatbelts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

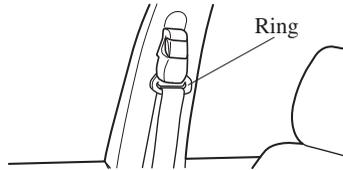
Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

⚠ CAUTION

Belt retraction may become difficult if the belts and rings are soiled, so try to keep them clean. For more details about cleaning the seat belts, refer to "Seat Belt Maintenance" (page 6-52).



▼ Pregnant Women and Persons with Serious Medical Conditions

Pregnant women should always wear seat belts. Ask your doctor for specific recommendations.

The lap belt should be worn **SNUGLY AND AS LOW AS POSSIBLE OVER THE HIPS**. The shoulder belt should be worn across your shoulder properly, but never across the stomach area.

Persons with serious medical conditions also should wear seat belts. Check with your doctor for any special instructions regarding specific medical conditions.



▼ Emergency Locking Mode

When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode.

In the emergency locking mode, the belt remains comfortable on the occupant and the retractor will lock in position during a collision.

If the belt is locked and cannot be pulled out, retract the belt once, and then try pulling it out slowly. If this fails, pull the belt strongly 1 time and loosen, then pull it out again slowly.

(Seat Belt with Automatic Locking Mode)

When the seat belt is fastened, it will always be in the emergency locking mode until it is switched to automatic locking mode by pulling it all the way out to its full length. If the belt feels tight and hinders comfortable movement while the vehicle is stopped or in motion, it may be in the automatic locking mode because the belt has been pulled too far out. To return the belt to the more comfortable emergency locking mode, wait until the vehicle has stopped in a safe, level area, retract the belt fully to convert it back to emergency locking mode and then extend it around you again.

Seat Belt Systems

▼ Automatic Locking Mode (Second-row outboard seat belts)

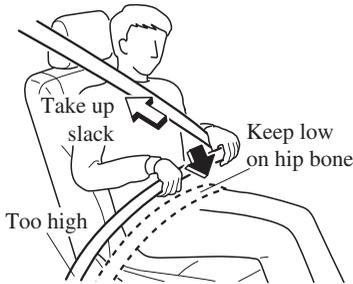
Always use the automatic locking mode to keep the child-restraint system from shifting to an unsafe position in the event of an accident. To enable seat belt automatic locking mode, pull it all the way out and connect it as instructed on the child-restraint system. It will retract down to the child-restraint system and stay locked on it. See the section on child restraint (page 2-43).

Seat Belt

▼ Fastening the Seat Belt

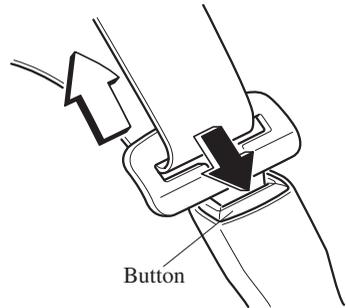


Position the lap belt as low as possible, not on the abdominal area, then adjust the shoulder belt so that it fits snugly against your body.



▼ Unfastening the Seat Belt

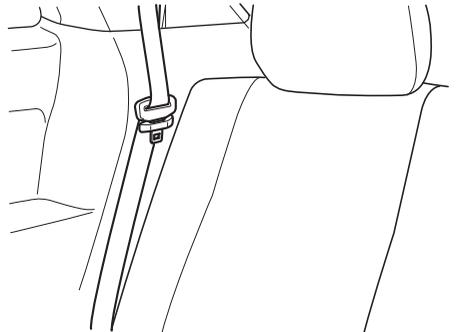
Depress the button on the seat belt buckle. If the belt does not fully retract, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Then make sure it remains untwisted as it retracts.



NOTE

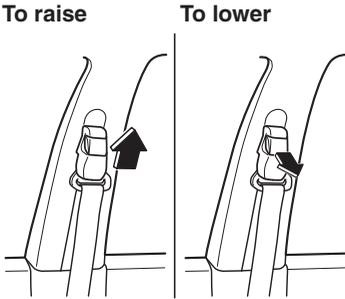
If a belt does not fully retract, inspect it for kinks and twists. If it is still not retracting properly, have it inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

To secure the outboard-third row seat belts when not in use, insert the belts into their seat belt retainers.



Seat Belt Systems

▼ Front Shoulder Belt Adjuster



Make sure the adjuster is locked.

Seat Belt Warning Systems

If it detects that the occupant seat belt is unfastened, the warning light or beep alerts the occupant.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.

Refer to Seat Belt Warning Beep on page 7-42.

Seat belt indicator light (second-row seat/third-row seat) (green)

(Second-row seat)

6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type



Captain Seat Type



(Third-row seat)



The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and a second-row seat belt/third-row seat belt is fastened, and then it turns off after about 60 seconds have elapsed since the engine was started.

Seat Belt Pretensioner and Load Limiting Systems

For optimum protection, the front seat belts and second-row outboard seat belts are equipped with pretensioner and load limiting systems. For both these systems to work properly you must wear the seat belt properly.

Pretensioners:

When a collision is detected, the pretensioners deploy simultaneously with the air bags.

For deployment details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-76).

The seat belt retractors remove slack quickly as the air bags are expanding. Any time the air bags and seat belt pretensioners have fired they must be replaced.

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.

Refer to Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep on page 7-42.

In addition, the pretensioner system for the front passenger, like the front passenger air bag, is designed to only deploy when the front passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the front passenger's seat.

For details, refer to the front passenger occupant classification sensor (page 2-79).

Load limiter:

The load limiting system releases belt webbing in a controlled manner to reduce

belt force on the occupant's chest. While the most severe load on a seat belt occurs in frontal collisions, the load limiter has an automatic mechanical function and can activate in any accident mode with sufficient occupant movement.

Even if the pretensioners have not fired, the load limiting function must be checked by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).



Wear seat belts only as recommended in this owner's manual:

Incorrect positioning of the seat belts is dangerous. Without proper positioning, the pretensioner and load limiting systems cannot provide adequate protection in an accident and this could result in serious injury. For more details about wearing seat belts, refer to "Fastening the Seat Belt" (page 2-39).

Have your seat belts changed immediately if the pretensioner or load limiter has been expended:

Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately inspect the seat belt pretensioners and air bags after any collision. Like the air bags, the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters will only function once and must be replaced after any collision that caused them to deploy. If the seat belt pretensioners and load limiters are not replaced, the risk of injury in a collision will increase.

Seat Belt Systems

Do not modify the components or wiring, or use electronic testing devices on the pretensioner system:

Modifying the components or wiring of the pretensioner system, including the use of electronic testing devices is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable which would prevent it from activating in an accident. The occupants or repairers could be seriously injured.

Properly dispose of the pretensioner system:

Improper disposal of the pretensioner system or a vehicle with non-deactivated pretensioners is dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) safely dispose of the pretensioner system or scrap a pretensioner system equipped vehicle.

NOTE

- The pretensioner system may not operate depending on the type of the collision. For details, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-76).*
- Some smoke (non-toxic gas) will be released when the air bags and pretensioners deploy. This does not indicate a fire. This gas normally has no effect on occupants, however, those with sensitive skin may experience light skin irritation. If residue from the deployment of the air bags or the pretensioner system gets on the skin or in the eyes, wash it off as soon as possible.*

Child-Restraint Precautions

Mazda strongly urges the use of child-restraint systems for children small enough to use them.

Check your local and state or provincial laws for specific requirements regarding the safety of children riding in your vehicle.

Whatever child-restraint system you consider, please pick the appropriate one for the age and size of the child, obey the law and follow the instructions that come with the individual child-restraint system.

A child who has outgrown child-restraint systems should sit in the rear and use seat belts.

The child-restraint system should be installed on the rear seat.

Statistics confirm that the rear seat is the best place for all children up to 12 years of age-the more so with a supplementary restraint system (air bags).

A rear-facing child-restraint system should **NEVER** be used in the front passenger seat with the air bag system activated. The front passenger's seat is also the least preferred seat for other child-restraint systems.

To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the front passenger air bag, the front passenger occupant classification sensor works as a part of the supplementary restraint system. This system deactivates the front passenger front and side air bags and also the front passenger seat belt pretensioner system when the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates.

When an infant or small child sits on the front passenger seat, the system shuts off the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates.

Even if the front passenger air bag is shut off, Mazda strongly recommends that children be properly restrained and child-restraint systems of all kinds are properly secured on the rear seats which are the best place for children.

For more details, refer to "Front passenger occupant classification sensor" (page 2-79).

Child Restraint

WARNING

Use the correct size child-restraint system:

For effective protection in vehicle accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or child-restraint system depending on age and size. If not, the child could be seriously injured or even killed in an accident.

Follow the manufacturer's instructions and always keep the child-restraint system buckled down:

An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle or fasten it with a seat belt, or latch it down to BOTH ISOFIX anchors, and attach the corresponding tether anchor.

Always secure a child in a proper child-restraint system:

Holding a child in your arms while the vehicle is moving is extremely dangerous. No matter how strong the person may be, he or she cannot hold onto a child in a sudden stop or collision and it could result in serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Even in a moderate accident, the child may be exposed to air bag forces that could result in serious injury or death to the child, or the child may be slammed into an adult, causing injury to both child and adult.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

Vehicles with a front passenger air bag have the following warning label. The warning label reminds you not to put a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat at any time.



Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.



Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:

In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.



Seating a child in a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is dangerous under certain conditions:

Your vehicle is equipped with front passenger occupant classification sensor. Even with the front passenger occupant classification sensor, if you must use the front passenger seat to seat a child, using a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat under the following conditions increases the danger of the front passenger air bag deploying and could result in serious injury or death to the child.

- *The front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light does not illuminate when seating a child in the child-restraint system.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.*
- *A rear passenger or luggage pushing or pulling down on the front passenger seatback.*
- *Luggage or other items are placed on the seatback or hung on the head restraint.*
- *The seat is washed.*
- *Liquids are spilled on the seat.*
- *The front passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.*
- *The front passenger seatback contacts the second-row seat.*

Child Restraint

- Luggage or other items are placed between the front passenger seat and driver seat.
- An electric device is put on the front passenger's seat.
- An additional electrical device, such as a seat warmer is installed to the surface of the front passenger seat.

The designated positions with seat belts on the rear seats are the safest places for children. Always use seat belts and child restraints.

Do not allow a child or anyone to lean over to or against the side window of a vehicle with side and curtain air bags:

It is dangerous to allow anyone to lean over to or against the side window, the area of the front passenger seat, the front and rear window pillars and the roof edge along both sides from which the side and curtain air bags deploy, even if a child-restraint system is used. The impact of inflation from a side or curtain air bag could cause serious injury or death to an out of position child. Furthermore, leaning over to or against the door could block the side and curtain air bags and eliminate the advantages of supplementary protection. Because the front seats are equipped with front air bags, the rear seat is always a better location for children. Take special care not to allow a child to lean over to or against the side window, even if the child is seated in a child-restraint system.

Never use one seat belt on more than one person at a time:

Using one seat belt for more than one person at a time is dangerous. A seat belt used in this way cannot spread the impact forces properly and the two passengers could be crushed together and seriously injured or even killed. Never use one belt for more than one person at a time and always operate the vehicle with each occupant properly restrained.

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a backless booster seat):

Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.



A seat belt or child-restraint system can become very hot in a closed vehicle during warm weather. To avoid burning yourself or a child, check them before you or your child touches them.

NOTE

Your Mazda is equipped with ISOFIX anchors for attachment of ISOFIX child-restraint systems on the second-row seats. When using these anchors to secure a child-restraint system, refer to “Using ISOFIX Anchor” (page 2-62).

Child Restraint

Child-Restraint System Installation

▼ Categories of Child-Restraint Systems

NOTE

When purchasing, ask the manufacturer of the child-restraint system which type of child-restraint system is appropriate for your child and vehicle.

(Countries conforming to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation)

Child-restraint systems are classified into the following 5 groups according to the UN-R 44 and UN-R 129 regulation.

Group	Age	Weight	Size Classification/ Fixture (CRF)
0	Up to about 9 months old	Up to 10 kg (up to 22 lb)	ISO/L1
			ISO/L2
			ISO/R1
0+	Up to about 2 years old	Up to 13 kg (up to 29 lb)	ISO/R1
			ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
1	About 8 months to 4 years old	9 kg — 18 kg (20 lb — 40 lb)	ISO/R2
			ISO/R3
			ISO/F2
			ISO/F2X
2	About 3 to 7 years old	15 kg — 25 kg (33 lb — 55 lb)	ISO/F3
			—
3	About 6 to 12 years old	22 kg — 36 kg (48 lb — 79 lb)	—

(Australia)

Child-restraint systems for Australia must conform to Australian Standard AS 1754/91 or later. Refer to your local state authority for the latest specification.

(Other countries)

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

▼ Child-Restraint System Types

In this owner's manual, explanation of child-restraint systems secured with seat belts is provided for the following 3 types of popular child-restraint systems: baby seat, child seat, booster seat.

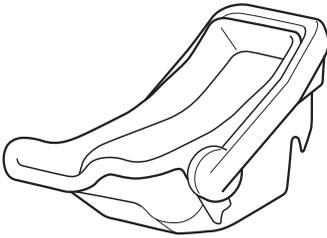
NOTE

- Installation position is determined by the type of child-restraint system. Always read the manufacturer's instructions and this owner's manual carefully.

· *Due to variations in the design of child-restraint systems, vehicle seats and seat belts, all child-restraint systems may not fit all seating positions. Before purchasing a child-restraint system, it should be tested in the specific vehicle seating position (or positions) where it is intended to be used. If a previously purchased child-restraint system does not fit, you may need to purchase a different one that will.*

Baby seat

A baby seat provides restraint by bracing the baby's head, neck and back against the seating surface.



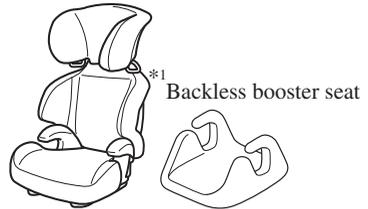
Child seat

A child seat restrains a child's body using the harness.



Booster seat

A booster seat is a child restraint accessory designed to improve the fit of the seat belt system around the child's body.



*1
When using a backless booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the backless booster seat is installed.

(Australia)

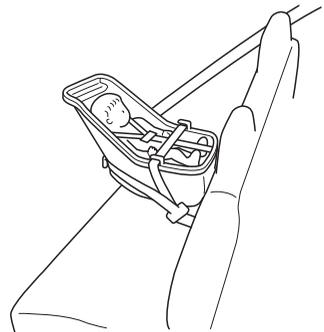
Child-restraint systems for Australia must conform to Australian Standard AS 1754/91 or later.

(Other countries)

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of child-restraint systems in your country.

▼ Baby Seat Installation Position

A baby seat is used in the rear-facing position only.



Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed.



▼ Child Seat Installation Position

A child seat is used in front-facing and rear-facing positions depending on the age and size of the child. When installing, follow the manufacturer's instructions in accordance with the appropriate age and size of the child as well as the directions for installing the child-restraint system.

Rear-facing type

⚠ WARNING

Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat protected by an air bag:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

The child-restraint system can be hit by the deploying air bag and knocked out of position. A child in the child-restraint system could be seriously injured or killed.



Front-facing type

⚠ WARNING

Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:

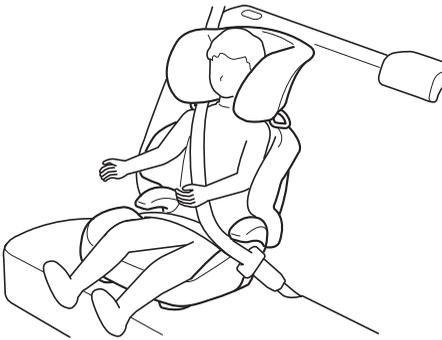
In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.



▼ Booster Seat Installation Position

A booster seat is used in the front-facing position only.

We recommend the use of the booster seat with backrest to allow simple adjustment of the shoulder belt position and to give your child the best protection.



! WARNING

Do not install a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat unless it is unavoidable:

In a collision, the force of a deploying air bag could cause serious injury or death to the child. If installing a front-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat is unavoidable, move the front passenger seat as far back as possible and adjust the seat bottom (height adjustable seat bottom) to the highest position at which the seat belt fastening the child-restraint system is securely tightened.



Child Restraint

Child-Restraint System Suitability for Various Seat Positions Table

Provided information in the table shows your child-restraint system suitability for various seating position. For installation suitability of other manufacturer child-restraint system, carefully consult the manufacturer's instructions which accompany the child-restraint system.

When installing a child-restraint system, the following points must be observed:

· **(Front passenger seat/Second-row seat)**

Always remove the head restraint before installing a child-restraint system. However, when installing a booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the booster seat is installed. In addition, always use a tether strap and attach it securely. Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

· When installing a child-restraint system to the seat, adjust the seat slide position as far back as possible. Adjust the front passenger seat bottom to the highest position so that the seat belt can securely fasten the child-restraint system.

Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-14.

Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat) on page 2-16.

· When it is difficult to install a child-restraint system to the front passenger seat/second-row seat, or the seat belt cannot be secured to the child-restraint system, perform the following operations to adjust the seat holding the child-restraint system so that the seat belt can be secured completely to it.

- Move the seat forward or back.
- Move the seatback forward or back.
- Move the seat upward or downward.

(Second-row seat)

· When installing a child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, remove the head restraint.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

· When installing a child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchors, if the connectors of the child-restraint system do not reach the lower anchorage and the child-restraint system cannot be installed, slightly tilt the seatback of the seat holding the child-restraint system rearward. If the seatback of a second-row seat cannot be reclined due to interference with luggage on the rear seat or passengers, slide the seat forward once and then recline the seatback.

(Second-row seat/Third-row seat)

· If the tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, use an extension strap.

- When installing a child-restraint system to the second-row seat or third-row seat, adjust the seat position of the front seat so that the child-restraint system does not contact the front seat.
 Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
 Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-14.
 Refer to Seat Operation (Second-row Seat) on page 2-16.
- When installing a child-restraint system to the rear seat, refer to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions and the Using ISOFIX Anchor on page 2-62.
- An i-Size child-restraint system refers to a child-restraint system which has acquired i-Size category certification for the UN-R 129 regulation.

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat					Third-row seat	
			6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type			Captain Seat Type			
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated	Left	Centre	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right
Seating position suitable for universal belted (Yes/No)	Yes (UF)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)	Yes (U)
i-Size seating position (Yes/No)	No	No	Yes (i-U)	No	Yes (i-U)	Yes (i-U)	Yes (i-U)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R1)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	No	No

Child Restraint

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat					Third-row seat	
			6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type			Captain Seat Type			
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated	Left	Centre	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R2X)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable rearward facing fixture (R3)	No	No	Yes (IL)	No	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	Yes (IL)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F2X)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable forward facing fixture (F3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L1)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No

Seating position	Passenger		Second-row seat					Third-row seat	
			6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type			Captain Seat Type			
	Airbag activated	Airbag de-activated	Left	Centre	Right	Left	Right	Left	Right
Largest suitable lateral facing fixture (L2)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B2)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Largest suitable booster fixture (B3)	No	No	Yes (IUF)	No	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	Yes (IUF)	No	No
Non i-size compatible with a support leg (Yes/No)	No	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Lower ISOFIX anchorages but without Top Tether (Yes/No)	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No	No

U = Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in all mass groups.

UF = Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in all mass groups.

IUF = Suitable for ISOFIX forward child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in the mass group.

L = Suitable for particular child restraints given on attached list. These restraints may be of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories.

IL = Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS) given in the attached list. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the “specific vehicle”, “restricted” or “semi-universal” categories. Regarding child-restraint systems which can be installed to your Mazda, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

i-U = Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward and rearward facing.

Child Restraint

i-UF = Suitable for forward-facing i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems only.

Yes = Child-restraint system can be secured on the seat.

No = Child-restraint system cannot be secured on the seat, or there is no fixture.

X = Child-restraint system cannot be installed.

The manufacturer will also recommend a suitable ISOFIX child restraint system.

For this, your vehicle and the seat must be listed on the child restraint system manufacturer's model list. For more information, contact the child restraint system manufacturer or visit the manufacturer's website.

Installing Child-Restraint Systems

▼ Anchor Bracket

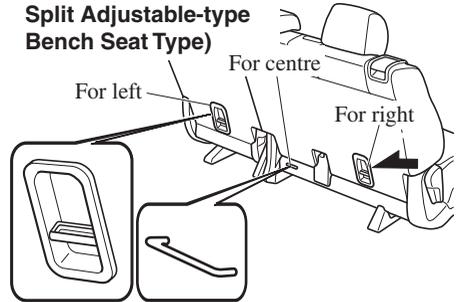
Anchor brackets for securing child-restraint systems are equipped in the vehicle. Locate each anchor position using the illustration.

To install a child-restraint system, remove the head restraint (except third-row seat). Always follow the instruction manual accompanying the child-restraint system.

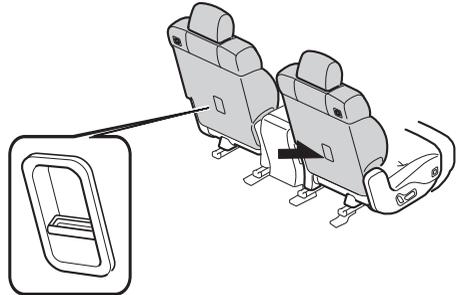
Anchor bracket location

Use the indicated anchor bracket locations when installing a child-restraint system equipped with a tether.

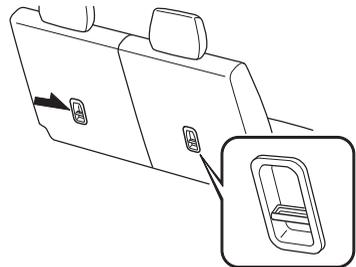
Second-row seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



Second-row seat (Captain Seat Type)



Third-row seat



Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

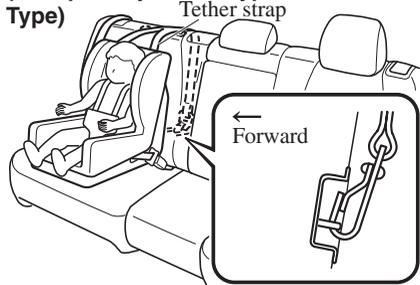
Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

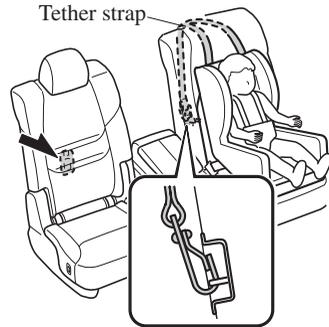
Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (Second-row seat):

Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.

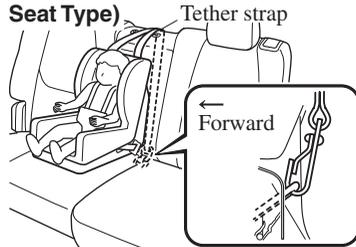
Second-row outboard seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



Second-row centre seat (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

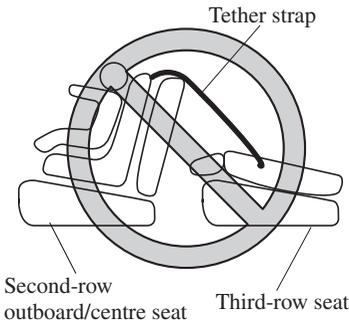
Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system (Second-row seat):

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

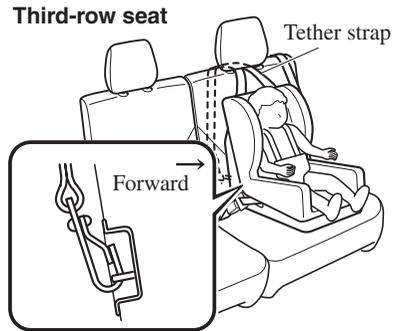
Only use a tether anchor designed for the second-row seats:

Using a third-row seat tether anchor on the second-row seat is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.



Always route the tether straps between the head restraint and the seatback (Third-row seat):

Routing the tether straps on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether straps could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.



▼ Using Automatic Locking Mode (Second-row outboard seat)

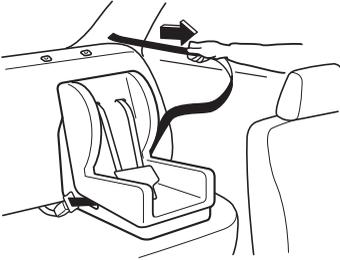
Follow these instructions when using the automatic locking mode for a child-restraint system.

1. Adjust the angle of the second-row seatback so that there is no gap between the child-restraint system and the second-row seatback.
2. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
3. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a backless booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the backless booster seat is installed.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

Child Restraint

4. Secure the child-restraint system with the lap portion of the lap/shoulder belt. See the manufacturer's instructions on the child-restraint system for belt routing instructions.
5. To get the retractor into the automatic locking mode, pull the shoulder belt portion of the seat belt until the entire length of the belt is out of the retractor.



6. Push the child-restraint system firmly into the vehicle seat. Be sure the belt retracts as snugly as possible. A clicking noise from the retractor will be heard during retraction if the system is in the automatic locking mode. If the belt does not lock the seat down tight, repeat this step.



NOTE

- *Inspect this function before each use of the child-restraint system. You should not be able to pull the shoulder belt out of the retractor while the system is in the automatic locking mode. When you remove the child-restraint system, be sure the belt fully retracts to return the system to emergency locking mode before occupants use the seat belts.*
7. If your child-restraint system requires the use of a tether strap, refer to the manufacturer's instructions to hook and tighten the tether strap.

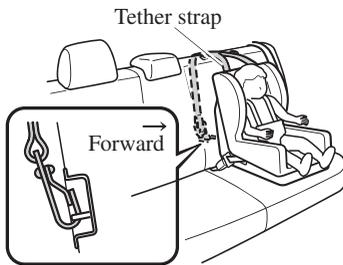
WARNING

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

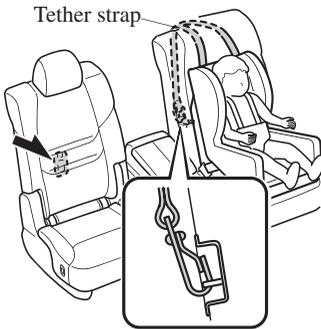
Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a backless booster seat):

Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.

(6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system:

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

▼ Centre-Second-row Seat Child-Restraint System Installation (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)

1. Adjust the angle of the second-row seatback so that there is no gap between the child-restraint system and the second-row seatback.
2. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.
3. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a backless booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the backless booster seat is installed.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.
4. Secure the child-restraint system with the seat belt, according to the manufacturer's instructions.
5. Secure the tether strap according to the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction.

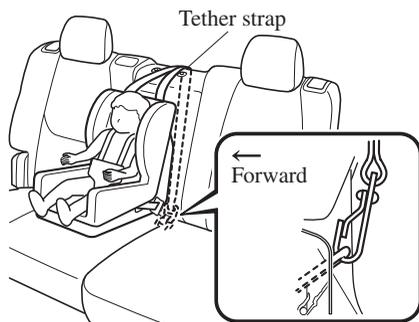
Child Restraint

⚠ WARNING

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always remove the head restraint and install child-restraint system (except when installing a backless booster seat):

Installing a child-restraint system without removing the head restraint is dangerous. The child-restraint system cannot be installed correctly which may result in death or injury to the child in a collision.



Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system:

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

▼ Using ISOFIX Anchor (Second-row seat)

⚠ WARNING

Follow the manufacturer's instructions for the use of the child-restraint system:

An unsecured child-restraint system is dangerous. In a sudden stop or a collision it could move causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. Make sure any child-restraint system is properly secured in place according to the manufacturer's instructions.

Make sure the child-restraint system is properly secured:

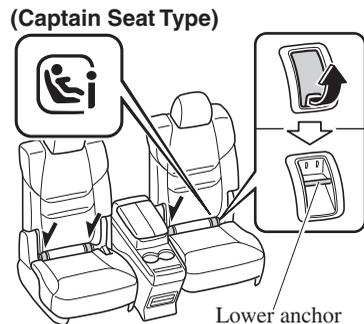
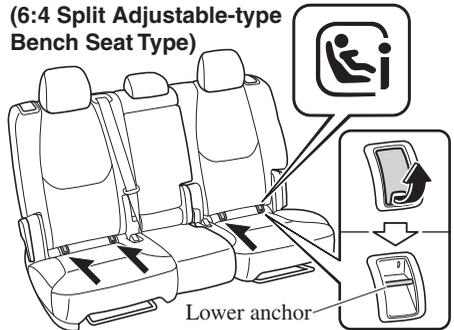
A child-restraint system that is not secured is dangerous. In a sudden stop or collision, it can become a projectile and hit someone, causing serious injury. When not in use, remove it from the vehicle, put it in the luggage compartment or at least make sure it is securely fastened to the ISOFIX anchors.

Make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchor-secured child-restraint system:

Not following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing the child-restraint system is dangerous. If seat belts or a foreign object prevent the child-restraint system from being securely attached to the ISOFIX anchors and the child-restraint system is installed improperly, the child-restraint system could move in a sudden stop or collision causing serious injury or death to the child or other occupants. When installing the child-restraint system, make sure there are no seat belts or foreign objects near or around the ISOFIX anchors. Always follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

1. First, adjust the front seat to allow clearance between the child-restraint system and the front seat.
Refer to Adjusting the Driver's Seat on page 2-5.
Refer to Adjusting the Front Passenger's Seat on page 2-14.
2. Adjust the angle of the second-row seatback so that there is no gap between the child-restraint system and the second-row seatback.
3. Make sure the seatback is securely latched by pushing it back until it is fully locked.

4. Remove the cover of the child-restraint system's ISOFIX anchors to verify the locations of the ISOFIX anchors.



NOTE

- The ISOFIX anchors marking on the cover indicates the position of the ISOFIX anchors for the attachment of a child-restraint system.
 - Store the removed cover so that it does not get lost.
5. Remove the head restraint. However, when installing a backless booster seat, always install the vehicle head restraint to the seat where the backless booster seat is installed.
Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

Child Restraint

- Secure the child-restraint system using the ISOFIX anchor, following the child-restraint system manufacturer's instruction.
- If your child-restraint system came equipped with a tether, that probably means it is very important to properly secure the tether for child safety. Please carefully follow the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions when installing tethers (page 2-57).

WARNING

WARNING: child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

WARNING

Always attach the tether strap to the correct tether anchor position:

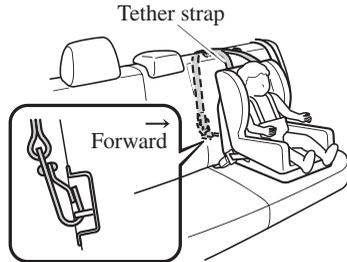
Attaching the tether strap to the incorrect tether anchor position is dangerous. In a collision, the tether strap could come off and loosen the child-restraint system. If the child-restraint system moves it could result in death or injury to the child.

If the top tether strap does not reach the anchor bracket, purchase and use an extension strap provided by the CRS manufacturer.

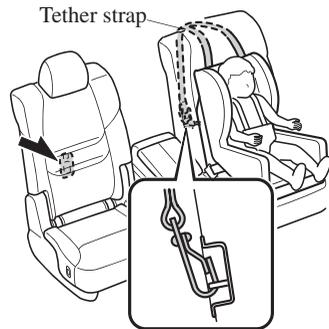
Always remove the head restraint and set the tether strap (except when installing a backless booster seat):

Routing the tether strap on top of the head restraint is dangerous. In a collision the tether strap could slide off the head restraint and loosen the child-restraint system. The child-restraint system could move which may result in death or injury to the child.

(6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)



(Captain Seat Type)



Always install the head restraint and adjust it to the appropriate position after removing the child-restraint system (Second-row seat):

Driving with the head restraint removed is dangerous as impact to the occupant's head cannot be prevented during emergency braking or in a collision, which could result in a serious accident, injury or death.

Refer to Head Restraints on page 2-28.

Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions

The front and side supplementary restraint systems (SRS) include different types of air bags. **Please verify the different types of air bags which are equipped on your vehicle by locating the “SRS AIRBAG” location indicators.** These indicators are visible in the area where the air bags are installed.

The air bags are installed in the following locations:

- The steering wheel hub (driver air bag)
- The front passenger instrument panel (front passenger air bag)
- The outboard sides of the front seatbacks (side air bags)
- The front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides (curtain air bags)

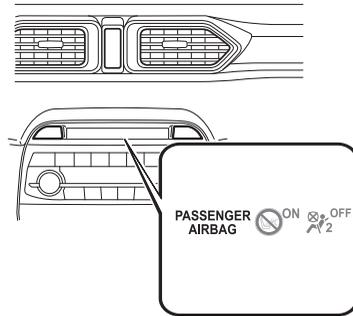
The air bag supplementary restraint systems are designed to provide supplementary protection in certain situations so seat belts are always important in the following ways:

Without seat belt usage, the air bags cannot provide adequate protection during an accident.

Seat belt usage is necessary to:

- Keep the occupant from being thrown into an inflating air bag.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries during an accident that is not designed for air bag inflation, such as roll-over or rear impact.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries in frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are not severe enough to activate the air bags.
- Reduce the possibility of being thrown from your vehicle.
- Reduce the possibility of injuries to lower body and legs during an accident because the air bags provide no protection to these parts of the body.
- Hold the driver in a position which allows better control of the vehicle.

Refer to the Front Passenger Occupant Classification System (page 2-79) for details.
The front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illuminates for a specified time after the ignition is switched ON.



A child who is too small to use a seat belt must be properly secured using a child-restraint system (page 2-43).

Carefully consider which child-restraint system is necessary for your child and follow the installation directions in this Owner's Manual as well as the child-restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

⚠ WARNING

Seat belts must be worn in air bag equipped vehicles:

Depending only on the air bags for protection during an accident is dangerous. Alone, air bags may not prevent serious injuries. The appropriate air bags can be expected to inflate only in the first accident, such as frontal, near frontal or side collisions that are at least moderate. Vehicle occupants should always wear seat belts.

Children should not ride in the front passenger seat:

Placing a child, 12 years or under, in the front seat is dangerous. The child could be hit by a deploying air bag and be seriously injured or even killed. A sleeping child is more likely to lean against the door and be hit by the side air bag in moderate collision to the front-passenger side of the vehicle. Whenever possible, always secure a child 12 years and under on the rear seats with an appropriate child-restraint system for the child's age and size.

Extreme Hazard! Never use a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat with an air bag that could deploy:

NEVER use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an ACTIVE AIRBAG in front of it, DEATH or SERIOUS INJURY to the CHILD can occur.

SRS Air Bags

Even in a moderate collision, the child-restraint system can be hit by a deploying air bag and moved violently backward resulting in serious injury or death to the child.



Do not sit too close to the driver and front passenger air bags:

Sitting too close to the driver and front passenger air bag modules or placing hands or feet on them is extremely dangerous. The driver and front passenger air bags inflate with great force and speed. Serious injuries could occur if someone is too close. The driver should always hold onto only the rim of the steering wheel. The front seat passenger should keep both feet on the floor. Front seat occupants should adjust their seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.

Sit in the centre of the seat and wear seat belts properly:

Sitting too close to the side air bag modules or placing hands on them, or sleeping up against the door or hanging out the windows is extremely dangerous. The side and curtain air bags inflate with great force and speed directly expanding along the door on the side the car is hit. Serious injury could occur if someone is sitting too close to the door or leaning against a window, or if rear seat occupants grab the sides of the front seatbacks. Give the side and curtain air bags room to work by sitting in the centre of the seat while the vehicle is moving with seat belts worn properly.

Do not attach objects on or around the area where air bags deploy:

Attaching objects to the air bags or placing something in the area where the air bags deploy is dangerous. In an accident, an object could interfere with air bag inflation and injure the occupants. Furthermore, the bag could be damaged causing gases to release. Always keep the deployment area of the air bag modules free of any obstructions.

For example, you should not do any of the following as it may interfere with air bag deployment.

- *Do not put a covering on or lean anything against areas such as the instrument panel and lower portion of the instrument panel that blocks the passenger front air bag.*
- *Do not use seat covers on the front seats and rear seats equipped with in-seat side air bags.*
- *Do not hang any backpacks, bags or pouches that cover the sides of the seats that block the side air bags.*
- *Do not place any objects on the assist grips. Only hang clothes directly on the coat hooks.*

Do not touch the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated:

Touching the components of the supplementary restraint system after the air bags have inflated is dangerous. Immediately after inflation, they are very hot. You could get burned.

Never install any front-end equipment to your vehicle:

Installation of front-end equipment, such as frontal protection bar (kangaroo bar, bull bar, push bar, or other similar devices), snowplough, or winches, is dangerous. The air bag crash sensor system could be affected. This could cause air bags to inflate unexpectedly, or it could prevent the air bags from inflating during an accident. Front occupants could be seriously injured.

Do not modify the suspension:

Modifying the vehicle suspension is dangerous. If the vehicle's height or the suspension is modified, the vehicle will be unable to accurately detect a collision resulting in incorrect or unexpected air bag deployment and the possibility of serious injuries.

Do not modify a front door or leave any damage unrepaired. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) inspect a damaged front door:

Modifying a front door or leaving any damage unrepaired is dangerous. Each front door has a side crash sensor as a component of the supplementary restraint system. If holes are drilled in a front door, a door speaker is left removed, or a damaged door is left unrepaired, the sensor could be adversely affected causing it to not detect the pressure of an impact correctly during a side collision. If a sensor does not detect a side impact correctly, the side and curtain air bags and the front seat belt pretensioner may not operate normally which could result in serious injury to occupants.

Do not modify the supplementary restraint system:

Modifying the components or wiring of the supplementary restraint system is dangerous. You could accidentally activate it or make it inoperable. Do not make any modifications to the supplementary restraint system. This includes installing trim, badges, or anything else over the air bag modules. It also includes installing extra electrical equipment on or near system components or wiring. An expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) can provide the special care needed in the removal and installation of front seats. It is important to protect the air bag wiring and connections to assure that the bags do not accidentally deploy, and that the driver seat slide position sensor is not damaged and the seats retain an undamaged air bag connection.

SRS Air Bags

Do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats:

Placing luggage or other objects under the front seats is dangerous. The components essential to the supplementary restraint system could be damaged, and in the event of a side collision, the appropriate air bags may not deploy, which could result in death or serious injury. To prevent damage to the components essential to the supplementary restraint system, do not place luggage or other objects under the front seats.

Do not operate a vehicle with damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components:

Expendable or damaged air bag/seat belt pretensioner system components must be replaced after any collision which caused them to deploy or damage them. Only a trained expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) can fully evaluate these systems to see that they will work in any subsequent accident. Driving with an expended or damaged air bag or pretensioner unit will not afford you the necessary protection in the event of any subsequent accident which could result in serious injury or death.

Do not remove interior air bag parts:

Removing any components such as the front seats, front instrument panel, the steering wheel or parts on the front and rear window pillars and along the roof edge, containing air bag parts or sensors is dangerous. These parts contain essential air bag components. The air bag could accidentally activate and cause serious injuries. Always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) remove these parts.

Properly dispose of the air bag system:

Improper disposal of an air bag or a vehicle with live air bags in it can be extremely dangerous. Unless all safety procedures are followed, injury could result. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) safely dispose of the air bag system or scrap an air bag equipped vehicle.

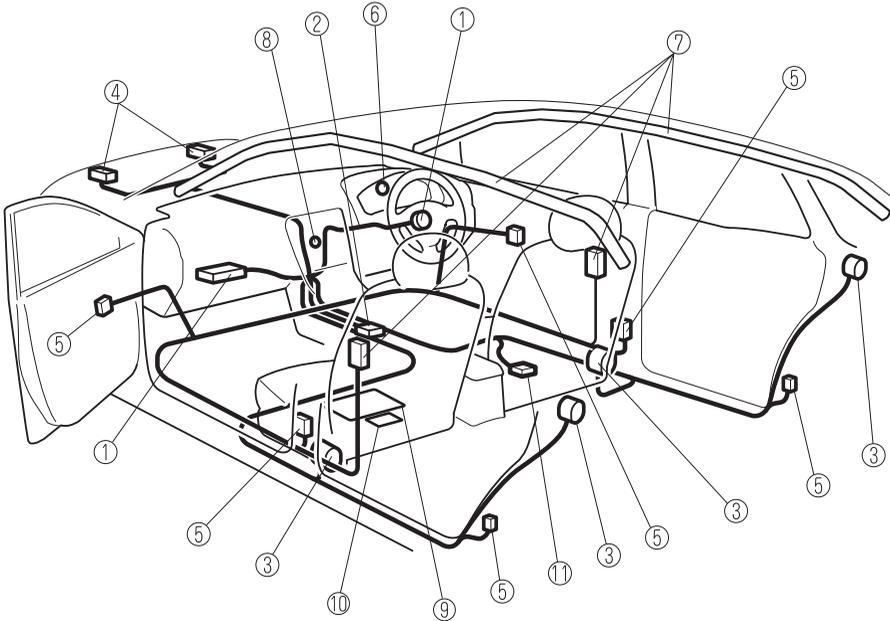
NOTE

- When an air bag deploys, a loud inflation noise can be heard and some smoke will be released. Neither is likely to cause injury, however, the texture of the air bags may cause light skin injuries on body parts not covered with clothing through friction.
- Should you sell your Mazda, we urge you to tell the new owner of its air bag systems and that familiarization with all instructions about them, from the Owner's Manual, is important.

- *This highly-visible label warns against the use of a rear-facing child-restraint system on the front passenger seat.*



Supplementary Restraint System Components



- ① Driver/Front passenger inflators and air bags
- ② Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- ③ Seat belt pretensioners (page 2-41)
- ④ Front air bag sensors
- ⑤ Side crash sensors
- ⑥ Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light (page 7-26)
- ⑦ Side and curtain inflators and air bags
- ⑧ Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light (page 2-79)
- ⑨ Front passenger occupant classification sensor (page 2-79)
- ⑩ Front passenger occupant classification module
- ⑪ Driver seat slide position sensor (page 2-73)

How the SRS Air Bags Work

Your Mazda is equipped with the following types of SRS air bags. SRS air bags are designed to work together with the seat belts to help to reduce injuries during an accident. The SRS air bags are designed to provide further protection for passengers in addition to the seat belt functions. Be sure to wear seat belts properly.

▼ Seat Belt Pretensioners

The pretensioners operate differently depending on what types of air bags are equipped. For more details about seat belt pretensioner operation, refer to the SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria (page 2-76).

Front

The front seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions. In addition, during a side collision, the pretensioner operates.

Second-row Outboard

The second-row outboard seat belt pretensioners are designed to deploy in moderate or severe frontal, near frontal collisions.

▼ Driver Air Bag

The driver's air bag is mounted in the steering wheel.

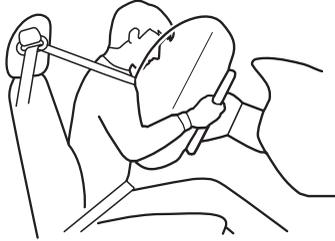
When air bag crash sensors detect a frontal impact of greater than moderate force, the driver's air bag inflates quickly helping to reduce injury mainly to the driver's head or chest caused by directly hitting the steering wheel.

For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-76).

The inflation of the driver's dual-stage air bag is controlled in two energy stages depending on the driver's seat position. The driver's seat slide position sensor is located under the driver's seat. The sensor determines whether the driver's seat is forward of or behind a reference position and sends the seat position to the diagnostic module (SAS unit). The SAS unit is designed to control the deployment of the driver's air bag depending on how close the driver's seat is to the steering wheel.

SRS Air Bags

During an impact of moderate severity, the driver's air bag deploys with lesser energy, whereas during more severe impacts and when the driver's seat is behind the reference position, it deploys with more energy.



▼ Front Passenger Air Bag

The front passenger air bag is mounted in the front passenger instrument panel. The inflation mechanism for the front passenger air bag is the same as the driver's air bag. For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-76).

In addition, the front passenger air bag is designed to only deploy when the front passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the front passenger's seat. For details, refer to the front passenger occupant classification system (page 2-79).

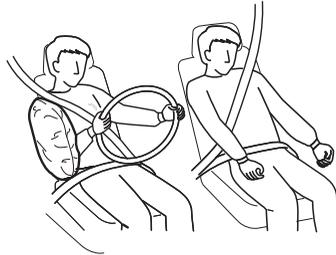


▼ Side Air Bags

The side air bags are mounted in the outboard sides of the front seatbacks. When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the system inflates the side air bag only on the side in which the vehicle was hit. The side air bag inflates quickly to reduce injury to the driver or front passenger's chest caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window.

For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-76).

In addition, the front passenger side air bag is designed to only deploy when the front passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the front passenger's seat. For details, refer to the front passenger occupant classification system (page 2-79).



▼ Curtain Air Bags

The curtain air bags are mounted in the front and rear window pillars, and the roof edge along both sides.

When the air bag crash sensors detect a side impact of greater than moderate force, the curtain air bag inflates quickly and helps to reduce injury mainly to the rear outboard passenger's head caused by directly hitting interior parts such as a door or window. For more details about air bag deployment, refer to "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria" (page 2-76).

Only one side curtain air bag will deploy on the side of the vehicle that receives the force of an impact.



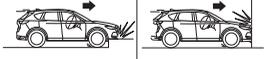
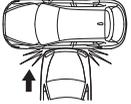
▼ Warning Light/Beep

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Refer to Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26. Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-42.

SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria

This chart indicates the applicable SRS equipment that will deploy depending on the type of collision.

(The illustrations are the representative cases of collisions.)

	Types of collision		
	A severe frontal/near frontal collision	A severe side collision	A rear collision
SRS equipment			
Front seat belt pretensioner	X*1	X*1	No air bag and seat belt pretensioner will be activated in a rear collision.
Second-row outboard seat belt pretensioner	X		
Driver air bag	X		
Front passenger air bag	X*1		
Side air bag		X*1 (impact side only)	
Curtain air bag		X (impact side only)	

X : The SRS air bag equipment is designed to deploy in a collision.

*1 The front passenger front and side air bags and the seat belt pretensioner are designed to deploy when the front passenger occupant classification sensor detects a passenger sitting on the front passenger's seat.

NOTE

In a frontal offset collision, the equipped air bags and pretensioners may all deploy depending on the direction, angle, and rate of impact.

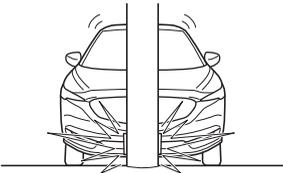
Limitations to SRS Air Bag

In severe collisions such as those described previously in "SRS Air Bag Deployment Criteria", the applicable SRS air bag equipment will deploy. However, in some accidents, the equipment may not deploy depending on the type of collision and its severity.

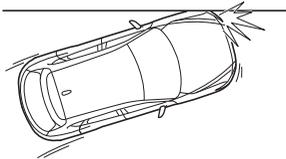
Limitations to front/near front collision detection:

The following illustrations are examples of front/near front collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

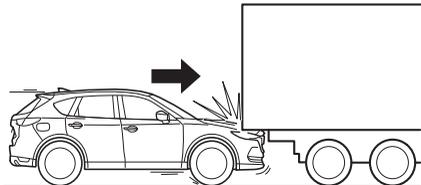
Impacts involving trees or poles



Frontal offset impact to the vehicle



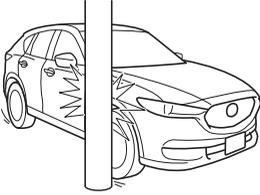
Rear-ending or running under a truck's tail gate



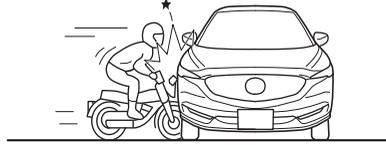
Limitations to side collision detection:

The following illustrations are examples of side collisions that may not be detected as severe enough to deploy the SRS air bag equipment.

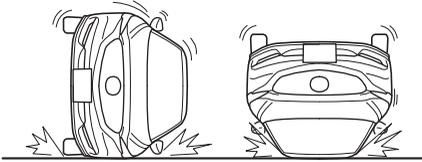
Side impacts involving trees or poles



Side impacts with two-wheeled vehicles



Roll-over



Front Passenger Occupant Classification System

First, please read "Supplementary Restraint System (SRS) Precautions" (page 2-66) carefully.

▼ Front Passenger Occupant Classification Sensor

Your vehicle is equipped with a front passenger occupant classification sensor as a part of the supplementary restraint system. This sensor is equipped in the front passenger's seat cushion. This sensor measures the electrostatic capacity of the front passenger's seat. The SAS unit is designed to prevent the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system from deploying if the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on.

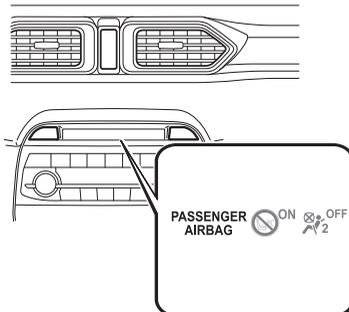
To reduce the chance of injuries caused by deployment of the front passenger air bag, the system deactivates the front passenger front and side air bags and also the seat belt pretensioner system when the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on. Refer to the following table for the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light illumination conditions.

This system shuts off the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system, so make sure the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light turns on according to the following table.

The air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light flashes and the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light illuminates if the sensors have a possible malfunction. If this happens, the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy.

Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator lights

These indicator lights turn on to remind you that the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner will or will not deploy during a collision.



SRS Air Bags

If the front passenger occupant classification sensor is normal, both indicator lights turn on when the ignition is switched ON. The lights turn off after a few seconds. Then, the indicator lights turn on or off under the following conditions:

Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart

Condition detected by the front passenger occupant classification system	Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light	Front passenger front and side air bags	Front passenger seat belt pretensioner system
Empty (Not occupied)	 OFF	Deactivated	Deactivated
A child is seated in a child-restraint system* ¹	 OFF	Deactivated	Deactivated
Adult* ²	 ON Turns off after a short period of time.	Ready	Ready

*1 The occupant classification sensor may not detect a child seated on the seat, in a child-restraint system, or a junior seat depending on the child's physical size and seated posture.

*2 If a smaller adult sits on the front passenger seat, the sensors might detect the person as being a child depending on the person's physique.

The curtain air bag is ready for inflating regardless of what the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart indicates.

If both of the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator lights do not turn on for a specified period of time when the ignition is switched ON or they do not turn on as indicated in the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart, do not allow an occupant to sit in the front passenger seat and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. The system may not work properly in an accident.

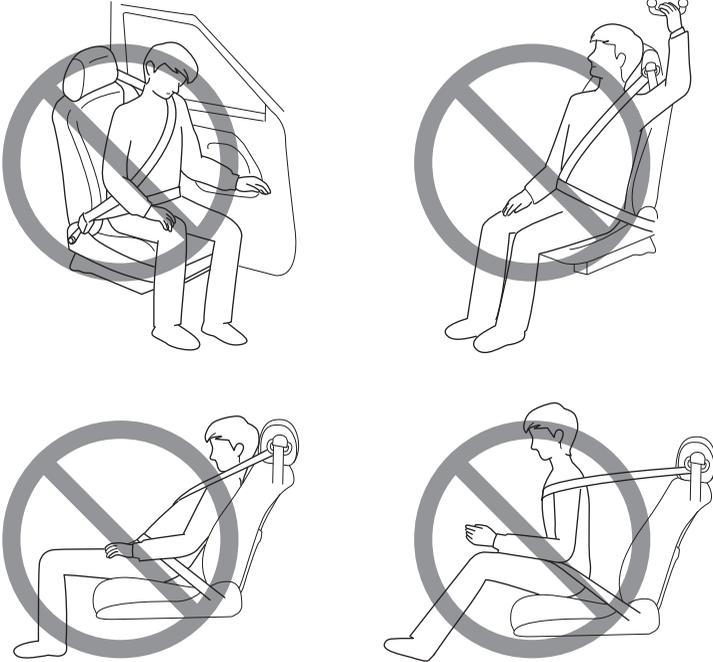


Do not allow an occupant in the front passenger's seat to sit with a posture which makes it difficult for the front passenger occupant classification sensor to detect the occupant correctly:

Sitting in the front passenger's seat with a posture which makes it difficult for the front passenger occupant classification sensor to detect the occupant correctly is dangerous. If the front passenger occupant classification sensor cannot detect the occupant sitting on the front passenger's seat correctly, the front passenger front and side air bags and pretensioner system may not operate (non-deploy) or they may operate (deploy) accidentally. The front passenger will not have the supplementary protection of the air bags or the accidental operation (deployment) of the air bags could result in serious injury or death.

Under the following conditions, the front passenger occupant classification sensor cannot detect a passenger sitting on the front passenger's seat correctly and the deployment/non-deployment of the air bags cannot be controlled as indicated in the front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light on/off condition chart. For example:

➤ A front passenger is seated as shown in the following figure:



- A second-row passenger pushes up on the front passenger seat with their feet.
- Luggage or other items placed under the front passenger seat or between the front passenger seat and driver seat that push up the front passenger seat bottom.
- An object, such as a seat cushion, is put on the front passenger's seat or between the passenger's back and the seatback.
- A seat cover is put on the front passenger's seat.
- Luggage or other items are placed on the seat with the child in the child-restraint system.
- A second-row passenger or luggage push or pull down on the front passenger seatback.
- Luggage or other items are placed on the seatback or hung on the head restraint.
- The seat is washed.
- Liquids are spilled on the seat.
- The front passenger seat is moved backward, pushing into luggage or other items placed behind it.
- The front passenger seatback contacts the second-row seat.

SRS Air Bags

- *Luggage or other items are placed between the front passenger seat and driver seat.*
- *An electric device is put on the front passenger's seat.*
- *An additional electrical device, such as a seat warmer is installed to the surface of the front passenger seat.*

The front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner systems will deactivate if the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on.

CAUTION

- *To assure proper deployment of the front air bag and to prevent damage to the sensor in the front seat cushion:*
 - *Do not place sharp objects on the front seat cushion or leave heavy luggage on them.*
 - *Do not spill any liquids on the front seats or under the front seats.*
- *To allow the sensors to function properly, always perform the following:*
 - *Adjust the front seats as far back as possible and always sit upright against the seatbacks with seat belts worn properly.*
 - *If you place your child on the passenger seat, secure the child-restraint system properly and slide the passenger seat as far back as possible within the position in which the child-restraint system can be installed.*

NOTE

- *The system requires about 10 seconds to alternate between turning the front passenger front and side air bags and seat belt pretensioner system on or off.*
- *The front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light may turn on repeatedly if luggage or other items are put on the front passenger seat, or if the temperature of the vehicle's interior changes suddenly.*
- *The front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light may turn on for 10 seconds if the electrostatic capacity on the front passenger seat changes.*
- *The air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning light might turn on if the front passenger seat receives a severe impact.*
- *If the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light does not turn on after installing a child-restraint system on the front passenger seat, first, re-install your child-restraint system according to the procedure in this owner's manual. Then, if the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light still does not turn on, install the child-restraint system on the rear seat and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*

- *If the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light turns on when an occupant is seated directly in the front passenger seat, have the passenger re-adjust their posture by sitting with their feet on the floor, and then re-fastening the seat belt. If the front passenger air bag deactivation OFF indicator light remains turned on, move the passenger to the rear seat. If sitting in the rear seat is not possible, slide the front passenger seat as far back as possible. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*

Constant Monitoring

The following components of the air bag systems and the active bonnet are monitored by a diagnostic system:

- Front air bag sensors
- Crash sensors, and diagnostic module (SAS unit)
- Side crash sensors
- Air bag modules
- Seat belt pretensioners
- Air bag/Seat belt pretensioner system warning light
- Related wiring

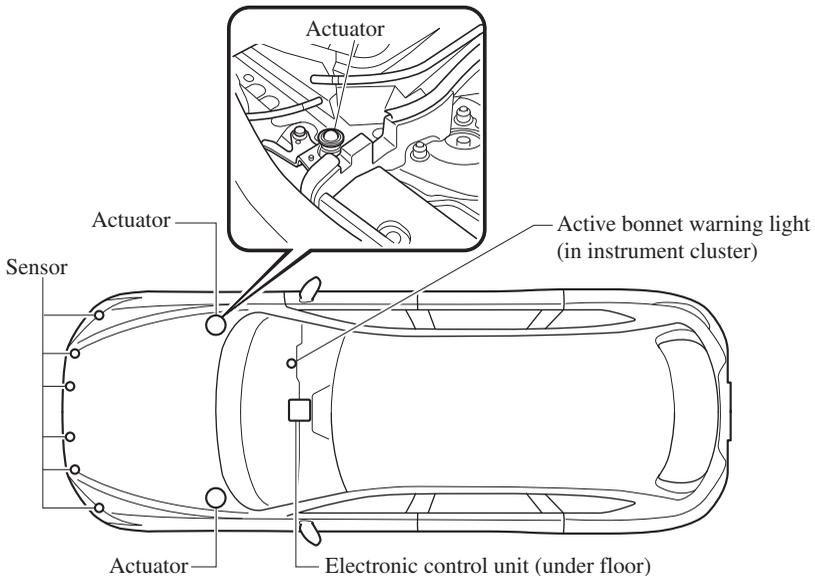
- Driver seat slide position sensor
- Front passenger occupant classification sensor
- Front passenger occupant classification module
- Front passenger air bag deactivation indicator light

- Active bonnet sensors
- Active bonnet actuator
- Active bonnet warning light

The diagnostic module continuously monitors the system's readiness. This begins when the ignition is switched ON and continues while the vehicle is being driven.

Active Bonnet precautions

In the unlikely event that the vehicle were to hit a pedestrian and a certain amount of impact is applied to the front of the vehicle, impact to the head of the pedestrian if it were to hit the bonnet is lessened by the rear area of the bonnet raising instantly to maintain a wide space between it and the parts in the engine compartment. If the sensor installed to the back of the front bumper detects a certain amount of impact by a collision with a pedestrian or other obstruction while the vehicle is being driven at a speed sufficient to activate the system, the system is activated and the bonnet is raised.



⚠ WARNING

If the active bonnet has activated, always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

If the bonnet release handle is pulled after the active bonnet has activated, the bonnet will rise even further. If the vehicle is driven with the bonnet raised it will obstruct visibility and could result in an accident. In addition, do not attempt to push the bonnet back down. Otherwise, it could deform the bonnet or cause injury because the activated bonnet cannot be lowered manually. Before driving the vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) after the active bonnet has activated, make sure that the raised bonnet does not obstruct vision and drive the vehicle at a low speed.

Active Bonnet



Do not touch the actuator directly after the active bonnet has activated. Otherwise, it could result in a burn as the actuator is hot directly after the activation.

▼ Operation and Handling

- Always make sure that the bonnet is closed completely before driving. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- The system may not operate for about 8 seconds after the ignition is switched ON.
- Use tyres of the same specified size and appropriate pressure, without abnormal wear on all 4 wheels. If tyres with abnormal wear, different sizes, or inappropriate pressure are used, the system may not operate normally.
- If something hits the area around the front bumper, the sensor could be damaged even if the active bonnet does not activate. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.
- Do not remove or repair parts or wiring for the active bonnet. In addition, do not test the system's circuitry using an electric tester. Otherwise, the active bonnet may activate mistakenly or not operate normally. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for when repairs or replacement servicing is required.
- Do not replace the front bumper, bonnet, suspension, or aero parts with non-genuine Mazda parts. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not install non-genuine Mazda accessories to the front bumper. In addition, do not install objects on the bonnet. Otherwise, the system may not operate normally.
- Do not close the bonnet excessively or apply a load to the actuator. Otherwise, the actuator could be damaged and cause the system to not operate normally.
- Do not modify the suspension. If the vehicle height or the damping force of the suspensions is changed, the system may not operate normally.
- When equipping parts, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If parts are installed incorrectly, the active bonnet may not activate normally due to the inability to detect an impact.
- When disposing of the vehicle, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If the vehicle is not handled correctly, it could result in injury.
- The active bonnet cannot be reused if it has been activated. Have the system replaced at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

How the Active Bonnet Works

▼ If the Active Bonnet Activates, Does Not Activate

If the active bonnet activates

The active bonnet activates under the following conditions:

- If the front of the vehicle hits a pedestrian or obstruction while the vehicle is being driven at a speed sufficient to activate the system, the system will activate if a certain amount of impact is applied in a collision even though no trace may remain on the front bumper. In addition, it may activate depending on the level of impact from even a light object, small animal, or other small object.
- The system may also activate if the lower part of the vehicle or the front bumper receives an impact from one of the following situations:
 - The vehicle hits a curb.
 - The vehicle falls into a deep ditch or hole.
 - The vehicle bounces and hits the ground.
 - The front, bottom part of the vehicle contacts the slope of a parking garage, the surface of an even, undulating road, or a protruding or fallen object on the road.

Situations in which the active bonnet may not activate

The active bonnet may not activate in the following situations as an impact would be difficult to detect.

- The pedestrian gets hit at an angle or by the side areas on the left and right of the front bumper.
- The vehicle hits a pedestrian who is carrying something such as a bag which can absorb the impact.

Situations in which the system does not activate

The active bonnet does not activate under the following conditions:

- The front bumper gets hit while the vehicle is being driven at a speed insufficient to activate the system.
- The vehicle gets hit from the side or the rear.
- The vehicle rolls or turns over (the active bonnet may operate depending on the accident conditions).

MEMO

3

Before Driving

Use of various features, including keys, doors, mirrors and windows.

Keys.....	3-2	Sunroof*	3-36
Keys.....	3-2	Security System.....	3-39
Keyless Entry System.....	3-4	Modification and Add-On	
Advanced Keyless Entry		Equipment.....	3-39
System.....	3-8	Immobilizer System.....	3-39
Advanced Keyless Entry System*	3-8	Driving Tips.....	3-42
Operational Range.....	3-9	Running-In Period.....	3-42
Doors and Locks.....	3-10	Saving Fuel and Protection of the	
Door Locks.....	3-10	Environment.....	3-42
Liftgate.....	3-14	Hazardous Driving.....	3-43
Fuel and Emission.....	3-24	Floor Mat.....	3-44
Fuel and Engine Exhaust		Rocking the Vehicle.....	3-45
Precautions.....	3-24	Winter Driving.....	3-45
Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap.....	3-28	Driving In Flooded Area.....	3-47
Mirrors.....	3-30	Turbocharger Information	
Mirrors.....	3-30	(SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	3-48
Windows.....	3-33	Towing.....	3-49
Power Windows.....	3-33	Towing Caravans and	
		Trailers.....	3-49

Keys

Keys

WARNING

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed. Children may find these keys to be an interesting toy to play with and could cause the power windows or other controls to operate, or even make the vehicle move.

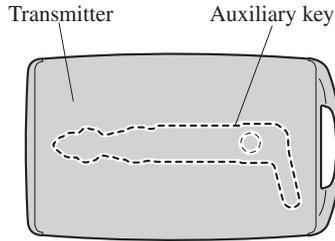
CAUTION

- Because the key (transmitter) uses low-intensity radio waves, it may not function correctly under the following conditions:
 - The key is carried with communication devices such as cellular phones.
 - The key contacts or is covered by a metal object.
 - The key is near electronic devices such as personal computers.
 - Non-Mazda genuine electronic equipment is installed in the vehicle.
 - There is equipment which discharges radio waves near the vehicle.
- The key (transmitter) may consume battery power excessively if it receives high-intensity radio waves. Do not place the key near electronic devices such as televisions or personal computers.
- To avoid damage to the key (transmitter), DO NOT:

- Drop the key.
- Get the key wet.
- Disassemble the key.
- Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.
- Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.
- Place heavy objects on the key.
- Put the key in an ultrasonic cleaner.
- Put any magnetized objects close to the key.

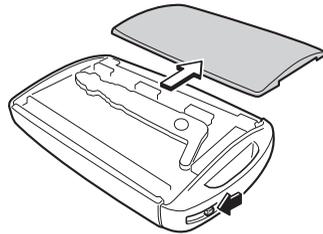
NOTE

The driver must carry the key to ensure the system functions properly.

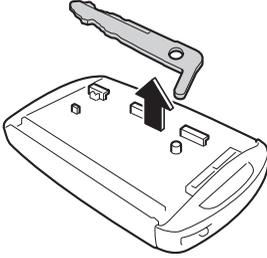


Removing the auxiliary key

1. Remove the lower cover while sliding the knob in the direction of the arrow.

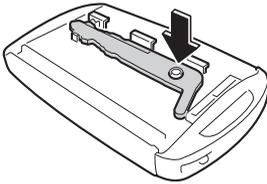


2. Remove the auxiliary key.

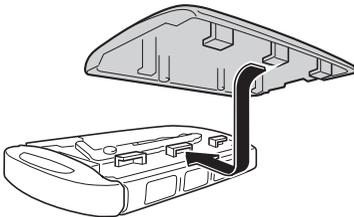


Installing the auxiliary key

1. Install the auxiliary key as the illustration.



2. Insert the tabs of the lower cover into the slots of the transmitter and install the lower cover.

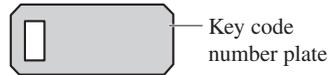


Key code number plate

A code number is stamped on the plate attached to the key set; detach this plate and store it in a safe place (not in the vehicle) for use if you need to make a replacement key (auxiliary key).

Also write down the code number and keep it in a separate safe and convenient place, but not in the vehicle.

If your key (auxiliary key) is lost, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), and have your code number ready.



Keys

Keyless Entry System

This system uses the key buttons to remotely lock and unlock the doors and the liftgate, and opens/closes the liftgate. The system can start the engine without having to take the key out of your purse or pocket.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning indications or beeps.

Check the displayed message for more information and, if necessary, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), according to the indication.

- KEY Warning Indication
Refer to Contact expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.
Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.
- Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep
Refer to Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep on page 7-43.
- Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep
Refer to Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep on page 7-43.

If you have a problem with the key, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

If your key is lost or stolen, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible for a replacement and to make the lost or stolen key inoperative.

CAUTION

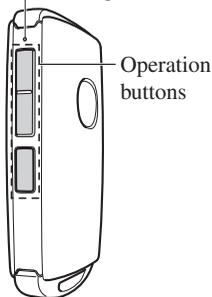
Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

NOTE

- *The keyless entry system operation may vary due to local conditions.*
- *The keyless entry system is fully operational (door/liftgate lock/unlock) when the ignition is switched off. The system does not operate if the ignition is switched to any position other than off.*
- *If the key does not operate when pressing a button or the operational range becomes too small, the battery may be weak. To install a new battery, refer to Key Battery Replacement (page 6-27).*
- *Battery life is about 1 year. Replace the battery with a new one if the messages are displayed in the instrument cluster. Replacing the battery about once a year is recommended because the KEY warning indication may not illuminate or flash depending on the rate of battery depletion.*
- *Additional keys can be obtained at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Up to 6 keys can be used with the keyless functions per vehicle. Bring all keys to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) when additional keys are required.*

▼ Transmitter

Operation indicator light



NOTE

- The headlights turn on/off by operating the transmitter. Refer to Leaving Home Light on page 4-70.
- **(With the advanced keyless function)**
A beep sound can be heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate are locked/unlocked using the key. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
The volume of the beep sound can also be changed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

The operation indicator light flashes when the buttons are pressed.

Lock button

To lock the doors and the liftgate, press the lock button and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

(With the advanced keyless function)

A beep sound will be heard once.



NOTE

- The doors and the liftgate cannot be locked by pressing the lock button while any other door or the liftgate is open. The hazard warning lights will also not flash.
- Make sure all doors and the liftgate are locked after pressing the button.

Unlock button

To unlock the doors and the liftgate, press the unlock button and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

(With the advanced keyless function)

A beep sound will be heard twice.



NOTE

- **(Auto re-lock function)**
After unlocking with the key, all doors and the liftgate will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds.
The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- A door or the liftgate is opened.
- The ignition is switched to any position other than off.

Keys

Power liftgate button*

To open/close the liftgate, press the power liftgate button for one second or longer with the liftgate in the fully closed/open position.

The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes after the beep sounds.



Power saving function

By turning on the transmitter power saving function, the advanced keyless entry*¹ and push button start system functions turn off and the battery power consumption of the transmitter is restricted.

The remote control function is operational by operating the transmitter switch even while the power saving function is turned on. However, the operation indicator light of the transmitter does not turn on/flash.

Turning on the power saving function

After you have turned on the power saving function according to the following procedure, the hazard warning lights and sound operate*¹ one time.

1. Press the lock button on the transmitter 4 times within 3 seconds to turn on the operation indicator light.
2. Press the lock button continuously for 1.5 seconds or longer while the operation indicator light turns on (for 5 seconds).
3. Press any of the buttons on the transmitter to make sure that the operation indicator light does not turn on/flash.

Turning off the power saving function

After you have turned off the power saving function according to the following procedure, the hazard warning lights and sound operate*¹ one time.

1. Press any of the buttons on the transmitter to make sure that the operation indicator light does not turn on/flash.
2. Press the lock button on the transmitter 4 times within 3 seconds to turn on the operation indicator light.
3. Press the lock button continuously for 1.5 seconds or longer while the operation indicator light turns on (for 5 seconds).

*¹ With the advanced keyless function

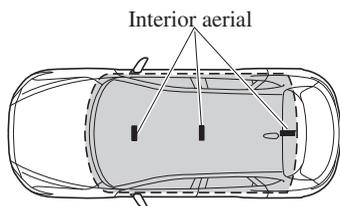
▼ Operational Range

The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

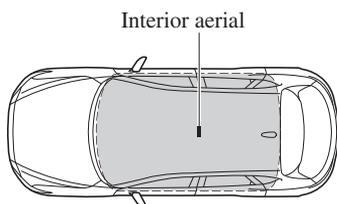
Starting the Engine

NOTE

- *Starting the engine may be possible even if the key is outside of the vehicle and extremely close to a door and window, however, always start the engine from the driver's seat.*
If the vehicle is started and the key is not in the vehicle, the vehicle will not restart after it is shut off and the ignition is switched to off.
- *The luggage compartment is out of the assured operational range, however, if the key (transmitter) is operable the engine will start.*

With the advanced keyless function

 Operational range

Without the advanced keyless function

 Operational range

NOTE

The engine may not start if the key is placed in the following areas:

- *Around the instrument panel*
- *In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console*

▼ Key Suspend Function

If a key is left in the vehicle, the functions of the key left in the vehicle are temporarily suspended to prevent theft of the vehicle.

To restore the functions, press the unlock button on the functions-suspended key in the vehicle.

Advanced Keyless Entry System

Advanced Keyless Entry System*

WARNING

Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:

Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

The advanced keyless function allows you to lock/unlock the door and the liftgate, or open the liftgate while carrying the key.

System malfunctions or warnings are indicated by the following warning beeps.

- Request switch Inoperable Warning Beep
Refer to Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-43.
- Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep
Refer to Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-44.
- Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep
Refer to Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function) on page 7-44.

NOTE

The advanced keyless entry system functions can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details. If the advanced keyless entry system has been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.

Advanced Keyless Entry System

Operational Range

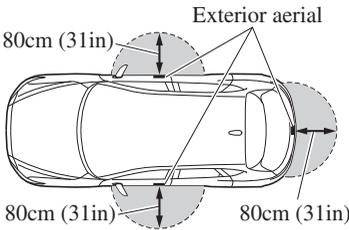
The system operates only when the driver is in the vehicle or within operational range while the key is being carried.

NOTE

When the battery power is low, or in places where there are high-intensity radio waves or noise, the operational range may become narrower or the system may not operate. For determining battery replacement, Refer to Keyless Entry System on page 3-4.

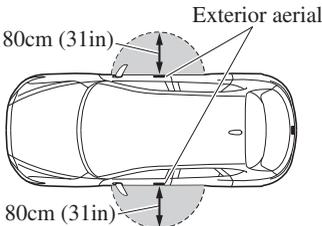
▼ Locking, Unlocking the Doors and the Liftgate

Lock



Operational range

Unlock

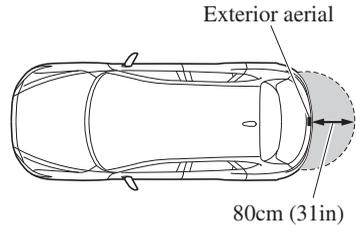


Operational range

NOTE

- The system may not operate if you are too close to the windows or door handles, or liftgate.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
 - Around the instrument panel
 - In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console
 - Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone

▼ Opening the Liftgate



Operational range

Doors and Locks

Door Locks

WARNING

Always take all children and pets with you or leave a responsible person with them:

Leaving a child or a pet unattended in a parked vehicle is dangerous. In hot weather, temperatures inside a vehicle can become high enough to cause brain damage or even death.

Do not leave the key in your vehicle with children and keep them in a place where your children will not find or play with them:

Leaving children in a vehicle with the key is dangerous. This could result in someone being badly injured or even killed.

Keep all doors locked when driving:

Unlocked doors in a moving vehicle are dangerous. Passengers can fall out if a door is accidentally opened and can more easily be thrown out in an accident.

Always close all the windows, lock the doors and the liftgate and take the key with you when leaving your vehicle unattended:

Leaving your vehicle unlocked is dangerous as children could lock themselves in a hot vehicle, which could result in death. Also, a vehicle left unlocked becomes an easy target for thieves and intruders.

After closing the doors and the liftgate, always verify that they are securely closed:

Doors and the liftgate not securely closed are dangerous, if the vehicle is driven with a door and the liftgate not securely closed, the door and the liftgate could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before opening a door and the liftgate:

Suddenly opening a door and the liftgate is dangerous. A passing vehicle or a pedestrian could be hit and cause an accident.

CAUTION

➤ Always confirm the conditions around the vehicle before opening/closing the doors and the liftgate and use caution during strong winds or when parked on an incline. Not being aware of the conditions around the vehicle is dangerous because fingers could get caught in the door and the liftgate or a passing pedestrian could be hit, resulting in an unexpected accident or injury.

NOTE

- Always stop the engine and lock the doors. In addition, to prevent theft of valuables, do not leave them inside the cabin.
- If the key is left in the following areas and you leave the vehicle, the doors may be locked depending on the radio wave conditions even if the key is left in the vehicle.
 - Around the instrument panel

- In the storage compartments such as the glove compartment or the centre console
- Next to a communication device such as a mobile phone
- The vehicle lock-out prevention feature prevents you from locking yourself out of the vehicle.

All doors and the liftgate will automatically unlock if they are locked using the power door locks with any door or the liftgate open.

- **(Door unlock (control) system with collision detection)**

This system automatically unlocks the doors and the liftgate in the event the vehicle is involved in an accident to allow passengers to get out of the vehicle immediately and prevent being trapped inside. While the ignition is switched ON and in the event the vehicle receives an impact strong enough to inflate the air bags, all the doors and the liftgate are automatically unlocked after about 6 seconds have elapsed from the time of the accident.

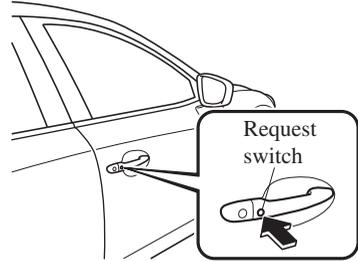
The doors and the liftgate may not unlock depending on how an impact is applied, the force of the impact, and other conditions of the accident.

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Request Switch (With the advanced keyless function)

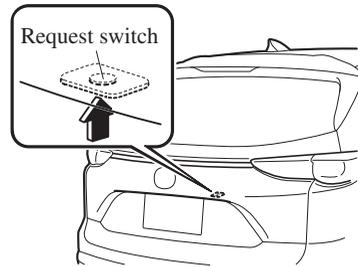
All doors and the liftgate can be locked/unlocked by pressing the request switch on the front doors while the key is being carried.

The request switch on the liftgate can only be used to lock all doors and the liftgate.

Front doors



Liftgate (Lock only)



To lock

To lock the doors and the liftgate, press the request switch and the hazard warning lights will flash once.

A beep sound will be heard once.

To unlock

To unlock the doors and the liftgate, press the request switch on a front door and the hazard warning lights will flash twice.

A beep sound will be heard twice.

NOTE

- Confirm that all doors and the liftgate are securely locked.
For the liftgate, move it without pressing the electric liftgate opener to verify that the liftgate has not been left ajar.
- All doors and the liftgate cannot be locked when any door or the liftgate is open.

Doors and Locks

- It may require a few seconds for the doors to unlock after the request switch is pressed.
- A beep sound is heard for confirmation when the doors and the liftgate are locked/unlocked using the request switch. If you prefer, the beep sound can be turned off.
The volume of the beep sound can also be changed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- The setting can be changed so that the doors and the liftgate are locked automatically without pressing the request switch.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
(Walk-away auto lock function)
A beep sound is heard when all doors and the liftgate are closed while the advanced key is being carried. All doors and the liftgate are locked automatically after about 3 seconds when the advanced key is out of the operational range. Also, the hazard warning lights flash once. (Even if the driver is in the operational range, all doors and the liftgate are locked automatically after about 30 seconds.) If you are out of the operational range before the doors and the liftgate are completely closed or another key is left in the vehicle, the walk-away auto lock function will not work. Always make sure that all doors and the liftgate are closed and locked before leaving the vehicle. The walk-away auto lock function does not close the power windows.
- **(Auto re-lock function)**

After unlocking with the request switch, all doors and the liftgate will automatically lock if any of the following operations are not performed within about 30 seconds.

The time required for the doors to lock automatically can be changed.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

- Opening a door or the liftgate.
- Switching the ignition to any position other than off.

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Transmitter

All doors and the liftgate can be locked/unlocked by operating the keyless entry system transmitter, refer to Keyless Entry System (page 3-4).

▼ Auto Lock/Unlock Function



Do not pull the inner handle on a front door:

Pulling the inner handle on a front door while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Passengers can fall out of the vehicle if the door opens accidentally, which could result in death or serious injury.

- When the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), all the doors and liftgate lock automatically.
- When the ignition is switched off, all the doors and liftgate unlock automatically.

Doors and Locks

NOTE

If the doors and liftgate are unlocked by the auto lock/unlock function, it does not operate again until the doors or the liftgate are opened/closed, or the ignition is switched OFF.

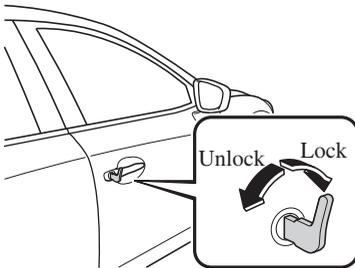
The lock/unlock timing and the setting to make this function inoperable can be changed.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Locking, Unlocking with Auxiliary Key

All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the driver's door is locked using the auxiliary key. They all unlock when the driver's door is unlocked using the auxiliary key.

Turn the auxiliary key toward the front to lock, toward the back to unlock.

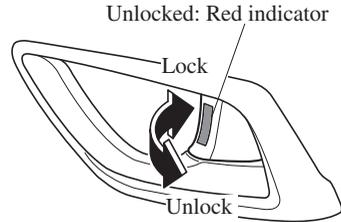


▼ Locking, Unlocking with Door-Lock Knob

Operation from inside

All doors and the liftgate lock automatically when the driver's door-lock

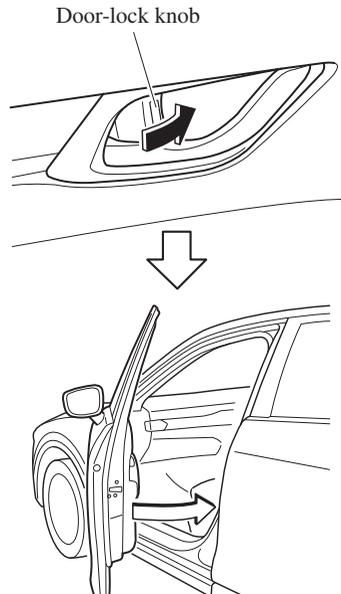
knob is pushed. They all unlock when the driver's door-lock knob is pulled out.



Operation from outside

To lock the rear and front passenger doors with the door-lock knob from the outside, push the door-lock knob to the lock position and close the door (holding the door handle in the open position is not required).

This does not operate the other door locks.



Doors and Locks

NOTE

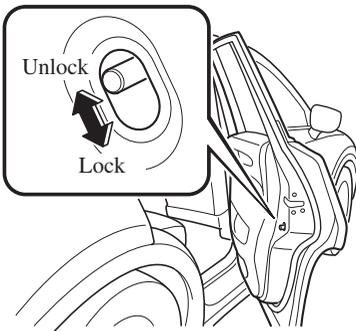
When locking the door this way:

- Be careful not to leave the key inside the vehicle.
- The driver's door lock knob cannot be used while the driver's door is open.

▼ Rear Door Child Safety Locks

These locks are intended to help prevent children from accidentally opening the rear doors. Use them on both rear doors whenever a child rides in the rear seat of the vehicle.

If you slide the child safety lock to the lock position before closing that door, the door cannot be opened from the inside. The door can only be opened by pulling the outside handle.



Liftgate

! WARNING

Never allow a person to ride in the luggage compartment:

Allowing a person to ride in the luggage compartment is dangerous. The person in the luggage compartment could be seriously injured or killed during sudden braking or a collision.

Do not drive with the liftgate open:

Exhaust gas in the cabin of a vehicle is dangerous. An open liftgate in a moving vehicle will cause exhaust gas to be drawn into the cabin. This gas contains CO (carbon monoxide), which is colourless, odourless, and highly poisonous, and it can cause loss of consciousness and death. Moreover, an open liftgate could cause occupants to fall out in an accident.

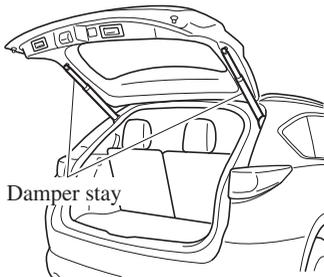
Do not stack or leave loaded luggage unsecured in the luggage compartment:

Otherwise, the luggage may move or collapse, resulting in injury or an accident. In addition, do not load luggage higher than the seatbacks. It may affect the side or rear field of view.

! CAUTION

- Before opening the liftgate, remove any snow and ice accumulation on it. Otherwise, the liftgate could close under the weight of the snow and ice resulting in injury.

- Be careful when opening/closing the liftgate during strong winds. If a strong gust blows against the liftgate, it could close suddenly resulting in injury.
- Fully open the liftgate and make sure that it stays open. If the liftgate is only opened partially, it could slam shut by vibration or wind gusts resulting in injury.
- When loading or unloading luggage in the luggage compartment, turn off the engine. Otherwise, you could get burned by the heat of the exhaust gas.
- Be careful not to apply excessive force to the damper stay on the liftgate such as by putting your hand on the stay. Otherwise, the damper stay may bend and affect the liftgate operation.



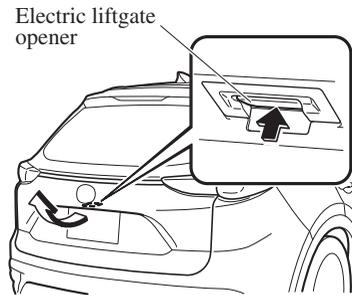
- Do not modify or replace the liftgate damper stay. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if a liftgate damper stay is deformed or damaged for reasons such as a collision or if there is some other problem.

▼ Opening and Closing the Liftgate

Opening the liftgate with Electric liftgate opener

Unlock the doors and liftgate, then press the electric liftgate opener on the liftgate and raise the liftgate when the latch releases.

For the power liftgate operation, refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-16.



NOTE

(With the advanced keyless function)

- A locked liftgate can also be opened while the key is being carried.
- When opening the liftgate with the doors and the liftgate locked, it may require a few seconds for the liftgate latch to release after the electric liftgate opener is pressed.
- The liftgate can be closed when the doors are locked with the key left in the vehicle. However, to prevent locking the key in the vehicle, the liftgate can be opened by pressing the electric liftgate opener. If the liftgate cannot be opened despite doing this procedure, first push the liftgate completely closed, then press the electric liftgate opener to fully open the liftgate.

Doors and Locks

- *When the liftgate latch is released by pressing the electric liftgate opener, the liftgate raises slightly. If the liftgate is not operated for a certain period of time, the liftgate cannot be raised.*

To open

Press the electric liftgate opener again.

To close

To close the liftgate from its slightly raised position, open it first by pressing the electric liftgate opener, then close it after waiting at least 1 second.

- *If the liftgate is not fully closed, the driver is notified by a warning indicated in the instrument cluster.*
- *If the vehicle lead-acid battery is dead or there is a malfunction in the electrical system and the liftgate cannot be unlocked, the liftgate can be opened by performing the emergency procedure. Refer to *When Liftgate Cannot be Opened* on page 7-48.*

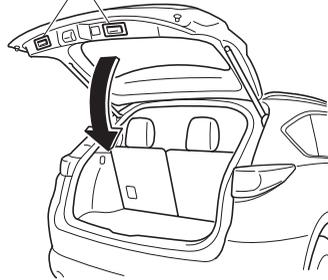
Closing the liftgate

Lower the liftgate slowly using the liftgate grip recess, then push the liftgate closed using both hands.

Do not slam it. Pull up on the liftgate to make sure it is secure.

For the power liftgate operation, refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-16.

Liftgate grip recess



NOTE

Confirm that the liftgate is securely closed. The liftgate, move it without pressing the electric liftgate opener to verify that the liftgate has not been left ajar.

▼ Power Liftgate*

The power liftgate opens/closes electrically by operating the switches in the vehicle or the buttons on the keyless entry system transmitter.



Be sure to watch the power liftgate as it opens or closes, and make sure that it closes completely:

Opening or closing the power liftgate while not watching it move is dangerous.

Because of unseen obstacles and the jam-safe feature, a liftgate may not close completely and, if left unnoticed, could result in serious injury or death if an occupant were to fall out of the vehicle. Always be sure that the area around the liftgate is clear before activating it.

Always confirm the safety of the area around the power liftgate before operating it electrically.

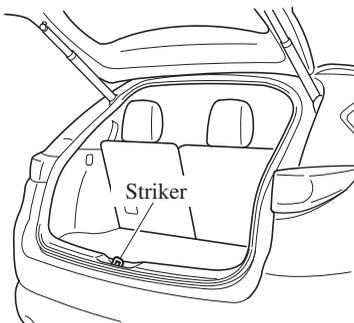
Not checking the area around the liftgate for people before operating it using the power liftgate switch or the button on the keyless entry system is dangerous. A person could become caught between the liftgate and an obstruction while it is opening electrically or between the liftgate and vehicle while it is closing electrically, resulting in an accident and serious injury.

Never allow children to operate the power liftgate system:

Allowing children to operate the power liftgate switch and the keyless entry system is dangerous. Children are not aware of the dangers of people getting fingers and hands caught in a moving liftgate. If someone's neck, head or hands get caught in a closing door, it could result in death or serious injury.



- When closing the power liftgate, make sure there are no foreign objects around the striker. If foreign objects are obstructing the striker, the liftgate may not close properly.



- Do not install accessories to the power liftgate other than specified accessories. Otherwise, it cannot be opened/closed automatically and could result in a malfunction.
- Be careful when switching the power liftgate from electrical to manual operation. The power liftgate may open/close unexpectedly depending on its position which could result in injury.

NOTE

- Do not apply unnecessary force to the power liftgate when it is opening/closing electrically. Unnecessary force on the liftgate may cause it to reverse direction of movement automatically. Also, it could result in a malfunction.
- The power liftgate may not open/close electrically if the vehicle is parked on an incline, or there is strong wind, or the liftgate is laden with snow.
- If a power liftgate system fuse has blown, the liftgate cannot be opened using the power liftgate switch or the electric liftgate opener. Use the emergency lever to open the liftgate.
- Fully close the power liftgate before disconnecting the vehicle lead-acid battery. If the lead-acid battery is disconnected with the liftgate open, it cannot be opened or closed automatically after the lead-acid battery is reconnected. If this happens, fully close the liftgate manually to restore the auto full open/close function.
- If the liftgate is snow-laden, remove the snow before operating the power liftgate. Operating the power liftgate with excessive force applied to the liftgate may damage the liftgate.

Doors and Locks

Operation using the transmitter

Press the power liftgate button for one second or longer. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes after the beep sounds.

Refer to Transmitter on page 3-5.

NOTE

- When the ignition is switched ON, the transmitter does not operate.
- When opening the liftgate by pressing the power liftgate button on the transmitter, the liftgate can be opened even when it is locked.
- If the power liftgate button on the transmitter is pressed while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the beep is activated and the liftgate stops. When pressing the power liftgate button again, the liftgate moves in the reverse direction.

Operation using each switch

Operation conditions

Opening the liftgate

If the vehicle has satisfied all the following operation conditions, the power liftgate can be opened using the power function.

- All doors and the liftgate are unlocked.
- The ignition is switched OFF, or the selector lever is in P with the ignition switched ON.

Closing the liftgate

- The ignition is switched OFF, or the selector lever is in P with the ignition switched ON.

NOTE

- If the vehicle moves with the selector lever shifted to a position other than P while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the liftgate moves as follows:

While opening electrically

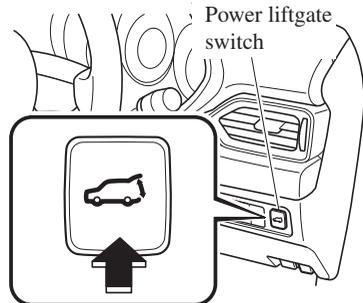
The buzzer is activated, and the liftgate moves in the reverse direction automatically and closes. When the selector lever is shifted to P, you can resume the power liftgate operation using the switches.

While closing electrically

The buzzer is activated, but the liftgate continues closing.

Operation from the driver's seat (To open/close)

Press the power liftgate switch for about one second or longer while the liftgate is in the fully closed/open position. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens/closes fully after the beep sound is heard.

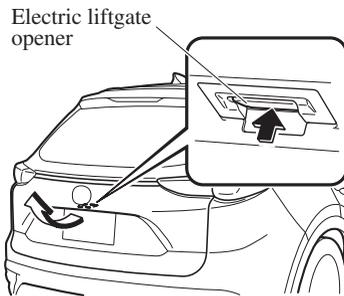


Operation from outside (To open)

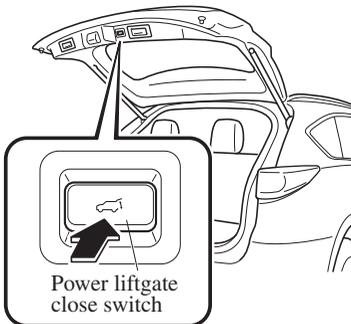
Press the electric liftgate opener on the liftgate and raise the liftgate. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate opens automatically after the beep sound is heard.

(With the advanced keyless function)

A locked liftgate can also be opened while the key is being carried.

**Operation from outside (To close)**

Press the power liftgate close switch while the liftgate is fully opened. The hazard warning lights flash twice and the liftgate closes automatically after the beep sound is heard.

**NOTE**

If the power liftgate switch/power liftgate close switch is pressed or the electric liftgate opener is operated while the liftgate is opening/closing electrically, the beep sound is heard and the liftgate stops. Then, it reverses when any of the switches are pressed again.

Hands-free liftgate*

When the hands-free liftgate sensor on the centre bottom of the rear bumper detects foot movement (kick-activated liftgate), the liftgate opens/closes automatically. The liftgate can be opened/closed even with both hands full, such as when carrying baggage.

Operation conditions

Do the kicking motion with your foot when all of the following conditions are met while the vehicle is stopped.

(When ignition is switched OFF)

- You are carrying the transmitter.
- The hands-free liftgate is on.

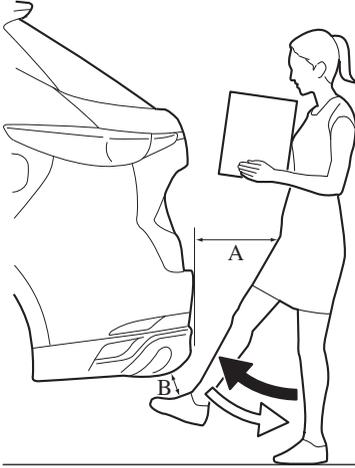
(When ignition is switched ON)

- You are carrying the transmitter.
- The hands-free liftgate is on.
- The selector lever is in the P position.

Doors and Locks

How to do the kicking motion

A: About 30—50 cm (12—19.7 in)
 B: About 10 cm (3.9 in)



1. Stand at the position about 30—50 cm (12—19.7 in) behind the centre of the rear bumper.
2. Move your foot to the position about 10 cm (3.9 in) from the centre bottom of the rear bumper.
3. Move your foot away from under the bumper within about 1 second after moving it under the bumper.

When the kicking motion is done correctly, the hazard warning lights flash 2 times, a beep sound is activated, and the liftgate opens/closes automatically. Be careful not to contact the liftgate.

If the kicking motion is done while the liftgate is opening/closing automatically, the liftgate will stop. If the kicking motion is done again, the liftgate moves in the direction opposite to the direction it was moving before it stopped.

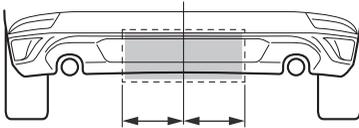
CAUTION

- Do not do the kicking motion while wearing footwear such as sandals, or with your bare foot. If your foot contacts the hot exhaust pipe, it could cause serious burns.
- Do not do the kicking motion while the area where you are standing is unstable such as a slope or icy road. Otherwise, you could fall down, resulting in injury.
- Do not paint the rear bumper or install any add-on equipment to it. Otherwise, the hands-free liftgate sensor may not operate normally.
- If you are carrying the transmitter around the liftgate or there is another person around the liftgate who is carrying a transmitter, do not allow the following to occur. Otherwise, the hands-free liftgate sensor will operate and the liftgate may open/close unexpectedly resulting in an accident.
 - A person not carrying a transmitter does the kicking motion.
 - While the liftgate is open, a person sitting on the edge of the luggage compartment swings his or her legs.
 - Installing/removing the body cover or removing snow around the rear bumper.
 - Picking up something which was dropped under the rear bumper.
 - Spraying water on the rear bumper using a high water pressure car washer.
 - Pushing a shopping cart close to the rear bumper.
 - A moving object such as an animal or a ball approaches the rear bumper.

To prevent an unintended operation, place the transmitter outside of its operation range or turn off the hands-free liftgate using the Mazda Connect.

NOTE

- The hands-free liftgate sensor detects in a range of about 30 cm (12 in) on both the left and right sides from the centre of the rear bumper.



- The hands-free liftgate sensor may not operate normally under the following conditions.
 - Your foot remains placed within the detection area.
 - You move your foot left and right within the detection area.
 - The kicking motion is too fast or too slow.
 - Your foot contacts the rear bumper when doing the kicking motion.
 - You are wearing shoes such as rubber boots which do not conduct electricity well.
 - There is equipment emitting strong radio waves near the vehicle.
 - The detection area of the hands-free liftgate sensor is dirty.

- When the detection area of the hands-free liftgate sensor is dirty, wipe it off with a clean cloth. Place the transmitter outside of its operation range or wipe off the area around the sensor with a clean cloth after turning off the hands-free liftgate using the Mazda Connect.
- If the operation using the hands-free liftgate sensor is not possible even though the operation conditions are met, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Hands-free liftgate ON/OFF switching

The hands-free liftgate can be switched on/off.

To prevent an unintended operation, turn off the function.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Changing the power liftgate fully open position

The power liftgate fully-open position can be changed according to the height of a garage.

When changing the position

1. Stop the liftgate at the desired position.
2. Press the power liftgate close switch for about three seconds.
 - A beep sound is activated two times to indicate that the position change has been completed.

NOTE

Set the desired fully-open position of the liftgate at the position where it is open more than halfway. The position where it is less than halfway open cannot be set.

Doors and Locks

To reset

1. Open the liftgate.
2. Press the power liftgate close switch for about seven seconds.
A beep sound is activated three times to indicate that the reset has been completed.

NOTE

After about 3 seconds have elapsed since the switch was pressed, a beep sound is activated 2 times to indicate that the liftgate fully-open position has changed. Continuously press the switch for about 7 seconds to complete the reset.

Jam-safe equipment

While the power liftgate is opening/closing electrically and the system detects a person or an object in the liftgate's path, the liftgate will move in the reverse direction automatically and stops.

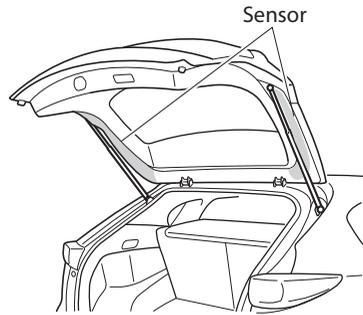
! WARNING

Always check the area around the power liftgate before opening/closing it:

Not checking for occupants and objects around the power liftgate before opening/closing it is dangerous. The jam-safe equipment is designed to prevent jamming in the event an obstruction is in the liftgate's path. The system may not detect certain objects obstructing the liftgate depending on the way they are positioned and their shape. However, if the jam-safe function detects an obstruction and moves the liftgate in the reverse direction, an occupant in the liftgate's path could be seriously injured.

! CAUTION

Sensors are installed on both ends of the power liftgate. Be careful not to allow the sensors to be scratched or damaged by sharp objects, otherwise the liftgate may no longer open/close automatically. In addition, if the sensor is damaged while the liftgate is closing automatically, the system will stop.



NOTE

The jam-safe equipment does not activate during easy closure operation when the power liftgate is between the near-shut position and fully closed position.

When the power liftgate is moving in the open/close direction and an obstruction is detected, the beep sound will be heard and the liftgate moves in the reverse direction and stops.

Liftgate easy closure

The Easy Closure system automatically closes the liftgate completely from the near-shut position.

This system also operates when the liftgate is closed manually.

 WARNING***When closing a liftgate, always keep hands and fingers away from the liftgate:***

Placing hands or fingers around a liftgate is dangerous because the liftgate closes automatically from the near-shut position, which could cause hands and fingers to be pinched and injured.

NOTE

- If the electric liftgate opener is pressed while the easy closure function is operating, the liftgate can be opened.*
- If the liftgate is opened/closed repeatedly in a short period of time, the easy closure function may not operate. Wait for about 2 seconds and then try again.*

Fuel and Emission

Fuel and Engine Exhaust Precautions

▼ Fuel Requirements (Australia (SKYACTIV-G 2.5))

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use **ONLY UNLEADED FUEL**, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

To achieve maximum engine performance, use the specified fuel.

Fuel	Research Octane Number
Regular unleaded fuel (Conforming to Fuel Quality Standards Act 2000)	90 or above

Fuel with a lower rating will negatively affect the emission control system performance and could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.



➤ **USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.**

Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.

➤ *This vehicle can only use oxygenated fuels containing no more than 10 % ethanol by volume. Damage to the vehicle may occur when ethanol exceeds this recommendation, or if the petrol contains any methanol. Stop using gasohol of any kind if your vehicle engine is performing poorly.*

➤ *Never add fuel system additives other than a Mazda genuine product, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

Petrol blended with oxygenates such as alcohol or ether compounds are generally referred to as oxygenated fuels. The common petrol blend that can be used with your vehicle is ethanol blended at no more than 10 %. Petrol containing alcohol, such as ethanol or methanol, may be marketed under the name “Gasohol”.

Vehicle damage and drivability problems resulting from the use of the following may not be covered by the Mazda warranty.

- Gasohol containing more than 10 % ethanol.
- Petrol or gasohol containing methanol.
- Leaded fuel or leaded gasohol.

▼ Fuel Requirements (Except Australia (SKYACTIV-G 2.5))

Vehicles with catalytic converters or oxygen sensors must use **ONLY UNLEADED FUEL**, which will reduce exhaust emissions and keep spark plug fouling to a minimum.

To achieve maximum engine performance, use the specified fuel.

Fuel	Research Octane Number
Regular unleaded fuel	90 or above

Fuel with a lower rating will negatively affect the emission control system performance and could also cause engine knocking and serious engine damage.

**➤ USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.**

Leaded fuel is harmful to the catalytic converter and oxygen sensors and will lead to deterioration of the emission control system and or failures.

➤ This vehicle can only use oxygenated fuels containing no more than 10 % ethanol by volume. Damage to the vehicle may occur when ethanol exceeds this recommendation, or if the petrol contains any methanol. Stop using gasohol of any kind if your vehicle engine is performing poorly.

➤ Never add fuel system additives other than a Mazda genuine product, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.

▼ Fuel Requirements (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

The vehicle will operate efficiently on diesel fuel with specification EN590 or the equivalent.



➤ Never use fuel other than specification EN590 or the equivalent for your vehicle. Use of petrol or paraffin in diesel engines will result in engine damage.

➤ Never add fuel system additives other than a Mazda genuine product, otherwise the emission control system could be damaged. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.

NOTE

When refuelling, always add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

Fuel and Emission

▼ Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.



Never park over or near anything flammable:

Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.



Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- USE ONLY UNLEADED FUEL.
- Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.
- Do not coast with the ignition switched off.
- Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.
- Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.
- Do not push-start or tow-start this vehicle.

▼ Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

This vehicle is equipped with an emission control system (the catalytic converter is part of this system) that enables the vehicle to comply with existing exhaust emissions requirements.



Never park over or near anything flammable:

Parking over or near anything flammable, such as dry grass, is dangerous. Even with the engine turned off, the exhaust system remains very hot after normal use and could ignite anything flammable. A resulting fire could cause serious injury or death.

⚠ CAUTION

Ignoring the following precautions could cause lead to accumulate on the catalyst inside the converter or cause the converter to get very hot. Either condition will damage the converter and cause poor performance.

- Do not drive your Mazda with any sign of engine malfunction.
- Do not coast with the ignition switched off.
- Do not descend steep grades in gear with the ignition switched off.
- Do not operate the engine at high idle for more than 2 minutes.
- Do not tamper with the emission control system. All inspections and adjustments must be made by a qualified technician.
- Do not push-start or pull-start this vehicle.

▼ Engine Exhaust (Carbon monoxide)**⚠ WARNING****Do not drive your vehicle if you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle:**

Engine exhaust gas is dangerous. This gas contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is colourless, odourless, and poisonous. When inhaled, it can cause loss of consciousness and death. If you smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, keep all windows fully open and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) immediately.

Do not run the engine when inside an enclosed area:

Running the engine inside an enclosed area, such as a garage, is dangerous. Exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could easily enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Open the windows or adjust the heating or cooling system to draw fresh air when idling the engine:

Exhaust gas is dangerous. When the vehicle is stopped with the windows closed and the engine running for a long time even in an open area, exhaust gas, which contains poisonous carbon monoxide, could enter the cabin. Loss of consciousness or even death could occur.

Clear snow from underneath and around your vehicle, particularly the tail pipe, before starting the engine:

Running the engine when a vehicle is stopped in deep snow is dangerous. The exhaust pipe could be blocked by the snow, allowing exhaust gas to enter the cabin. Because exhaust gas contains poisonous carbon monoxide, it could cause loss of consciousness or even death to occupants in the cabin.

Fuel and Emission

Fuel-Filler Flap and Cap

! WARNING

When removing the fuel-filler cap, loosen the cap slightly and wait for any hissing to stop, then remove it:

Fuel spray is dangerous. Fuel can burn skin and eyes and cause illness if ingested. Fuel spray is released when there is pressure in the fuel tank and the fuel-filler cap is removed too quickly.

Before refuelling, stop the engine, and always keep sparks and flames away from the filler neck:

Fuel vapour is dangerous. It could be ignited by sparks or flames causing serious burns and injuries.

Additionally, use of the incorrect fuel-filler cap or not using a fuel-filler cap may result in a fuel leak, which could result in serious burns or death in an accident.

Do not continue refuelling after the fuel pump nozzle shuts off automatically:

Continuing to add fuel after the fuel pump nozzle has shut off automatically is dangerous because overfilling the fuel tank may cause fuel overflow or leakage. Fuel overflow and leakage could damage the vehicle and if the fuel ignites it could cause a fire and explosion resulting in serious injury or death.

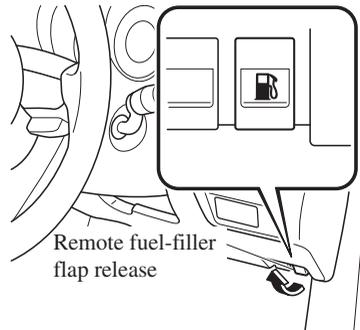
! CAUTION

Always use only a designated Mazda fuel-filler cap or an approved equivalent, available at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The wrong cap can result in a serious malfunction of the fuel and emission control systems.

▼ Refuelling

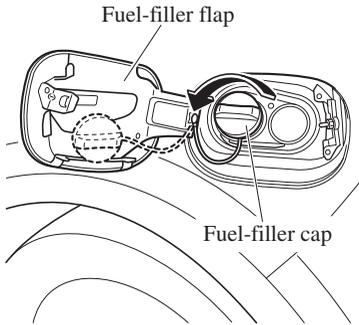
Before refuelling, close all the doors, windows, and the liftgate, and switch the ignition OFF.

1. To open the fuel-filler flap, pull the remote fuel-filler flap release.

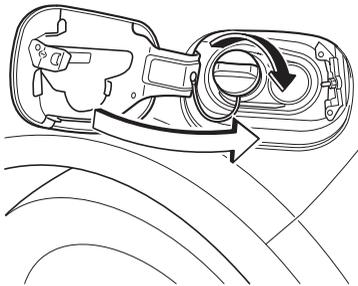


2. To remove the fuel-filler cap, turn it anticlockwise.

3. Attach the removed cap to the inner side of the fuel-filler flap.



4. Insert the refuelling nozzle all the way and begin refuelling. Pull out the refuelling nozzle after the refuelling stops automatically.
5. To close the fuel-filler cap, turn it clockwise until a click is heard.
6. To close, press the fuel-filler flap until it locks securely.



Mirrors

Before driving, adjust the inside and outside mirrors.

▼ Outside Mirrors

! WARNING

Be sure to look over your shoulder before changing lanes:

Changing lanes without taking into account the actual distance of the vehicle in the convex mirror is dangerous. You could have a serious accident. What you see in the convex mirror is closer than it appears.

Mirror type

Flat type (driver's side)

Flat surface mirror.

Convex type (front passenger side)

The mirror has single curvature on its surface.

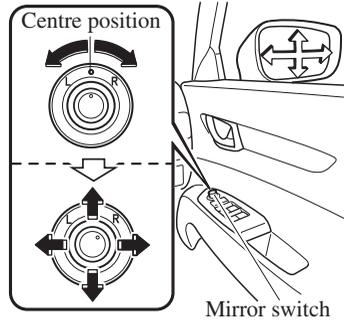
Power mirror adjustment

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To adjust:

1. Rotate the mirror switch to the left L or right R to choose the left or right side mirror.

2. Press the mirror switch in the appropriate direction.



After adjusting the mirror, lock the control by rotating the switch to the centre position.

Folding outside mirror

! WARNING

Always return the outside mirrors to the driving position before you start driving:

Driving with the outside mirrors folded in is dangerous. Your rear view will be restricted, and you could have an accident.

Do not touch a power folding outside mirror while it is moving:

Touching the power folding outside mirror when it is moving is dangerous. Your hand could be pinched and injured or the mirror could be damaged.

Use the switch to set the mirror to the on-road position:

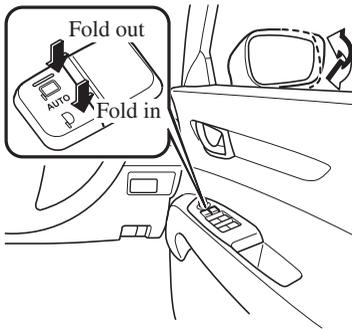
Setting the power folding outside mirror to the on-road position by hand is dangerous. The mirror will not lock in position and will prevent effective rearview visibility.

Only operate the power folding outside mirror with the vehicle safely parked:

Operating the power folding outside mirror while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Wind blast on the mirror will cause them to collapse and you will be unable to return it to the on-road position, preventing rearview visibility.

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON position.

To fold the mirrors, press the lower side of the outside mirror folding switch. To return the mirrors to their on-road positions, press the upper side of the outside mirror folding switch.



Automatic folding function

The automatic folding function operates when the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF.

When the outside mirror automatic folding switch is pressed to the AUTO position (neutral position), the outside mirrors automatically fold in and out when the doors are locked and unlocked.

Also, when the ignition is switched ON or the engine is started, the outside mirrors fold out automatically.

NOTE

The outside mirrors may not fold in and out automatically under cold weather conditions.

If the outside mirrors do not fold in and out automatically, remove any ice or snow, and then press the upper or lower side of the outside mirror automatic folding switch to fold the outside mirrors in or out.

Engine-off outside mirror operation

The outside mirrors can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to off.

▼ Rearview Mirror

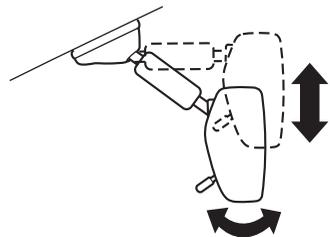


Do not stack cargo or objects higher than the seatbacks:

Cargo stacked higher than the seatbacks is dangerous. It can block your view in the rearview mirror, which might cause you to hit another car when changing lanes.

Rearview mirror adjustment

Before driving, adjust the rearview mirror to centre on the scene through the rear window.



Mirrors

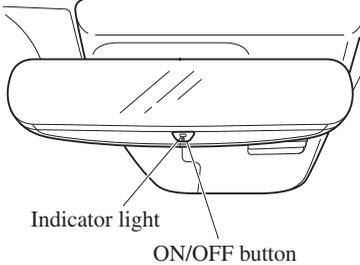
Reducing glare from headlights

The auto-dimming mirror automatically reduces the glare of headlights from vehicles at the rear when the ignition is switched ON.

(With ON/OFF button)

Press the ON/OFF button (⊕) to cancel the auto-dimming function. The indicator light will turn off.

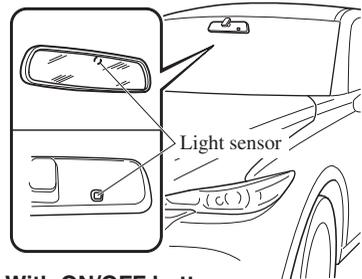
To reactivate the auto-dimming function, press the ON/OFF button (⊕). The indicator light will illuminate.



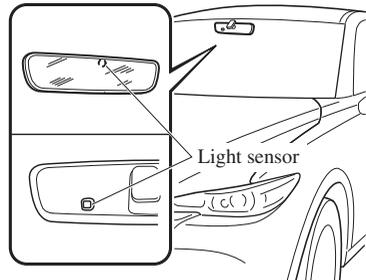
NOTE

- Do not use glass cleaner or suspend objects on or around the light sensor. Otherwise, light sensor sensitivity will be affected and may not operate normally.

Without ON/OFF button



With ON/OFF button



- The auto-dimming function is cancelled when the ignition is switched ON and the selector lever is in the R position.

Power Windows

The windows can be opened/closed by operating the power window switches.



Make sure the opening is clear before closing a window:

Closing a power window is dangerous. A person's hands, head, or even neck could be caught by the window and result in serious injury or even death. This warning applies especially to children.

Never allow children to play with power window switches:

Power window switches that are not locked with the power window lock switch would allow children to operate power windows unintentionally, which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the window.

Make sure nothing blocks the window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while fully holding up the power window switch:

Blocking the power window just before it reaches the fully closed position or while fully holding up the power window switch is dangerous.

In this case, the jam-safe function cannot prevent the window from closing all the way. If fingers are caught, serious injuries could occur.

NOTE

When driving with only 1 of the rear windows open, your ears might experience a resonating sound. However, this does not indicate a problem. The sound can be reduced by slightly opening a front window or by changing the size of the rear window opening.

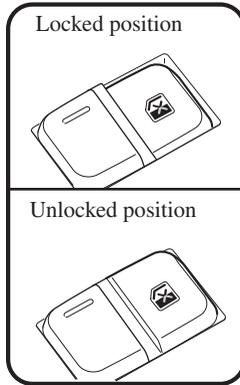
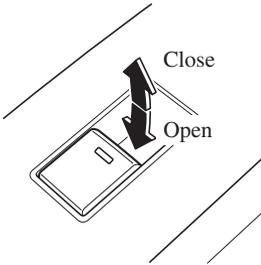
▼ Opening/Closing Windows

The window opens while the switch is pressed and it closes while the switch is pulled up with the ignition switched ON. Do not open or close 3 or more windows at the same time.

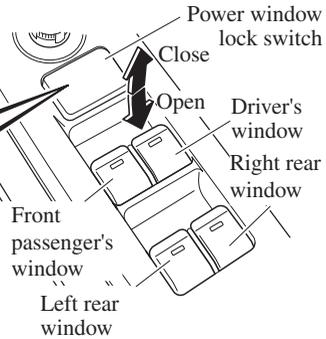
Windows

The front passenger's side and rear windows can be opened/closed when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the unlock position. Keep this switch in the locked position while children are in the vehicle.

**Front passenger's window switch
Rear window switches**



Master control switches



NOTE

- A power window may no longer open/close if you continue to press the switch after fully opening/closing the power window. If the power window does not open/close, wait a moment and then operate the switch again.
- The passenger windows may be opened or closed using the master control switches on the driver's door.
- The power window can be operated for about 40 seconds after the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or off with all doors closed. If any door is opened, the power window will stop operating.

For engine-off operation of the power window, the switch must be held up firmly throughout window closure because the auto-closing function will be inoperable.

- When the power window lock switch is in the locked position, the light on each power window switch, except for the driver's power window switch, turns off. The light may be difficult to see depending on the surrounding brightness.

▼ Auto-opening/Closing

To fully open the window automatically, press the switch completely down, then release. The window will fully open automatically.

To fully close the window automatically, pull the switch completely up, then

release. The window will fully close automatically.

To stop the window partway, pull or press the switch in the opposite direction and then release it.

NOTE

Power window system initialization procedure

If the lead-acid battery was disconnected during vehicle maintenance, or for other reasons (such as a switch continues to be operated after the window is fully open/closed), the window will not fully open and close automatically.

The power window auto function will only resume on a power window that has been reset.

1. Switch the ignition ON.
2. Make sure that the power window lock switch located on the driver's door is not depressed.
3. Press the switch and fully open the window.
4. Pull up the switch to fully close the window and continue holding the switch for about 2 seconds after the window fully closed.
5. Make sure that the power windows operate correctly using the door switches.

▼ Jam-safe Window

If foreign matter is detected between the window and the window frame while the window is closing automatically (refer to Auto-opening/Closing on page 3-34), the window stops closing and automatically opens partway.

NOTE

- The jam-safe function may operate under the following conditions:
 - A strong impact is detected while the window is closing automatically.
 - Window is closing automatically in very low temperatures.

- In the event the jam-safe function activates and the power window cannot be closed automatically, pull and hold the switch and the window will close.
- The jam-safe window function does not operate until the system has been reset.

▼ Remote Power Window Operation*

All power windows can be opened from outside the vehicle after the doors are closed.

The power windows can be operated remotely when the power window lock switch on the driver's door is in the lock or unlocked position.

Remote power window operation is activated under the following conditions.

- All the doors and liftgate are closed.
- The ignition is switched OFF.

NOTE

The power windows cannot be opened from the outside of the vehicle if the power window initialization has not been completed.

Opening

The windows can be opened for ventilating the cabin before getting in the vehicle.

Press the unlock button on the key quickly and briefly 3 times and then immediately afterwards, press and hold the unlock button to open the windows.



To stop the windows from opening, release the button. If the operation is performed from the beginning again, the windows open.

Windows

Sunroof*

The sunroof can be opened or closed when operating the overhead tilt/slide switch at the front seats.

! WARNING

Do not let passengers stand up or extend part of the body through the open sunroof while the vehicle is moving:

Extending the head, arms, or other parts of the body through the sunroof is dangerous. The head or arms could hit something while the vehicle is moving. This could cause serious injury or death.

Never allow children to play with the tilt/slide switch:

The tilt/slide switch would allow children to operate the sunroof unintentionally, which could result in serious injury if a child's hands, head or neck becomes caught by the sunroof.

Make sure the opening is clear before closing the sunroof:

A closing sunroof is dangerous. The hands, head, or even neck of a person, especially a child, could be caught in it as it closes, causing serious injury or even death.

Make sure nothing blocks the sunroof just before it reaches the fully closed position:

Blocking the sunroof just before it reaches the closed position is dangerous. In this case, the jam-safe function cannot prevent the sunroof from closing. If fingers are caught, serious injuries could occur.

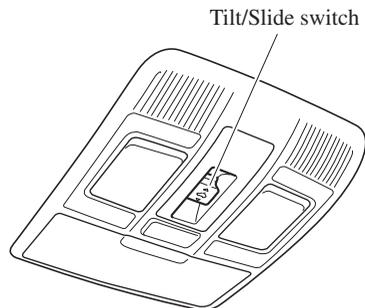
! CAUTION

- *Do not sit on or put heavy items on the area where the sunroof opens and closes. Otherwise, the sunroof could be damaged.*
- *Do not open or close the sunroof forcefully during freezing temperatures or snowfall. Otherwise, the sunroof could be damaged.*
- *The sunshade does not tilt. To avoid damaging the sunshade, do not push it up.*
- *Do not close the sunshade while the sunroof is opening. Trying to force the sunshade closed could damage it.*

▼ Tilt/Slide Operation

The sunroof can be opened or closed electrically only when the ignition is switched ON.

- Before leaving the vehicle or washing your Mazda, make sure the sunroof is completely closed so that water does not get inside the cabin area.
- After washing your Mazda or after it rains, wipe the water off the sunroof before operating it to avoid water penetration which could cause rust and water damage to your headliner.



Tilt Operation

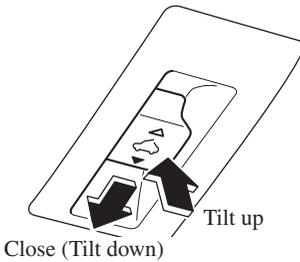
The rear of the sunroof can be tilted open to provide more ventilation.

To fully tilt automatically, momentarily press the tilt/slide switch.

To fully close automatically, momentarily press the tilt/slide switch in the forward direction.

To stop tilting partway, press the tilt/slide switch.

When the sunroof is already slid open and you want to tilt it open, first close the sunroof and then do a tilt operation.



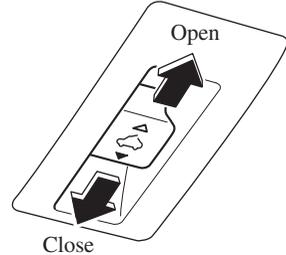
Slide Operation

To fully open automatically, momentarily press the tilt/slide switch in the backward direction.

To fully close automatically, momentarily press the tilt/slide switch in the forward direction.

To stop sliding partway, press the tilt/slide switch.

When the sunroof is already tilted open and you want to slide it open, first close the sunroof and then do a slide operation.



NOTE

If the sunroof does not operate normally, do the following procedure:

1. Switch the ignition ON.
2. Press the tilt switch, to partially tilt open the rear of the sunroof.
3. Repeat Step 2. The rear of the sunroof tilts open to the fully open position, then closes a little.

If the reset procedure is performed while the sunroof is in the slide position (partially open) it will close before the rear tilt opens.

▼ Jam-safe Sunroof

If a person's hands, head or an object blocks the sunroof while it is closing, the sunroof will stop and move in the open direction.

NOTE

- The jam-safe function may operate under the following conditions:
 - A strong impact is detected while the sunroof is closing automatically.
 - The sunroof is closing automatically during very low temperatures.

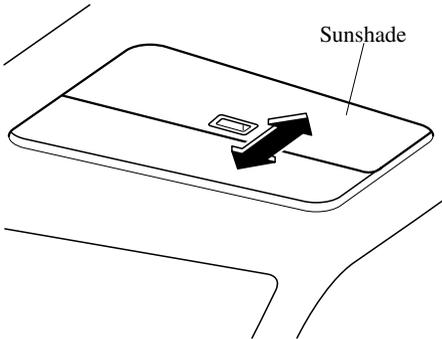
Windows

- In the event the jam-safe function activates and the sunroof cannot be closed automatically, press the tilt/slide switch and the sunroof will close.
- The jam-safe sunroof function does not operate until the system has been reset.

▼ Sunshade

The sunshade can be opened and closed by hand.

The sunshade opens at the same time as the sunroof slides open, but it must be closed by hand.



Modification and Add-On Equipment

Mazda cannot guarantee the immobilizer system's operation if the system has been modified or if any add-on equipment has been installed.

CAUTION

To avoid damage to the vehicle, do not modify the system or install any add-on equipment to the immobilizer system or the vehicle.

Immobilizer System

The immobilizer system allows the engine to start only with a key the system recognises.

If someone attempts to start the engine with an unrecognised key, the engine will not start, thereby helping to prevent vehicle theft.

If you have a problem with the immobilizer system or the key, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

CAUTION

- *Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.*
- *To avoid damage to the key, do not:*
 - *Drop the key.*
 - *Get the key wet.*
 - *Expose the key to any kind of magnetic field.*
 - *Expose the key to high temperatures on places such as the instrument panel or bonnet, under direct sunlight.*
- *If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light keeps illuminating or flashing, the system may have a malfunction. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Security System

NOTE

- The keys carry a unique electronic code. For this reason, and to assure your safety, obtaining a replacement key requires some waiting time. They are only available through an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- Always keep a spare key in case one is lost. If a key is lost, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
- If you lose a key, an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), will reset the electronic codes of your remaining keys and immobilizer system. Bring all the remaining keys to the expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to reset. Starting the vehicle with a key that has not been reset is not possible.

▼ Operation

NOTE

- The engine may not start and security indicator light may illuminate or flash if the key is placed in an area where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal, such as on the instrument panel or in the glove compartment. Move the key to a location within the signal range, switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine.
- Signals from a TV or radio station, or from a transceiver or mobile telephone could interfere with your immobilizer system. If you are using the proper key and the engine fails to start, check the security indicator light.

Arming

The system is armed when the ignition is switched from ON to off.

The security indicator light in the instrument cluster flashes every 2 seconds until the system is disarmed.



Disarming

The system is disarmed when the ignition is switched ON with the correct programmed key. The security indicator light illuminates for about 3 seconds and then turns off. If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following:

Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- If the security indicator light flashes continuously while you are driving, do not shut off the engine. Go to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), and have it checked. If the engine is shut off while the indicator light is flashing, you will not be able to restart it.

- *Because the electronic codes are reset when the immobilizer system is repaired, the keys are needed. Make sure to bring all the keys to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), so that they can be programmed.*

Driving Tips

Running-In Period

No special running-in is necessary, but a few precautions in the first 1,000 km (600 miles) may add to the performance, economy, and life of the vehicle.

- Do not race the engine.
- Do not maintain one constant speed, either slow or fast, for a long period of time.
- Do not drive constantly at full-throttle or high engine rpm for extended periods of time.
- Avoid unnecessary hard stops.
- Avoid full-throttle starts.
- Do not tow a trailer.

Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment

How you operate your Mazda determines how far it will travel on a tank of fuel. Use these suggestions to help save fuel and reduce CO₂.

- Avoid long warm-ups. Once the engine runs smoothly, begin driving.
- Avoid fast starts.
- Drive at lower speeds.
- Anticipate when to apply the brakes (avoid sudden braking).
- Follow the maintenance schedule (page 6-3) and have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform inspections and servicing.
- Use the air conditioner only when necessary.
- Slow down on rough roads.
- Keep the tyres properly inflated.
- Do not carry unnecessary weight.
- Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving.
- Keep the wheels in correct alignment.
- Keep windows closed at high speeds.
- Slow down when driving in crosswinds and headwinds.

WARNING

Never stop the engine when going down a hill:

Stopping the engine when going down a hill is dangerous. This causes the loss of power steering and power brake control, and may cause damage to the drivetrain. Any loss of steering or braking control could cause an accident.

Hazardous Driving

WARNING

Be extremely careful if it is necessary to downshift on slippery surfaces:

Downshifting into lower gear while driving on slippery surfaces is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvres when driving this vehicle:

Sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvring of this vehicle are dangerous as it could result in the increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle roll-over, personal injury or death.

This vehicle has a higher centre of gravity. Vehicles with a higher centre of gravity such as utility vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower centre of gravity. Utility vehicles are not designed for cornering at high speeds any more than low profile sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions.

In addition, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

In a rollover crash, an unbelted person is significantly more likely to die than a person wearing a seat belt.

When driving on ice or in water, snow, mud, sand, or similar hazards:

- Be cautious and allow extra distance for braking.

- Avoid sudden braking and sudden manoeuvring.
- Do not pump the brakes. Continue to press down on the brake pedal. Refer to Antilock Brake System (ABS) on page 4-88.
- If you get stuck, select a lower gear and accelerate slowly. Do not spin the front wheels.
- For more traction in starting on slippery surfaces such as ice or packed snow, use sand, rock salt, chains, carpeting, or other nonslip material under the front wheels.

NOTE

Use snow chains only on the front wheels.

Floor Mat

We recommend the use of **Genuine Mazda floor mats**.

WARNING

Make sure the floor mats are secured with the grommets or the retainers to prevent them from bunching up under the foot pedals (Driver's side):

Using a floor mat that is not secured is dangerous as it will interfere with the accelerator and brake pedal operation (driver's side), which could result in an accident.

Only use a floor mat which conforms to the shape of the floor on the driver's side and make sure it is oriented correctly.

Secure the floor mat using the grommets or retainers.

There are various ways to secure floor mats depending on the type used, therefore secure the mat according to the type.

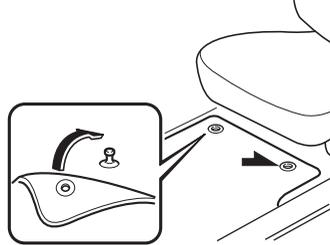
After installing the floor mat, make sure that it does not slide from side to side or back and forth, and that there is sufficient clearance with the accelerator and brake pedals on the driver's side.

After removing the floor mat for cleaning or some other reason, always securely reinstall it while paying attention to the precautions just mentioned.

Do not install two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side:

Installing two floor mats, one on top of the other, on the driver's side is dangerous as the retention pins can only keep one floor mat from sliding forward.

Loose floor mat(s) will interfere with the foot pedals and could result in an accident. If using an all-weather mat for winter use always remove the original floor mat.



When setting a floor mat, position the floor mat so that its grommets or retainers are inserted over the pointed end of the retention posts.

Rocking the Vehicle

WARNING

Do not spin the wheels at high speed, and do not allow anyone to stand behind a wheel when pushing the vehicle:

When the vehicle is stuck, spinning the wheels at high speed is dangerous. The spinning tyre could overheat and explode. This could cause serious injuries.

CAUTION

Too much rocking may cause engine overheating, transaxle failure, and tyre damage.

If you must rock the vehicle to free it from snow, sand or mud, depress the accelerator slightly and slowly move the selector lever from D to R position.

Winter Driving

Carry emergency gear, including tyre chains, window scraper, flares, a small shovel, jumper leads, and a small bag of sand or salt.

Ask an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to check the following:

- Have the proper ratio of antifreeze in the radiator.
Refer to Engine Coolant on page 6-16.
- Inspect the lead-acid battery and its leads. Cold reduces lead-acid battery capacity.
- Use an engine oil appropriate for the lowest ambient temperatures that the vehicle will be driven in (page 6-12).
- Inspect the ignition system for damage and loose connections.
- Use washer fluid made with antifreeze—but do not use engine coolant antifreeze for washer fluid (page 6-18).

NOTE

- *Remove snow before driving. Snow left on the windscreen is dangerous as it could obstruct vision. In addition, if the vehicle is driven with snow accumulated on the bonnet, the active bonnet system may not activate normally in an emergency.*
- *Do not apply excessive force to a window scraper when removing ice or frozen snow on the mirror glass and windscreen.*
- *Never use warm or hot water for removing snow or ice from windows and mirrors as it could result in the glass cracking.*

Driving Tips

- Drive slowly. Braking performance can be adversely affected if snow or ice adheres to the brake components. If this situation occurs, drive the vehicle slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal.

▼ Snow Tyres



Use only the same size and type tyres (snow, radial, or non-radial) on all 4 wheels:

Using tyres different in size or type is dangerous. Your vehicle's handling could be greatly affected and result in an accident.



Check local regulations before using studded tyres.

NOTE

The tyre pressure monitoring system may not function correctly when using tyres with steel wire reinforcement in the sidewalls (page 4-263).

Use snow tyres on all 4 wheels

Do not exceed the maximum permissible speed for your snow tyres or legal speed limits.

▼ Tyre Chains

Check local regulations before using tyre chains.



- Chains may affect handling.
- Do not go faster than 50 km/h (30 mph) or the chain manufacturer's recommended limit, whichever is lower.
- Drive carefully and avoid bumps, holes, and sharp turns.
- Avoid locked-wheel braking.
- Do not use chains on a temporary spare tyre; it may result in damage to the vehicle and to the tyre.
- Do not use chains on roads that are free of snow or ice. The tyres and chains could be damaged.
- Chains may scratch or chip aluminium wheels.

NOTE

- The tyre pressure monitoring system may not function correctly when using tyre chains.

Install the chains on the front tyres only. Do not use chains on the rear tyres. Please consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Installing the chains

1. Secure the chains on the front tyres as tightly as possible. Always follow the chain manufacturer's instructions.
2. Retighten the chains after driving 1/2—1 km (1/4—1/2 mile).

Driving In Flooded Area

WARNING

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

CAUTION

Do not drive the vehicle on flooded roads as it could cause short circuiting of electrical/electronic parts, or engine damage or stalling from water absorption. If the vehicle has been immersed in water, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Turbocharger Information (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

 **CAUTION**

- *After driving at freeway speeds or up a long hill, trailer towing for a long time, idle the engine at least 30 seconds before stopping it. Otherwise, the turbocharger could be damaged. However, when i-stop operates, idling is unnecessary.*
- *Racing or over-revving the engine, particularly after it's just been started, can damage the turbocharger.*
- *To protect the engine from damage, the engine is designed so that it cannot be raced just after starting it in extremely cold weather.*

The turbocharger greatly enhances engine power. Its advanced design provides improved operation and requires minimum maintenance.

To get the most from it, observe the following.

1. Change engine oil and filter according to Scheduled Maintenance (page 6-3).
2. Use only recommended engine oil (page 6-12). Extra additives are NOT recommended.

Towing Caravans and Trailers

Your Mazda was designed and built primarily to carry passengers and cargo.

If you tow a trailer, follow these instructions because driver and passenger safety depends on proper equipment and safe driving habits. Towing a trailer will affect handling, braking, durability, performance, and economy.

Never overload vehicle or trailer. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if you need further details.



➤ *Towing a trailer during the first 1,000 km (600 miles) of your new Mazda is not recommended. If you do, you may damage the power train components.*

NOTE

Your vehicle is equipped with a Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) mechanism, which enhances vehicle stability when towing a trailer.

Refer to Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) on page 4-92.

▼ **Load Limits**



Be aware of the towing load weight differences when towing at high altitudes. For altitudes exceeding 1,000 m, always reduce the towing load by 10% for every 1,000 m increase in altitude from the total weight (gross vehicle weight and load limit). If the determined maximum total towing load weight is exceeded, the engine and other power train parts may be damaged.

The total weight of a trailer or other towed vehicle must not exceed the following:

(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

Trailer with brakes 1,800 kg (4,409.2 lb)

Trailer without brakes 750 kg (1,653.4 lb)

(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

Trailer with brakes 2,000 kg (4,409.2 lb)

Trailer without brakes 750 kg (1,653.4 lb)

▼ Towing Instructions

Follow these instructions to make your towing as safe and efficient as possible.

- Use only a Mazda-approved tow bar.
- Never exceed recommended load limits and always refer to the identification plate affixed to the tow bar.
- When towing a trailer, make sure that the tyre pressures of the rear tyres are at 20 kPa (0.2 bar, 2.9 psi) higher than the recommended maximum tyre pressures indicated on the tyre pressure chart on the driver's door frame.
Trailer tyre size, load rating, and inflation pressures should conform to tyre manufacturer specifications.
- Do not exceed 100 km/h (62 mph) with a trailer in tow. If the local legal maximum speed with a trailer in tow is less than 100 km/h (62 mph), do not exceed the legal speed.



If the vehicle exceeds 100 km/h (62 mph) with a trailer in tow, the vehicle could be damaged.

- When on a hill or towing with heavy loads, always use a lower gear. This helps maintain speed. It also prevents engine and transaxle overloading when going up hills and reduces the need for braking when going down hills.
- Always allow a greater stopping distance than normal to prevent excessive braking, and avoid sudden stops that could cause loss of control.
- Frequently inspect oil and fluid levels.
- Because of the extra stress on your Mazda from towing, more frequent maintenance than usual is necessary.
- Your Mazda's behaviour changes while towing. Get accustomed to these changes over a short and safe trial distance before starting a long trip.
- Headlights may need re-aiming after a trailer has been attached, especially if a load equalizing hitch is not used.
- Due to the additional stress on the engine cooling system when towing, the airflow to the radiator must not be restricted in any way.
- Make sure the towed vehicle complies with all local regulations, especially in regard to lighting, mirrors, and safety chains. The tow bar should not obscure the rear number plate.
- Whenever you remove the tow bar, seal all mounting holes in the underbody to prevent the entry of exhaust fumes, dust, and water.
- Avoid parking on an incline with a trailer. If this must be done, follow these instructions.

Parking on an Incline

1. Set the parking brake and the brakes.
2. Have someone block the wheels of the vehicle and trailer while you apply the brakes.
3. After the wheels are blocked, release the parking brake and the brakes slowly, allowing the blocks to bear the load.
4. Set the parking brake firmly.
5. Put the selector lever in the P position.

Starting on an Incline

1. Start the engine (page 4-5).
2. Release the parking brake and slowly pull away a short distance from the wheel blocks.
3. Stop on the nearest level ground, set the parking brake, and pick up the wheel blocks.

MEMO

Information concerning safer driving and stopping.

Start/Stop Engine.....	4-4	Brake.....	4-78
Ignition Switch.....	4-4	Brake System.....	4-78
Starting the Engine.....	4-5	AUTOHOLD.....	4-82
Turning the Engine Off.....	4-10	Emergency Stop Signal	
i-stop.....	4-11	System.....	4-86
		Hill Launch Assist (HLA).....	4-86
Instrument Cluster and Display	4-19	ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist	
Instrument Cluster and		(TSA).....	4-88
Display.....	4-19	Antilock Brake System	
Instrument Cluster (Type A).....	4-20	(ABS).....	4-88
Instrument Cluster (Type B).....	4-38	Traction Control System	
Active Driving Display.....	4-55	(TCS).....	4-89
		Dynamic Stability Control	
Automatic Transaxle.....	4-57	(DSC).....	4-91
Automatic Transaxle		Trailer Stability Assist (TSA).....	4-92
Controls.....	4-57	Off-Road Traction Assist*	4-93
Shift-Lock System.....	4-58	Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-	
Transaxle Ranges.....	4-58	Drive).....	4-95
Manual Shift Mode.....	4-60	Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-	
Direct Mode*.....	4-65	Drive).....	4-95
Driving Tips.....	4-66	i-ACTIV AWD.....	4-98
Switches and Controls.....	4-67	i-ACTIV AWD Operation*	4-98
Lighting Control.....	4-67	Power Steering.....	4-100
Turn and Lane-Change		Power Steering.....	4-100
Signals.....	4-71	i-ACTIVSENSE.....	4-101
Windscreen Wipers and		i-ACTIVSENSE*	4-101
Washer.....	4-72	Adaptive Front Lighting System	
Rear Window Wiper and		(AFS)*	4-105
Washer.....	4-75		
Rear Window Defogger.....	4-75		
Horn.....	4-76		
Hazard Warning Flasher.....	4-77		

High Beam Control System (HBC)*	4-106
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*	4-108
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....	4-111
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR).....	4-116
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....	4-123
Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*	4-127
Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	4-129
Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function).....	4-133
Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)*	4-146
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	4-163
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA).....	4-177
Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS).....	4-185
Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R).....	4-188
Smart Brake Support (SBS).....	4-192
360° View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))*	4-194
360° View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))*	4-220
Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).....	4-248
Radar Sensor (Front).....	4-254

Radar Sensors (Rear).....	4-257
Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear).....	4-259
Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera*	4-260

Diesel Particulate Filter.....	4-261
Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	4-261

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	4-262
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System.....	4-262

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A)).....	4-266
Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))*	4-266

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B)).....	4-274
Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))*	4-274

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))*	4-282
Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A)).....	4-282

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))*	4-291
Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B)).....	4-291

MEMO

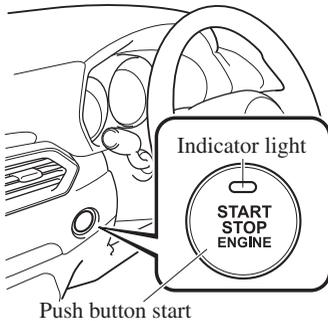
Start/Stop Engine

Ignition Switch

▼ Push Button Start Positions

The system operates only when the key is within operational range.

Each time the push button start is pressed, the ignition switches in the order of off, ACC, and ON. Pressing the push button start again from ON switches the ignition off.



NOTE

- The engine starts by pressing the push button start while depressing the brake pedal. To switch the ignition position, press the push button start without depressing the pedal.
- Do not leave the ignition switched ON while the engine is not running. Doing so could result in the lead-acid battery going dead. If the selector lever is in the P position, and the ignition is in ACC, the ignition switches off automatically after about 25 minutes.

Off

The power supply to electrical devices turns off and the push button start indicator light (amber) also turns off.

In this position the steering wheel is locked.



Before leaving the driver's seat, always switch the ignition off, set the parking brake, and make sure the selector lever is in P position:

Leaving the driver's seat without switching the ignition off, setting the parking brake, and shifting the selector lever to P position is dangerous. Unexpected vehicle movement could occur which could result in an accident.

In addition, if your intention is to leave the vehicle for even a short period, it is important to switch the ignition off, as leaving it in another position will disable some of the vehicle's security systems and run the lead-acid battery down.

NOTE

(Locked steering wheel)

If the push button start indicator light (green) is flashing and the beep sound is heard, this indicates that the steering wheel is not unlocked. To unlock the steering wheel, press the push button start while moving the steering wheel left and right.

ACC (Accessory)

Some electrical accessories will operate and the indicator light (amber) illuminates. In this position the steering wheel is unlocked.

NOTE

The keyless entry system does not function while the push button start has been pressed to ACC, and the doors will not lock/unlock even if they have been locked manually.

ON

This is the normal running position after the engine is started. The indicator light (amber) turns off. (The indicator light (amber) illuminates when the ignition is switched ON and the engine is not running.)

Some indicator lights/warning lights should be inspected before the engine is started (page 4-19).

NOTE**(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

When the push button start is pressed to ON, the sound of the fuel pump motor operating near the fuel tank can be heard. This does not indicate an abnormality.

Starting the Engine**⚠ WARNING****Radio waves from the key may affect medical devices such as pacemakers:**

Before using the key near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the key will affect the device.

NOTE

- *The key must be carried because the key carries an immobilizer chip that must communicate with the engine controls at short range.*
- *The engine can be started when the push button start is pressed from off, ACC, or ON.*
- *The push button start system functions (function which can start the engine by only carrying the key) can be deactivated to prevent any possible adverse effect on a user wearing a pacemaker or other medical device. If the system is deactivated, you will be unable to start the engine by carrying the key. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details. If the push button start system functions have been deactivated, you can start the engine by following the procedure indicated when the key battery goes dead. Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.*
- *After starting a cold engine, the engine speed increases and a whining sound from the engine compartment can be heard.*

Start/Stop Engine

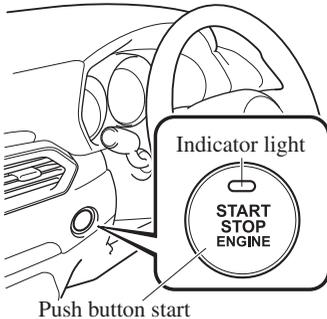
This is for improved exhaust gas purification and does not indicate any parts defect.

1. Make sure you are carrying the key.
2. Occupants should fasten their seat belts.
3. Make sure the parking brake is on.
4. Continue to press the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
5. Put the vehicle in park (P). If you must restart the engine while the vehicle is moving, shift into neutral (N).

NOTE

The starter will not operate if the selector lever is not in P or N position and the brake pedal is not depressed sufficiently.

6. Make sure that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.



NOTE

- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes, make sure that the key is being carried (page 7-26).*

- *If the push button start indicator light (green) flashes with the key being carried, touch the key to the push button start and start the engine (page 7-26).*

Refer to Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead on page 4-8.

CAUTION

If the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate a problem with the engine starting system. This may prevent the engine from starting or from switching the ignition to ACC or ON (page 7-26). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed after the push button start is pressed. This informs the driver that the push button start will not switch to ACC, even if it is pressed from off (page 7-26).*
 - *The key battery is dead.*
 - *The key is out of operational range.*
 - *The key is placed in areas where it is difficult for the system to detect the signal (page 3-6).*
 - *A key from another manufacturer similar to the key is in the operational range.*

· **(Forced engine starting method)**

If the **KEY** warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method (page 7-26). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine, such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the brake pedal are required.

· When the engine is force-started, the **KEY** warning indication (amber) remains displayed and the push button start indicator light (amber) remains flashing.

· When the selector lever is in the neutral (N) position, the push button start indicator light (green) does not turn on.

7. Press the push button start after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.

NOTE

· After starting the engine, the push button start indicator light (amber) turns off and the ignition switches to the ON position.

· **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

After pressing the push button start and before the engine starts, the operation sound of the fuel pump motor from near the fuel tank can be heard, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.

· **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

· The starter does not rotate until the glow indicator light turns off.



· If the ignition is left switched ON for a long period of time without the engine running after the glow plugs are warmed up, the glow plugs may warm up again which will illuminate the glow indicator light.

· When starting the engine, do not release the brake pedal until the glow indicator light in the instrument cluster turns off and the engine starts, after pressing the push button start.

· If the brake pedal is released before the engine starts, depress the brake pedal again and press the push button start to start the engine.

8. After starting the engine, let it idle for about 10 seconds.

NOTE

· Do not use high engine speeds until reaching the operating temperature.

· **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

· Whether the engine is cold or warm, it should be started without the use of the accelerator.

Start/Stop Engine

• If the engine does not start the first time, refer to *Starting a Flooded Engine under Emergency Starting*. If the engine still does not start, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an *Authorised Mazda Repairer*) (page 7-15).

• **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

If the ambient temperature is lower than about $-10\text{ }^{\circ}\text{C}$ ($14\text{ }^{\circ}\text{F}$), the maximum engine speed may not be attained for about 3 minutes after the engine starts to protect the engine.

▼ Engine Start Function When Key Battery is Dead



When starting the engine by holding the transmitter over the push button start due to a dead key battery or a malfunctioning key, be careful not to allow the following, otherwise the signal from the key will not be received correctly and the engine may not start.

➤ Metal parts of other keys or metal objects touch the key.



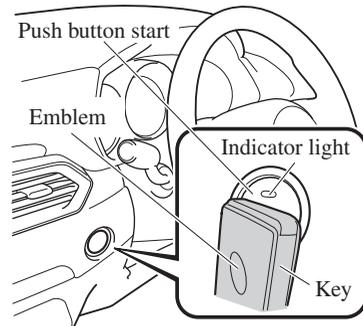
➤ Spare keys or keys for other vehicles equipped with an immobilizer system touch or come near the key.



➤ Devices for electronic purchases, or security passage touch or come near the key.

If the engine cannot be started due to a dead key battery, the engine can be started using the following procedure:

1. Continue to depress the brake pedal firmly until the engine has completely started.
2. Make sure that the push button start indication light (green) flashes.
3. Align the centre area of the emblem on the transmitter with the centre area of the push button start while the push button start indicator light (green) flashes.



4. Make sure that the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.
5. Press the push button start to start the engine.

NOTE

- *The engine cannot be started unless the brake pedal is fully depressed.*
- *If there is a malfunction with the push button start function, the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes. In this case, the engine may start, however; have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*
- *If the push button start indicator light (green) does not illuminate, perform the operation from the beginning again. If it does not illuminate, have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *To switch the ignition position without starting the engine, perform the following operations after the push button start indicator light (green) turns on.*
 1. *Release the brake pedal.*
 2. *Press the push button start to switch the ignition position. The ignition switches in the order of ACC, ON, and off each time the push button start is pressed. To switch the ignition position again, perform the operation from the beginning.*

▼ Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine

If the KEY warning indication (amber) is displayed, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, this could indicate that the engine may not start using the usual starting method (page 7-26). Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. If this occurs, the engine can be force-started. Press and hold the push button start until the engine starts. Other procedures necessary for starting the engine such as having the key in the cabin, and depressing the brake pedal are required.

Start/Stop Engine

Turning the Engine Off

WARNING

Do not stop the engine while the vehicle is moving:

Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving for any reason other than in an emergency is dangerous. Stopping the engine while the vehicle is moving will result in reduced braking ability due to the loss of power braking, which could cause an accident and serious injury.

1. Stop the vehicle completely.
2. Shift the selector lever to the P position and set the parking brake.
3. Press the push button start to turn off the engine. The ignition position is off.

CAUTION

➤ When leaving the vehicle, make sure the push button start is off.

➤ **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

If the engine is started and stopped repeatedly before it warms up, the engine may speed up while the vehicle is stopped to clean the engine internally. Do not stop the engine until the engine returns to running at its normal speed.

NOTE

· **(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

The cooling fan in the engine compartment could turn on for a few minutes after the ignition is switched from ON to OFF, whether or not the A/C is on or off, to cool the engine compartment quickly.

· If the system detects that the remaining battery power of the key is low when the ignition is switched from ON to ACC or OFF, the following is indicated.

Replace with a new battery before the key becomes unusable.

Refer to Key Battery Replacement on page 6-27.

A message is indicated in the display of the instrument cluster.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.

· If the engine is turned off while the selector lever is in a position other than P, the ignition switches to ACC.

▼ Emergency Engine Stop

Continuously pressing the push button start or quickly pressing it any number of times while the engine is running or the vehicle is being driven will turn the engine off immediately. The ignition switches to ACC.

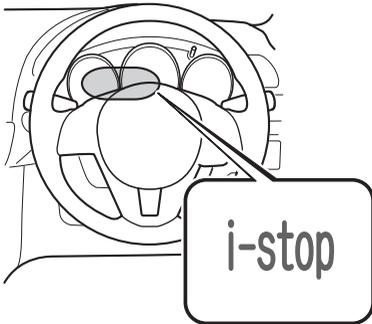
i-stop

The i-stop function automatically stops the engine when the vehicle is stopped at a traffic light or stuck in traffic, and then restarts the engine automatically to resume driving. The system provides improved fuel economy, reduced exhaust gas emissions, and eliminates idling noise while the engine is stopped.

Engine idle stopping and restarting

NOTE

- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns on under the following conditions:
 - When engine idling is stopped.



- The i-stop indicator light (green) turns off when the engine is restarted.

(AUTOHOLD operation turned off and When not using Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function))

1. Engine idling stops when the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is stopped.

2. The engine restarts automatically when the brake pedal is released with the selector lever in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

(When the vehicle is stopped by the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) stop hold control)

1. When the vehicle is stopped by the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), engine idling stops and continues to be stopped without depressing the brake pedal.
2. When the accelerator pedal is depressed or the RES switch is operated while the vehicle is kept stopped by the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), the engine automatically restarts. The engine restarts automatically when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D/M position (not in second gear fixed mode).

Start/Stop Engine

(When the vehicle is stopped by the AUTOHOLD function)

1. When the brake pedal is depressed while the vehicle is being driven (except for driving in the R or M position second gear fixed mode) and the vehicle is brought to a stop, the i-stop function will operate and it continues to operate even if the brake is released.
2. The engine restarts automatically when the accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D/M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
3. If the selector lever is in the N or P position, the engine does not restart when the brake pedal is released. The engine restarts when the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode) or the R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

Operation conditions

When the system is operable

Under the following conditions, the i-stop indicator light (green) turns on and engine idling stops.

- (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)
The engine is warmed up.
- (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)
 - The engine is not cold.
 - The engine has been started and the vehicle is driven for a certain period.
 - The engine is started with the bonnet closed.
- The lead-acid battery is in good condition.
- All doors, liftgate, and bonnet are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The air conditioner is not operating with the airflow mode in the  position.
- The temperature setting dial for the air-conditioning is set to a position other than maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON).
- The vehicle's interior temperature and the set temperature for the air conditioner are nearly the same.
- The i-stop warning light (amber) is not turned on/flashing.
- The keyless entry & push button start system functions are normal.
- The brake vacuum is sufficiently high.
- The steering wheel is not being operated.
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The selector lever is in the D or M position (not in second gear fixed mode).
- The automatic transaxle fluid has warmed up sufficiently.
- The automatic transaxle fluid temperature is not abnormally high.
- The steering wheel is almost in the straight-ahead position (idling may not stop even with the steering wheel in the straight-ahead position if force is applied to the steering wheel. Release the force applied to the steering wheel to stop engine idling).
- The vehicle is stopped by depressing the brake pedal.
- Emergency braking is not applied.

- When the vehicle is stopped by the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) stop hold control (vehicles with Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)).

When the system is not operable

Engine idling does not stop in the following conditions:

- The vehicle is stopped but the engine is kept idling.
- The air conditioner is operating with the airflow mode in the  position.
- The temperature setting dial for the air-conditioning is set to the maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON) position.
- There is a large difference between the cabin temperature and the set temperature of the air conditioner.
- The ambient temperature is extremely high or low.
- The atmospheric pressure is low (when driving at high altitudes).
- The vehicle is stopped on a steep incline.
- The steering wheel is not in the straight-ahead position while the vehicle is stopped.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**
 - The particulate matter (PM) is being removed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

NOTE

Under the following conditions, a period of time is required to stop engine idling

- *The lead-acid battery power is depleted for some reasons such as the vehicle has not been driven for a long period.*
- *The ambient temperature is high or low.*
- *After the lead-acid battery terminals are disconnected for some reasons such as for lead-acid battery replacement.*
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**
After PM removal is performed by the diesel particulate filter (DPF).

Engine-stop period is short or time until next engine idle stop is long

- *The ambient temperature is high or low.*
- *The lead-acid battery power is depleted.*
- *Power consumption by the vehicle's electrical parts is high.*

Engine restarts automatically while engine idling is stopped

Under the following conditions, the engine restarts automatically.

- *The i-stop OFF switch is pressed until the beep sounds.*
- *The air conditioner is operated with the airflow mode in the  position.*
- *The temperature setting dial of the air conditioner is set to maximum heating or maximum cooling (A/C ON).*
- *The cabin temperature is largely different from the set temperature of the air conditioner.*
- *The brakes are released slightly on a slope and the vehicle begins to move.*
- *Two minutes have elapsed since the idling was stopped.*
- *The lead-acid battery power is depleted.*

Start/Stop Engine

- The accelerator pedal is depressed with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
- The selector lever is shifted to the R position.
- The selector lever is shifted from N or P position to D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
- The steering wheel is operated with the selector lever in the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position.
- The selector lever is in the M position and the second gear fixed mode is selected.
- With the selector lever in the P or N position, or the D/M range, the driver's seat belt is unfastened, the driver's door is opened, or the bonnet is opened.

Selector lever is operated while engine idling is stopped

If the selector lever is shifted from D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) position to N or P position while engine idling is stopped, the engine does not restart even when the brake pedal is released. The engine will restart if the brake pedal is depressed again or the selector lever is shifted to the D, M (not in second gear fixed mode), or R position. (For the purposes of safety, always keep the brake pedal depressed when shifting the selector lever while engine idling is stopped.)

If the selector lever is shifted from the D or M (not in second gear fixed mode) to the N or P position, and the driver's seat belt is unfastened or the driver's door is opened, the engine restarts.

Lead-acid battery terminals are disconnected

Engine idling may not stop right after the lead-acid battery terminals are disconnected. In addition, if the lead-acid battery is replaced, the i-stop functions must be verified. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ i-stop Warning Light (Amber)/i-stop Indicator Light (Green)

i-stop

To ensure safe and comfortable use of the vehicle, the i-stop system constantly monitors the driver's operations, the vehicle's interior and exterior environment, and the operational status of the vehicle, and uses the i-stop warning light (amber) and i-stop indicator light (green) to inform the driver of various cautions and warnings.

NOTE

On vehicles equipped with the centre display, the i-stop operation status is displayed in the fuel monitor control status display.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

i-stop warning light (amber)**When the light is turned on**

- The light turns on when the ignition is switched ON and turns off when the engine is started.
- The light turns on when the i-stop OFF switch is pressed and the system is turned off.

NOTE

A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

- *The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON.*
- *The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running.*

When the light is flashing

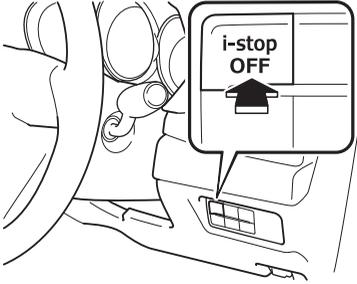
The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

i-stop indicator light (green)**When the light is turned on**

- The light turns on while engine idling is stopped and turns off when the engine is restarted.

Start/Stop Engine

▼ i-stop OFF Switch



By pressing the switch until a beep sounds, the i-stop function is turned off and the i-stop warning light (amber) in the instrument cluster turns on. By pressing the switch again until the beep sounds, the i-stop function becomes operational and the i-stop warning light (amber) turns off.

NOTE

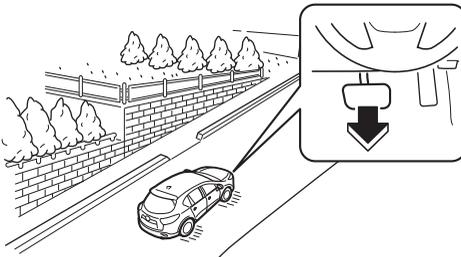
If the engine is stopped with the i-stop function cancelled, the i-stop function becomes operational when the engine is started the next time.

▼ Vehicle Roll Prevention Function

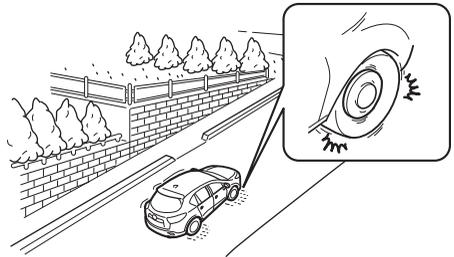
Vehicles with the i-stop function are equipped with a vehicle roll prevention function. This function prevents the vehicle from rolling, such as when releasing the brake pedal while on a slope under the following conditions:

- While engine idling is stopped (prevents the vehicle from rolling back)
- When the engine restarts after releasing the brake pedal (prevents the vehicle's sudden movement due to vehicle creep), sudden movement of the vehicle is prevented by controlling the brakes.

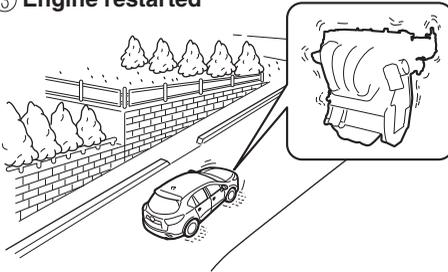
① Release foot from brake pedal



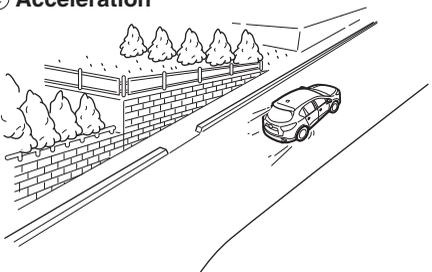
② Vehicle brake force maintained



③ Engine restarted



④ Acceleration



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the vehicle roll prevention function.

- The vehicle roll prevention function is a supplementary function which operates for a maximum of 2 seconds after releasing the brake pedal from an engine idling stop condition. Over reliance on the system may result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly accelerate. Before starting to drive the vehicle, always confirm the safety of the surroundings and operate the selector lever, brake pedal, and accelerator pedal appropriately. Note that the vehicle may move suddenly depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something.

Start/Stop Engine

- *Note that the vehicle may move suddenly after the vehicle roll prevention function is released while the vehicle is under the following conditions:*
 - *The selector lever is in the N position.*
 - *If the selector lever is shifted to the N position and the brake pedal is released while the i-stop function is operating, the brake force is gradually released. To accelerate the vehicle, release the brake pedal after the engine restarts and shift the selector lever to a position other than the N position.*

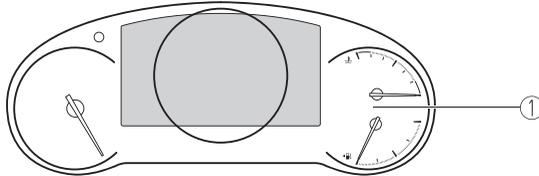
NOTE

- *When the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade, the vehicle roll prevention function does not operate because engine idling is not stopped.*
- *The brake pedal response may change, sound may occur from the brakes, or the brake pedal could vibrate from the operation of the vehicle roll prevention function. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

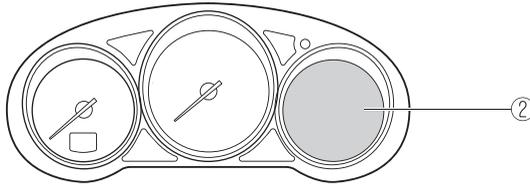
Instrument Cluster and Display

Instrument Cluster and Display

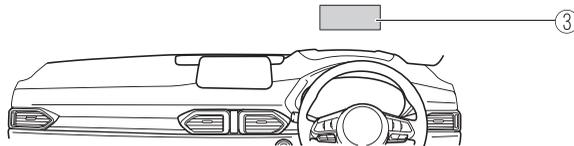
**Instrument Cluster
Type A**



Type B



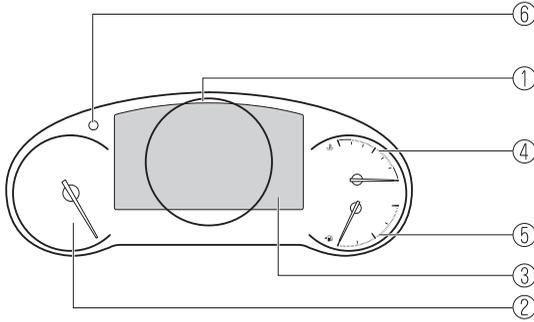
Active Driving Display



① Instrument Cluster (Type A).....	page 4-20
② Instrument Cluster (Type B).....	page 4-38
③ Active Driving Display.....	page 4-55

Instrument Cluster and Display

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



- ① Speedometer..... page 4-20
- ② Tachometer..... page 4-20
- ③ Multi-information Display (Type A)..... page 4-21
- ④ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge..... page 4-24
- ⑤ Fuel Gauge..... page 4-25
- ⑥ Instrument Panel Illumination..... page 4-25

Free/Open Source Software Information

This product includes free/open sources. Information about the licensing and source code is available at the following URL.

https://www.nippon-seiki.co.jp/business_ic_meter/

▼ Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

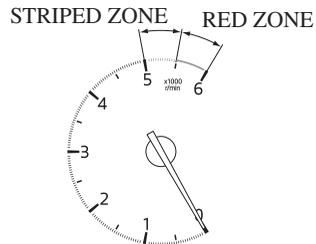
▼ Tachometer

The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).



Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE.

This may cause severe engine damage.

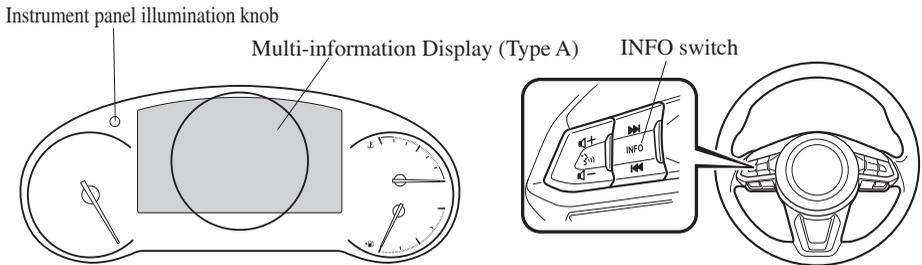


NOTE

When the tachometer needle enters the STRIPED ZONE, this indicates to the driver that the gears should be shifted before entering the RED ZONE.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Multi-information Display (Type A)



The multi-information display indicates the following information.

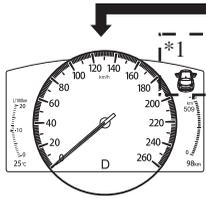
- Speedometer
- Odometer
- Trip meter
- Outside temperature
- Distance-to-empty
- Average fuel economy
- Current fuel economy
- Maintenance Monitor
- Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) Display
- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) System Display
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display
- Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display
- Vehicle Speed Alarm
- Door-Ajar/Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication
- Message Display

Instrument Cluster and Display

The screen content changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.

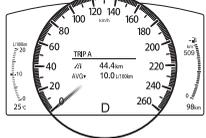
Press the INFO switch

Basic display



Press the INFO switch ↓

Trip Meter A display



Press the INFO switch ↓

Trip Meter B display

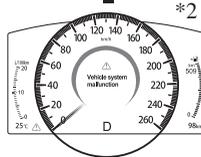


Press the INFO switch ↓

i-ACTIVSENSE display

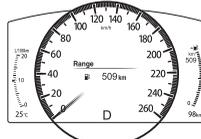


Press the INFO switch



Warning message display

Press the INFO switch ↑



Distance-to-empty display

Press the INFO switch ↑



Maintenance Monitor display

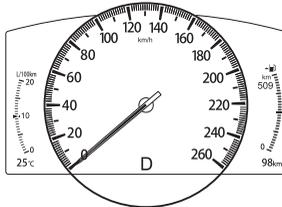
*1: Displayed when opening/closing door/Liftgate.

*2: Displayed only when a warning occurs.

Instrument Cluster and Display

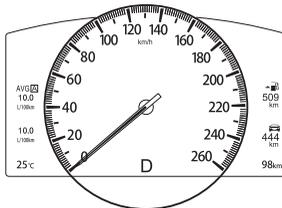
The screen content changes each time the instrument panel illumination knob is pressed and held.

Gauge indication



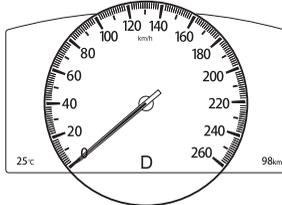
Press and hold instrument panel illumination knob

Numerical indication



Press and hold instrument panel illumination knob

Display off

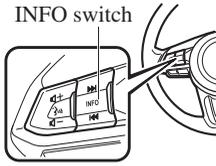


Press and hold instrument panel illumination knob

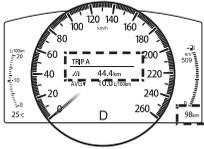
Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector

The odometer is constantly displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched ON, and the TRIP A or TRIP B screen can be displayed by operating the INFO switch.



Trip Meter A display



Press the INFO switch ↓

Trip Meter B display



Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The driving distance for a specified interval is indicated. Two types (TRIP A, TRIP B) of interval distance and the average fuel economy for each can be measured.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip

meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

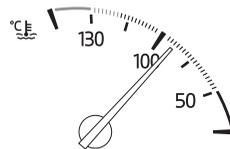
The trip meter and average fuel economy can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 seconds or more while in each mode.

NOTE

- Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).
- The trip record will be erased when:
 - The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).
 - The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).

▼ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. The blue range of the gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is low, and the red range of the gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high and overheating.



Instrument Cluster and Display

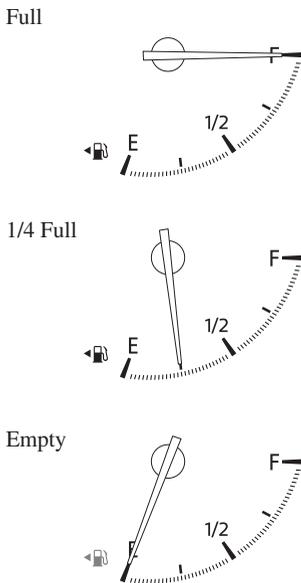
CAUTION

If the engine coolant temperature gauge needle is in the red range, there is the possibility of overheating. Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down.

Refer to *Overheating* on page 7-17.

▼ Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.



If the low fuel warning light illuminates or the fuel level is very low, refuel as soon as possible.

If inconsistency in engine performance or stalling occurs due to low fuel level conditions, refuel the vehicle as soon as

possible and add at least 10 L (2.7 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

Refer to *Taking Action* on page 7-33.

NOTE

- After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.
- The direction of the arrow () indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.

▼ Instrument Panel Illumination

When the lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed. However, when the light sensor detects that the surrounding area is bright such as when the lights are turned on in the daytime, the instrument panel illumination does not dim.

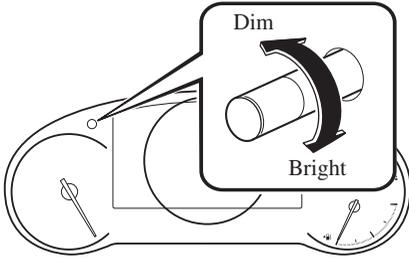
NOTE

- When the ignition is switched ON in the early evening or at dusk, the instrument panel illumination is dimmed for several seconds until the light sensor detects the brightness of the surrounding area, however, the dimming may cancel after the brightness is detected.
- When the lights are turned on, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on. Refer to *Headlights* on page 4-67.

The brightness of the instrument cluster and instrument panel illuminations can be adjusted by rotating the knob.

Instrument Cluster and Display

- The brightness decreases by rotating the knob to the left. A beep sound will be heard when the knob has been rotated to the maximum dim position.
- The brightness increases by rotating the knob to the right.



Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by rotating the instrument panel illumination knob to the right until a beep sound is heard while the instrument cluster is dimmed with the ignition switched ON. If the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, cancel the illumination dimmer.

NOTE

- The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by pressing the instrument panel illumination knob. (Without speed unit selector)
- When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the instrument cluster cannot be dimmed even if the lights are turned on.
- When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the screen in the centre display switches to constant display of the daytime screen.

▼ Outside Temperature Display

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.

25°C

NOTE

- Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:
 - Significantly cold or hot temperatures.
 - Sudden changes in outside temperature.
 - The vehicle is parked.
 - The vehicle is driven at low speeds.

Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

NOTE

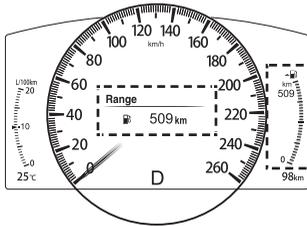
When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Distance-to-empty

This displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.



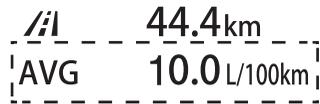
NOTE

- Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.
- The display will not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.
- The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge indicating the remaining fuel supply disappear.
- If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.

▼ Average Fuel Economy

The average fuel economy is calculated every minute from the total travelled distance on the trip meter and the total fuel consumption, and the average fuel economy for either TRIP A or TRIP B is displayed.

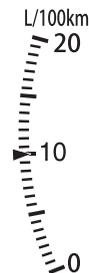
TRIP A



The average fuel economy and trip meters can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 seconds or more while in each mode. After the data is cleared, the fuel consumption is recalculated and the --- L/100 km (--- mpg) for the 1 minute prior to it being displayed is indicated.

▼ Current Fuel Economy

This displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.



NOTE

- Indicates the 0 position when the vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or slower.
- The arrow on the scale indicates the average fuel economy.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Vehicle Speed Alarm

In this mode, the current setting for the vehicle speed alarm is displayed. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

NOTE

The vehicle speed alarm display is activated at the same time the beep sound is heard.



Speed Warning

100 km/h

The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the centre display.

NOTE

Always set the vehicle speed according to the laws and regulations of the country/city in which the vehicle is driven. In addition, always verify the speed of the vehicle using the speedometer.

▼ Maintenance Monitor

The following maintenance period notifications can be displayed by turning the Maintenance Monitor on.

- Scheduled Maintenance
- Tyre Rotation
- Oil Change

When the remaining days to the maintenance period is 15 days or less, or the remaining distance is 1,000 km (600 miles) or shorter, a message is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.



Service Soon

 500 km

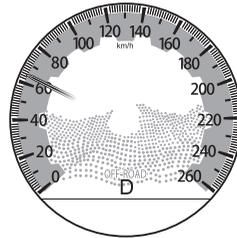
For the setting method and indications for the maintenance monitor, refer to the Maintenance Monitor.

Refer to the Information section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) Display*

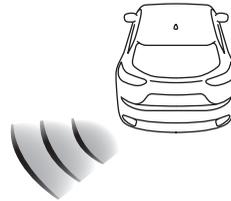
The display changes depending on the driving mode.

Off-road mode*



▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display

Displays the system status.

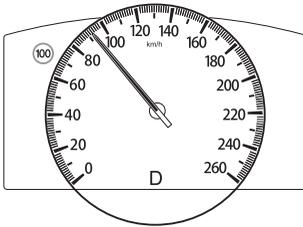


Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-111.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display

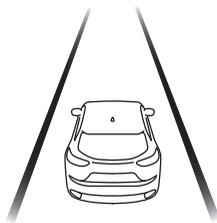
Displays the traffic sign.



Refer to Traffic Sign Display Indication on page 4-120.

▼ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display

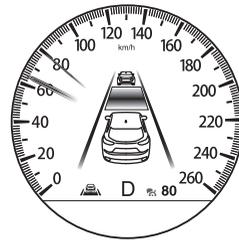
Displays the system status.



Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-163.

▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Display

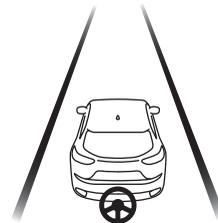
Displays the currently set system status.



Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) on page 4-133.

▼ Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display*

Displays the currently set system status.



Refer to Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) on page 4-146.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display

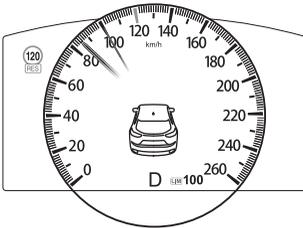
Displays the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-123.

▼ Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display

The setting status of the Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) is displayed.



Refer to Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) on page 4-177.

▼ Message Display

A message such as the system operation status, a malfunction, or an abnormality is indicated.

Warning/indicator light in instrument cluster turns on/flashes or symbol is indicated on display at same time as message

Check the information regarding the warning/indicator light or indicated symbol.

Refer to If a Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-31.

Refer to If a Indication/Indicator Lights on page 4-33.

Message only is indicated on display

Follow the instructions indicated on the display. For the display content, refer to the next page.

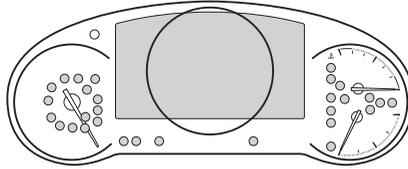
Refer to If a Message Indicated on Multi-information Display on page 7-39.

Instrument Cluster and Display

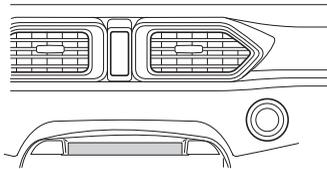
▼ Warning/Indicator Lights

Instrument Cluster varies depending on model and specifications.

Instrument Cluster



Centre of Instrument panel



Warning lights will appear in any of the highlighted areas

▼ Warning Indication/Warning Lights

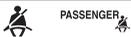
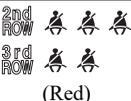
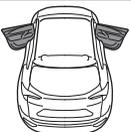
These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Warning	Page
	Brake System Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	ABS Warning Light* ¹	Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning 7-23
		ABS warning 7-26
	Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	Engine Oil Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication	7-23
	Power Steering Malfunction Indication	7-23
	Master Warning Indication/Warning Light	7-26

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Check Engine Light* ¹	7-26
i-stop (Amber)	i-stop Warning Light* ¹	7-26
AT	Automatic Transaxle Warning Indication	7-26
4WD	*AWD Warning Indication	7-26
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Active Bonnet Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light* ¹	Flashing 7-26
		Turns on 7-33
 (Amber/White)	KEY Warning Indication	Amber 7-26
		White 7-33
 (Amber)	Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication	7-26
 (Amber)	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication	7-26
 (Amber)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Warning Indication	7-26
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Warning Indication	7-26
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication	7-26
	LED Headlight Warning Light* ¹	7-26

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication	7-33
	Low Fuel Warning Indication/Warning Light	7-33
	Engine Oil Level Warning Light*1	7-33
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)	7-33
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat) (Red)	7-33
	Door-Ajar Warning Indication	7-33
	Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication	7-33
	Door-Ajar Warning Light	7-33

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Indication/Indicator Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Seat Belt Indicator Light (Rear seat) (Green)	2-40
	Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light*1	2-79
	i-stop Indicator Light (Green)	4-15

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Security Indicator Light* ¹	3-40
	Vehicle Speed Alarm Indication	4-28
	Wrench Indication	4-36
	Glow Indicator Light* ¹	4-37
DPF	Diesel Particulate Filter Indication	4-261
	Shift Position Indication	4-59
	Lights-On Indication/Indicator Light	4-67
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	Headlight High-Low Beam 4-69
		Flashing the Headlights 4-69
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	Turn and Lane-Change Signals 4-71
		Hazard Warning Flasher 4-77
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indication/Indicator Light* ¹ * ²	7-26
HOLD	AUTOHOLD Active Indicator Light* ¹	4-84
	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) indicator Light	4-144
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) indicator Light	4-161
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light* ¹	Traction Control System (TCS) 4-89
		Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-91
		Turns on 7-26

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
TCS OFF	*TCS OFF Indicator Light* ¹	4-89
	*Off-Road Traction Assist Indicator Light* ¹	4-93
SPORT	*Select Mode Indication	4-96
 (Green)	Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Indicator Light	4-110
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	Except malfunction 4-115
		Malfunction 7-26
 (White)	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Indication	4-128
 (White)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Main Indication	4-138
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Standby Indication	4-154
 (Green)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Set Indication	4-138
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Set Indication	4-154
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indication	4-165
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	4-175
	Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indication	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-187
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-191

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-187
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-191
		Smart Brake Support (SBS) System 4-193
 (White)	Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Main Indication	4-180
 (Green)	Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Set Indication	4-180

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

*2 The light turns on continuously when the parking brake is applied.

▼ Wrench Indication



The wrench indication is displayed under the following conditions.

- When the preset maintenance period has arrived.
Refer to the Information section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- When the engine oil replacement period has arrived.
- When the engine oil is deteriorated or exceeds the specified amount.
- When fuel filter (sedimentor) draining is required. Consult an expert repairer (we

recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *The wrench indication may display earlier than the preset period depending on vehicle usage conditions.*
- *Whenever the engine oil is replaced, a reset of the vehicle engine control unit is necessary.
An expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), will be able to reset the engine control unit or see page 6-14 for the Vehicle engine control unit reset procedure.*

▼ Glow Indicator Light

When the ignition is switched ON, the glow indicator light turns on. The glow indicator light turns off when preheating is finished.

A problem in the system might be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

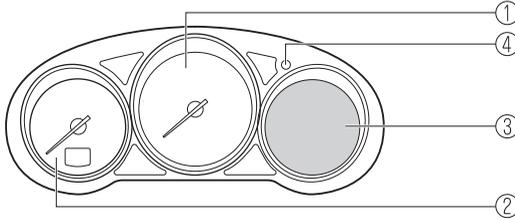
- The glow indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON or it remains on.
- The glow indicator light is flashing.

NOTE

If the vehicle is left with the ignition switched ON without starting the engine and a long period of time has elapsed since preheating finished, the preheating may be performed again and the glow indicator light may turn on.

Instrument Cluster and Display

Instrument Cluster (Type B)



- ① Speedometer..... page 4-38
- ② Tachometer..... page 4-38
- ③ Multi-information Display (Type B)..... page 4-39
- ④ Instrument Panel Illumination..... page 4-42

▼ Speedometer

The speedometer indicates the speed of the vehicle.

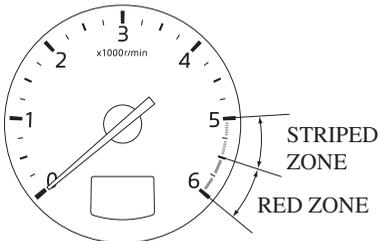
▼ Tachometer

The tachometer shows engine speed in thousands of revolutions per minute (rpm).



Do not run the engine with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE.

This may cause severe engine damage.

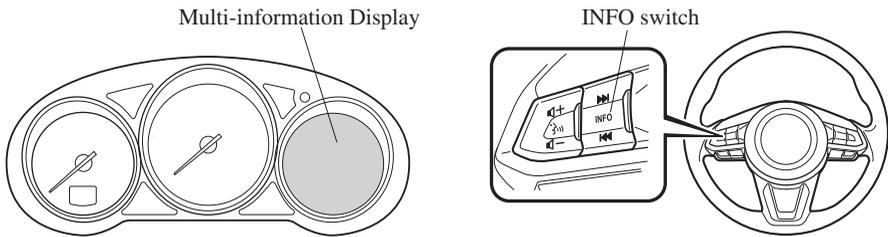


NOTE

When the tachometer needle enters the STRIPED ZONE, this indicates to the driver that the gears should be shifted before entering the RED ZONE.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Multi-information Display (Type B)



The multi-information display indicates the following information.

- Odometer
- Trip meter
- Engine coolant temperature gauge
- Fuel gauge
- Outside temperature
- Distance-to-empty
- Average fuel economy
- Current fuel economy
- Maintenance Monitor
- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) System Display
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display
- Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display
- Vehicle Speed Alarm
- Message Display

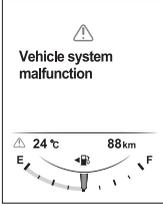
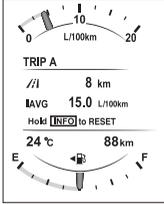
Instrument Cluster and Display

The screen content changes each time the INFO switch is pressed.

Press the INFO switch

*1

Current Fuel Economy, Trip Meter A, Average Fuel Economy, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge

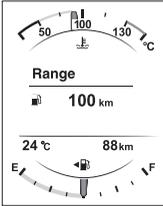


Warning message, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge

Press the INFO switch ↓

↑ Press the INFO switch

Current Fuel Economy, Trip Meter B, Average Fuel Economy, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge

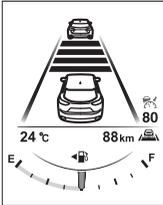
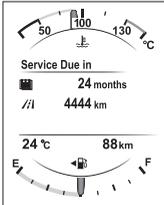


Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge, Distance-to-empty, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge

Press the INFO switch ↓

↑ Press the INFO switch

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge, Maintenance Monitor, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge



i-ACTIVSENSE display, Outside Temperature, Odometer, Fuel Gauge

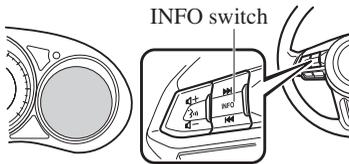
Press the INFO switch

*1: Displayed only when a warning occurs.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Odometer, Trip Meter and Trip Meter Selector

The odometer is constantly displayed on the screen when the ignition is switched ON, and the TRIP A or TRIP B screen can be displayed by operating the INFO switch.



Odometer, Trip meter A	TRIP A	
	//I	8 km
	IAVG	10.5 L/100km
	Hold INFO to RESET	
	88km	

Press the INFO switch ↓

Odometer, Trip meter B	TRIP B	
	//I	10 km
	IAVG	10.5 L/100km
	Hold INFO to RESET	
	88km	

Odometer

The odometer records the total distance the vehicle has been driven.

Trip meter

The driving distance for a specified interval is indicated. Two types (TRIP A, TRIP B) of interval distance and the average fuel economy for each can be measured.

For instance, trip meter A can record the distance from the point of origin, and trip

meter B can record the distance from where the fuel tank is filled.

When trip meter A is selected, TRIP A will be displayed. When trip meter B is selected, TRIP B will be displayed.

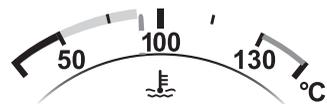
The trip meter and average fuel economy can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 seconds or more while in each mode.

NOTE

- Only the trip meters record tenths of kilometres (miles).
- The trip record will be erased when:
 - The power supply is interrupted (blown fuse or the battery is disconnected).
 - The vehicle is driven over 9999.9 km (mile).

▼ Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Displays the engine coolant temperature. The blue range of the gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is low, and the red range of the gauge indicates that the engine coolant temperature is high and overheating.



Instrument Cluster and Display

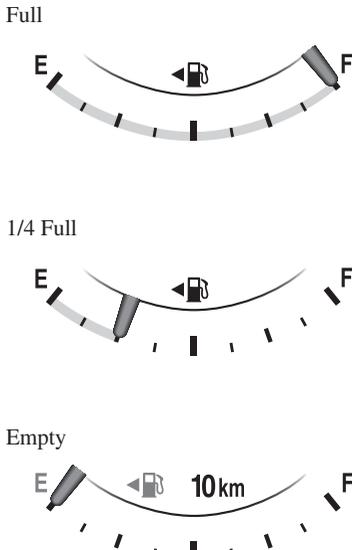
⚠ CAUTION

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light (red) flashes, there is a possibility of overheating. Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down.

Refer to Overheating on page 7-17.

▼ Fuel Gauge

The fuel gauge shows approximately how much fuel is remaining in the tank when the ignition is switched ON. We recommend keeping the tank over 1/4 full.



If the fuel level is low, (◀🚰) and (E) turn an amber colour. Refuel as soon as possible. If inconsistency in engine performance or stalling occurs due to low fuel level conditions, refuel the vehicle as soon as possible and add at least 10 L (2.7 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of fuel.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.

NOTE

- After refuelling, it may require some time for the indicator to stabilize. In addition, the indicator may deviate while driving on a slope or curve since the fuel moves in the tank.
- The direction of the arrow (◀🚰) indicates that the fuel-filler flap is on the left side of the vehicle.

▼ Instrument Panel Illumination

When the lights are turned on with the ignition switched ON, the brightness of the instrument panel illumination is dimmed. However, when the light sensor detects that the surrounding area is bright such as when the lights are turned on in the daytime, the instrument panel illumination does not dim.

NOTE

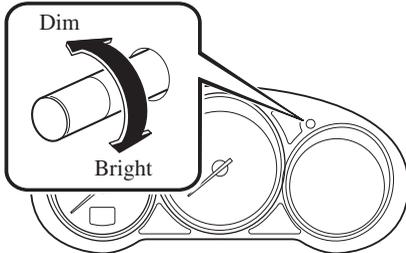
- When the ignition is switched ON in the early evening or at dusk, the instrument panel illumination is dimmed for several seconds until the light sensor detects the brightness of the surrounding area, however, the dimming may cancel after the brightness is detected.
- When the lights are turned on, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on. Refer to Headlights on page 4-67.

The brightness of the instrument cluster and instrument panel illuminations can be adjusted by rotating the knob.

- The brightness decreases by rotating the knob to the left. A beep sound will be heard when the knob has been rotated to the maximum dim position.

Instrument Cluster and Display

- The brightness increases by rotating the knob to the right.



Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by rotating the instrument panel illumination knob to the right until a beep sound is heard while the instrument cluster is dimmed with the ignition switched ON. If the instrument cluster's visibility is reduced due to glare from surrounding brightness, cancel the illumination dimmer.

NOTE

- *The illumination dimmer can be cancelled by pressing the instrument panel illumination knob.*
- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the instrument cluster cannot be dimmed even if the lights are turned on.*
- *When the illumination dimmer is cancelled, the screen in the centre display switches to constant display of the daytime screen.*

▼ **Outside Temperature Display**

When the ignition is switched ON, the outside temperature is displayed.

4 °C

NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the outside temperature display may differ from the actual outside temperature depending on the surroundings and vehicle conditions:*
 - *Significantly cold or hot temperatures.*
 - *Sudden changes in outside temperature.*
 - *The vehicle is parked.*
 - *The vehicle is driven at low speeds.*

Changing the Temperature Unit of the Outside Temperature Display

The outside temperature unit can be switched between Celsius and Fahrenheit. Settings can be changed by operating the centre display screen. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

NOTE

When the temperature unit indicated in the outside temperature display is changed, the temperature unit indicated in the engine coolant gauge display changes in conjunction with it.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Distance-to-empty

This displays the approximate distance you can travel on the remaining fuel based on the fuel economy.

The distance-to-empty will be calculated and displayed every second.

Range



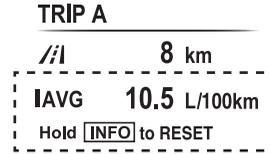
100 km

NOTE

- Even though the distance-to-empty display may indicate a sufficient amount of remaining driving distance before refuelling is required, refuel as soon as possible if the fuel level is very low or the low fuel warning light illuminates.
- The display will not change unless you add more than approximately 9 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal) of fuel.
- The distance-to-empty is the approximate remaining distance the vehicle can be driven until all the graduation marks in the fuel gauge indicating the remaining fuel supply disappear.
- If there is no past fuel economy information such as after first purchasing your vehicle or the information is deleted when the battery leads are disconnected, the actual distance-to empty/range may differ from the amount indicated.

▼ Average Fuel Economy

The average fuel economy is calculated every minute from the total travelled distance on the trip meter and the total fuel consumption, and the average fuel economy for either TRIP A or TRIP B is displayed.



88km

The average fuel economy and trip meters can be reset by pressing the INFO switch for 1.5 seconds or more while in each mode. After the data is cleared, the fuel consumption is recalculated and the - - - L/100 km (- - - mpg) for the 1 minute prior to it being displayed is indicated.

▼ Current Fuel Economy

This displays the current fuel economy by calculating the amount of fuel consumption and the distance travelled.



NOTE

Indicates the 0 position when the vehicle speed is about 5 km/h (3 mph) or slower.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Maintenance Monitor

The following maintenance period notifications can be displayed by turning the Maintenance Monitor on.

- Scheduled Maintenance
- Tyre Rotation
- Oil Change

When the remaining days to the maintenance period is 15 days or less, or the remaining distance is 1,000 km (600 miles) or shorter, a message is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.



Service Soon

// 500 km

For the setting method and indications for the maintenance monitor, refer to the Maintenance Monitor.

Refer to the Information section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Vehicle Speed Alarm

In this mode, the current setting for the vehicle speed alarm is displayed. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

NOTE

The vehicle speed alarm display is activated at the same time the beep sound is heard.



Speed Warning

100 km/h

The vehicle speed alarm can be set using the centre display.

NOTE

Always set the vehicle speed according to the laws and regulations of the country/city in which the vehicle is driven. In addition, always verify the speed of the vehicle using the speedometer.

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display

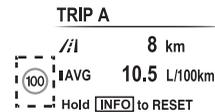
Displays the system status.



Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-111.

▼ Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display

Displays the traffic sign.

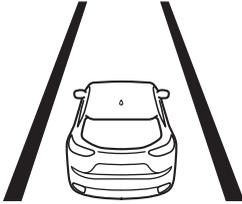


Refer to Traffic Sign Display Indication on page 4-120.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display

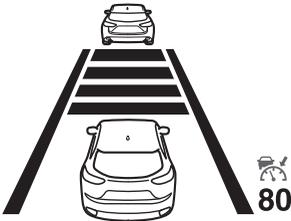
Displays the system status.



Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-163.

▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Display

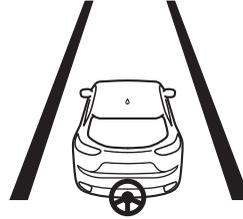
Displays the currently set system status.



Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) on page 4-133.

▼ Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display*

Displays the currently set system status.



Refer to Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) on page 4-146.

▼ Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display

Displays the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.



Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-123.

Instrument Cluster and Display

▼ Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display

The setting status of the Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) is displayed.



Refer to Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) on page 4-177.

▼ Message Display

A message such as the system operation status, a malfunction, or an abnormality is indicated.

Warning/indicator light in instrument cluster turns on/flashes or symbol is indicated on display at same time as message

Check the information regarding the warning/indicator light or indicated symbol.

Refer to If a Warning Indication/Warning Lights on page 4-48.

Refer to If a Indication/Indicator Lights on page 4-50.

Message only is indicated on display

Follow the instructions indicated on the display. For the display content, refer to the next page.

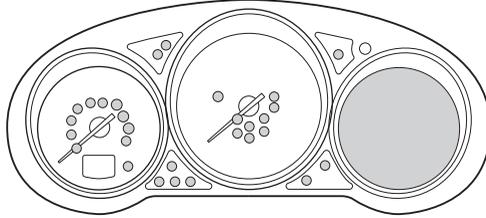
Refer to If a Message Indicated on Multi-information Display on page 7-39.

Instrument Cluster and Display

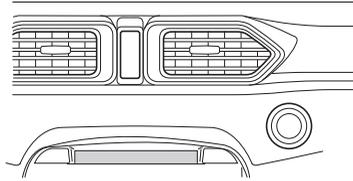
▼ Warning/Indicator Lights

Instrument Cluster varies depending on model and specifications.

Instrument Cluster



Centre of Instrument panel



▼ Warning Indication/Warning Lights

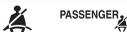
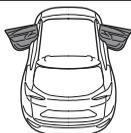
These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Warning	Page
	Brake System Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	ABS Warning Light* ¹	Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning 7-23
		ABS warning 7-26
	Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	Engine Oil Warning Light* ¹	7-23
 (Red)	High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Light* ¹	7-23
	Power Steering Malfunction Indication	7-23

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
	Master Warning Indication/Warning Light	7-26
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Check Engine Light* ¹	7-26
i-stop (Amber)	i-stop Warning Light* ¹	7-26
AT	Automatic Transaxle Warning Indication	7-26
4WD	*AWD Warning Indication	7-26
	Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Active Bonnet Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light* ¹	Flashing 7-26
		Turns on 7-33
 (Amber/White)	KEY Warning Indication	Amber 7-26
		White 7-33
 (Amber)	High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Indication/Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication	7-26
 (Amber)	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication	7-26
 (Amber)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Warning Indication	7-26
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Warning Indication	7-26
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication	7-26

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Warning	Page
	LED Headlight Warning Light* ¹	7-26
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication	7-33
	Low Fuel Warning Indication	7-33
	Engine Oil Level Warning Light* ¹	7-33
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)	7-33
	Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)	7-33
	Door-Ajar Warning Indication	7-33
	Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication	7-33

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Indication/Indicator Lights

These lights turn on or flash to notify the user of the system operation status or a system malfunction.

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Seat Belt Indicator Light (Rear seat)	2-40
	Front Passenger Air Bag Deactivation Indicator Light* ¹	2-79
	i-stop Indicator Light	4-15

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Security Indicator Light* ¹	3-40
	Vehicle Speed Alarm Indication	4-45
	Wrench Indication	4-53
 (Blue)	Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light	4-54
	*Glow Indicator Light* ¹	4-54
DPF	*Diesel Particulate Filter Indication	4-261
	Shift Position Indication	4-59
	Lights-On Indication/Indicator Light	4-67
	Headlight High-Beam Indicator Light	Headlight High-Low Beam 4-69
		Flashing the Headlights 4-69
	Direction Indicator/Hazard Warning Indicator Lights	Turn and Lane-Change Signals 4-71
		Hazard Warning Flasher 4-77
	Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indication/Indicator Light* ¹ * ²	7-26
HOLD	AUTOHOLD Active Indicator Light* ¹	4-84
	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) indicator Light	4-144
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Indicator Light	4-161

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
	TCS/DSC Indicator Light* ¹	Traction Control System (TCS) 4-89
		Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) 4-91
		Turns on 7-26
TCS OFF	*TCS OFF Indicator Light* ¹	4-89
	*Off-Road Traction Assist Indicator Light* ¹	4-93
SPORT	*Select Mode Indication	4-96
 (Green)	High Beam Control System (HBC) Indicator Light	4-107
	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	Except malfunction 4-115
		Malfunction 7-26
 (White)	*Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Indication	4-128
 (White)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Main Indication	4-138
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Standby Indication	4-154
 (Green)	Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Set Indication	4-138
	*Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Set Indication	4-154
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Indication	4-165
	Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	4-175

Instrument Cluster and Display

Signal	Indicator	Page
	Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) Indication	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-187
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-191
	Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) OFF Indicator Light* ¹	Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) 4-187
		Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) 4-191
		Smart Brake Support (SBS) System 4-193
 (White)	Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Main Indication	4-180
 (Green)	Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Set Indication	4-180

*1 The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later or when the engine is started. If the light does not turn on or remains turned on, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

*2 The light turns on continuously when the parking brake is applied.

▼ Wrench Indication



The wrench indication is displayed under the following conditions.

- When the preset maintenance period has arrived.

Refer to the Information section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

- When the engine oil replacement period has arrived.
- **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**
 - When the engine oil is deteriorated or exceeds the specified amount.

Instrument Cluster and Display

- When fuel filter (sedimentor) draining is required. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *The wrench indication may display earlier than the preset period depending on vehicle usage conditions.*
- *Whenever the engine oil is replaced, a reset of the vehicle engine control unit is necessary.*

An expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), will be able to reset the engine control unit or see page 6-14 for the Vehicle engine control unit reset procedure.

▼ **Low Engine Coolant Temperature Indicator Light (Blue)**



The light illuminates continuously when the engine coolant temperature is low and turns off after the engine is warm.

▼ **Glow Indicator Light (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**



When the ignition is switched ON, the glow indicator light turns on. The glow

indicator light turns off when preheating is finished.

A problem in the system might be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

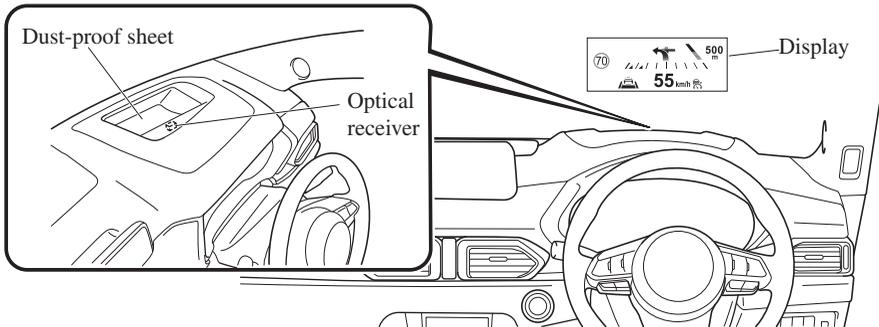
- The glow indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON or it remains on.
- The glow indicator light is flashing.

NOTE

If the vehicle is left with the ignition switched ON without starting the engine and a long period of time has elapsed since preheating finished, the preheating may be performed again and the glow indicator light may turn on.

Instrument Cluster and Display

Active Driving Display



⚠ WARNING

Always adjust the display brightness and position with the vehicle stopped:

Adjusting the display brightness and position while driving the vehicle is dangerous as doing so could distract your attention from the road ahead and lead to an accident.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not place beverages near the active driving display. If water or other liquids are splashed on the active driving display, it could cause damage.
- Do not place objects above the active driving display or apply stickers to the dust-proof sheet/optical receiver as they will cause interference.
- A sensor is integrated to control the display's luminosity. If the optical receiver is covered, the display's luminosity will lower making the display difficult to view.
- Do not allow intense light to hit the optical receiver. Otherwise, it could cause damage.

NOTE

- Wearing polarized sunglasses will reduce the visibility of the active driving display due to the characteristics of the display.
- If the battery has been removed and re-installed or the battery voltage is low, the adjusted position may deviate.
- The display may be difficult to view or temporarily affected by weather conditions such as rain, snow, light, and temperature.
- If the audio system is removed, the active driving display cannot be operated.

The active driving display indicates the following information:

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Operation Conditions and Warnings

Instrument Cluster and Display

Refer to Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) on page 4-111.

- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Warnings
Refer to Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) on page 4-123.
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) traffic signs and Warnings
Refer to Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) on page 4-116.
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)
Operation Conditions and Warnings
Refer to Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) on page 4-133.
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Operation Conditions and Warnings
Refer to Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) on page 4-146.
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Operation Conditions and Warnings
Refer to Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) on page 4-163.
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) Warnings
Refer to Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) on page 4-185.
- Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) Operation Conditions
Refer to Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) on page 4-188.
- Smart Brake Support (SBS) Warnings
Refer to Smart Brake Support (SBS) on page 4-192.
- Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Operation Conditions and Warnings
Refer to Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) on page 4-177.
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warnings
Refer to Driver Attention Alert (DAA) on page 4-127.
- Navigation Guidance
- Speed limit indicator
- Vehicle Speed

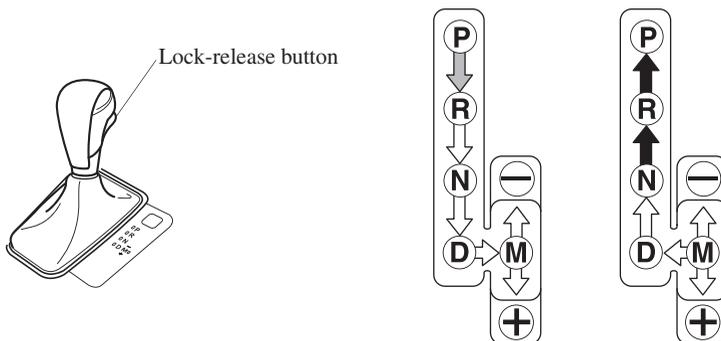
The active driving display settings can be changed or adjusted.

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *The desired driving position (display position, brightness level, display information) can be called up after programming the position.*
Refer to Driving Position Memory on page 2-12.

Automatic Transaxle Controls



Various Lockouts:

- ➔ Indicates that you must depress the brake pedal and hold in the lock-release button to shift (The ignition must be switched ON).
- ➡ Indicates the selector lever can be shifted freely into any position.
- ➡ Indicates that you must hold in the lock-release button to shift.

NOTE

The Sport AT has an option that is not included in the traditional automatic transaxle that gives the driver the option of selecting each gear instead of leaving it to the transaxle to shift gears. Even if you intend to use the automatic transaxle functions as a traditional automatic, you should also be aware that you can inadvertently shift into manual shift mode and an inappropriate gear may be retained as the vehicle speed increases. If you notice the engine speed going higher or hear the engine racing, confirm you have not accidentally slipped into manual shift mode (page 4-60).

Automatic Transaxle

Shift-Lock System

The shift-lock system prevents shifting out of P unless the brake pedal is depressed.

To shift from P:

1. Depress and hold the brake pedal.
2. Start the engine.
3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

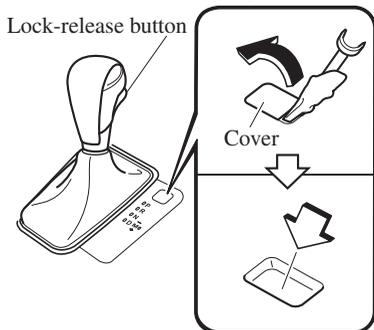
NOTE

- When the ignition is switched to ACC or the ignition is switched off, the selector lever cannot be shifted from P position.
- The ignition cannot be switched to OFF if the selector lever is not in P position.

▼ Shift-Lock Override

If the selector lever will not move from P using the proper shift procedure, continue to hold down the brake pedal.

1. Remove the shift-lock override cover using a cloth-wrapped flat head screwdriver.
2. Insert a screwdriver and push it down.



3. Press and hold the lock-release button.
4. Move the selector lever.

Take the vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the system checked.

Transaxle Ranges

- The shift position indication in the instrument cluster illuminates. Refer to Indication/Indicator Lights on page 4-33, 4-50.
- The selector lever must be in P or N position to operate the starter.

P (Park)

P locks the transaxle and prevents the front wheels from rotating.



Always set the selector lever to P position and set the parking brake:

Only setting the selector lever to the P position without using the parking brake to hold the vehicle is dangerous. If P fails to hold, the vehicle could move and cause an accident.



- Shifting into P, N or R while the vehicle is moving can damage your transaxle.
- Shifting into a driving gear or reverse when the engine is running faster than idle can damage the transaxle.

R (Reverse)

In position R, the vehicle moves only backward. You must be at a complete stop before shifting to or from R, except under rare circumstances as explained in Rocking the Vehicle (page 3-45).

NOTE

When the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON, the parking sensor system is activated and a beep sound is heard.

Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.

N (Neutral)

In N, the wheels and transaxle are not locked. The vehicle will roll freely even on the slightest incline unless the parking brake or brakes are on.



If the engine is running faster than idle, do not shift from N or P into a driving gear:

It's dangerous to shift from N or P into a driving gear when the engine is running faster than idle. If this is done, the vehicle could move suddenly, causing an accident or serious injury.

Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle:

Shifting into N while driving is dangerous. Engine braking cannot be applied when decelerating which could lead to an accident or serious injury.



Do not shift into N when driving the vehicle. Doing so can cause transaxle damage.

NOTE

Apply the parking brake or depress the brake pedal before moving the selector lever from N position to prevent the vehicle from moving unexpectedly.

D (Drive)

D is the normal driving position. From a stop, the transaxle will automatically shift through a 6-gear sequence.

M (Manual)

M is the manual shift mode position. Gears can be shifted up or down by operating the selector lever. Refer to Manual Shift Mode on page 4-60.

▼ Shift Position Indication**Instrument Cluster (Type A)****Instrument Cluster (Type B)**

The selector position is indicated when the ignition is switched ON.

Gear position indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication illuminates and the numeral for the selected gear is displayed.

Automatic Transaxle

▼ Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)

Active Adaptive Shift (AAS) automatically controls the transaxle shift points to best suit the road conditions and driver input. This improves driving feel. The transaxle may switch to AAS mode when driving up and down slopes, cornering, driving at high elevations, or depressing the accelerator pedal quickly while the selector lever is in the D position. Depending on the road and driving conditions/vehicle operations, gear shifting could be delayed or not occur, however, this does not indicate a problem because the AAS mode will maintain the optimum gear position.

Manual Shift Mode

The manual shift mode gives you the feel of driving a manual transaxle vehicle by allowing you to operate the selector lever manually. This allows you to control engine rpm and torque to the drive wheels much like a manual transaxle when more control is desired.

To change to manual shift mode, shift the lever from D to M.



NOTE

Changing to manual shift mode while driving will not damage the transaxle.

To return to automatic shift mode, shift the lever from M to D.

NOTE

- If you change to manual shift mode when the vehicle is stopped, the gear will shift to M1.*
- If you change to manual shift mode without depressing the accelerator pedal when driving in D range, 5th gear/6th gear, the gear will shift to M4/M5.*

▼ Indications

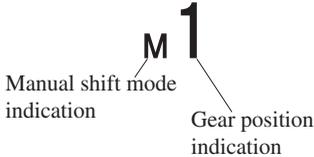
Manual shift mode indication

In manual shift mode, the “M” of the shift position indication in the instrument panel illuminates.

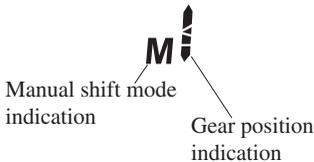
Gear position indication

The numeral for the selected gear illuminates.

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)



NOTE

- If the gears cannot be shifted down when driving at higher speeds, the gear position indication will flash twice to signal that the gears cannot be shifted down (to protect the transaxle).
- If the automatic transaxle fluid (ATF) temperature becomes too high, there is the possibility that the transaxle will switch to automatic shift mode, cancelling manual shift mode and turning off the gear position indication illumination. This is a normal function to protect the AT. After the ATF temperature has decreased, the gear position indication illumination turns back on and driving in manual shift mode is restored.

▼ Manually Shifting Up

You can shift gears up by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.

M1 → M2 → M3 → M4 → M5 → M6

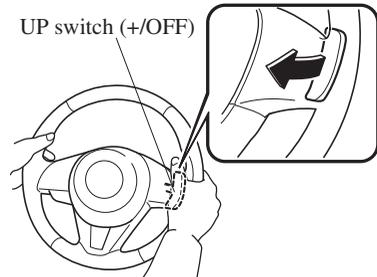
Using selector lever

To shift up to a higher gear, tap the selector lever back + once.



Using steering shift switch*

To shift up to a higher gear with the steering shift switches, pull the UP switch (+/OFF) toward you once with your fingers.



Automatic Transaxle

! WARNING

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:

Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

- When driving slowly, the gears may not shift up.
- Do not drive the vehicle with the tachometer needle in the RED ZONE while in manual shift mode. In addition, manual shift mode switches to automatic shift mode while the accelerator pedal is completely depressed. This function is cancelled while the TCS is turned off or the Off-Road Traction Assist is turned on. However, if the vehicle is continuously driven at a high rpm, the gears may automatically shift up to protect the engine.
- The steering shift switch can be used temporarily even if the selector lever is in the D position while driving. In addition, it returns to automatic shift mode when the UP switch (+/OFF) is pulled rearward for a sufficient amount of time.

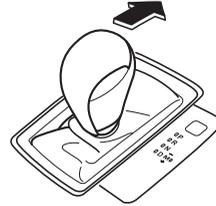
▼ Manually Shifting Down

You can shift gears down by operating the selector lever or the steering shift switches*.

M6 → M5 → M4 → M3 → M2 → M1

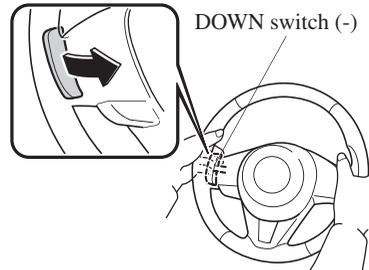
Using selector lever

To shift down to a lower gear, tap the selector lever forward — once.



Using steering shift switch*

To shift down to a lower gear with the steering shift switches, pull the DOWN switch — toward you once with your fingers.



! WARNING

Do not use engine braking on slippery road surfaces or at high speeds:

Shifting down while driving on wet, snowy, or frozen roads, or while driving at high speeds causes sudden engine braking, which is dangerous. The sudden change in tyre speed could cause the tyres to skid. This could lead to loss of vehicle control and an accident.

Keep your hands on the steering wheel rim when using fingers on the steering shift switches:

Putting your hands inside the rim of the steering wheel when using the steering shift switches is dangerous. If the driver's air bag were to deploy in a collision, your hands could be impacted causing injury.

NOTE

- When driving at high speeds, the gear may not shift down.
- During deceleration, the gear may automatically shift down depending on vehicle speed.
- When depressing the accelerator fully, the transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed. However, the gears do not kickdown while the TCS is turned off or the Off-Road Traction Assist is operating.

▼ Second Gear Fixed Mode

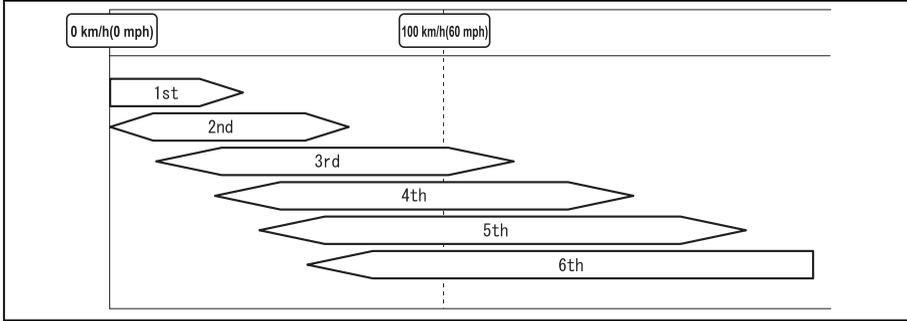
When the selector lever is moved back + while the vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6.2 mph) or less, the transaxle is set in the second gear fixed mode. The gear is fixed in second while in this mode for easier acceleration from a stop and driving on slippery roads such as snow-covered roads.

If the selector lever is moved back + or forward – while in the second gear fixed mode, the mode will be cancelled.

Automatic Transaxle

▼ Shift Gear (Shifting) Speed Limit

For each gear position while in the manual mode, the speed limit is set as follows: When the selector lever is operated within the range of the speed limit, the gear is shifted.



Shift up

The gear does not shift up while the vehicle speed is lower than the speed limit.

Shift down

The gear does not shift down while the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit. If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit and the gear does not shift down, the gear position indication flashes 2 times to notify the driver that the gear cannot be shifted.

Kickdown

When the accelerator pedal is depressed fully while driving, the gear shifts down. However, the gears do not kickdown while the TCS is turned off or the Off-Road Traction Assist is operating.

NOTE

The gear also shifts down using kickdown while in the second gear fixed mode.

Auto-shift down

The gear shifts down automatically depending on the vehicle speed during deceleration.

NOTE

If the vehicle comes to a stop while in the second gear fixed mode, the gear remains in second.

Direct Mode*

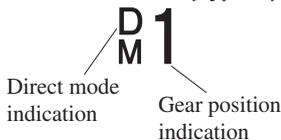
Direct mode can be used for temporarily switching gears by operating the steering shift switch while the vehicle is being driven with the selector lever in the D position.

While in direct mode, the D and M indication illuminate and the gear position in use is illuminated.

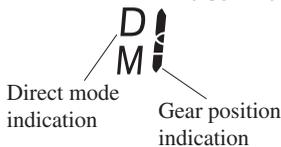
Direct mode is cancelled (released) under the following conditions.

- The UP switch (+/OFF) is pulled rearward for a certain amount of time or longer.
- The vehicle is driven for a certain amount of time or longer (time differs depending on the driving conditions while operating).
- The vehicle is stopped or moving at a slow speed.

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)



NOTE

Shifting up and down while in direct mode may not be possible depending on the vehicle speed. In addition, because direct mode is cancelled (released) depending on the rate of acceleration or if the accelerator is fully depressed, use of the manual shift mode is recommended if you need to drive the vehicle in a particular gear for long periods.

Driving Tips

WARNING

Do not let the vehicle move in a direction opposite to the direction selected by the selector lever:

Do not let the vehicle move backward with the selector lever in a forward position, or do not let the vehicle move forward with the selector lever in the reverse position. Otherwise, the engine may stop, causing the loss of the power brake and power steering functions, and make it difficult to control the vehicle which could result in an accident.

Passing

For extra power when passing another vehicle or climbing steep grades, depress the accelerator fully. The transaxle will shift to a lower gear, depending on vehicle speed.

NOTE

The accelerator pedal may initially feel heavy as it is being depressed, then feel lighter as it is depressed further. This change in pedal force aids the engine control system in determining how much the accelerator pedal has been depressed for performing kickdown, and functions to control whether or not kickdown should be performed.

Climbing steep grades from a stop

To climb a steep grade from a stopped position:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift to D or M1, depending on the load weight and grade steepness.

3. Release the brake pedal while gradually accelerating.

Descending steep grades

When descending a steep grade, shift to lower gears, depending on load weight and grade steepness. Descend slowly, using the brakes only occasionally to prevent them from overheating.

Switches and Controls

Lighting Control

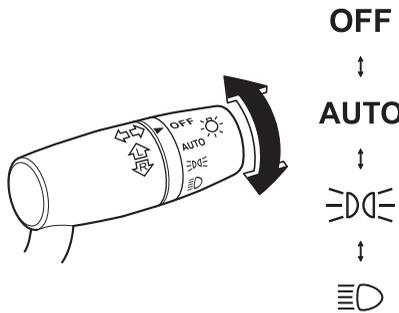
▼ Headlights

Turn the headlight switch to turn the headlights and other exterior lights on or off. When the tail lights, position lights, number plate lights are turned on, the lights-on indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



NOTE

- To prevent discharging the battery, do not leave the lights on while the engine is off unless safety requires them.
- Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).



Switch Position	OFF		AUTO		☰☽☰		☰☽	
	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF	ON	ACC or OFF
Headlights	Off	Off	Auto*2	Off	Off	Off	On	Off
Running lights*	On*1	Off	On*3	Off	Off	Off	Off	Off
Tail lights Position lights Number plate lights	Off	Off	Auto*2	On*4	On	On	On	On*4

*1 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven.

Switches and Controls

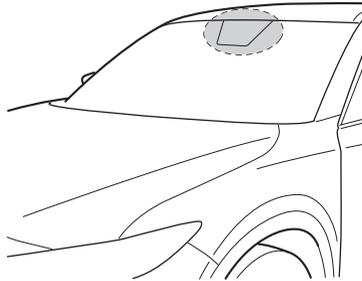
- *2 The lights are turned on by the auto light function.
- *3 The lights are turned on while the vehicle is driven, and turned off when the headlights are turned on by the auto light function.
- *4 The lights are turned on continuously if the ignition is switched from ON to any other position with the lights turned on. The lights are turned off when the driver's door is opened or 30 seconds have elapsed since the lights turned on.

Auto-light control

When the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON, the light sensor senses the surrounding lightness or darkness and automatically turns the headlights and other exterior lights on or off.



- *Do not shade the light sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the light sensor will not operate correctly.*



- *The light sensor also works as a rain sensor for the auto-wiper control. Keep hands and scrapers clear of the windscreen when the wiper lever is in the **AUTO** position and the ignition is switched ON as fingers could be pinched or the wipers and wiper blades damaged when the wipers activate automatically. If you are going to clean the windscreen, be sure the wipers are turned off completely — this is particularly important when clearing ice and snow — when it is particularly tempting to leave the engine running.*

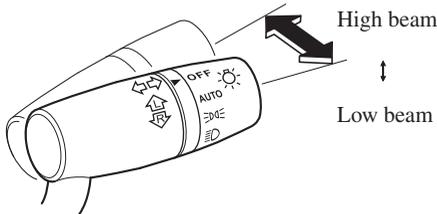
NOTE

- *The headlights and other exterior lights may not turn off immediately even if the surrounding area becomes well-lit because the light sensor determines that it is night time if the surrounding area is continuously dark for several minutes such as inside long tunnels, traffic jams inside tunnels, or in indoor parking lots.*
- *In this case, the lights turn off if the light switch is turned to the OFF position.*
- *The sensitivity of the auto-light control may be changed.*

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Headlight High-Low Beam

The headlights switch between high and low beams by moving the lever forward or backward.



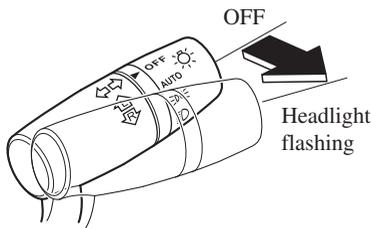
When the headlight high-beams are on, the headlight high-beam indicator light is turned on.



▼ Flashing the Headlights

Can be used when the ignition is switched ON.

To flash the headlights, pull the lever fully towards you (the headlight switch does not need to be on).



The headlight high-beam indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates

simultaneously. The lever will return to the normal position when released.



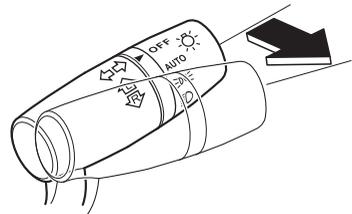
▼ Coming Home Light

The coming home light turns on the headlights (low beams) when the lever is operated.

To turn on the lights

When the lever is pulled with the ignition switched to ACC or OFF, the low beam headlights turn on.

The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed after all of the doors are closed.



NOTE

- The time until the headlights turn off after all of the doors are closed can be changed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- If no operations are done for 3 minutes after the lever is pulled, the headlights turn off.
- The headlights turn off if the lever is pulled again while the headlights are illuminated.

Switches and Controls

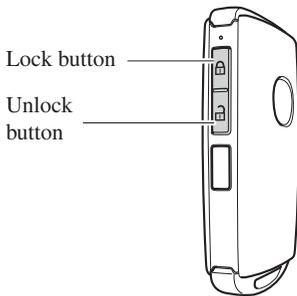
▼ Leaving Home Light

The leaving home light turns on the lights when the transmitter unlock button is pressed while away from the vehicle. The following lights turn on when the leaving home light is operated. Low beams, Position lights, Tail lights, Number plate lights.

To turn on the lights

When the ignition switch and the headlight switch are in the following conditions, the headlights will illuminate when the transmitter unlock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal. The headlights turn off after a certain period of time has elapsed (30 seconds).

- Ignition switch: off
- Headlight switch: AUTO, ㊦㊧, or ㊨



NOTE

- Operation of the leaving home light can be turned on or off. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- When the transmitter lock button is pressed and the vehicle receives the transmitter signal, the headlights turn off.

- When the headlight switch is turned to the OFF position, the headlights turn off.

▼ Headlight Levelling

The number of passengers and weight of cargo in the luggage compartment change the angle of the headlights.

The angle of the headlights will be automatically adjusted when turning on the headlights.

The warning/indicator light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Refer to Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

▼ Running Lights*

The running lights, which turn on while the vehicle is being driven during the daytime, are designed to notify on-coming vehicles or pedestrians of the presence of the vehicle.

The running lights turn on when the vehicle is driven and turn off when the parking brake is operated or the selector lever is shifted to the P position.

NOTE

The running lights can be deactivated. Refer to Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

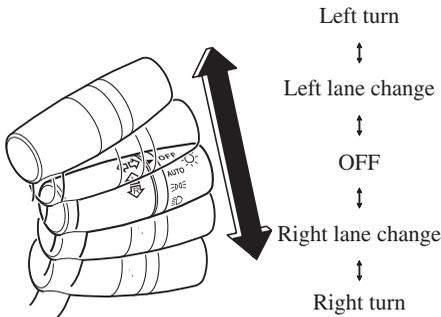
Turn and Lane-Change Signals

The ignition must be switched ON to use the turn and lane-change signals.

▼ Direction Indicators

Move the signal lever down (for a right turn) or up (for a left turn) to the stop position. The signal will self-cancel after the turn is completed.

If the indicator light continues to flash after a turn, manually return the lever to its original position.



The direction indicators in the instrument cluster flash according to the operation of the direction indicator lever to show which signal is working.



NOTE

· There may be a problem with the direction indicator lights if they do not flash but remain turned on, or they flash abnormally. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

· A personalised function is available to change the turn indicator sound volume. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Lane-Change Signals

Move the lever halfway toward the direction of the lane change—until the indicator flashes—and hold it there. It will return to the off position when released.

▼ Three-Flash Turn Signal

After releasing the direction indicator lever, the direction indicator flashes 3 times. The operation can be cancelled by moving the lever in the direction opposite to which it was operated.

NOTE

The three-flash turn signal function can be switched to operable/inoperable using the personalisation function. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Switches and Controls

Windscreen Wipers and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wipers.

! WARNING

Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:

Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

Only use windscreen washer fluid mixed with anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions:

Using windscreen washer fluid without anti-freeze protection in freezing weather conditions is dangerous as it could freeze on the windscreen and block your vision which could cause an accident. In addition, make sure the windscreen is sufficiently warmed using the defroster before spraying the washer fluid.

! CAUTION

- When the wipers are not used during freezing temperatures or for a long time, the wiper rubber may adhere to the glass. If the wipers are operated while adhered to the glass, it could damage the wiper rubber and motor.
- If the wipers are operated while the glass is dry, the glass could be scratched and the wiper rubber damaged. When the glass is dry, spray washer fluid before operating the wipers.

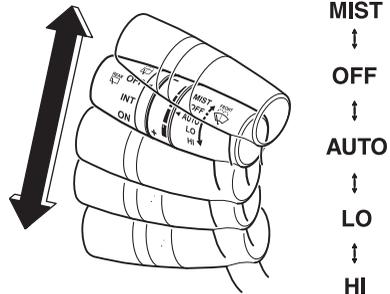
- If the amount of washer fluid spray is insufficient, do not use the washer switch. If the washer switch continues to be operated with no washer fluid being sprayed, it could lead to pump damage.

NOTE

If the windscreen wipers are operated under cold weather conditions or during snowfall, they could stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen. If the windscreen wipers stop due to accumulated snow on the windscreen, park the vehicle in a safe place, turn the wiper switch off, and then remove the accumulated snow. If the wiper switch is turned to another position other than OFF, the wipers will operate. If the wipers do not operate even though the wiper switch is turned to a position other than OFF, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

▼ Windscreen Wipers

Turn the wipers on by pressing the lever up or down.



Switch Position	Wiper operation
MIST	Operation while pulling up lever
OFF	Stop

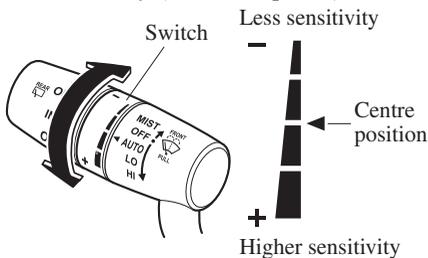
Switch Position	Wiper operation
AUTO	Auto control
LO	Low speed
HI	High speed

Auto-wiper control

When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the rain sensor senses the amount of rainfall on the windscreen and turns the wipers on or off automatically (off—intermittent—low speed—high speed).

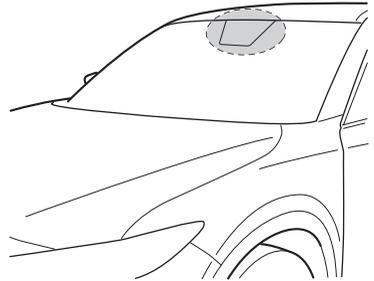
The sensitivity of the rain sensor can be adjusted by turning the switch on the wiper lever.

From the centre position (normal), rotate the switch upward for higher sensitivity (faster response) or rotate it downward for less sensitivity (slower response).



CAUTION

- Do not shade the rain sensor by adhering a sticker or a label on the windscreen. Otherwise the rain sensor will not operate correctly.



- When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windscreen wipers may operate automatically in the following cases:
 - The area of the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.
 - The windscreen or the rain sensor area in the cabin is hit.

When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, do not touch the windscreen or the windscreen wipers. Otherwise, the windscreen wipers will operate automatically which could catch your fingers or damage the windscreen wipers.

When removing ice or snow, or cleaning the windscreen, always make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Switches and Controls

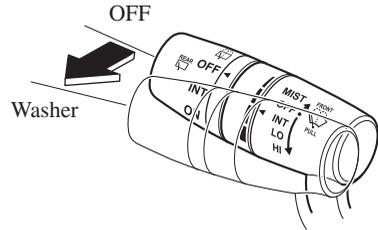
NOTE

- Switching the auto-wiper lever from the OFF to the AUTO position while driving activates the windscreen wipers once, after which they operate according to the rainfall amount.
- The auto-wiper control may not operate when the rain sensor temperature is about -10°C (14°F) or lower, or about 85°C (185°F) or higher.
- If the windscreen is coated with water repellent, the rain sensor may not be able to sense the amount of rainfall correctly and the auto-wiper control may not operate properly.
- If dirt or foreign matter (such as ice or matter containing salt water) adheres to the windscreen above the rain sensor, or if the windscreen is iced, it could cause the wipers to move automatically. However, if the wipers cannot remove this ice, dirt or foreign matter, the auto-wiper control will stop operation. In this case, set the wiper lever to the low speed position or high speed position for manual operation, or remove the ice, dirt or foreign matter by hand to restore the auto-wiper operation.
- If the auto-wiper lever is left in the AUTO position, the wipers could operate automatically from the effect of strong light sources, electromagnetic waves, or infrared light because the rain sensor uses an optical sensor. It is recommended that the auto-wiper lever be switched to the OFF position other than when driving the vehicle under rainy conditions.

- The auto-wiper control functions can be turned off. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Windscreen Washer

Pull the lever toward you and hold it to spray washer fluid.



NOTE

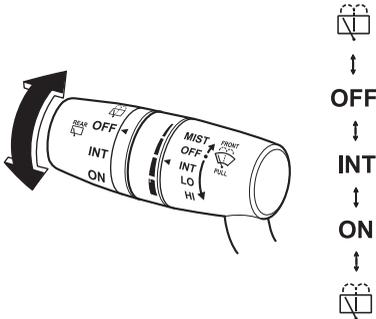
If the windscreen washer is turned on when the windscreen wipers are not operating, the windscreen wipers operate a few times.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-18). If the fluid level is normal, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Rear Window Wiper and Washer

The ignition must be switched ON to use the wiper.

▼ Rear Window Wiper



Turn the wiper on by turning the rear wiper/washer switch.

Switch Position	Wiper operation
OFF	Stop
INT	Intermittent
ON	Normal

▼ Rear Window Washer

To spray washer fluid, turn the rear wiper/washer switch to either of the  position. After the switch is released, the washer will stop.

If the washer does not work, inspect the fluid level (page 6-18). If the fluid level is normal and the washer still does not work, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

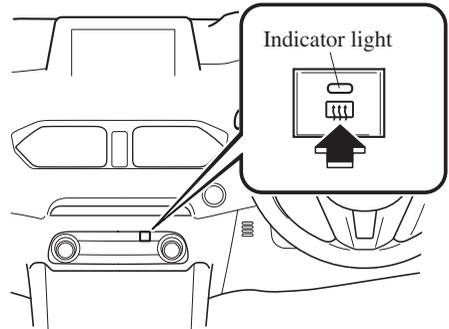
Rear Window Defogger

The rear window defogger clears fog from the rear window.

The ignition must be switched ON to use the defogger.

Press the switch to turn on the rear window defogger. The rear window defogger operates for about 15 minutes and then turns off automatically. The indicator light illuminates when the defogger is operating.

To turn off the rear window defogger before the 15 minutes has elapsed, press the switch again.



⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use sharp instruments or window cleaners with abrasives to clean the inside of the rear window surface. They may damage the defogger grid inside the window.

Switches and Controls

NOTE

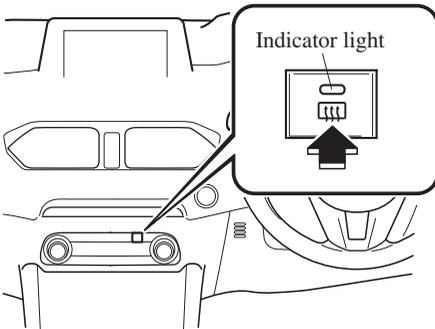
- This defogger is not designed for melting snow. If there is an accumulation of snow on the rear window, remove it before using the defogger.
- The rear window defogger setting can be changed. After changing the setting, the rear window defogger stops automatically after 15 minutes have elapsed and when the ambient temperature is high. When the ambient temperature is low, it continues to operate until the switch is pressed again.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Mirror Defogger

The mirror defoggers defrost the outside mirrors.

The mirror defoggers operate in conjunction with the rear window defogger.

To turn on the mirror defoggers, switch the ignition ON and press the rear window defogger switch (page 4-75).

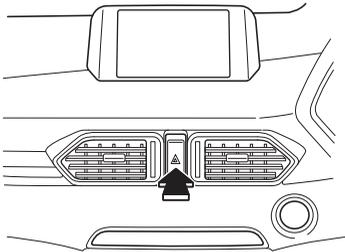


Horn

To sound the horn, press the  mark on the steering wheel.

Hazard Warning Flasher

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

NOTE

- The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.
- Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.
- If the brake pedal is depressed while driving on slippery roads, the emergency stop signal system could operate causing all the turn and lane change signals to flash. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-86.

- While the emergency stop signal system is operating, all the direction indicators automatically flash rapidly to caution the driver of a vehicle following behind your vehicle of a sudden braking situation. Refer to Emergency Stop Signal System on page 4-86.

Brake System

▼ Foot Brake

This vehicle has power-assisted brakes that adjust automatically through normal use.

Should power-assist fail, you can stop by applying greater force than normal to the brake pedal. But the distance required to stop will be greater than usual.

⚠ WARNING

Do not coast with the engine stalled or turned off, find a safe place to stop:

Coasting with the engine stalled or turned off is dangerous. Braking will require more effort, and the brake's power-assist could be depleted if you pump the brake. This will cause longer stopping distances or even an accident.

Shift to a lower gear when going down steep hills:

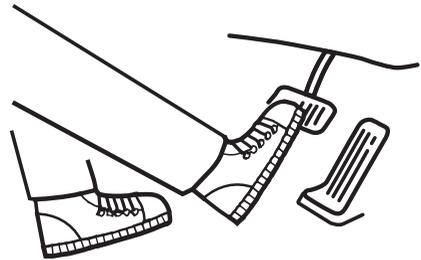
Driving with your foot continuously on the brake pedal or steadily applying the brakes for long distances is dangerous. This causes overheated brakes, resulting in longer stopping distances or even total brake failure. This could cause loss of vehicle control and a serious accident. Avoid continuous application of the brakes.

Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

⚠ CAUTION

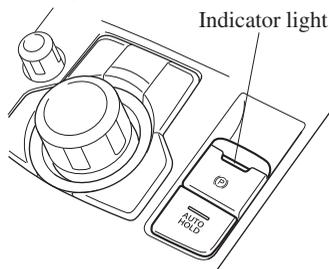
- Do not drive with your foot held on the brake pedal. Doing so could result in the following:
 - The brake parts will wear out more quickly.
 - The brakes can overheat and adversely affect brake performance.
- Always depress the brake pedal with the right foot. Applying the brakes with the unaccustomed left foot could slow your reaction time to an emergency situation resulting in insufficient braking operation.



- Wear shoes appropriate for driving in order to avoid your shoe contacting the brake pedal when depressing the accelerator pedal.

▼ Electric Parking Brake (EPB)

The EPB equipment applies the parking brake using an electric motor. When the parking brake is applied, the EPB switch indicator light turns on.

**⚠ WARNING****Do not drive the vehicle with the parking brake applied:**

If the vehicle is driven with the parking brake applied, the brake parts may generate heat and the brake system may not operate, leading to an accident. Before driving, release the parking brake and verify that the EPB indicator light is turned off.

NOTE

- The parking brake cannot be applied or released while the lead-acid battery is dead.
- If the EPB is repeatedly applied and released it may stop operating to prevent overheating of the motor. If this occurs, wait approx. 1 minute before operating the EPB switch again.
- An operation sound occurs when applying or releasing the parking brake, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.

- If the EPB is not used for long periods, an automatic inspection of the system is performed while the vehicle is parked. An operation sound can be heard, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- When the parking brake is applied and the ignition is switched OFF, an operation sound can be heard, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- The brake pedal may move while the parking brake is being applied or released, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- If the EPB switch is continually pulled while driving the vehicle, the parking brake will be applied and the EPB warning beep will be activated. When the switch is released, the parking brake is released and the beep stops.
- If the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched off or in ACC, the EPB indicator light in the instrument cluster and the indicator light in the switch may turn on for 15 seconds.
- When running the vehicle through an automatic car wash, it may be necessary to switch the ignition off with the parking brake released depending on the type of automatic car wash.

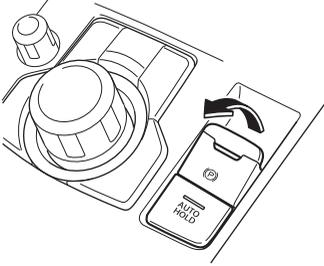
When applying the parking brake

The parking brake can be applied regardless of the ignition switch position. Securely depress the brake pedal and pull up the EPB switch.

The parking brake is applied and the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn on.

Brake

Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.

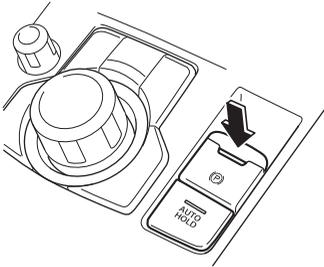


When releasing the parking brake

The parking brake can be released while the ignition is switched ON or the engine is running. When the parking brake is released, the EPB indicator light and the EPB switch indicator light turn off.

Parking brake manual release

Firmly depress the brake pedal and press the EPB switch.



If the EPB switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal, the display in the instrument cluster notifies the driver that the brake is not depressed. A message is displayed on the multi-information display in the instrument cluster.

Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display on page 7-39.

Parking brake automatic release

If the accelerator pedal is depressed with the parking brake applied and all of the following conditions met, the parking brake is released automatically.

- The engine is running.
- The driver's door is closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- Selector lever is in the D, M, or R position

NOTE

If something such as the driver's foot contacts the accelerator pedal with the engine running and the parking brake applied, the parking brake may be released automatically. If you do not intend to drive immediately, shift the selector lever to the P or N position.

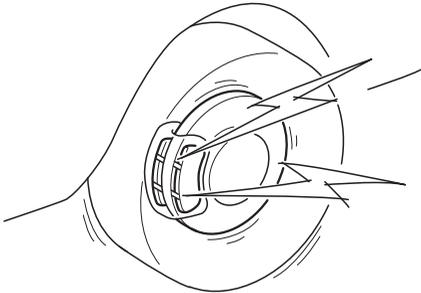
▼ Warning Light

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

▼ Brake Pad Wear Indicator

When the disc brake pads become worn, the built-in wear indicators contact the disc plates. This causes a screeching noise to warn that the pads should be replaced.



When you hear this noise, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

WARNING

Do not drive with worn disc pads:
Driving with worn disc pads is dangerous. The brakes could fail and cause a serious accident. As soon as you hear a screeching noise consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

In high humidity weather conditions, brake noises, such as brake squeak or brake squeal can be heard. It does not indicate a malfunction.

▼ Brake Assist

During emergency braking situations when it is necessary to depress the brake pedal with greater force, the brake assist system provides braking assistance, thus enhancing braking performance.

When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the brakes apply more firmly.

NOTE

- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, the pedal will feel softer but the brakes will apply more firmly. This is a normal effect of the brake assist operation and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *When the brake pedal is depressed hard or depressed more quickly, a motor/pump operation noise may be heard. This is a normal effect of the brake assist and does not indicate a malfunction.*
- *The brake assist equipment does not supersede the functionality of the vehicle's main braking system.*

AUTOHOLD

The AUTOHOLD function automatically holds the vehicle stopped, even if you take your foot off the brake pedal. This function can be best used while stopped in traffic or at a traffic light. The brakes are released when you start driving the vehicle.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the AUTOHOLD function:

The AUTOHOLD function is only designed to assist the brake operation while the vehicle is stopped. Neglecting to operate the brakes and relying only on the AUTOHOLD system is dangerous and could result in an unexpected accident if the vehicle were to suddenly move. Operate the brakes appropriately in accordance with the road and surrounding conditions. Note that the vehicle may move suddenly depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something.

Do not release your foot from the brake pedal while the vehicle is stopped on a steep grade:

Because there is a possibility of the vehicle not being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident.

Do not use the AUTOHOLD function on slippery roads such as icy or snow-covered roads, or unpaved roads:

Even if the vehicle is held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. Operate the accelerator pedal, brakes, or steering wheel appropriately as necessary.

Immediately depress the brake pedal in the following cases:

Because the AUTOHOLD function is cancelled forcibly, the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident.

➤ *[Brake Hold Unavailable Depress Brake to Hold Position] is displayed in the multi-information display and the warning sound is activated at the same time.*

Always apply the parking brake when parking the vehicle:

Not applying the parking brake when parking the vehicle is dangerous as the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. When parking the vehicle, shift the selector lever to the P position and apply the parking brake.

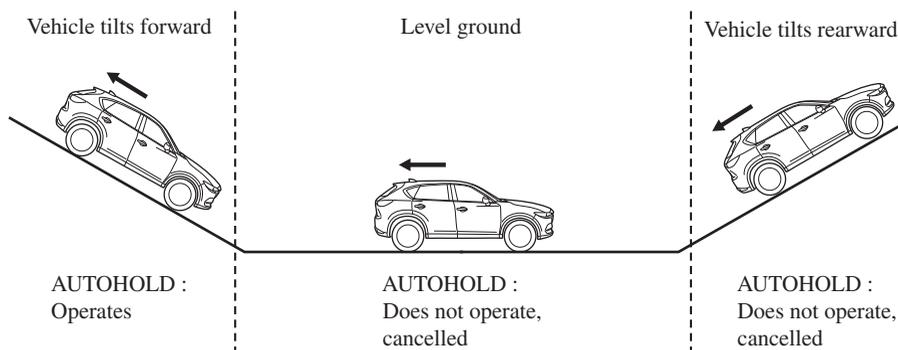
CAUTION

If you stop operating the accelerator pedal before the vehicle starts moving, the force holding the vehicle in the stopped position may weaken. Firmly depress the brake pedal or depress the accelerator pedal to accelerate the vehicle.

NOTE

- Under the following conditions, a problem with the AUTOHOLD is occurring. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
 - A message is indicated on the multi-information display and a warning sound is activated for about 5 seconds while the AUTOHOLD is operating or when you press the AUTOHOLD switch.
 - If you switch the ignition OFF while the AUTOHOLD is operating, the parking brake is applied automatically to assist you with parking the vehicle.
 - The AUTOHOLD is cancelled when the selector lever is shifted to R position while the vehicle is on level ground, or facing up a hill or grade (as shown below).

← : Driving in reverse (selector lever in R)

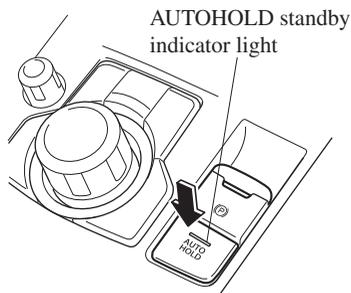


- The brake pedal response may change, sound may occur from the brakes, or the brake pedal could vibrate from the operation of the AUTOHOLD function. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.

Brake

▼ To Turn On AUTOHOLD System

Press the AUTOHOLD switch and when the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns on, the AUTOHOLD function turns on.



NOTE

When all of the following conditions are met, the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns on when the AUTOHOLD switch is pressed and the AUTOHOLD function turns on.

- The ignition is switched ON (engine is running or stopped by i-stop).
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is no problem with the AUTOHOLD function.

To operate AUTOHOLD and hold the brakes

1. Depress the brake pedal and bring the vehicle to a complete stop.

2. The AUTOHOLD active indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on and the brakes are held.

HOLD

3. The vehicle is held in its stopped position even with the brake pedal released.

NOTE

When all of the following conditions are met, the AUTOHOLD operates and the brakes are held.

- The ignition is switched ON (engine is running or stopped by i-stop).
- The vehicle is stopped.
- The brake pedal is being depressed.
- The AUTOHOLD active indicator light turns on.
- The accelerator pedal is not depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The driver's door is closed.
- There is no problem with the AUTOHOLD function.
- The parking brake is released.
- There is no problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) function.
- The selector lever is in a position other than R position or the vehicle tilts forward with the selector lever in the R position.

To release AUTOHOLD and start driving the vehicle

If you try to resume driving the vehicle, the brakes release automatically and the

AUTOHOLD active indicator light turns off.

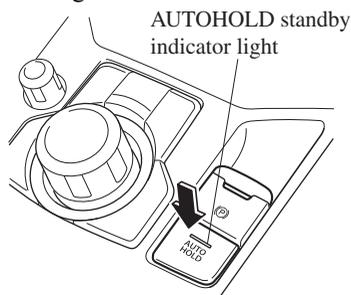
NOTE

- If the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is pulled while the AUTOHOLD is operating, the parking brake is applied and the AUTOHOLD is released. In addition, if the parking brake is released under this condition, the AUTOHOLD operates to hold the brakes.
- Under the following conditions, the parking brake is automatically applied and the AUTOHOLD is released. The AUTOHOLD is re-enabled when the conditions before the AUTOHOLD is released are restored.
 - The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
 - The driver's door is opened.
- When about 10 minutes or longer have passed since the AUTOHOLD operation started, the parking brake is automatically applied. Because the AUTOHOLD is restored when releasing the parking brake, the hold on the brakes by AUTOHOLD function resumes.

▼ **To Turn Off AUTOHOLD System**

Depress the brake pedal and press the AUTOHOLD switch. The AUTOHOLD is

turned off and the AUTOHOLD standby indicator light turns off.



NOTE

- When the brakes are not held such as while driving the vehicle, the AUTOHOLD can be turned off only by pressing the AUTOHOLD switch.
- If the AUTOHOLD switch is pressed without depressing the brake pedal while AUTOHOLD is operating (AUTOHOLD active indicator light in instrument cluster is turned on), the message Brake Pedal Must Be Depressed to Deactivate Auto Hold System is indicated on the multi-information display to notify the driver to depress the brake pedal.
- If any of the following conditions occurs while the AUTOHOLD function is operating (AUTOHOLD active indicator light is turned on), the parking brake is applied automatically and the AUTOHOLD function turns off. For the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) operation, refer to the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) on page 4-79.
 - The ignition is switched OFF.
 - There is a problem with the AUTOHOLD function.

Emergency Stop Signal System

If you apply the brakes suddenly while driving at a speed of about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster, the emergency stop signal system automatically and rapidly flashes all the direction indicator lights to caution drivers behind your vehicle of the sudden braking situation.

NOTE

· **Flashing**

When you bring your vehicle to a complete stop while all the direction indicator lights are flashing rapidly, the rapid flashing of all the direction indicator lights changes back to the normal flashing pattern. When the hazard warning light switch is pressed, all of the direction indicator lights turn off.

· **Operation**

- *When the ABS operates, the emergency stop signal system is more likely to operate. Therefore, if the brake pedal is depressed on a slippery road, all of the direction indicator lights may flash.*
- *The emergency stop signal system does not operate when the hazard warning light switch is pressed.*

Hill Launch Assist (HLA)

HLA is a function which assists the driver in accelerating from a stop while on a slope. When the driver releases the brake pedal and depresses the accelerator pedal while on a slope, the function prevents the vehicle from rolling. The braking force is maintained automatically after the brake pedal is released on a steep grade.

HLA operates on a downward slope when the selector lever is in the reverse (R) position, and on an upward slope when the selector lever is in a forward gear.



Do not rely completely on HLA :

HLA is an auxiliary device for accelerating from a stop on a slope. The system only operates for about 2 seconds and therefore, relying only on the system, when accelerating from a stop is dangerous because the vehicle may move (roll) unexpectedly and cause an accident. The vehicle could roll depending on the vehicle's load or if it is towing something. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle before starting to drive the vehicle.

NOTE

- *HLA does not operate on a gentle slope. In addition, the gradient of the slope on which the system will operate changes depending on the vehicle's load.*
- *HLA does not operate if the parking brake is applied, or if the vehicle has not stopped completely.*
- *HLA is operating, the brake pedal may feel stiff and vibrate, however, this does not indicate a malfunction.*

- *HLA does not operate while the TCS/DSC indicator light is illuminated. Refer to Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.*
- *HLA does not turn off even if the TCS OFF switch is pressed to turn off the TCS.*

Antilock Brake System (ABS)

The ABS control unit continuously monitors the speed of each wheel. If one wheel is about to lock up, the ABS responds by automatically releasing and reapplying that wheel's brake.

The driver will feel a slight vibration in the brake pedal and may hear a chattering noise from the brake system. This is normal ABS system operation. Continue to depress the brake pedal without pumping the brakes.

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

WARNING

Do not rely on ABS as a substitute for safe driving:

The ABS cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), driving on ice and snow, and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

NOTE

- *Braking distances may be longer on loose surfaces (snow or gravel, for example) which usually have a hard foundation. A vehicle with a normal braking system may require less distance to stop under these conditions because the tyres will build up a wedge of surface layer when the wheels skid.*
- *The sound of the ABS operating may be heard when starting the engine or immediately after starting the vehicle, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.*

ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Traction Control System (TCS)

The Traction Control System (TCS) enhances traction and safety by controlling engine torque and braking. When the TCS detects driving wheel slippage, it lowers engine torque and operates the brakes to prevent loss of traction.

This means that on a slick surface, the engine adjusts automatically to provide optimum power to the drive wheels, limiting wheel spin and loss of traction. The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

WARNING

Do not rely on the Traction Control System (TCS) as a substitute for safe driving:

The Traction Control System (TCS) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

Use snow tyres or tyre chains and drive at reduced speeds when roads are covered with ice and/or snow:

Driving without proper traction devices on snow and/or ice-covered roads is dangerous. The Traction Control System (TCS) alone cannot provide adequate traction and you could still have an accident.

NOTE

To turn off the TCS, press the TCS OFF switch (page 4-90).

▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS, DSC or the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

- *In addition to the indicator light flashing, a slight labouring sound will come from the engine. This indicates that the TCS/DSC is operating properly.*
- *On slippery surfaces, such as fresh snow, it will be impossible to achieve high rpm when the TCS is on.*

▼ TCS OFF Indicator Light*

TCS OFF

This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. It also illuminates when the TCS OFF switch is pressed and TCS is switched off.

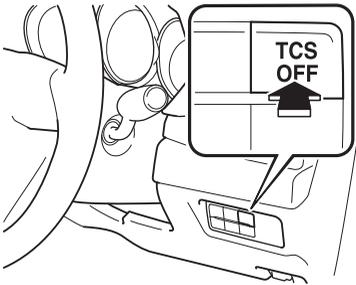
ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Refer to TCS OFF Switch on page 4-90.

If the light remains illuminated and the TCS is not switched off, take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The DSC may have a malfunction.

▼ TCS OFF Switch*

Press the TCS OFF switch to turn off the TCS. The TCS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster will illuminate.



Press the switch again to turn the TCS back on. The TCS OFF indicator light will turn off.

NOTE

- When the TCS is on and you attempt to free the vehicle from being stuck, the TCS will activate. Depressing the accelerator will not increase engine power and freeing the vehicle from being stuck might be difficult. When this happens, turn off the TCS.
- If the TCS is off when the engine is turned off, it automatically activates when the ignition is switched ON.
- Leaving the TCS on will provide the best traction.

- If the TCS OFF switch is pressed and held for 10 seconds or more, the TCS OFF switch malfunction detection function operates and the TCS system activates automatically. The TCS OFF indicator light turns off while the TCS system is operative.

ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Dynamic Stability Control (DSC)

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) automatically controls braking and engine torque in conjunction with systems such as ABS and TCS to help control side slip when driving on slippery surfaces, or during sudden or evasive manoeuvring, enhancing vehicle safety.

Refer to ABS (page 4-88) and TCS (page 4-89).

DSC operation is possible at speeds greater than 20 km/h (12 mph).

The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

WARNING

Do not rely on the Dynamic Stability Control as a substitute for safe driving:

The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) cannot compensate for unsafe and reckless driving, excessive speed, tailgating (following another vehicle too closely), and hydroplaning (reduced tyre friction and road contact because of water on the road surface). You can still have an accident.

CAUTION

➤ *The DSC may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*

- *Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all 4 wheels.*
- *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all 4 wheels.*
- *Do not mix worn tyres.*
- *The DSC may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.*

▼ TCS/DSC Indicator Light



This indicator light stays on for a few seconds when the ignition is switched ON. If the TCS, DSC or the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the indicator light flashes.

If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

If the vehicle sways while being driven and towing a trailer, the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) automatically controls braking and engine torque to suppress the swaying and enhance vehicle stability.

The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operable at a vehicle speed of about 65 km/h (40 mph) or more.

When the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) operates while driving the vehicle, the TCS/DSC indicator light flashes.

Refer to TCS/DSC Indicator Light on page 4-91.

WARNING

Do not rely solely on the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Assured vehicle stability is limited even if the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating. Drive carefully to prevent accidents.

In particular, if the TCS/DSC indicator light is flashing, drive the vehicle carefully as it is in a less stable condition and could sway more easily. Drive with caution and in accordance with the road, vehicle and trailer conditions.

CAUTION

➤ *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) may not operate correctly unless the following are observed:*

- *Use tyres of the correct size specified for your Mazda on all four wheels.*

- *Use tyres of the same manufacturer, brand and tread pattern on all four wheels.*
- *Do not mix worn tyres.*
- *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) may not operate correctly when tyre chains are used or a temporary spare tyre is installed because the tyre diameter changes.*

NOTE

- *The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) uses the TCS/DSC functions. The Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) does not operate if there is a malfunction in the TCS/DSC (the TCS/DSC indicator light turns on).*
- *When the Trailer Stability Assist (TSA) is operating, the brake lights may turn on.*
- *For information regarding trailer towing, refer to Towing Caravans and Trailers (Australia and New Zealand) on page 3-49.*

ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

Off-Road Traction Assist*

When the vehicle tyres become embedded in mud, sand, or deep snow, the Off-Road Traction Assist functions to prevent drive-wheel spinning and to assist in freeing tyres that are stuck.

Do not drive over rough rocky roads and river beds.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the Off-Road Traction Assist.

The Off-Road Traction Assist has limitations. Always drive the vehicle safely according to the road conditions. Do not drive the vehicle recklessly, otherwise it may result in an accident. In addition, do not drive the vehicle under the following conditions while the Off-Road Traction Assist is operating. Otherwise, it could negatively affect the drivetrain parts which could result in an accident.

- Vehicle is driven on paved roads.
- Temporary spare tyre or tyres of a different specified size are used.
- Tyre chains are used.

CAUTION

The Off-Road Traction Assist is a function to assist in freeing tyres that are stuck. When it is not necessary to use this function, avoid driving the vehicle continuously with the Off-Road Traction Assist on.

If the vehicle is driven continuously with the Off-Road Traction Assist on, the AWD warning indication may be displayed.

Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.

NOTE

The vehicle may vibrate or you might hear an operation sound while the Off-Road Traction Assist is operating or is operational, however, this does not indicate a problem.

▼ Off-Road Traction Assist Indicator Light



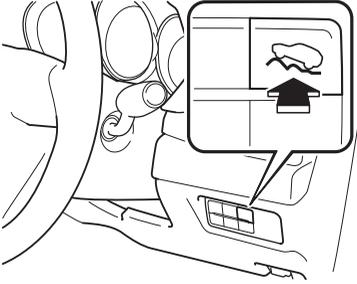
- When the ignition is switched ON, the indicator light turns on and then turns off after a few seconds.
- When pressing the Off-Road Traction Assist switch to operate the Off-Road Traction Assist, the indicator light turns on.
- A problem in the system might be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 - The indicator light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON or it remains on.
 - The indicator light turns on even though the Off-Road Traction Assist was not operated.

ABS/TCS/DSC/Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)

▼ Off-Road Traction Assist Switch

When the switch is pressed after stopping the vehicle, the Off-Road Traction Assist becomes operational.

The Off-Road Traction Assist indicator light in the instrument cluster turn on.



If the switch is pressed again, the Off-Road Traction Assist is stopped and the Off-Road Traction Assist indicator light turn off.

NOTE

If the engine is stopped with the Off-Road Traction Assist operational, the Off-Road Traction Assist is stopped when the engine is started the next time.

Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

▼ Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

Mi-drive is a system that switches the drive modes depending on the driving conditions, road conditions and vehicle conditions.

The mode can be switched from normal to sport or off-road.

Sport mode*

This mode enhances vehicle responsiveness when the accelerator pedal is depressed.

This provides additional quick acceleration which may be needed to safely make manoeuvres such as lane changes, merging onto freeways, or passing other vehicles.

Off-road mode*

This mode helps prevent drive-wheel spinning during off-road driving and improves driving performance.

And this mode also assists in freeing tyres that are stuck.

Use this mode to drive the vehicle on slippery roads such as muddy, sandy, or deep-snowy roads.

▼ Warning and Cautions for Using the Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the Mi-Drive system:

Vehicle stability is limited even when Mi-Drive is activated. Always drive the vehicle safely. Do not drive the vehicle recklessly, otherwise it may result in an accident.

Do not use Off-road mode when driving on a paved road:

Use Off-road mode when driving on slippery roads such as muddy, sandy, or deep-snowy roads. During normal driving, use normal mode.

CAUTION

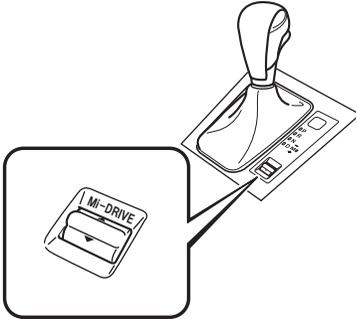
- *Do not use the sport mode when driving on slippery roads such as wet or snow-covered roads. It may cause tyre slipping.*
- *Heed the following cautions so that the system can operate normally.*
 - *Always use tyres of the specified size, same manufacturer, brand, and pattern (tread pattern) for the front and rear wheels.*
 - *Do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle.*
 - *Drive carefully when using tyre chains. Because the diameter of the tyres differs, the system may not operate normally.*

Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

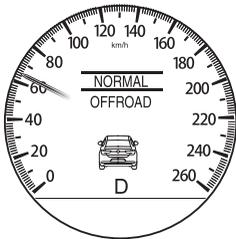
▼ How to Use the Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

Type A

1. Push the Mi-Drive switch forward or pull it toward you.



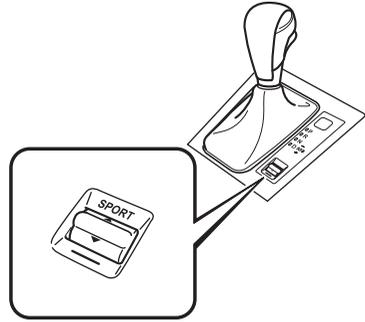
2. While checking the list displayed in the instrument cluster, push the Mi-Drive switch forward, or pull it toward you to select a drive mode.



When the drive mode is set, the display in the instrument cluster changes. Refer to Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) Display on page 4-28.

Type B

1. Press the Mi-Drive switch forward (SPORT) to select the sport mode.



2. When the sport mode is selected, the select mode indication turns on in the instrument cluster.

SPORT

3. Pull the Mi-Drive switch back (←) to cancel the sport mode.

NOTE

- Depending on the driving conditions when sport mode is selected, the vehicle may perform shift-down or slightly accelerate.
- When the sport mode is selected, driving at higher engine speeds increases and it may increase fuel consumption. Mazda recommends that you cancel the sport mode on normal driving.
- When the ignition is switched OFF, the mode returns to normal mode.
- The drive mode cannot be switched in the following cases.
 - The Antilock Brake System (ABS) is operating.
 - The Traction Control System (TCS) is operating.

Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive)

- *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is operating.*
- *Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system is set.*
- *Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) is set.*
- *The steering wheel is being operated abruptly.*
- *In the following cases, the sport mode is cancelled.*
 - *The ignition is switched OFF.*
 - *Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system is set.*
 - *Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) is set.*
- *The vehicle may vibrate or you might hear an operation sound while the Off-road mode is operating or is operational, however, this does not indicate a problem.*

i-ACTIV AWD Operation*

AWD provides excellent drivability on snow-covered and ice-packed roads, sand and mud, as well as on steep slopes and other slippery surfaces.

A system malfunction or operation conditions are indicated by a warning. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

WARNING

Never spin a wheel that is off the ground:

Spinning a wheel that is off the ground as a result of the vehicle being stuck or in a ditch is dangerous. The drive assembly could be seriously damaged which could lead to an accident or could even lead to overheating, oil leakage, and a fire.

▼ AWD Driving

WARNING

Avoid sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvres when driving this vehicle:

Sharp turns, excessive speed and abrupt manoeuvring of this vehicle is dangerous as it could result in the increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle roll-over, personal injury or death.

This vehicle has a higher centre of gravity. Vehicles with a higher centre of gravity such as utility and AWD vehicles handle differently than vehicles with a lower centre of gravity.

Utility and AWD vehicles are not designed for cornering at high speeds any more than low profile sports cars are designed to perform satisfactorily under off-road conditions. In addition, utility vehicles have a significantly higher rollover rate than other types of vehicles.

Drive carefully when the vehicle is loaded by lowering vehicle speed and applying the brakes earlier:

Abrupt manoeuvring and sudden braking when driving a loaded vehicle is dangerous as the driving behaviour of a vehicle with a high centre of gravity is different when it is loaded compared to when it is not, and could result in the loss of vehicle control and an accident.

▼ Tyres and Tyre Chains

The condition of the tyres plays a large role in the performance of the vehicle. Moreover, to prevent adverse effects to the drive assembly, please note the following:

Tyres

- When replacing tyres, always replace all front and rear tyres at the same time.
- All tyres must be of the same size, manufacture, brand and tread pattern. Pay particular attention when equipping snow or other types of winter tyres.
- Do not mix tread-worn tyres with normal tyres.
- Inspect tyre inflation pressures at the specified periods adjust to the specified pressures.

NOTE

Check the tyre inflation pressure label attached to driver's door frame for the correct tyre inflation pressure.

- Make sure to equip the vehicle with genuine tyres of the specified size, on all wheels. With AWD, the system is calibrated for all 4 wheels being of the same dimensions.

Tyre chains

- Install tyre chains to the front tyres.
- Do not use tyre chains on the rear wheels.
- Do not drive the vehicle faster than 30 km/h (19 mph) with the tyre chains installed.
- Do not drive the vehicle with tyre chains on road conditions other than snow or ice.

▼ Towing

If the vehicle requires towing, have it towed with all 4 wheels completely off the ground.

Refer to Towing Description on page 7-19.

Power Steering

Power Steering

- Power steering is only operable when the engine is running. If the engine is off or if the power steering system is inoperable, you can still steer, but it requires more physical effort. If the steering feels stiffer than usual during normal driving or the steering vibrates, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- The warning indication notifies the driver of system abnormalities and operation conditions. In addition, the buzzer may also activate depending on the system abnormality or operation condition. Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-23. Refer to Power Steering Warning Buzzer on page 7-44.



Never hold the steering wheel to the extreme left or right for more than 5 seconds with the engine running. This could damage the power steering system.

i-ACTIVSENSE*

i-ACTIVSENSE is a collective term covering a series of advanced safety and driver support systems which make use of a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and radar sensors. These systems consist of active safety and pre-crash safety systems.

These systems are designed to assist the driver in safer driving by reducing the load on the driver and helping to avert collisions or reduce their severity. However, because each system has its limitations, always drive carefully and do not rely solely on the systems.

▼ Active Safety Technology

Active Safety Technology supports safer driving by helping the driver to recognise potential hazards and avert accidents.

Driver awareness support systems**Nighttime visibility**

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS).....	page 4-105
Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH).....	page 4-108
High Beam Control System (HBC).....	page 4-106

Left/right side and rear side detection

Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS).....	page 4-163
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM).....	page 4-111

Road sign recognition

Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR).....	page 4-116
--	------------

Inter-vehicle distance recognition

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....	page 4-123
---	------------

Driver fatigue detection

Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....	page 4-127
-----------------------------------	------------

Rear obstruction detection when leaving a parking space

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).....	page 4-129
--------------------------------------	------------

Full-surround recognition

360°View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A)).....	page 4-194
360°View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B)).....	page 4-220

Driver support systems

Inter-vehicle distance

Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)..... page 4-133

Lane departure

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS)..... page 4-163

Inter-vehicle distance and lane keeping

Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)..... page 4-146

Speed control

Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)..... page 4-177

▼ Pre-Crash Safety Technology

Pre-crash safety technology is designed to assist the driver in averting collisions or reduce their severity in situations where they cannot be avoided.

Collision damage reduction in low vehicle speed range

Forward driving

Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)..... page 4-185

Reverse driving

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)..... page 4-188

Collision damage reduction in medium/high speed range

Smart Brake Support (SBS)..... page 4-192

▼ Camera and Sensors

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects lane indications and recognises headlights, tail lights and city lights during nighttime driving. In addition, it also detects the vehicle ahead, pedestrians, or obstructions. The following systems also use the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).

- High Beam Control System (HBC)
- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)

- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed at the top of the windscreen near the rearview mirror.

Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-248.

Radar sensor (front)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead sent from the radar sensor. The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)
- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the radiator grille.

Refer to Radar Sensor (Front) on page 4-254.

Radar sensors (rear)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensors. The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.

Refer to Radar Sensors (Rear) on page 4-257.

Ultrasonic sensors (rear)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by detecting the ultrasonic waves reflected off obstructions at the rear sent from the ultrasonic sensors. The following systems also use the ultrasonic sensors (rear).

- Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.

Refer to Ultrasonic Sensors (Rear) on page 4-259.

Front camera/side cameras/rear view camera

The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.

Cameras are installed to the front bumper, door mirrors, and liftgate.

Refer to Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera on page 4-260.

Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)*

The adaptive front lighting system (AFS) automatically adjusts the headlight beams to the left or right in conjunction with the operation of the steering wheel after the headlights have been turned on.

NOTE

Headlights do not blind drivers approaching in the opposite direction no matter what side of the road you must drive your vehicle (left-hand or right-hand traffic). Therefore, it is not necessary to adjust the optical axis of the headlights when switching temporarily to driving on the opposite side of the road (left-hand or right-hand traffic).

High Beam Control System (HBC)*

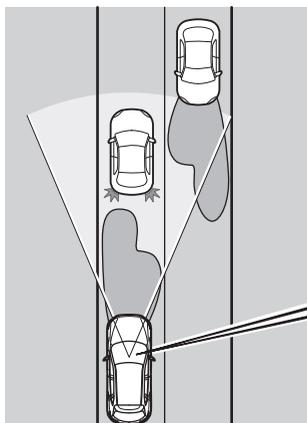
The HBC determines the conditions in front of the vehicle using the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) while driving in darkness to automatically switch the headlights between high and low beams.

Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-248.

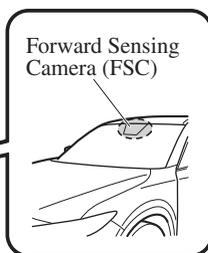
While driving the vehicle at a speed of about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights are switched to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction.

The system switches the headlights to low beams when one of the following occurs:

- The system detects a vehicle or the headlights/lights of a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.
- The vehicle is driven on roads lined with streetlamps or on roads in well-lit cities and towns.
- The vehicle is driven at less than about 20 km/h (12 mph).



The recognition distance of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) varies according to the surrounding conditions.



The warning light turns on when the system has a malfunction.

Refer to Contact expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.



- Do not adjust the vehicle height, modify the headlight units, or remove the camera, otherwise the system will not operate normally.
- Do not rely excessively on the HBC and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.

NOTE

The timing in which the system switches the headlights changes under the following conditions. If the system does not switch the headlights appropriately, manually switch between high and low beams according to the visibility as well as road and traffic conditions.

- When there are sources of light in the area such as streetlamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.
- When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.
- When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.
- When driving on roads with sharp turn or hilly terrain.
- When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles in front of you or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.
- When there is insufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.
- When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.
- When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle in front of you spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.

▼ To Operate the System

The HBC operates to switch the headlights automatically between high and low beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the AUTO and high beam position.

The HBC determines that it is dark based on the brightness of the surrounding area. At the same time, the HBC indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster illuminates.

**NOTE**

- When the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or more, the headlights automatically switch to high beams when there are no vehicles ahead or approaching in the opposite direction. When the vehicle speed is less than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the HBC switches the headlights to low beams.
- The low beams may not switch to high beams when cornering.
- Operation of the HBC function can be disabled. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Manual Switching**Switching to low beams**

Shift the lever to the low beam position.
The HBC indicator light (green) turns off.

Switching to high beams

Turn the headlight switch to the $\equiv \text{D}$ position.
The HBC indicator light (green) turns off and the $\equiv \text{D}$ is illuminated.

Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)*

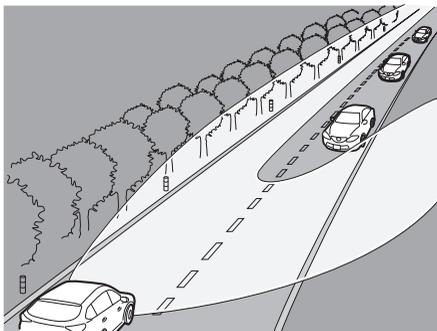
The ALH are a system which uses the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) to determine the situation of a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction while driving at night to automatically switch the illumination range of the headlights, the illuminated area, or the illumination brightness. Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-248.

The ALH are controlled between high and low beams as follows to assure the driver's visibility without dazzling a vehicle ahead or a vehicle approaching in the opposite direction.

Glare-Free High Beam

This feature dims only the high-beam light shone on the vehicle ahead.

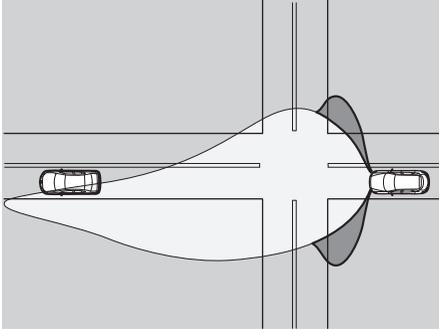
The high beams will dim while driving at a speed of about 40 km/h (25 mph) or faster. When the vehicle speed is less than about 30 km/h (19 mph), the beams switch to the low beams.

**NOTE**

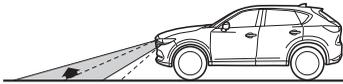
The headlight high-beam indicator light turns on while the high beams are on.

Wide-Range Low Beam

This feature extends the illumination range of the light cast by the low beams while driving at a speed less than about 40 km/h (25 mph).

**Highway Mode**

This feature shifts the illumination angle of the light cast by the headlights upward while driving on highways.



The distance in which the ALH can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.


CAUTION

- Do not modify the suspensions or headlight units, or remove the camera. Otherwise, the ALH may not operate normally.
- Do not rely excessively on the ALH and drive the vehicle while paying sufficient attention to safety. Switch the headlights between the high beams and low beams manually if necessary.

NOTE

Under the following conditions, the ALH may not operate normally. Manually switch between the high and low beams according to the visibility, and the road and traffic conditions.

- *When there are other sources of light in the area such as streetlamps, illuminated signboards, and traffic signals.*
- *When there are reflective objects in the surrounding area such as reflective plates and signs.*
- *When visibility is reduced under rain, snow and foggy conditions.*
- *When driving on roads with sharp curves or undulations.*
- *When the headlights/rear lamps of vehicles ahead or in the opposite lane are dim or not illuminated.*
- *When there is insufficient darkness such as at dawn or dusk.*
- *When the luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.*
- *When visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead spraying water from its tyres onto your windscreen.*

▼ To Operate the System

The system switches the headlights to the high beams after the ignition is switched ON and the headlight switch is in the **AUTO** position. The ALH indicator light (green) in the instrument cluster turns on simultaneously.



The ALH determine that it is nighttime based on the brightness of the surrounding area.

The system cancels operation when the headlight switch is turned to a position other than **AUTO**, the headlights are manually switched to low beams, or the high beams are flashed on and off.

NOTE

The system can be changed so that the ALH do not operate.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Manual Switching

Switching to low beams

Shift the lever to the low beam position. The ALH indicator light (green) turns off.

Switching to high beams

Turn the headlight switch to the  position.

The ALH indicator light (green) turns off and the  is illuminated.

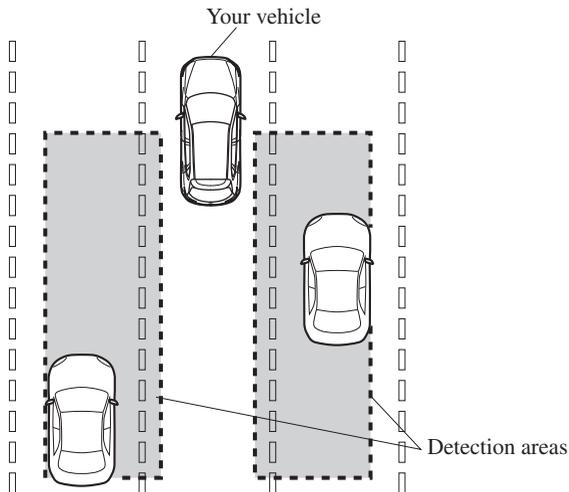
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)

The BSM is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides during lane changes by notifying the driver of the presence of vehicles approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane.

The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear while travelling in the forward direction at a speed of 10 km/h (6.3 mph) or faster and notifies the driver by turning on the BSM warning indicator light and displaying the vehicle detection screen.

If the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated while the approaching vehicle is detected, the BSM notifies the driver of possible danger by turning on the BSM warning indicator light, and by activating the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display.

The detection area on this system covers the driving lanes on both sides of the vehicle and from the rear part of the front doors to about 50 m (164 ft) behind the vehicle.



! WARNING

Always check the surrounding area visually before making an actual lane change:

The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at your rear when making a lane change. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not activate or they might be delayed even though a vehicle is in an adjacent driving lane. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

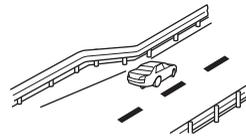
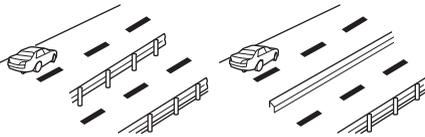
NOTE

- *The BSM will operate when all of the following conditions are met:*
 - *The ignition is switched ON.*
 - *The BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off.*
 - *The vehicle speed is about 10 km/h (6.3 mph) or faster.*
- *The BSM will not operate under the following circumstances.*
 - *The vehicle speed falls below about 8 km/h (5 mph) even though the BSM OFF switch indicator light is turned off.*
 - *The selector lever is shifted to R position and the vehicle is reversing.*
 - *The turning radius is small (making a sharp turn, turning at intersections).*
- *In the following cases, the BSM OFF indicator light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the BSM OFF indicator light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.*
 - *Some problem with the system including the BSM warning indicator lights is detected.*
 - *A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.*
 - *There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear). Remove any snow, ice or mud on the rear bumper.*
 - *Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.*
 - *The temperature near the radar sensors (rear) becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.*
 - *The lead-acid battery voltage has decreased.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
 - *A vehicle is in the detection area at the rear in an adjacent driving lane but it does not approach. The BSM determines the condition based on radar detection data.*
 - *A vehicle is travelling alongside your vehicle at nearly the same speed for an extended period of time.*
 - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.*
 - *A vehicle in an adjacent driving lane is attempting to pass your vehicle.*
 - *A vehicle is in an adjacent lane on a road with extremely wide driving lanes. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set at the road width of expressways.*
- *In the following case, the flashing of the BSM warning indicator light, and the activation of the warning sound and the warning screen indicator display may not occur or they may be delayed.*
 - *A vehicle makes a lane change from a driving lane 2 lanes over to an adjacent lane.*
 - *Driving on steep slopes.*
 - *Crossing the summit of a hill or mountain pass.*

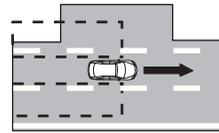
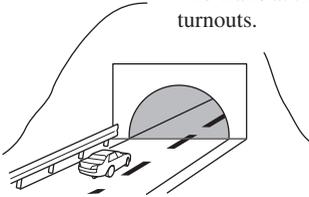
- When there is a difference in the height between your driving lane and the adjacent lane.
- Directly after the BSM system becomes operable by changing the setting.
- If the road width is extremely narrow, vehicles 2 lanes over may be detected. The detection area of the radar sensors (rear) is set according to the road width of expressways.
- The BSM warning indicator light may turn on and the vehicle detection screen may be displayed in the display in reaction to stationary objects (guardrails, tunnels, sidewalks, and parked vehicles) on the road or the roadside.

Objects such as guardrails and concrete walls running alongside the vehicle.

Places where the width between guardrails or walls on each side of the vehicle narrows.



The walls at the entrance and exits of tunnels, turnouts.



- A BSM warning indicator light may flash or the warning beep and the warning screen indicator display may be activated several times when making a turn at a city intersection.
- Turn off the BSM while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radar's radio waves will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flash of the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.
 - Snow or ice is adhering to the door mirrors.
 - The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.
- The system switches to the Rear Cross Traffic Alert function when the selector lever is shifted to the reverse (R) position.

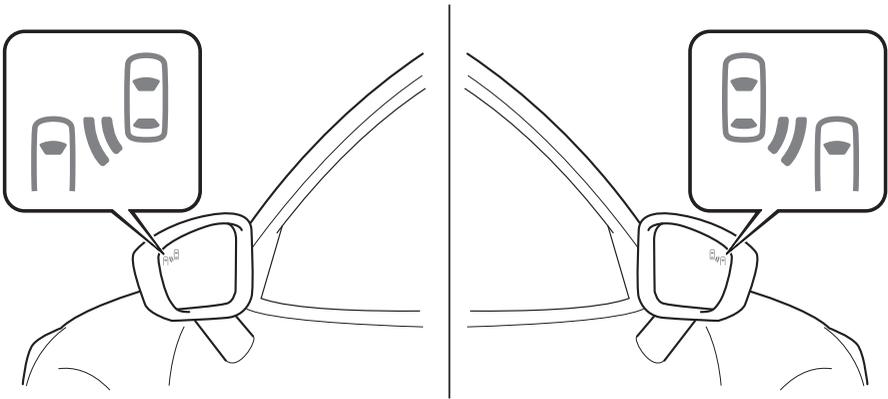
Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-129.

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indicator Light/Display Indicator/Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep

The BSM or Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system notifies the driver of the presence of vehicles in adjacent lanes or at the rear of the vehicle using the BSM warning indicator light, the warning sound and the display indicator (BSM) while the systems are operational.

BSM warning indicator lights

The BSM warning indicator lights are equipped on the left and right door mirrors. The warning indicator lights turn on when a vehicle approaching from the rear in an adjacent lane is detected.



When the ignition is switched ON, the warning indicator light turns on momentarily and then turns off after a few seconds.

Forward driving (BSM operation)

The BSM detects vehicles approaching from the rear and turns on the BSM warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors according to the conditions. Additionally, while a BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a turn in the direction in which the BSM warning indicator light is illuminated, the BSM warning indicator light flashes.

Reverse driving (Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system operation)

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) system detects a vehicle approaching from the rear of the vehicle and flashes the BSM warning indicator lights.

Function for cancelling illumination dimmer

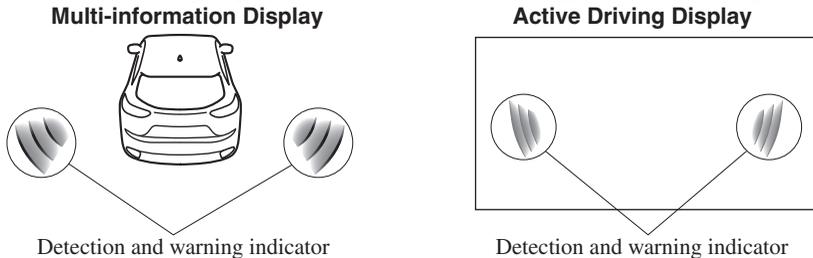
If the BSM warning indicator lights turn on when the position lights are turned on, the brightness of the BSM warning indicator lights is dimmed.

If the BSM warning indicator lights are difficult to see due to glare from surrounding brightness when travelling on snow-covered roads or under foggy conditions, press the dimmer cancellation button to cancel the dimmer and increase the brightness of BSM warning indicator lights when they turn on.

Refer to Instrument Panel Illumination on page 4-25, 4-42.

Display indicator

The detected approaching vehicle and warning are displayed in the multi-information display and active driving display when the vehicle is moving forward (BSM operational).



The detected direction is displayed with a detection indicator (white) when an approaching vehicle is detected. In addition, if the direction indicator lever is operated to signal a lane change while the vehicle is detected, the display changes the colour (amber) of the warning indicator.

BSM warning beep

The BSM warning beep is activated simultaneously with the flashing of a BSM warning indicator light.

▼ Cancelling Operation of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)

The BSM system can be set to inoperable. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

When the BSM is set to inoperable, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are turned off and the BSM OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster turns on.



NOTE

When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems are operational, the BSM and Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) systems remain operational the next time the ignition is switched ON.

Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)

The TSR helps prevent the driver from overlooking traffic signs, and provides support for safer driving by displaying traffic signs on the active driving display/instrument cluster which are recognised by the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or recorded in the navigation system while the vehicle is driven.

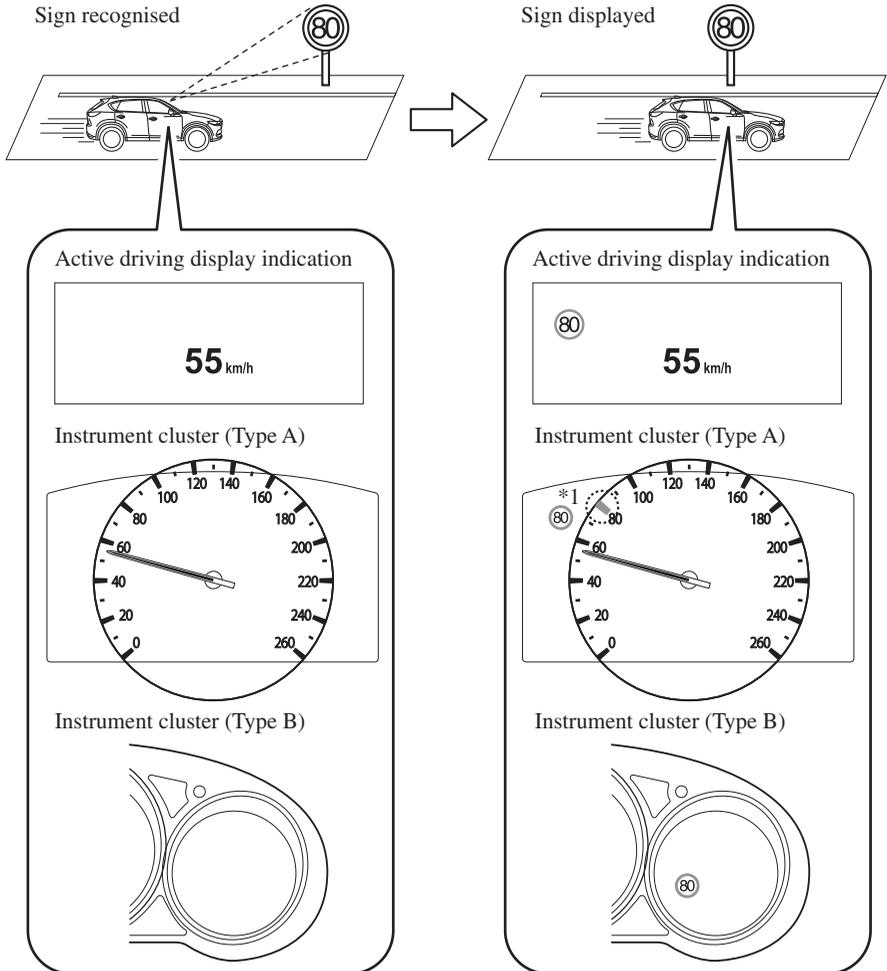
The TSR displays the speed limit (including auxiliary signs), do not enter, and traffic stop signs.

If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign indicated in the active driving display/instrument cluster while the vehicle is driven, the system notifies the driver using the indication in the active driving display/instrument cluster and a warning sound.

NOTE

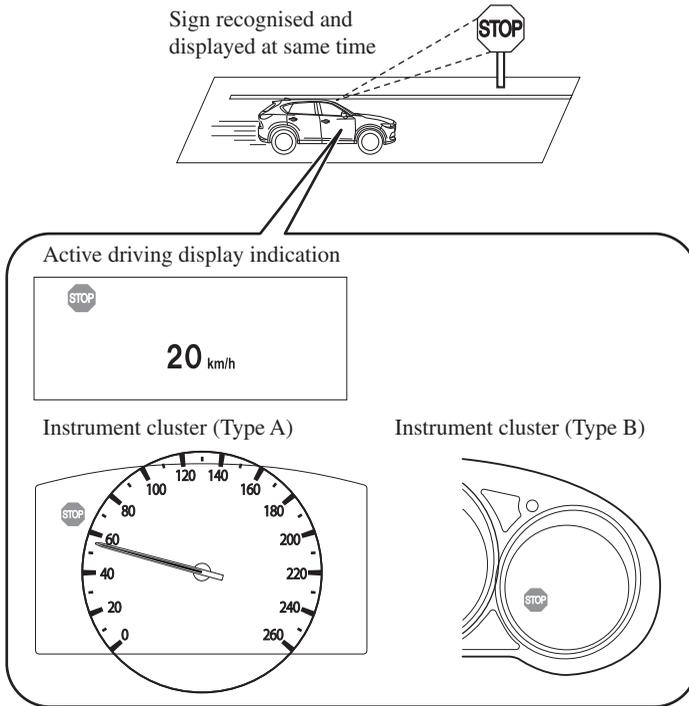
- *The TSR is not supported in some countries or regions. For information concerning the supported countries or regions, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *The TSR operates only if the navigation system SD card (Mazda genuine) is inserted in the SD card slot. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.*

Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs) and do not enter signs



*1: Recognized speed limit indication colour changes.

Stop sign



WARNING

Always check the traffic signs visually while driving.

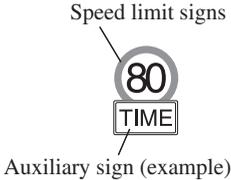
The TSR helps prevent the driver from overlooking traffic signs and provides support for safer driving. Depending on the weather conditions or problems with traffic signs, a traffic sign may not be recognised or a traffic sign different from the actual traffic sign may be displayed. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the actual traffic signs. Otherwise, it could result in an accident.

NOTE

- *The TSR does not operate if there is a malfunction in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *Under the following conditions, the TSR may not operate normally.*
 - *An object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
 - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is tilted.*
 - *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
 - *Tyres other than standard tyres are equipped.*
 - *The vehicle is driven on the ramp and surrounding area to or from a rest area or a tollgate on a highway.*
 - *When surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
 - *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
 - *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
 - *The windscreen and camera are fogged (water droplets).*
 - *Strong light is directed at the front of the vehicle (such as backlight or high-beam headlights of on-coming vehicles).*
 - *The vehicle is making a sharp turn.*
 - *Strong light reflects off the road.*
 - *A traffic sign is in a position which makes it difficult to reflect the light from the vehicle's headlights, such as when the vehicle is driven at night or in a tunnel.*
 - *The vehicle is driven under weather conditions such as rain, fog, or snow.*
 - *The stored map data for the navigation system is not current.*
 - *A traffic sign is obscured by mud or snow.*
 - *A traffic sign is concealed by trees or a vehicle.*
 - *A traffic sign is partially shaded.*
 - *A traffic sign is bent or warped.*
 - *A traffic sign is too low or too high.*
 - *A traffic sign is too bright or too dark (including electronic traffic signs).*
 - *A traffic sign is too big or too small.*
 - *There is an object similar to the traffic sign being read (such as another traffic sign or other signs resembling it).*

▼ Traffic Sign Display Indication

The following traffic signs are displayed on the active driving display/instrument cluster.

Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs)

If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot classify an auxiliary sign (such as time restrictions, turning restrictions, end of section) correctly, the following screen is displayed.

**Do not enter signs****Stop signs****NOTE****Speed limit signs (including auxiliary signs)**

- When the vehicle speed is about 1 km/h (0.6 mph) or faster, the speed limit sign is displayed when any one of the following conditions are met.
- The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a speed limit sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle and the vehicle passes it.

- The speed limit sign stored in the navigation system is read.
- In the following cases, display of the speed limit sign stops.
 - The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a new speed limit sign which differs from the previous one (displays the new speed limit sign).

Do not enter signs

- A do not enter sign is displayed when all of the following conditions are met.
 - The vehicle speed is about 80 km/h (50 mph) or slower.
 - The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a do not enter sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle and the vehicle passes it.
 - A speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign is not recognised.
- When the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises the do not enter sign and a certain period of time has elapsed since the vehicle passed the sign, display of the do not enter sign stops.

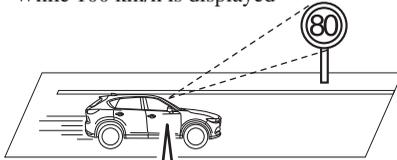
Stop sign

- A stop sign is displayed when all of the following conditions are met:
 - The vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or slower.
 - The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) recognises a stop sign as a sign targeted for your vehicle.
- When a certain period of time has elapsed since the stop sign was displayed, display of the stop sign stops.
- A speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign is not recognised.

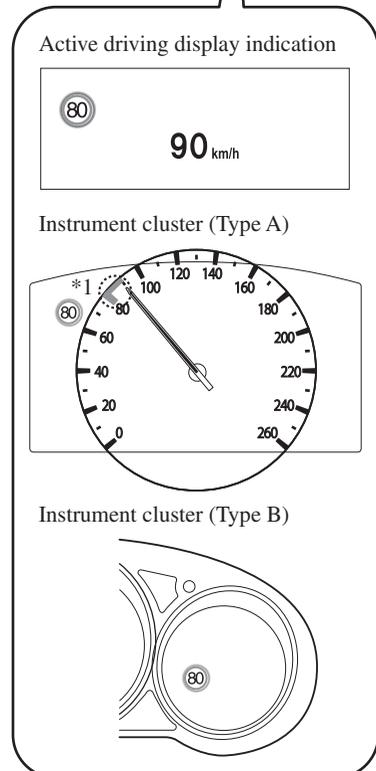
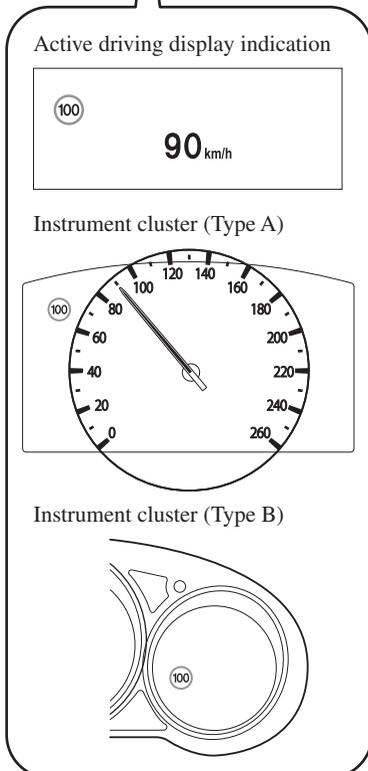
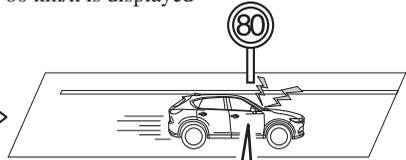
▼ Excessive Speed Warning

If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the active driving display/instrument cluster, the area around the speed limit sign flashes 10 times in amber and the warning sound is activated 3 times at the same time. If the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on. Check the surrounding conditions and adjust the vehicle speed to the legal speed using the appropriate operation such as depressing the brake pedal.

While 100 km/h is displayed



80 km/h is displayed



*1: Indication colour in excessive speed area changes.

The warning pattern and the warning activation timing differ depending on the setting contents.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Warning pattern

- Off: The excessive speed warning is not activated.
- Visual: The area around the speed limit sign displayed in the display flashes 10 times in amber, and if the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on.
- Audio & Visual: The area around the speed limit sign displayed in the display flashes 10 times in amber and the warning sound is activated 3 times at the same time. If the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on.

Warning activation timing

- + 0: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display, the excessive speed warning is activated.
- + 5: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display by 5 km/h (3 mph), the excessive speed warning is activated.
- + 10: If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed in the display by 10 km/h (5 mph), the excessive speed warning is activated.

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the excessive speed warning stops operating.*
 - *The vehicle speed is less than the speed of the displayed speed limit sign. (If the activation timing for the excessive speed warning is changed in the personalisation features, the excessive speed warning stops operating when the vehicle speed is less than the changed vehicle speed.*
 - *A speed limit sign indication has been updated and the vehicle speed is lower than the updated indication.*
 - *Display of the speed limit sign stops.*
- *The warning indication is displayed at the same time the excessive speed warning sound is activated if the vehicle speed exceeds the speed indicated on the speed limit sign. Refer to Warning Sound is Activated on page 7-42.*
- *The TSR can recognise a speed limit sign with an auxiliary sign and display it, but it cannot determine the indication on the auxiliary sign (such as time restrictions, turning restrictions, end of section). Therefore, the excessive speed warning is activated when the vehicle speed exceeds the displayed speed limit sign even if the conditions indicated on the auxiliary sign do not apply to the vehicle.*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) incorrectly recognises the actual speed limit sign at a lower speed, the excessive speed alarm is activated even if the vehicle is driven at the legal speed.*

Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)

The DRSS measures the distance between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead using a radar sensor (front) while the vehicle speed is about 30 km/h (19 mph) or faster, and if your vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead more closely than what is appropriate for maintaining distance between the vehicles according to the vehicle speed, a notification in the multi-information display is indicated to advise you to keep a safe distance from the vehicle ahead.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the DRSS and always drive carefully:

The ability to detect a vehicle ahead is limited depending on the type of vehicle ahead, the weather conditions, and the traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator and brake pedals are not operated correctly it could lead to an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

NOTE

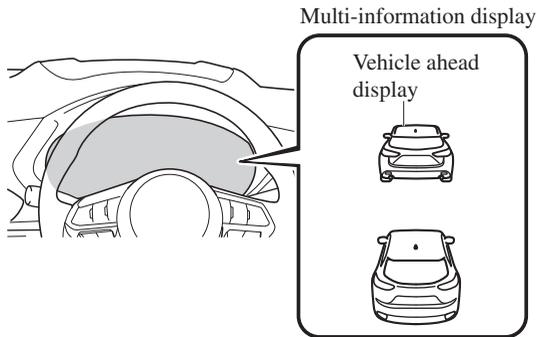
- *The DRSS operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
 - *The ignition is switched ON.*
 - *The DRSS is on.*
 - *The selector lever is in a position other than reverse (R).*
 - *The vehicle speed is 30 km/h or faster (19 mph or faster).*
 - *The objects which activate the system are 4-wheeled vehicles.*
 - *The DRSS may also operate in the presence of motorcycles and bicycles.*
 - *The DRSS may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
 - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) has a malfunction.*
 - *The vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely slow speed.*
 - *The system does not operate with the following objects:*
 - *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction.*
 - *Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)*
 - *The DRSS can be set to inoperable.*
- Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.*

▼ Indication on Display

The DRSS operation status is indicated in the multi-information display. Regarding malfunctions, check the vehicle conditions or have it inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) according to the content of the displayed message.

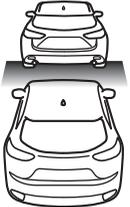
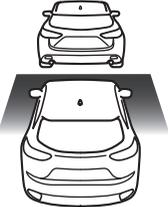
NOTE

- *When the ignition is switched off, the operation status before the system was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched off with the DRSS operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.*



Distance-between-vehicles guide lines*1

Indication on display		Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 40 km/h (25 mph))	Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 80 km/h (50 mph))
Multi-information display			
Instrument cluster (Type A)	Instrument cluster (Type B)		
			
		About 25 m (82 ft)	About 50 m (164 ft)
			
		About 20 m (66 ft)	About 40 m (131 ft)
			
		About 15 m (49 ft)	About 30 m (98 ft)

Indication on display		Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 40 km/h (25 mph))	Distance between vehicles guide lines (During travel at about 80 km/h (50 mph))
Multi-information display			
Instrument cluster (Type A)	Instrument cluster (Type B)		
			
		About 10 m (33 ft)	About 20 m (66 ft)
 Illuminated in amber*2	 Illuminated in amber*2	About 10 m (32 ft) or less	About 20 m (65 ft) or less

*1 The distance between vehicles differs depending on vehicle speed.

*2 Indication when the distance setting for notifying the driver that the vehicle approaches a vehicle ahead is Near.

NOTE

· **(Mazda Connect (Type A) only)**

The distance at which the distance-between-vehicles indication on the display flashes or turns on can be changed.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

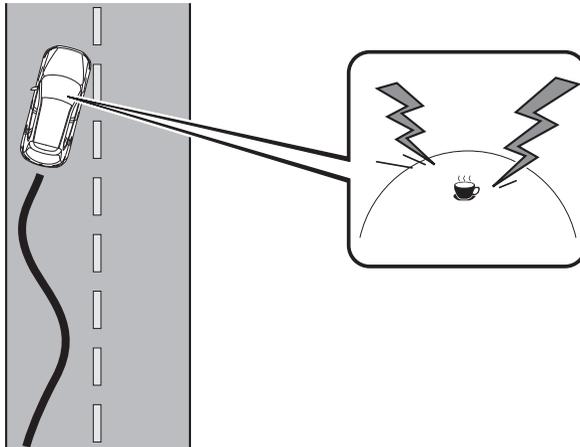
Driver Attention Alert (DAA)*

The DAA is a system which detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness, and encourages the driver to take a rest.

When the vehicle is driven inside traffic lane lines at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph), the DAA estimates the amount of accumulated fatigue and decreased attentiveness of the driver based on the information from the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) and other vehicle information, and encourages the driver to take a rest using an indication on the multi-information display and a warning sound.

Use the DAA on expressways or highways.

Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-248.



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on DAA and always drive carefully:

The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness and encourages the driver to take a rest, however, it is not designed to prevent the vehicle from straying. If you rely too much on the DAA it could lead to an accident. Drive carefully and operate the steering wheel appropriately.

In addition, the system may not be able to detect driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness correctly depending on the traffic and driving conditions. The driver must take sufficient rest in consideration of safer driving.

NOTE

- *The DAA operates when all of the following conditions are met.*

i-ACTIVSENSE

- The vehicle speed is about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph).
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines.
- The system has completed learning of the driver's driving data.
- The DAA does not operate under the following conditions.
 - The vehicle speed is less than about 65 km/h (40 mph).
 - The vehicle speed exceeds about 140 km/h (87 mph)
 - The vehicle is making a sharp turn.
 - The vehicle is changing lanes.
 - The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The DAA may not operate normally under the following conditions.
 - White (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.
 - The vehicle is jolted or swayed continuously by strong winds or rough roads.
 - The vehicle is driven aggressively.
 - When making frequent lane changes.
- The DAA detects driver fatigue and decreased attentiveness based on the driving data when the vehicle is driven at about 65 to 140 km/h (40 to 87 mph) for about 20 minutes. The driving data will be reset under the following conditions.
 - The vehicle is stopped for 15 minutes or longer.
 - The vehicle is driven at less than about 65 km/h (40 mph) for about 30 minutes.
 - The ignition is switched off.
- After the DAA has displayed the first message encouraging rest, it does not display the next one until 45 minutes have passed.

▼ Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Display (White)

When the system detects driver fatigue or decreased attentiveness, it activates the warning sound and displays an alert in the multi-information display.



**Driver
Attention
Alert
Time for a break**

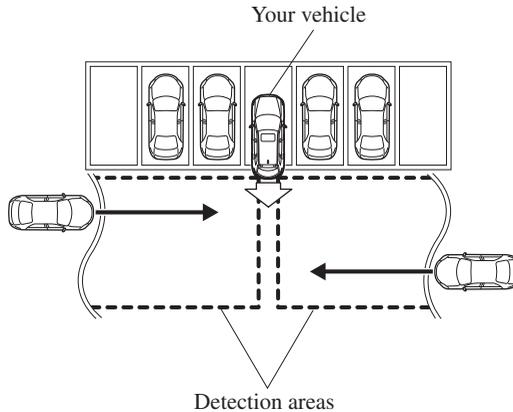
▼ Cancelling Driver Attention Alert (DAA)

The DAA can be set to not activate. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The RCTA system is designed to assist the driver in checking the area to the rear of the vehicle on both sides while the vehicle is reversing by alerting the driver to the presence of vehicles approaching the rear of the vehicle.

The RCTA system detects vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and the rear of the vehicle while the vehicle is being reversed out of a parking space, and notifies the driver of possible danger using the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights and the warning buzzer.



RCTA operation

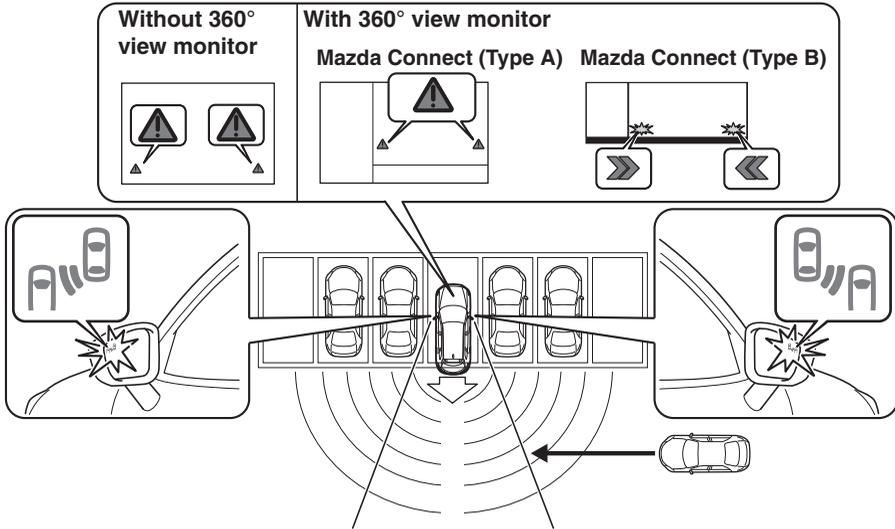
1. The RCTA system operates when the selector lever is shifted to the reverse (R) position.
2. If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights flashes and the warning beep is activated simultaneously.

(With rear view monitor)

The RCTA warning indication in the rearview monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.

(With 360° view monitor)

The RCTA warning indication in the 360° view monitor also synchronizes with the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator light on the door mirrors.



! WARNING

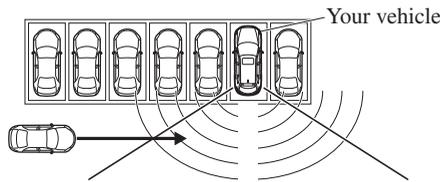
Always check the surrounding area visually before actually putting the vehicle in reverse:

The system is only designed to assist you in checking for vehicles at the rear when putting the vehicle in reverse. Due to certain limitations with the operation of this system, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights may not flash or it might be delayed even though a vehicle is behind your vehicle. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the rear.

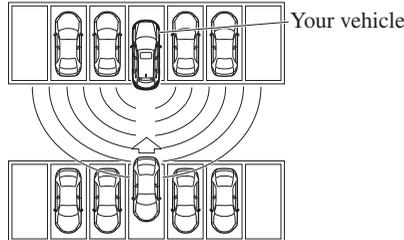
NOTE

- In the following cases, the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light turns on and operation of the system is stopped. If the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light remains illuminated, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
- Some problem with the system including the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights has occurred.
- A large deviation in the installation position of a radar sensor (rear) on the vehicle has occurred.

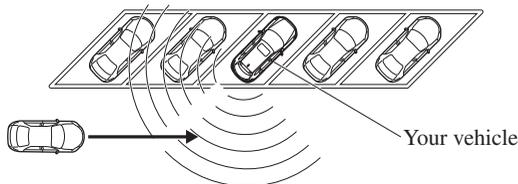
- There is a large accumulation of snow or ice on the rear bumper near a radar sensor (rear).
- Driving on snow-covered roads for long periods.
- The temperature near the radar sensors becomes extremely hot due to driving for long periods on slopes during the summer.
- The lead-acid battery voltage has decreased.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.
 - The vehicle speed when reversing is about 15 km/h (9 mph) or faster.
 - The radar sensor (rear) detection area is obstructed by a nearby wall or parked vehicle. (Reverse the vehicle to a position where the radar sensor detection area is no longer obstructed.)



- A vehicle is approaching directly from the rear of your vehicle.



- The vehicle is parked at an angle.



- Directly after the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system becomes operable using the personalisation feature.
- Radio wave interference from a radar sensor equipped on a nearby parked vehicle.
- In the following cases, it may be difficult to view the illumination/flashing of the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning indicator lights equipped on the door mirrors.
 - Snow or ice adheres to the door mirrors.

i-ACTIVSENSE

- The front door glass is fogged or covered in snow, frost or dirt.*
- Turn off the RCTA system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*

Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)

The MRCC with Stop & Go function system is designed to maintain headway control*1 with a vehicle ahead according to your vehicle's speed using a radar sensor (front) to detect the distance to the vehicle ahead and a preset vehicle speed without you having to use the accelerator or brake pedals.

*1 Headway Control: Control of the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead detected by the Mazda Radar Cruise Control (MRCC) system.

Additionally, if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead such as if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly, a warning sound and a warning indication in the display are activated simultaneously to alert you to maintain a sufficient distance between the vehicles. If the vehicle ahead stops while you are following behind it, your vehicle will stop and be held stopped automatically (stop hold control), and headway control will resume when you resume driving the vehicle such as by pressing the RES switch.

Also refer to the following before using the MRCC with Stop & Go function.

- i-stop (page 4-11)
- AUTOHOLD (page 4-82)
- Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) (page 4-248)
- Radar sensor (front) (page 4-254)

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the MRCC with Stop & Go function:

The MRCC with Stop & Go function system has detection limitations depending on the type of vehicle ahead and its conditions, the weather conditions, and the road conditions.

Additionally, the system may be unable to decelerate sufficiently to avoid hitting the vehicle ahead if the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly or another vehicle cuts into the driving lane, which could result in an accident.

Always drive carefully and verify the surrounding conditions and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

Do not use the MRCC with Stop & Go function system in the following locations, using the MRCC with Stop & Go function system at the following locations may result in an unexpected accident:

- *General roads other than highways (Driving under these conditions using the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is not possible.)*
- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy and there is insufficient space between vehicles.*

- Roads where frequent and repetitive acceleration and deceleration occur (Driving under these conditions using the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is not possible).
- When entering and exiting interchanges, service areas, and parking areas of highways (If you exit a highway while headway control is in use, the vehicle ahead will no longer be tracked and your vehicle may accelerate to the set speed).
- Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads (Tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control, or the stop hold control may not operate.)
- Long, descending slopes (to maintain distance between vehicles, the system automatically and continuously applies the brakes which could result in the loss of brake power.)
- Slopes with a steep gradient (The vehicle ahead may not be detected correctly, your vehicle may slide while stopped by the stop hold control, and it may accelerate suddenly after it starts moving.)

For safety purposes, switch the MRCC with Stop & Go function system off when it is not being used.

Do not get out of the vehicle while the stop hold control is operating:

Getting out of the vehicle while the stop hold control is operating is dangerous as the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. Before getting out of the vehicle, switch the MRCC with Stop & Go function system off, shift the selector lever to the P position, and apply the parking brake.



If your vehicle is towed or you are towing something, switch the MRCC with Stop & Go function system off to prevent a mis-operation.

NOTE

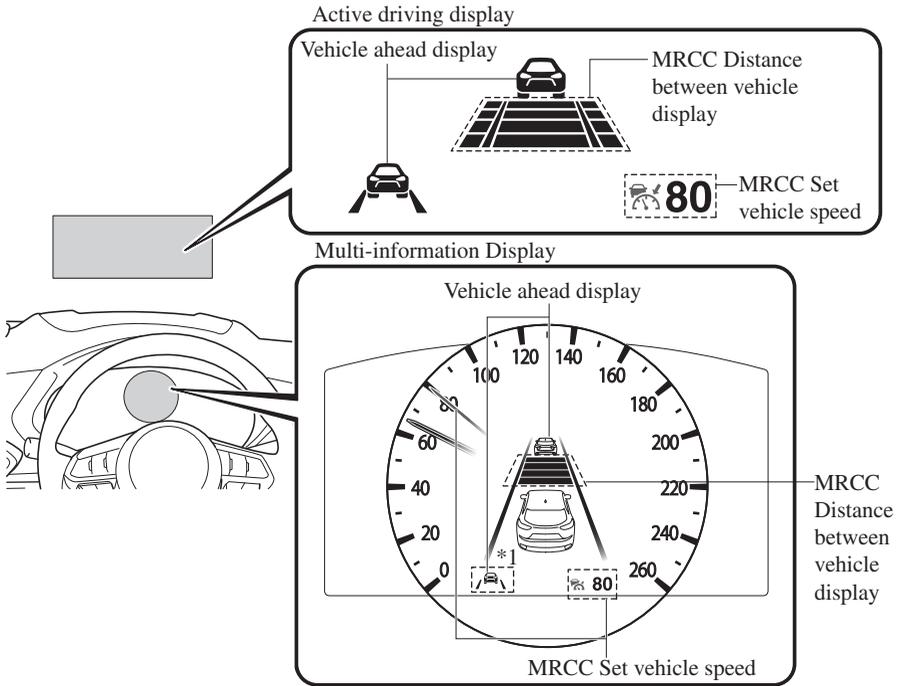
- The MRCC with Stop & Go function system does not detect the following as physical objects.
 - Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction
 - Pedestrians
 - Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)
 - If a vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely low speed, the system may not detect it correctly.
- During headway control travel, do not set the system for detection of two-wheeled vehicles such as motorcycles and bicycles.
- Do not use the MRCC with Stop & Go function system under conditions in which close proximity warnings are frequently activated.

- *During headway control travel, the system accelerates and decelerates your vehicle in conjunction with the speed of the vehicle ahead. However, if it is necessary to accelerate for a lane change or if the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly causing you to close in on the vehicle rapidly, accelerate using the accelerator pedal or decelerate using the brake pedal depending on the conditions.*
- *While the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is in use, it does not cancel even if the selector lever is operated and any intended engine braking does not occur. If deceleration is required, lower the set speed or depress the brake pedal.*
- *The sound of the automatic brakes operating may be heard, however, it does not indicate a problem.*
- *The brake lights turn on while the MRCC with Stop & Go function automatic braking is operating, however, they may not turn on while the vehicle is on a downslope at the set vehicle speed or travelling at a constant speed and following a vehicle ahead.*

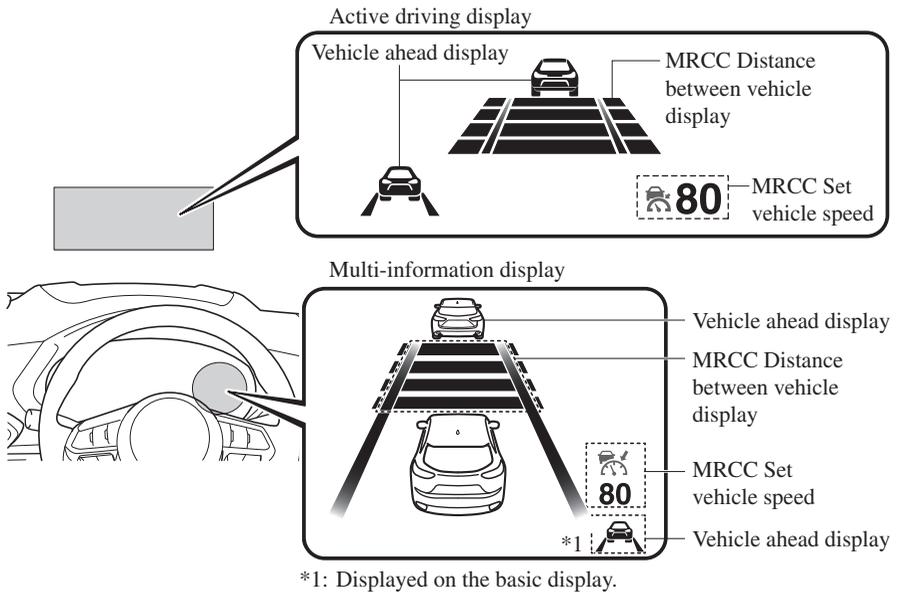
▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Display Indication

The MRCC with Stop & Go function setting status and operation conditions are indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display.

Instrument cluster (Type A)



*1: Displayed on the basic display.

Instrument cluster (Type B)

If there is a problem with the MRCC with Stop & Go function system, a message is displayed on the multi-information display. Check the centre display to verify the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Refer to Message Indicated on Display on page 7-37.

▼ Close Proximity Warning

If your vehicle rapidly closes in on the vehicle ahead because the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly while you are travelling in headway control, the warning sound activates and the brake warning is indicated in the display. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead. Additionally, keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

BRAKE!**NOTE**

In the following cases, the warnings and brakes may not operate even if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead.

- You are driving your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.
- Directly after the MRCC with Stop & Go function system has been set.
- Directly after the accelerator pedal is released.
- Another vehicle cuts into the driving lane.

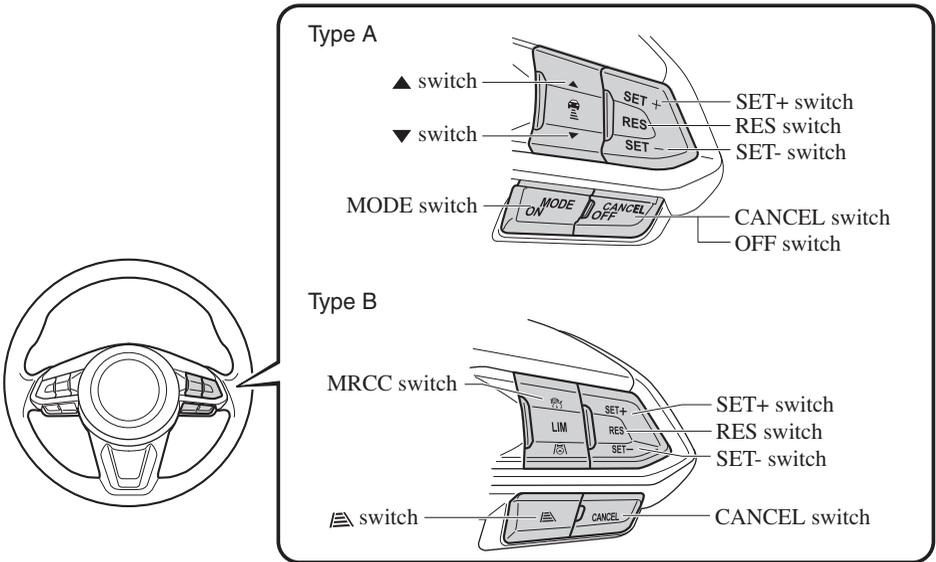
▼ Setting the System

The MRCC with Stop & Go function system operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Vehicle speed is 0 km/h (0 mph) to 145 km/h (90 mph)
- The MRCC with Stop & Go function is turned on.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is released (Electric Parking Brake (EPB) indicator light is turned off).
- There is no problem with the DSC.
- All the doors are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.
- The selector lever is in the drive (D) position or manual (M) position (manual mode).

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is cancelled when the vehicle is travelling at 30 km/h (20 mph) or less and “Mazda Radar Cruise Control disabled under 30 km/h (20 mph)” is displayed in the multi-information display.*
 - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects (There is problem with the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or windscreen is dirty).*
 - *There is a problem with the stop hold control function.*
 - *There is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).*
- *It may not be possible to set the MRCC with Stop & Go function system directly after starting the engine, while the DSC operation is being checked.*

Turning on the system**Steering wheel (Type A)**

When the MODE switch is pressed once, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system turns on, and the MRCC with Stop & Go function main indication (white) turns on and the vehicle speed and the distance between the vehicles while in headway control can be set.

Steering wheel (Type B)

When the MRCC switch is pressed once, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system turns on, and the MRCC with Stop & Go function main indication (white) turns on and the vehicle speed and the distance between the vehicles while in headway control can be set.



In addition, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system display indication is displayed on the multi-information display and the active driving display at the same time.

NOTE

- If the ignition is switched off while the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.
- The MRCC with Stop & Go function can switch to the Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA).

i-ACTIVSENSE

Refer to Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) on page 4-177.

How to set the speed

1. Adjust the vehicle speed to the desired setting using the accelerator pedal.
2. Headway control begins when the SET+ or SET- switch is pressed.
 The set speed and the inter-vehicle distance display filled with white lines is displayed.
 The MRCC with Stop & Go function main indication (white) switches to the MRCC with Stop & Go function set indication (green) at the same time.



Travel status	Indication on multi-information display		Indication on active driving display
	Type A	Type B	
During travel at constant speed			
During travel under headway control			

NOTE

· If a vehicle ahead is detected while travelling at a constant speed, the vehicle-ahead indication is displayed and headway control is performed. Additionally, when a vehicle ahead is no longer detected, the vehicle-ahead indication turns off and the system switches back to travel at constant speed.

- The lowest possible speed which can be set on the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Headway control is not possible if the vehicle ahead is driving faster than your vehicle's set speed. Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.

How to set the distance-between-vehicles during headway control

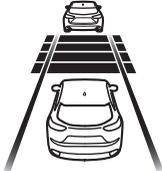
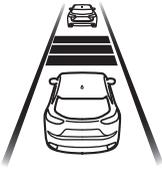
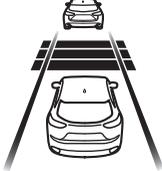
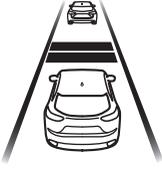
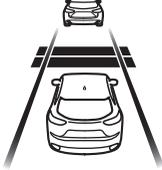
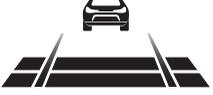
Steering wheel (Type A)

The distance-between-vehicles is set to a shorter distance by pressing the ▼ switch. The distance-between-vehicles is set to a longer distance by pressing the ▲ switch. The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

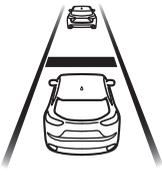
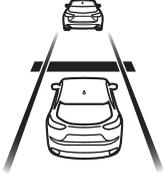
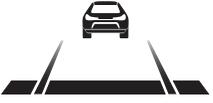
Steering wheel (Type B)

The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

The distance-between-vehicles is set to a shorter distance each time the ≡ switch is pressed. However, when the ≡ switch is pressed while the distance-between-vehicles is set to extremely short, the distance-between-vehicles is set to long.

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Indication on multi-information display		Indication on active driving display*1
	Type A	Type B	
Long (about 50 m (164 ft))			
Medium (about 40 m (131 ft))			
Short (about 30 m (98 ft))			

i-ACTIVSENSE

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Indication on multi-information display		Indication on active driving display*1
	Type A	Type B	
Extremely short (about 25 m (82 ft))			

*1 Displays a pop-up image in the active driving display only when the driver operates the switch.

NOTE

- The distance-between-vehicles differs depending on the vehicle speed, and the slower the vehicle speed, the shorter the distance.
- When the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF and then the engine is started again, the system automatically sets the distance-between-vehicles to the previous setting.

How to change the set vehicle speed**To accelerate/decelerate using the SET switch**

When you press the SET+ switch, the vehicle accelerates and when you press the SET- switch, it decelerates.

Short press	1 km/h (1 mph)
Long press	10 km/h (5 mph)

NOTE

For example, the set vehicle speed is changed by pressing the SET switch four times as follows:

The vehicle speed accelerates or decelerates by 4 km/h (4 mph).

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal and press and release the SET+ switch or SET- switch at the desired speed. If the switch is not operated, the system returns to the set

speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.

 **CAUTION**

The warnings and brake control do not operate while the accelerator pedal is depressed.

NOTE

- The setting speed can be changed by operating the SET+ switch or SET- switch during stop hold control.
- When accelerating using the SET+ switch while in headway control, the set vehicle speed can be adjusted but acceleration is not possible. If there is no longer a vehicle ahead, acceleration continues until reaching the set vehicle speed. For the set vehicle speed, check the set vehicle speed indication in the display.

- When depressing the accelerator pedal, the inter-vehicle distance indication in the display changes to the white-line indication.

Cancelling the system

When the following operations are performed, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is cancelled, and the MRCC with Stop & Go function set indication (green) switches to the MRCC with Stop & Go function main indication (white) at the same time.

- The CANCEL switch is pressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The selector lever is in the P (Park), N (Neutral), or R (Reverse) position.

Under the following conditions, the MRCC with Stop & Go function cancel indication is displayed in the multi-information display and a single beep sound is heard.

- The DSC has operated.
- The Smart Brake Support (SBS) has operated.
- The Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) has operated.
- When travelling on a downslope for a long period of time.
- There is a problem with the system.
- The engine has stalled.
- Any of the doors is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The parking brake is automatically applied during stop hold control.
- The radar sensor (front) cannot detect target objects (during rain, fog, snow or

other inclement weather conditions, or when the radiator grille is dirty).

Resuming control

If the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is cancelled, you can resume control at the previously set speed by pressing the RES switch and after all of the operation conditions have been met.

NOTE

If the set speed is not indicated in the display, the control does not resume even if the RES switch is pressed.

Turning off the system

Press the CANCEL switch 2 times while the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is operating to switch off the system.

▼ Stop Hold Control

While in headway control using the MRCC with Stop & Go function system, your vehicle will stop when a vehicle ahead stops. When the vehicle is stopped and the stop hold control operates, the MRCC with Stop & Go function indicator light turns on.

HOLD

NOTE

- *If the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is cancelled during stop hold control, the vehicle is held in its stopped position. The stop hold control can be cancelled by performing one the following actions.*
 - *Press the accelerator pedal and resume driving the vehicle.*
 - *While forcefully depressing the brake, switch the MRCC with Stop & Go function system off.*
 - *The parking brake is automatically applied and the vehicle is held in its stopped position when 10 minutes have elapsed since the stop hold control operated. At this time, the MRCC with Stop & Go function system is cancelled.*
 - *If the i-stop operation conditions are met during stop hold control, the engine stops even though the brake pedal is not depressed.*
Refer to i-stop on page 4-11.
 - *The brake lights turn on during stop hold control.*

To resume driving

After the vehicle ahead starts moving while your vehicle is stopped under stop hold control, press the RES switch or depress the accelerator pedal to cancel the stop hold control and resume driving.

NOTE

- *When you resume driving by pressing the RES switch, your vehicle does not start moving until the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead lengthens to the specified distance or farther.*
- *The engine restarts automatically when any of the actions to resume driving are performed while i-stop is operating.*
- *If the MRCC with Stop & Go function is temporarily cancelled during stop hold control, you cannot resume driving by pressing the RES switch when there are no vehicles in front of your vehicle. Depress the accelerator pedal and resume driving the vehicle.*

- *If the vehicle ahead starts moving within 3 seconds after your vehicle is stopped by the stop hold control, headway control will resume even if you do not resume driving your vehicle, such as by depressing the accelerator pedal.*

Resume driving information

If you do not resume driving within a few seconds after the vehicle ahead starts moving, the multi-information display vehicle-ahead indication flashes to urge the driver to resume driving.

Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)*

The CTS is a system which consists of a headway control function and a steering assist function for reducing driver fatigue during traffic jams when driving on expressways or highways.

This system performs headway control to maintain a constant distance between your vehicle and a vehicle ahead at a preset vehicle speed without you having to use the accelerator or brake pedal. Even further, with the steering assist function, when vehicle lane lines are detected, the function assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane lines. If lane lines are not detected, the function provides the driver driving assistance in keeping the vehicle along the motion path with the vehicle ahead.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on CTS:

- *The CTS is not an automated driving system. In addition, the functions have limitations. Do not rely completely on the system and always stay on course using the steering wheel.*
- *Set a vehicle speed within the speed limit according to the road conditions and the weather conditions.*
- *The CTS may not be able to detect a vehicle ahead depending on the type of vehicle ahead and its conditions, the weather conditions, and the road conditions. Additionally, the system might be unable to decelerate sufficiently if a vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly, another vehicle cuts into the driving lane, or the difference in vehicle speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is larger, which could result in an accident. Check the surrounding conditions and always drive carefully while keeping a safe distance from vehicles ahead and on-coming vehicles.*

For the purposes of safety, switch the CTS off when it is not being used.

Leaving the CTS turned on when it is not in use is dangerous as it could operate unexpectedly, resulting in an accident.

Do not use the CTS under the following conditions. Otherwise, it may result in an accident.

- *General roads other than expressways or highways (Driving under these conditions using the CTS is not possible.)*
- *Roads with sharp curves and where vehicle traffic is heavy with insufficient space between vehicles, or roads where frequent and repetitive acceleration and deceleration occur (Driving under these conditions using the CTS is not possible).*

- *When entering and exiting interchanges, service areas, and parking areas of expressways (If you exit an expressway while headway control is in use, the vehicle ahead will no longer be tracked and your vehicle may accelerate to the set speed).*
- *Slippery roads such as icy or snow-covered roads and unpaved roads (Tyres could spin causing you to lose vehicle control, or the stop hold control may not operate.)*
- *Long, descending slopes (to maintain distance between vehicles, the system automatically and continuously applies the brakes which could result in the loss of brake power.)*
- *Two-wheeled vehicles such as motorcycles or bicycles are ahead.*
- *Slopes with a steep gradient (The vehicle ahead may not be detected correctly, your vehicle may slip while stopped by the stop hold control, or it may accelerate suddenly after it starts moving.)*
- *Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).*
- *Tyres of a different specified size are used, such as a temporary spare tyre.*
- *Tyres with insufficient tread are used.*
- *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
- *The vehicle is being used to tow a camper or boat trailer.*
- *Tyre chains are used.*
- *The vehicle is driven on roads with lane lines other than white (yellow) lines, such as an expressway.*

Do not get out of the vehicle while the stop hold control is operating.

Getting out of the vehicle while the stop hold control is operating is dangerous as the vehicle may move unexpectedly and result in an accident. Before getting out of the vehicle, switch the CTS off, apply the parking brake, and then shift the selector lever to the P position.



Heed the following cautions so that the CTS can operate normally.

- *Turn the system off when the vehicle is running on a chassis roller.*
- *Do not modify the vehicle's suspensions.*
- *Always use wheels of the specified size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.*

NOTE

- *The headway control does not detect the following as physical objects.*
- *Vehicles approaching in the opposite direction*

- Pedestrians
- Stationary objects (stopped vehicles, obstructions)
- If a vehicle ahead is travelling at an extremely low speed, the system may not detect it correctly.
- If there is a structure on the road or an object (such as a monorail) at a low height off the ground in front of the vehicle, the system may operate. Therefore, do not use the CTS.
- Do not use the CTS under conditions in which close proximity warnings are frequently activated.
- If it is necessary to accelerate for a lane change or the vehicle ahead brakes suddenly causing you to close in on the vehicle rapidly, accelerate using the accelerator pedal or decelerate using the brake pedal depending on the conditions.
- While the CTS is in use, any intended engine braking does not occur even if you shift the selector lever. If deceleration is required, lower the vehicle speed setting or depress the brake pedal.
- While braking by the CTS control is operating, you might hear an operation sound, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- The brake lights turn on while braking by the CTS control is operating, however, they may not turn on while the vehicle is on a down slope at the set vehicle speed or travelling at a constant speed and following a vehicle ahead.
- Under the following conditions, the CTS may not be able to detect white (yellow) lines or vehicles ahead correctly and the CTS may not operate normally.
 - The forward sensing camera (FSC) cannot recognise the area in front of the vehicle due to soiling or fog.
 - The white (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or paint flaking.
 - White (yellow) lane lines or vehicles ahead are less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).
 - The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from construction where there might be multiple white (yellow) lane lines, or they are interrupted.
 - The camera picks up an obscure line, such as a temporary line being used for construction, or because of shade, unmelted snow, or grooves filled with water.
 - The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.
 - Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat causing the vehicle to tilt.
 - A vehicle in front of your vehicle is running near a white (yellow) lane line making it less visible.
 - The windscreen is dirty or foggy.
 - The vehicle is driven through an intersection, a junction, or a fork in the road.
 - While white (yellow) lane lines cannot be detected due to road or weather conditions.
 - The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.

- *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated at night.*
- *Back-light is reflected off the road surface or the road surface is wet and shiny after rain.*
- *The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white (yellow) lane line is cast on the road.*
- *The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.*
- *The road is excessively uneven.*
- *The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.*
- *There are various road markings or division lines (lane markings) of various shapes near an intersection.*
- *The area in front of the forward sensing camera (FSC) is soiled or an object that obstructs the field of view is installed.*
- *Exhaust gas from the vehicle in front, sand, snow, and water vapour rising from manholes and grating, and water splashed into the air.*
- *The surroundings are dark such as during the early evening or early morning.*
- *A vehicle ahead with a certain tail light shape.*
- *A vehicle ahead veers off course from your vehicle's line of travel.*
- *A vehicle ahead is driving erratically.*
- *The vehicle is driven on roads with tight curves.*

Headway control function

If a vehicle ahead is detected while travelling at a constant speed, the vehicle-ahead indication is displayed and headway control is performed.

Steering assist function

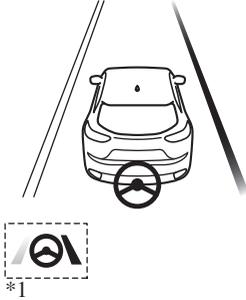
When lane lines are detected, the function assists the driver in keeping the vehicle within the lane lines. If lane lines are not detected, the function provides the driver driving assistance in keeping the vehicle along the motion path with the vehicle ahead.

NOTE

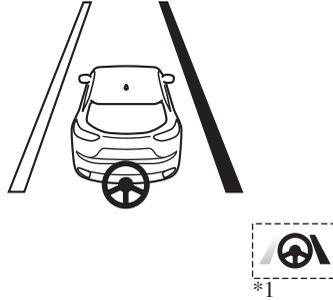
Steering assist limit warning

If the steering assist function cannot keep the vehicle within the lane lines while the steering assist function is operating, a warning sound is activated and a warning is displayed on the multi-information display to urge the driver to operate the steering wheel.

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



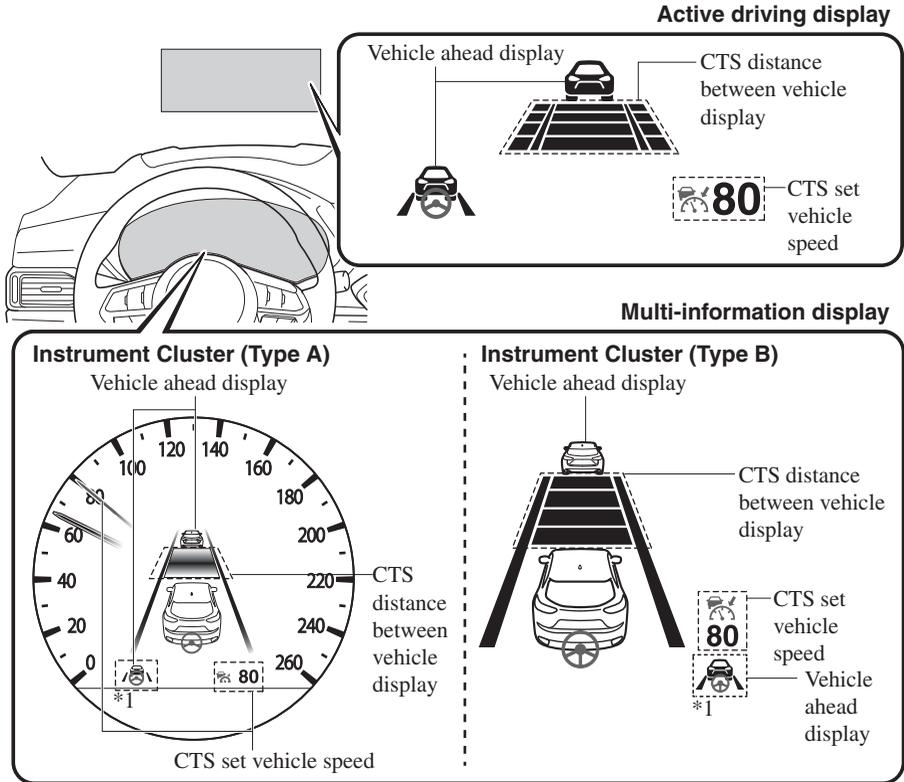
Instrument Cluster (Type B)



*1: Displayed on the basic display.

▼ **Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display Indication**

The CTS setting status and operation conditions are indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display.



*1: Displayed on the basic display.

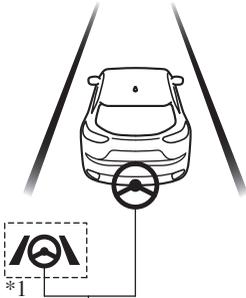
Steering assist function display

When the steering assist function operates, the steering assist operation display on the display changes from white to green.

i-ACTIVSENSE

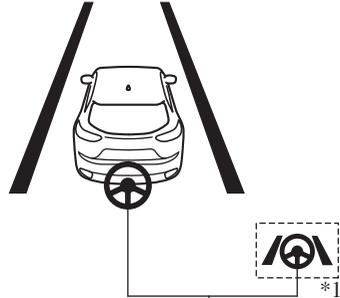
Multi-information display

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Steering assist operation display

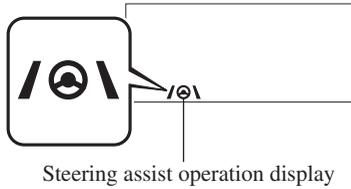
Instrument Cluster (Type B)



Steering assist operation display

*1: Displayed on the basic display.

Active driving display



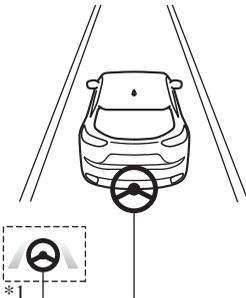
Steering assist operation display

NOTE

You can view the multi-information display to check whether the steering assist is performing controls in conjunction with the traffic lane lines or a vehicle ahead.

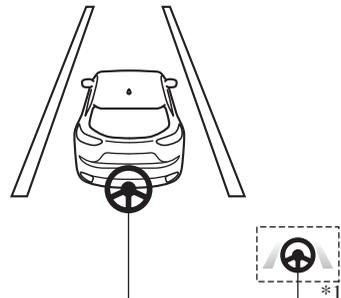
Inactive

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



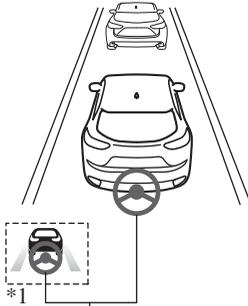
Steering assist operation display (white)

Instrument Cluster (Type B)



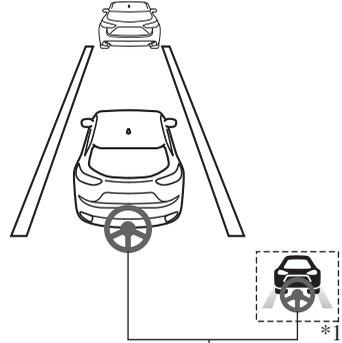
Steering assist operation display (white)

*1: Displayed on the basic display.

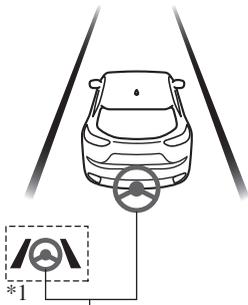
Active (vehicle ahead)**Instrument Cluster (Type A)**

Steering assist operation
display (green)

*1: Displayed on the basic display.

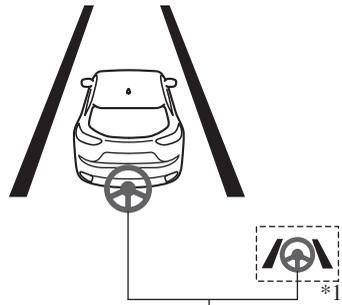
Instrument Cluster (Type B)

Steering assist operation
display (green)

Active (lane line)**Instrument Cluster (Type A)**

Steering assist operation
display (green)

*1: Displayed on the basic display.

Instrument Cluster (Type B)

Steering assist operation
display (green)

If there is a problem with the CTS, a message is displayed on the display. Check the details of the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Close Proximity Warning

If your vehicle rapidly closes in on the vehicle ahead because the vehicle ahead applies the brakes suddenly while you are travelling in headway control, the warning sound activates and the brake warning is indicated in the display. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal while keeping a safer distance from the vehicle ahead. Additionally, keep a safe distance from the vehicles behind you.

BRAKE!

NOTE

In the following cases, the warnings and brakes may not operate even if your vehicle starts closing in on the vehicle ahead.

- *You are driving your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
- *Directly after the CTS has been set.*
- *Directly after the accelerator pedal is released.*
- *Another vehicle cuts into the driving lane.*

▼ Setting the System

Operation conditions

Headway control function

The CTS operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- Vehicle speed is 0 km/h (0 mph) to 145 km/h (90 mph)
- The headway control function of the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) is set to operable (if it was set to inoperable, set it to operable using the personalisation function).
- The selector lever is in the D or M position (manual mode).
- The CTS is operating.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The parking brake is released (Electric Parking Brake (EPB) indicator light is turned off).
- There is no problem with the DSC.
- All the doors are closed.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

NOTE

- *Under the following conditions, the CTS cannot be used when the vehicle speed is 30 km/h (19 mph) or slower.*
 - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects (There is problem with the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or windscreen is dirty).*
 - *There is a problem with the stop hold control function.*

- There is a problem with the Electric Parking Brake (EPB).
- The CTS may not launch directly after the engine starts.

Steering assist function

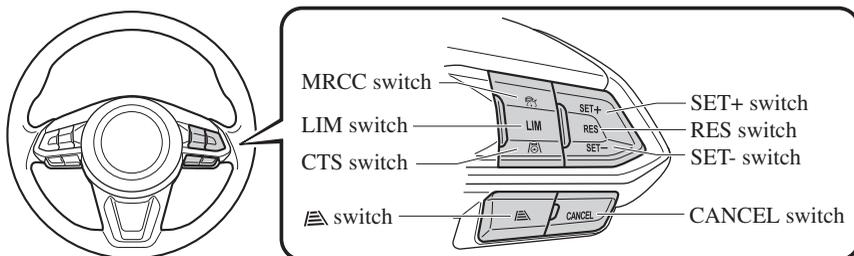
The steering assist function operates when all of the following conditions are met.

- When driving near the centre of the lane and the white (yellow) lane lines on both sides are detected clearly, or a vehicle ahead is detected clearly in front of your vehicle and your vehicle speed is less than about 55 km/h (34 mph).
- The steering wheel is not turned sharply.
- The direction indicator lever is not operated.
- The headway control function is operating.
- The Off-Road Traction Assist is not operating.
- When Off-road mode is not selected using Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive).

NOTE

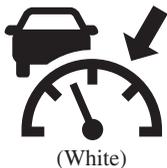
- The function assisting your steering operation to follow the trajectory of the vehicle ahead does not operate at a vehicle speed of about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster.
- The steering assist function operates so that the vehicle remains near the centre of the driving lane, however, depending on conditions such as the road curvature, road slope and undulations, and vehicle speed, the function might not be able to keep the vehicle near the centre of the driving lane.

Setting method



1. Press the CTS switch.

The CTS standby indication (white) turns on. In addition, the CTS display indication is displayed on the multi-information display at the same time.



2. Adjust the vehicle speed to the desired setting using the accelerator pedal and press the SET+ switch or SET- switch to start headway control. The set speed is indicated on the display. At the same time, the CTS standby indication (white) changes to the CTS set indication (green).



3. The headway control is operable when all of the conditions for it to operate are met, or the steering assist function is operable when all of the conditions for it to operate are met.

NOTE

- If a vehicle ahead is detected while travelling at a constant speed, the vehicle-ahead indication is displayed and headway control is performed. Additionally, when a vehicle ahead is no longer detected, the vehicle-ahead indication turns off and the system switches back to travel at constant speed.
- The lowest possible speed which can be set on the CTS is 30 km/h (19 mph).
- Headway control is not possible if the vehicle ahead is driving faster than your vehicle's set speed. Adjust the system to the desired vehicle speed using the accelerator pedal.
- When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the CTS operable, the CTS remains operational the next time the ignition is switched ON.
- When the CTS switch is pressed while the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system is operating, the CTS operates. In addition, when the MRCC switch is pressed while the CTS is operating, the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system operates.

Changing the set vehicle speed

To accelerate/decelerate using the SET switch

When you press the SET+ switch, the vehicle accelerates and when you press the SET- switch, it decelerates.

Short press	1 km/h (1 mph)
Long press	10 km/h (5 mph)

NOTE

For example, the set vehicle speed is changed by pressing the SET switch four times as follows:

The vehicle speed accelerates or decelerates by 4 km/h (4 mph).

To increase speed using accelerator pedal

Depress the accelerator pedal and press and release the SET+ switch or SET- switch at the desired speed. If the switch is not operated, the system returns to the set speed after you release your foot from the accelerator pedal.



The warnings and brake control do not operate while the accelerator pedal is depressed.

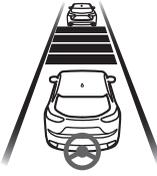
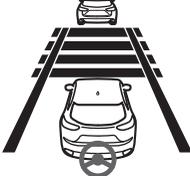
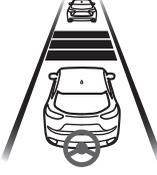
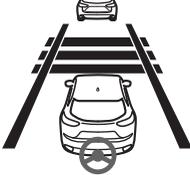
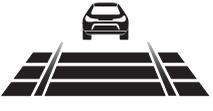
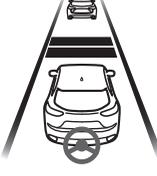
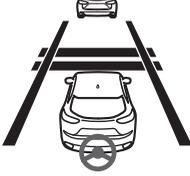
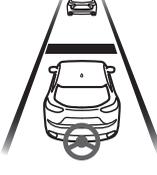
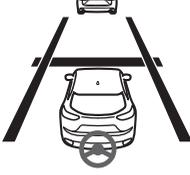
NOTE

- *When accelerating using the SET+ switch while in headway control, the set vehicle speed can be adjusted but acceleration is not possible. If there is no longer a vehicle ahead, acceleration continues until reaching the set vehicle speed. For the set vehicle speed, check the set vehicle speed indication in the display.*
- *When depressing the accelerator pedal, the inter-vehicle distance indication in the display changes to the white-line indication.*
- *The setting speed can be changed by operating the SET+ switch or SET- switch during stop hold control.*

Changing the distance between vehicles during headway control

The distance-between-vehicles can be set to 4 levels; Long, medium, short, and extremely short distance.

The distance-between-vehicles is set to a shorter distance each time the  switch is pressed. However, when the  switch is pressed while the distance-between-vehicles is set to extremely short, the distance-between-vehicles is set to long.

Distance-between-vehicles guideline (at 80 km/h (50 mph) vehicle speed)	Indication on multi-information display		Indication on active driving display*1
	Type A	Type B	
Long (about 50 m (164 ft))			
Medium (about 40 m (131 ft))			
Short (about 30 m (98 ft))			
Extremely short (about 25 m (82 ft))			

*1 Displays a pop-up image in the active driving display only when the driver operates the switch.

NOTE

- The distance-between-vehicles differs depending on the vehicle speed, and the slower the vehicle speed, the shorter the distance.

- When the ignition is switched to ACC or OFF and then the engine is started again, the system automatically sets the distance-between-vehicles to the previous setting.

The function is temporarily cancelled

Headway control function

When the following operations are performed, the headway control function is temporarily cancelled and the CTS set indication (green) changes to the CTS standby indication (white) at the same time.

- The CANCEL switch is pressed.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The selector lever is in the P, N, or R position.

Under the following conditions, the CTS cancel indication is displayed in the multi-information display and a single beep sound is heard.

- The DSC has operated.
- The Smart Brake Support (SBS) has operated.
- The Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) has operated.
- When travelling on a downslope for a long period of time.
- There is a problem with the system.
- The engine has stalled.
- Any of the doors is opened.
- The driver's seat belt is unfastened.
- The radar sensor (front) cannot detect target objects (during rain, fog, snow or other inclement weather conditions, or when the radiator grille is dirty).
- The parking brake is automatically applied during stop hold control.

Steering assist function

If any of the following conditions occurs, the steering assist function is temporarily cancelled.

- The headway control function is cancelled.
- White (yellow) lane lines cannot be detected or a vehicle ahead cannot be recognised.
- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines and the vehicle speed is about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster.
- The accelerator pedal is operated.
- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The Off-Road Traction Assist has operated.
- When Off-road mode is selected using Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive).
- The vehicle is being driven on a sharp curve.

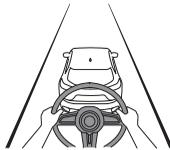
i-ACTIVSENSE

- The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.
- The driver takes his/her hands off the steering wheel.
- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- There is a problem with the system.
- The temperature in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is too high or too low.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is foggy.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

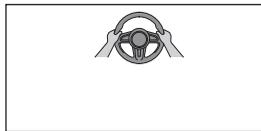
NOTE

- *The function assisting your steering operation to follow the trajectory of the vehicle ahead is cancelled when your vehicle speed is about 55 km/h (34 mph) or faster.*
- *If you take your hands off the steering wheel, a warning is indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display. Then, if you continue to leave your hands off the steering wheel, a warning is indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display and a warning sound is activated.*

Multi-information Display



Active Driving Display



- *If the steering wheel is held lightly, or depending on the road conditions, the system determines that you have released the steering wheel (not holding the steering wheel) even if you are holding it, and an alert is indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display.*

To resume operation

If the CTS is temporarily cancelled, it will resume operation at the previously set speed by pressing the RES switch after all of the operation conditions have been met.

NOTE

- If the set speed is not indicated on the display, the system does not operate even if the RES switch is pressed.
- After the operation, the steering assist operation may not operate for a period of 5 seconds at the most until the lane lines are detected or a vehicle ahead is recognised.

Turning off

When the CTS switch is pressed while the CTS is operating, the CTS turns off.

▼ Stop Hold Control

While in headway control using the CTS, your vehicle will stop when a vehicle ahead stops. When the vehicle is stopped and the stop hold control operates, the CTS indicator light turns on.



NOTE

- If the CTS system is cancelled during stop hold control, the vehicle is held in its stopped position. The stop hold control can be cancelled by performing one of the following actions.
 - Press the accelerator pedal and resume driving the vehicle.
 - While forcefully depressing the brake, switch the CTS system off.
- The parking brake is automatically applied and the vehicle is held in its stopped position when 10 minutes have elapsed since the stop hold control operated. At this time, the CTS system is cancelled.
- If the i-stop operation conditions are met during stop hold control, the engine stops even though the brake pedal is not depressed.
Refer to i-stop on page 4-11.
- The brake lights turn on during stop hold control.

To resume driving

After the vehicle ahead starts moving while your vehicle is stopped under stop hold control, press the RES switch or depress the accelerator pedal to cancel the stop hold control and start driving.

NOTE

- *When you resume driving by pressing the RES switch, your vehicle does not start moving until the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead lengthens to the specified distance or farther.*
- *The engine restarts automatically when any of the actions to resume driving are performed while i-stop is operating.*
- *If the CTS is temporarily cancelled during stop hold control, you cannot resume driving by pressing the RES switch when there are no vehicles in front of your vehicle. Depress the accelerator pedal and resume driving the vehicle.*
- *If the vehicle ahead starts moving within 3 seconds after your vehicle is stopped by the stop hold control, headway control will resume even if you do not resume driving your vehicle, such as by depressing the accelerator pedal.*

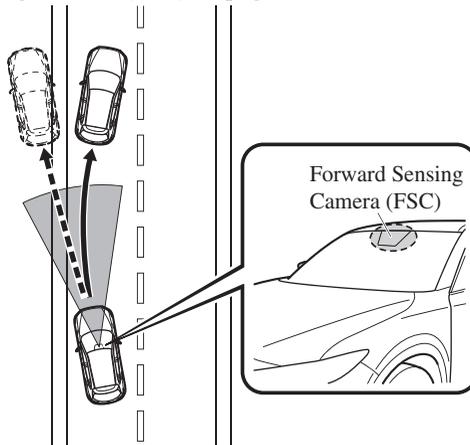
Resume driving information

If you do not resume driving within a few seconds after the vehicle ahead starts moving, the multi-information display vehicle-ahead indication flashes to urge the driver to resume driving.

Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)

The LAS & LDWS alerts the driver that the vehicle may be deviating from its lane and it provides steering assistance to help the driver stay within the vehicle lanes.

The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects the white lines (yellow lines) of the vehicle lane in which the vehicle is travelling and if the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, it operates the electric power steering to assist the driver's steering operation. The system also alerts the driver by activating a lane departure warning sound, vibrating the steering wheel, and indicating an alert in the display. Use the system when you drive the vehicle on roads with white (yellow) lines such as expressways and highways. Refer to Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) on page 4-248.



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the LAS & LDWS:

- The LAS & LDWS is not an automatic driving system. In addition, the system is not designed to compensate for a driver's lack of caution, and over-reliance on the system could lead to an accident.
- The detection ability of the LAS & LDWS is limited. Always stay on course using the steering wheel and drive with care.

Do not use the LAS & LDWS in the following cases:

The system may not operate adequately according to the actual driving conditions, resulting in an accident.

- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *Driving under bad weather conditions (rain, fog, and snow).*
- *Slippery roads such as ice or snow-bound roads.*
- *Roads with heavy traffic and insufficient distance between vehicles.*
- *Roads with no white (yellow) lane lines.*
- *Narrow roads resulting from road construction or lane closures.*
- *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from road construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*
- *Vehicle is driven on roads other than expressways and highways.*
- *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
- *The vehicle is being used to tow a camper or boat trailer.*
- *Tyres of a different specified size are used, such as an emergency spare tyre.*



Heed the following cautions so that the LAS & LDWS can operate normally.

- *Do not modify the suspensions.*
- *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.*

NOTE

- *When the direction indicator lever is operated for a lane change, the LAS & LDWS is automatically disabled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the direction indicator lever is returned and the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*
- *If the steering wheel, accelerator pedal, or brake pedal is operated abruptly and the vehicle moves close to a white (yellow) line, the system determines that the driver is making a lane change and the LAS & LDWS operation is temporarily cancelled. The LAS & LDWS becomes operational again when the system detects white (yellow) lane lines while the vehicle is being driven normally within its vehicle lane.*
- *If the vehicle deviates from its lane repeatedly within a short period of time, the LAS & LDWS may not operate.*
- *When white (yellow) lane lines are not detected, the LAS & LDWS does not operate.*
- *Under the following conditions, the LAS & LDWS may not be able to detect white (yellow) lane lines correctly and it may not operate normally.*
 - *If an object placed on the instrument panel is reflected in the windscreen and picked up by the camera.*
 - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat and the vehicle is tilted.*

- *The tyre pressures are not adjusted to the specified pressure.*
- *Tyres other than conventional tyres are equipped.*
- *Vehicle is driven on an intersection or junction, or on a forked road.*
- *The white (yellow) lane lines are less visible because of dirt or fading/patchiness.*
- *A vehicle in front of your vehicle is running near a white (yellow) lane line making it less visible.*
- *A white (yellow) lane line is less visible because of bad weather (rain, fog, or snow).*
- *The vehicle is driven on a temporary lane or section with a closed lane resulting from construction where there may be multiple white (yellow) lane lines or they are interrupted.*
- *A misleading line is picked up on the road such as a temporary line for construction, or because of shade, lingering snow, or grooves filled with water.*
- *The surrounding brightness suddenly changes such as when entering or exiting a tunnel.*
- *The illumination of the headlights is weakened because of dirt or the optical axis is deviated.*
- *The windscreen is dirty or foggy.*
- *The windscreen, camera is fogged (water droplets).*
- *Back-light is reflected off the road surface.*
- *The road surface is wet and shiny after rain, or there are puddles on the road.*
- *The shade of a guardrail parallel to a white (yellow) lane line is cast on the road.*
- *The width of the driving lane is narrow or wide.*
- *Driving on roads with tight curves.*
- *The road is excessively uneven.*
- *The vehicle is shaken after hitting a road bump.*
- *There are 2 or more adjacent white (yellow) lane lines.*
- *There are various road markings or lane markings of various shapes near an intersection.*

▼ System Operation

System operation

When the ignition is switched ON, the system goes on standby.

Drive the vehicle in the centre of the vehicle lane while the system is on standby. When all of the following conditions are met, and the system becomes operational.

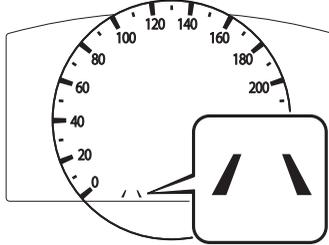
- The engine is running.
- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides.
- The driver is operating the steering wheel.
- The driving lane is neither narrow nor wide.
- The steering assist function of the Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) is not operating.

i-ACTIVSENSE

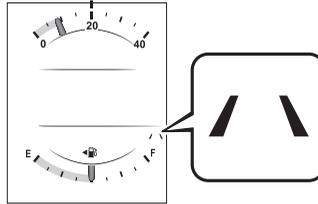
When the system becomes operational, the LAS & LDWS indication (white) is displayed on the multi-information display and active driving display.

Multi-information display (Basic display)

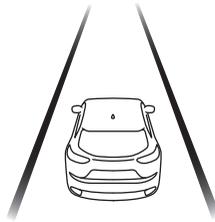
Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)



Multi-information display (i-ACTIVSENSE display)



Active driving display



The LAS & LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The ABS/TCS is operating.
- The TCS is turned off.
- The Off-Road Traction Assist is turned on.

- When Off-road mode is selected using Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive).
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The width of a lane is excessively narrow or wide.
- The steering assist function of the CTS operated.

NOTE

- *The LAS & LDWS does not operate until the system detects white (yellow) lane lines on either the left or right.*
- *When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not operate the steering wheel operation assist and the warning for the lane line on the side that is not being detected. The steering wheel operation assist and the warning is only for a lane deviation on the side that is being detected.*
- *When the system determines that the driver is driving the vehicle with his or her hands off the steering wheel while the steering wheel operation assist is operating, and if the condition continues several times within a certain period of time, the warning sound is activated. The higher the number of times the steering wheel operation assist operates, the longer the period of time the warning sound is activated.*
- *The timing at which the lane departure warning is activated and the steering wheel operation assist is performed varies.*
- *The following settings for the LAS & LDWS can be changed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.*
 - *Steering operation assist operational/non-operational*
 - ***(Mazda Connect (Type A) only)***
 - *Cancel sensitivity (likelihood of steering assist)*

Vehicle lane line display

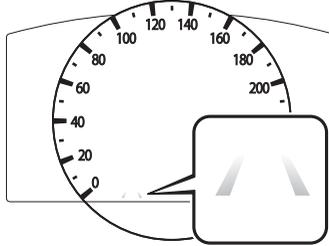
When the LAS & LDWS goes on standby, the vehicle lane lines are indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display. When white (yellow) lines on both the left and right sides are detected and the system becomes operational, the vehicle lane lines indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display change to white.

i-ACTIVSENSE

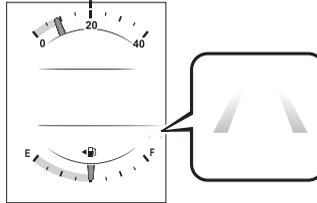
(Stand-by status)

Multi-information display (Basic display)

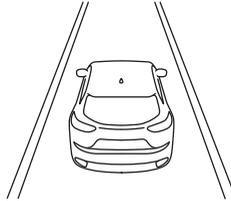
Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)



Multi-information display (i-ACTIVSENSE display)

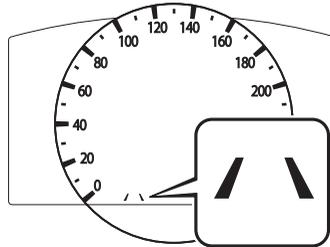


Active driving display

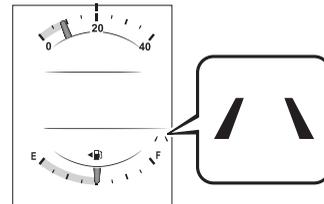
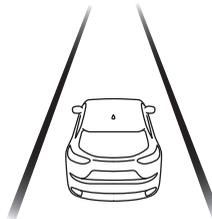


(Operational status)**Multi-information display (Basic display)**

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)

**Multi-information display (i-ACTIVSENSE display)****Active driving display****NOTE**

When only one side of the white (yellow) lines is detected, only the detected vehicle lane line indicated on the multi-information display and the active driving display changes to white.

Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is automatically cancelled, the LAS & LDWS warning indication (amber) turns on, and an alert is displayed. When the LAS & LDWS become operational, the system turns back on automatically.

i-ACTIVSENSE

- The temperature in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is too high or too low.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is foggy.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

Auto cancel of warning/steering assist

When the following operations are performed, the LAS & LDWS operation is cancelled automatically. The LAS & LDWS resumes automatically after the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is operated.
- The accelerator pedal is operated.

(Mazda Connect (Type A) only)

(To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Cancel sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)

- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

NOTE

- *After the operation, the LAS & LDWS operation may not operate for a period of 5 seconds at the most until the lane lines are detected.*
- *Under the following conditions, the LAS & LDWS cancels the warning/steering assist automatically.*
 - *The TCS OFF switch is pressed to cancel the TCS.*
 - *The Off-Road Traction Assist switch is pressed to turn on the Off-Road Traction Assist.*
 - *When Off-road mode is selected using Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive).*

Steering wheel operation assist OFF (non-operational)

The steering wheel operation assist for the LAS & LDWS can be turned off. However, when driving the vehicle while the CTS function is in use, the steering wheel operation assist turns on automatically.

When the steering wheel operation assist has been turned off, only the lane departure warning is operational.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

System operation

Drive the vehicle in the centre of the driving lane while the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster is turned off.

The system becomes operational when all of the following conditions are met.

- The engine is running.

- The vehicle speed is about 60 km/h (37 mph) or faster.
- The system detects white (yellow) lane lines on both the right and left sides or on either side.
- The vehicle is driven on a straight road or road with gentle curves.
- The steering assist function of the CTS is not operating.

The LAS & LDWS goes on stand-by status in the following cases:

- The vehicle speed is less than about 60 km/h (37 mph).
- The system cannot detect white (yellow) lane lines.
- The vehicle is making a sharp curve.
- The vehicle is making a curve at an inappropriate speed.
- The steering assist function of the CTS operated.

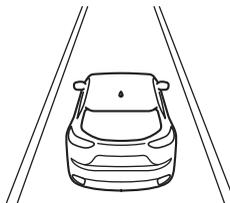
NOTE

- *The LAS & LDWS remains on stand-by until it detects white (yellow) lines on both the left and right sides, or on either side.*
- *When the system detects a white (yellow) lane line on one side only, the system will not activate warnings for the lane line on the side that is not being detected.*
- **(Mazda Connect (Type A) only)**
The distance and warning sensitivity (likelihood of a warning) which the system uses to determine the possibility of a lane departure can be changed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

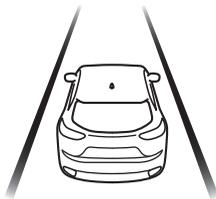
Vehicle lane line display

When the LAS & LDWS becomes operational while on standby, the vehicle lane lines are displayed in the multi-information display. The system changes to operational status display when the system detects a white (yellow) line on either the left or right.

(Stand-by status)



(Operational status)



NOTE

When only one side of the white (yellow) lines is detected, only the detected vehicle lane line indicated on the multi-information display changes to white.

Auto cancel

In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is automatically cancelled, the LAS & LDWS warning indication (amber) turns on, and an alert is displayed. When the LAS & LDWS become operational, the system turns back on automatically.

- The temperature in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is too high or too low.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is foggy.
- The windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is blocked by an obstruction, causing poor forward visibility.

Auto cancel of warnings

When the following operations are performed, the LAS & LDWS determines that the driver intends to make a lane change and the system operation is cancelled automatically. The LAS & LDWS resumes automatically after the operation.

- The steering wheel is operated abruptly.
- The brake pedal is depressed.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.

(Mazda Connect (Type A) only)

(To cancel the automatic sensitivity cancel function, deselect “Warning sensitivity” in the personalisation features setting.)

- The direction indicator lever is operated.
- The vehicle crosses a lane line.

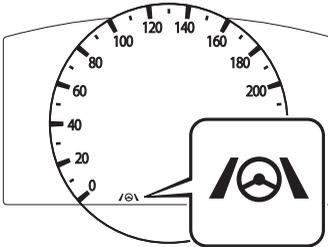
▼ Steering Wheel Operation Assist

When the system determines that the vehicle might be deviating from its lane, the steering wheel operation assist operates.

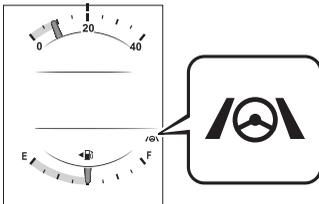
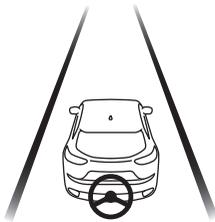
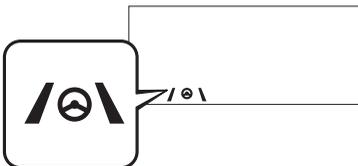
The system notifies the driver that it provided steering wheel operation assistance on the multi-information display and the active driving display.

Multi-information display (Basic display)

Instrument Cluster (Type A)



Instrument Cluster (Type B)

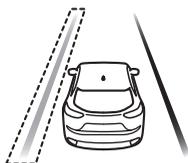
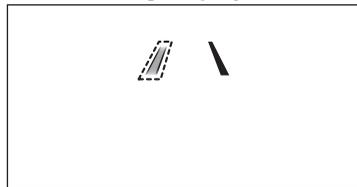
**Multi-information display (i-ACTIVSENSE display)****Active driving display****NOTE**

- When the driver operates the steering wheel while the steering wheel operation assist is operating, the steering wheel operation assistance is cancelled.

▼ Lane Departure Warning

If the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, the lane departure warning is activated and the direction in which the system determines that the vehicle may deviate is indicated in the multi-information display and the active driving display.

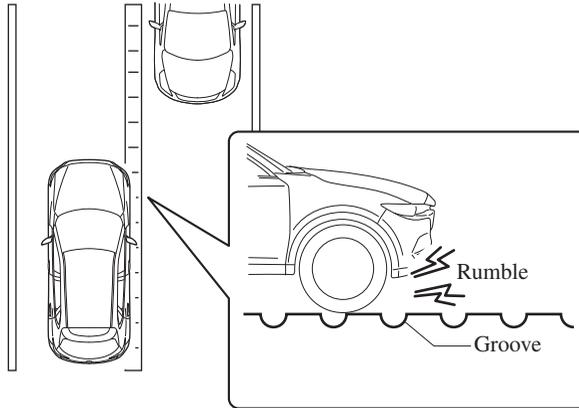
If the system determines that the vehicle may deviate from its lane, the colour of the lane line on the side being detected by the system changes from white to amber, and flashes.

Multi-information Display**Active Driving Display****NOTE**

- If you have set the lane departure warning sound to the beep sound/rumble sound (Mazda Connect (Type A) only)*¹ setting, the warning sound may not be heard depending on the surrounding noise conditions.
- If you have set the lane departure warning system to the steering wheel vibrations setting, the vibration may not be felt depending on the road surface conditions.
- When the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to operational, the warnings can be set to activate/not activate. (If the setting for the steering operation assist is changed to non-operational, the warnings cannot be set to non-operational.) Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- The LAS & LDWS can be changed to the following settings regardless of whether the steering operation assist has been set to operational/non-operational. Always check the setting status when driving the vehicle and make setting changes if necessary. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
 - Steering wheel vibration: Strong/weak
 - Warning sound volume
 - Types of warnings (steering wheel vibration/beep sound/rumble sound (Mazda Connect (Type A) only)*¹)

*¹ A rumble strip is a series of grooves in the road pavement surface positioned at specific intervals, and when the vehicle passes over it a vibration and rumble sound is produced which alerts the driver that the vehicle is departing from the lane.

The rumble sound is a reproduction of the sound which occurs when a vehicle passes over a rumble strip.



▼ System Cancelling

When the LAS & LDWS is turned off, press the LAS & LDWS OFF switch.



The LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light turns on.



NOTE

- When driving the vehicle while the CTS function is in use, the LAS & LDWS turns on automatically.
- In the following cases, the LAS & LDWS is cancelled automatically and the LAS & LDWS OFF indicator light turns on. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 - There is a malfunction in the power steering.
 - There is a malfunction in the TCS.
 - There is a malfunction in the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
- When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF with the lane-keep system operable, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

When the LAS & LDWS is turned off, the vehicle lane line indication in the

i-ACTIVSENSE

multi-information display and the active driving display turn off.

Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)

The ISA is a function which keeps the vehicle speed below the speed limit set from a speed limit sign or an optionally set speed limit. The speed limit can be set between 30 and 200 km/h (20-125 mph), and if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed limit while driving on steep slopes, the system notifies the driver using the display and a warning sound.

The ISA recognises a speed limit sign based on the Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) or the navigation system information. Refer to Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) on page 4-116.

WARNING

Always turn off the system when changing drivers:

If the driver is changed and the new driver is unaware of the ISA function, the vehicle may not accelerate when the driver depresses the accelerator pedal, leading to an accident.

Depending on the weather conditions or problems with traffic signs, a traffic sign may not be recognised or a traffic sign different from the actual traffic sign may be displayed. Always make it your responsibility as a driver to check the actual traffic signs. Otherwise, it could result in an accident.

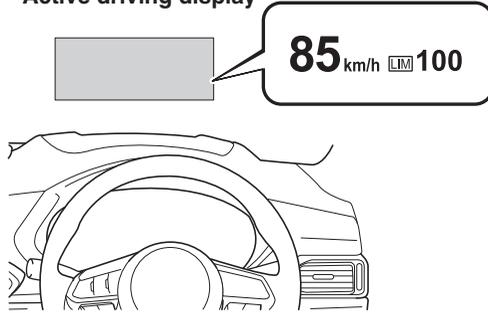
NOTE

The ISA operates only when the navigation system's SD card (Mazda genuine) is inserted.

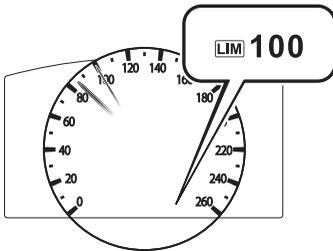
i-ACTIVSENSE

The system consists of the ISA display and the speed limiter switch on the steering wheel.

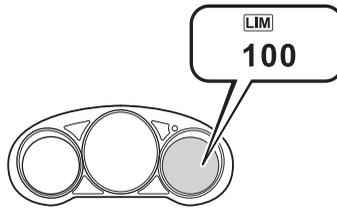
Active driving display



Instrument Cluster Type A

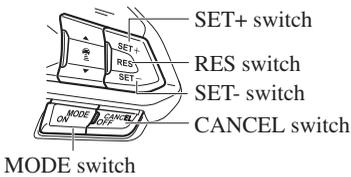


Instrument Cluster Type B

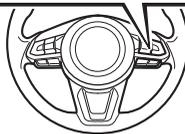
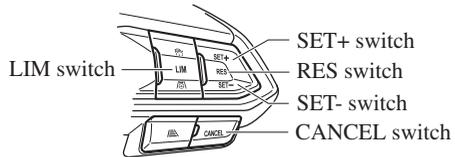


Steering wheel

Type A



Type B



▼ **Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display**

The setting status of the ISA is displayed in the active driving display or the display in the instrument cluster.

Stand-by display

Displays when the speed limiter switch is operated and the system is turned on.
 Turns off when the system is turned off.

Active Driving Display

85 km/h LIM ---

Instrument Cluster Type A

Instrument Cluster Type B

LIM ---

LIM

Setting display

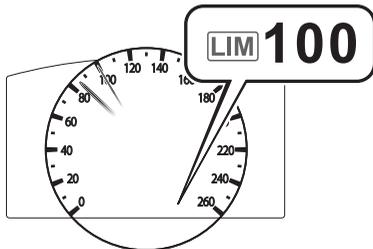
Displays when the SET- or SET+ switch is operated and the speed is set.

Active Driving Display

85 km/h LIM **100**

Instrument Cluster Type A

Instrument Cluster Type B



LIM
100

Cancel display

Displays when any of the following operations is done and the system is temporarily cancelled.

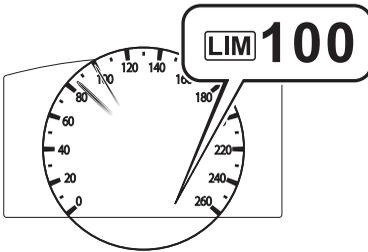
- CANCEL switch is operated
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

Active Driving Display

85 km/h **LIM** **100**

Instrument Cluster Type A

Instrument Cluster Type B



▼ Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Main Indication (White)/Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Set Indication (Green)



The indication has 2 colours.

ISA main indication (white)

Steering wheel (Type A)

The indication is display in white when the MODE switch is pressed and the ISA is activated.

Steering wheel (Type B)

The indication is display in white when the LIM switch is pressed and the ISA is activated.

ISA set indication (green)

The indication is displayed in green when a speed has been set.

▼ Speed Limiter Warning Beep

Indicated in instrument cluster

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more, a warning sound operates continuously and the ISA display flashes at the same time. The warning sound operates and the display flashes until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.

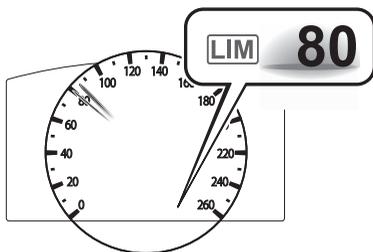
Indicated in active driving display

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or faster, the background of the ISA set speed indication turns amber and flashes 3 times. In addition, a warning sound is activated at the same time. The indication stops flashing and remains on if the vehicle speed continues to exceed the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or faster, and the indication and warning sound remain on until the vehicle is driven at the set speed or slower. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and adjust the vehicle speed by applying the brakes. Additionally, keep a safer distance from the vehicles behind you.

Active Driving Display

85 km/h LIM **80**

Instrument Cluster Type A



Instrument Cluster Type B



If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET- or RES switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 5 km/h (3 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

NOTE

When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the ISA display shows the cancel display. Even if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the warning sound is not operated.

▼ Activation/Deactivation**NOTE**

When the ignition is switched off, the system status before it was turned off is maintained.

For example, if the ignition is switched off while the ISA is operating, the system will be operable when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

Activation**Steering wheel (Type A)**

Press the MODE switch to operate the system. The ISA screen is displayed, and the ISA main indication displays in white.

Steering wheel (Type B)

Press the LIM switch to operate the system. The ISA screen is displayed, and the ISA main indication displays in white.

NOTE**Steering wheel (Type A)**

When the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system becomes operable after pressing the MODE switch, press the MODE switch again to switch to the ISA.

Deactivation

To deactivate the system, do the following operations:

When a cruising speed has been set (ISA set indication displays in green)

Long-press the CANCEL switch or press the CANCEL switch 2 times. The ISA screen is no longer displayed and the ISA set indication (green) does not display.

When a cruising speed has not been set (ISA main indication displays in white)

Press the CANCEL switch. The ISA screen is no longer displayed and the ISA main indication (white) does not display.

NOTE**Steering wheel (Type A)**

When the MODE switch is pressed while the ISA is operating, the system switches to the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system.

▼ Setting the System**Always verify the safety of the surrounding area when setting the ISA:**

If the speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed, the vehicle speed is decreased to the set speed. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and keep a safer distance between vehicles ahead and behind you.

How to set the speed limit using the SET switch

1. **(Steering wheel (Type A))**
Press the MODE switch to turn the system on.
(Steering wheel (Type B))
Press the LIM switch to turn the system on.
2. Press the SET+ or SET- to set the speed. When the current vehicle speed is 30 km/h (20 mph) or more, the speed is set to the current vehicle speed. When the current vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h (20 mph), the speed is set to 30 km/h (20 mph).
3. To increase the set speed, press the SET+ switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) increments. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) increments by pressing the SET+ switch momentary. For example, the set speed increases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET+ switch 4 times.
4. To decrease the set speed, press the SET- switch continuously. The set speed can be adjusted in 10 km/h (5 mph) decrements. The set speed can also be adjusted in about 1 km/h (1 mph) decrements by pressing the SET- switch momentary. For example, the set speed decreases about 4 km/h (4 mph) by pressing the SET- switch 4 times.

NOTE

- When the vehicle set speed is displayed in the active driving display/instrument cluster, press the RES switch to set the displayed vehicle speed.

- The system is temporarily cancelled when the vehicle is accelerated by depressing the accelerator pedal strongly, however, it resumes when the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.
- The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed on a down slope.

How to set the speed limit from the speed limit sign

1. **(Steering wheel (Type A))**
Press the MODE switch to turn the system on.
(Steering wheel (Type B))
Press the LIM switch to turn the system on.
2. Press the RES switch while the speed limit sign setting indication is being displayed in the active driving display/instrument cluster to set the vehicle speed of the displayed speed limit sign.



Speed limit
sign setting
indication

NOTE

- The system is temporarily cancelled when the vehicle is accelerated by depressing the accelerator pedal strongly, however, it resumes when the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.
- The vehicle speed may exceed the set speed on a down slope.
- The speed limit cannot be set from the speed limit sign when the speed limit sign indication is displayed in gray.

▼ Temporarily Cancelling the System

The system is temporarily cancelled (stand-by status) when any of the following operations is done while the ISA is displayed.

- CANCEL switch is pressed
- Accelerator pedal is strongly depressed

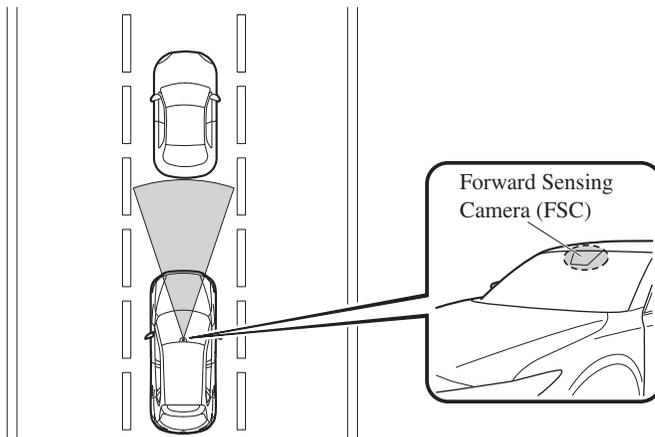
The system operates at the previous set speed limit when the RES switch is pressed while the speed limit sign setting indication is not displayed.

NOTE

- *The set speed can be set by pressing the SET+ or SET- switch while the system is in stand-by status.*
- *The ISA is not cancelled by depressing the brake pedal.*

Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)

The Advanced SCBS alerts the driver of a possible collision using the display and a warning sound when the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects a vehicle ahead or pedestrian and determines that a collision with the object is unavoidable while the vehicle is driven at a vehicle speed of about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph) if the object is a vehicle ahead and about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph) if the object is a pedestrian. In addition, the system reduces damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (Advanced SCBS brake) when the system determines that a collision is unavoidable. In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist))



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the Advanced SCBS system:

- *The Advanced SCBS system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *The Advanced SCBS system operates in response to a vehicle ahead or a pedestrian. The system does not operate in response to obstructions such as a wall, 2-wheeled vehicles, or animals.*



In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.
- The vehicle is on a chassis roller.
- When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.

Refer to Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation on page 4-187 on how to turn off the Advanced SCBS system.

NOTE

- The Advanced SCBS system will operate under the following conditions.
 - The engine is running.
 - The Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) warning indication (amber) does not illuminate.
 - **(Object is vehicle ahead)**
The vehicle speed is between about 4 to 80 km/h (2 to 50 mph).
 - **(Object is a pedestrian)**
The vehicle speed is between about 10 to 80 km/h (6.2 to 50 mph).
 - The Advanced SCBS system is not turned off.
- Under the following conditions, the Advanced SCBS system may not operate normally:
 - The Advanced SCBS system will not operate if the driver is deliberately performing driving operations (accelerator pedal and steering wheel).
 - If there is the possibility of partial contact with a vehicle ahead.
 - The vehicle is driven on a slippery road surface such as wet roads or icy or snow-bound roads.
 - The braking performance is adversely affected due to cold temperatures or wet brakes.
 - The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.
 - The accelerator pedal is depressed.
 - The brake pedal is depressed.
 - The steering wheel is being operated.
 - The selector lever is being operated.
- In the following cases, the Advanced SCBS may operate.
 - Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve.
 - Vehicles passing in the opposite lane while making a curve.
 - When passing through a toll gate.
 - When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, or tunnels.
 - If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
 - 2-wheeled vehicles, animals, or standing trees.

- During the Advanced SCBS brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.

▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the multi-information display or the active driving display.

BRAKE!

NOTE

The operation distance and volume of the collision warning can be changed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

The automatic brake operation display is indicated on the multi-information display after the Advanced SCBS is operated.



SCBS Automatic Brake

NOTE

- The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the Advanced SCBS brake or brake assist (Advanced SCBS brake assist) is operating.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the Advanced SCBS operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds 1 time after about 2 seconds and the Advanced SCBS brake is automatically released.

▼ Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) System Operation

The Advanced SCBS system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

When the Advanced SCBS system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



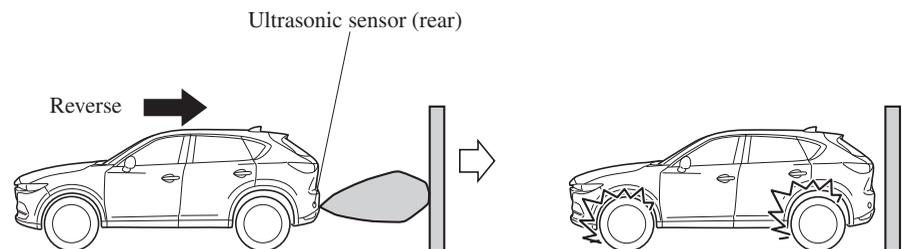
When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

NOTE

When the Advanced SCBS system is set to inoperable, the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)

The SCBS R is a system which is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision by operating the brake control (SCBS brake) when the system's ultrasonic sensors detect an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle while driving at a speed of about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph) and the system determines that a collision is unavoidable.



⚠ WARNING

Do not rely completely on the SCBS R system:

- *The SCBS R system is only designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision. Over reliance on the system leading to the accelerator pedal or brake pedal being mistakenly operated could result in an accident.*
- *To assure the correct operation of the SCBS R, heed the following cautions.*
 - *Do not apply a sticker to an ultrasonic sensor (rear) (including transparent stickers). Otherwise, the ultrasonic sensor (rear) may not be able to detect vehicles or obstructions which could result in an accident.*
 - *Do not disassemble an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
 - *If cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris is visible around an ultrasonic sensor (rear), stop using the SCBS R system immediately and have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If the vehicle continues to be driven with cracks or scratch marks left around an ultrasonic sensor, the system may operate unnecessarily and cause an unexpected accident. Refer to Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation on page 4-191.*
 - *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for rear bumper replacement.*

Do not modify the suspension:

If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the SCBS R system may not operate correctly because it cannot detect obstructions correctly.

Do not apply a strong force to an ultrasonic sensor (rear):

When washing the vehicle, do not spray highly pressurised water against an ultrasonic sensor (rear), or rub it strongly. In addition, do not hit the rear bumper forcefully when loading and unloading cargo. Otherwise, the sensors may not detect obstructions correctly which could cause the SCBS R system to not operate normally, or it could operate unnecessarily.



- When driving off-road in areas where there is grass or foliage, it is recommended that the SCBS R system be turned off.
- Always use tyres of the specified size and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all 4 wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. Otherwise, the SCBS R system may not operate normally.
- If ice or snow is stuck on the ultrasonic sensors (rear) they may not be able to detect obstructions correctly depending on the conditions. In such cases, the system may not be able to perform controls correctly. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the rear of the vehicle.

NOTE

- The vehicle posture changes depending on the accelerator pedal, brake pedal and steering wheel operations, which could make it difficult for the system to recognise an obstruction, or it could facilitate unnecessary detection. In such cases, the SCBS R may or may not operate.
- The SCBS R system will operate under the following conditions.
 - The engine is running.
 - The selector lever is in the R (reverse) position.
 - “Smart City Brake Support Reverse Malfunction” is not displayed in the multi-information display.
 - The vehicle speed is between about 2 to 8 km/h (2 to 4 mph).
 - The SCBS R is not turned off.
 - The DSC is not malfunctioning.
- The SCBS R operates using ultrasonic sensors (rear) which detect obstructions at the rear by emitting ultrasonic waves and then receiving the returning waves reflected off the obstructions.
- In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions and the SCBS R may not operate.
 - The height of the obstruction is low such as low walls or trucks with low loading platforms.
 - The height of the obstruction is high such as trucks with high loading platforms.

- *The obstruction is small.*
- *The obstruction is thin such as a signpost.*
- *The obstruction is positioned away from the centre of the vehicle.*
- *The surface of the obstruction is not pointed vertically relative to the vehicle.*
- *The obstruction is soft such as a hanging curtain or snow stuck to a vehicle.*
- *The obstruction is shaped irregularly.*
- *The obstruction is extremely close.*
- *In the following cases, the ultrasonic sensors (rear) cannot detect obstructions correctly and the SCBS R may not operate.*
 - *Something is stuck on the bumper near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
 - *The steering wheel is turned sharply, or the brake or accelerator pedal is operated.*
 - *There is another obstruction near one obstruction.*
 - *During inclement weather such as rain, fog and snow.*
 - *High or low humidity.*
 - *High or low temperatures*
 - *Strong winds.*
 - *The path of travel is not flat.*
 - *Heavy luggage is loaded in the luggage compartment or on the rear seat.*
 - *Objects such as a wireless aerial, fog light, or illuminated number plate is installed near an ultrasonic sensor (rear).*
 - *The orientation of an ultrasonic sensor (rear) has deviated for reasons such as a collision.*
 - *The vehicle is affected by other sound waves such as the horn, engine noise, ultrasonic sensor of another vehicle.*
- *In the following cases, an ultrasonic sensor (rear) may detect something as a target obstruction which could cause the SCBS R system to operate.*
 - *Driving on a steep slope.*
 - *Wheel blocks.*
 - *Hanging curtains, gate poles such as at toll gates and railroad crossing.*
 - *When travelling near objects such as foliage, barriers, vehicles, walls, and fences along a road.*
 - *When driving off-road in areas where there is grass and forage.*
 - *When passing through low gates, narrow gates, car washing machines, and tunnels.*
 - *A towing bar is installed or a trailer is connected.*
- *During the SCBS R brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.*
- *When the system operates, the user is notified by the multi-information display.*

- If there is a problem with the SCBS R system, a message is displayed in the multi-information display. Check the centre display to verify the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Refer to Message Indicated on Display on page 7-37.

▼ Automatic Brake Operation Display

“SCBS Automatic Brake” is indicated in the multi-information display after the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brakes is operated.



SCBS Automatic Brake

NOTE

- The collision warning beep sounds intermittently while the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake is operating.
- If the vehicle is stopped by the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) operation and the brake pedal is not depressed, the warning beep sounds one time after about 2 seconds and the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) brake is automatically released.

▼ Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) System Operation

The SCBS R system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

When the SCBS R system is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

NOTE

When the SCBS R system is set to inoperable, Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) and the Smart Brake Support (SBS) are also set to inoperable.

Smart Brake Support (SBS)

The SBS system alerts the driver of a possible collision using a display and warning sound if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determine that there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead while the vehicle is being driven at about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster). Furthermore, if the radar sensor (front) and the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines that a collision is unavoidable, the automatic brake control is performed to reduce damage in the event of a collision.

In addition, when the driver depresses the brake pedal, the brakes are applied firmly and quickly to assist. (Brake Assist (SBS brake assist))

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the SBS system and always drive carefully:

The SBS is designed to reduce damage in the event of a collision, not avoid an accident. The ability to detect an obstruction is limited depending on the obstruction, weather conditions, or traffic conditions. Therefore, if the accelerator pedal or brake pedal is mistakenly operated it could result in an accident. Always verify the safety of the surrounding area and depress the brake pedal or accelerator pedal while keeping a safer distance from vehicles ahead or on-coming vehicles.

CAUTION

In the following cases, turn the system off to prevent a mis-operation:

- *The vehicle is being towed or when towing another vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is on a chassis roller.*
- *When driving on rough roads such as in areas of dense grass or off-road.*

NOTE

- *The SBS system operates when all of the following conditions are met:*
 - *The ignition is switched ON.*
 - *The SBS system is on.*
 - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
 - *The relative speed between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is about 15 km/h or faster (10 mph or faster).*
 - *The Dynamic Stability Control (DSC) is not operating.*
- *The SBS system may not operate under the following conditions:*
 - *If the vehicle is accelerated rapidly and it comes close to a vehicle ahead.*
 - *The vehicle is driven at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
 - *The accelerator pedal is depressed.*
 - *The brake pedal is depressed.*
 - *The steering wheel is being operated.*
 - *The selector lever is being operated.*
 - *The direction indicator is being used.*
 - *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off.*

- When warnings and messages, such as a dirty windscreen, related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are being displayed in the multi-information display.
- Although the objects which activate the system are four-wheeled vehicles, the radar sensor (front) could detect the following objects, determine them to be an obstruction, and operate the SBS system.
 - Objects on the road at the entrance to a curve (including guardrails and snow banks).
 - A vehicle appears in the opposite lane while cornering or rounding a curve.
 - When crossing a narrow bridge.
 - When passing under a low gate or through a tunnel or narrow gate.
 - When entering an underground parking area.
 - Metal objects, bumps, or protruding objects on the road.
 - If you suddenly come close to a vehicle ahead.
 - When driving in areas where there is high grass or forage.
 - Two-wheeled vehicles such as motorbikes or bicycles.
 - Pedestrians or non-metallic objects such as standing trees.
- During the SBS brake control, the brake pedal may move rearward or become stiff. The brakes are operating, but continue to depress the brake pedal.
- When the system operates, the user is notified by the multi-information display.

- If there is a problem with the SBS system, a message is displayed in the multi-information display. Check the centre display to verify the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Refer to Message Indicated on Display on page 7-37.

▼ Collision Warning

If there is the possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead, the beep sounds continuously and a warning is indicated in the display.

BRAKE!

▼ Stopping The Smart Brake Support (SBS) System Operation

The SBS system can be temporarily deactivated.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

When the SBS system is turned off, the SBS OFF indicator light turns on.



When the engine is restarted, the system becomes operational.

NOTE

If the SBS system operation is turned off, the Smart City Brake Support (SCBS) system operation is turned off simultaneously.

360° View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))*

The 360° View Monitor consists of the following functions which assist the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle using various indications in the centre display and a warning sound while the vehicle is being driven at low speeds or while parking.

· **Top view**

The top view displays an image of the vehicle from directly above on the centre display by combining the images taken from the 4 cameras set on all sides of the vehicle. The top view displays on the left side of the screen when the front view or rear view screen is being displayed. The top view assists the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse.

· **Front view/front wide view**

The image from the front of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The view from the front assists the driver in checking the front of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front of the vehicle.

· **Side view**

The images taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle are displayed on the centre display.

The side view assists the driver in checking the front sides of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle.

· **Rear view/rear wide view**

The image from the rear of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The image from the rear assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the rear of the vehicle.

· **Parking sensor**

If there are any obstructions near the vehicle while the top view/side view is displayed, an obstruction detection indication on the centre display turns on.

The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors to detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and notifies the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction using sound and an obstruction detection indication.

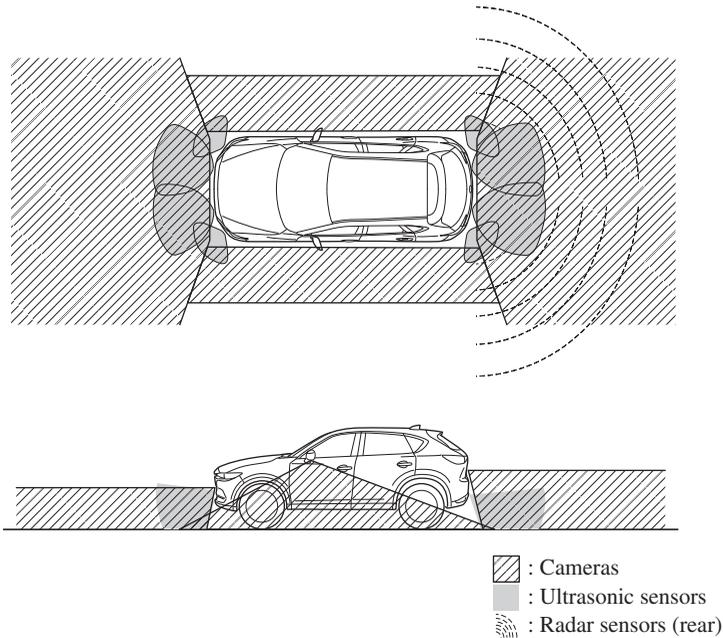
Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.

· **Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)**

If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle while the rear view/rear wide view is displayed, a warning is displayed on the centre display.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) uses radar sensors (rear) to detect vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and it assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle while reversing by flashing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and activating the warning sound.

Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-129.

360°View Monitor Range**⚠ WARNING**

Always confirm the safety of the area around the vehicle with the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.

The 360°View Monitor is an auxiliary device which assists the driver in checking the safety of the area around the vehicle.

The shooting range of the cameras and detection range of the sensors are limited. For example, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots where an obstruction may not be visible. In addition, the extended vehicle width lines and projected vehicle path lines are only to be used as references, and the images on the screen may differ from the actual conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

➤ *Do not use the 360°View Monitor under any of the following conditions.*

- *Icy or snow-covered roads.*
- *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*

- *The front doors or the liftgate is not fully closed.*
- *The vehicle is on a road incline.*
- *The door mirrors are retracted.*
- *Do not hit the front/rear camera, front bumper, and door mirrors forcefully. The camera position or installation angle may shift.*
- *The cameras are of a waterproof structure. Do not disassemble, modify, or remove a camera.*
- *The camera cover is made of hard plastic, therefore do not apply oil film remover, organic solvents, wax, or coating agents. If any such agent gets on the camera cover, wipe it off using a soft cloth immediately.*
- *Do not rub the camera lens forcefully, or clean it with an abrasive or hard brush. Otherwise, it could scratch the camera lens and negatively affect the images.*
- *Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for repair, painting, or replacement of the front/rear camera, front bumper and door mirrors.*
- *Heed the following cautions to assure that the 360°View Monitor operates normally.*
 - *Do not modify the vehicle suspensions or lower/raise the vehicle body, or both.*
 - *Always use wheels of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.*
- *When the display is cold, images may leave trails or the screen might be darker than usual, making it difficult to check the vehicle surroundings. Always confirm the safety at the front and around the vehicle visually when driving.*
- *The method for parking/stopping the vehicle using the 360°View Monitor differs depending on the road circumstances/conditions and the vehicle conditions. When and how much you turn the steering wheel will differ depending on the situation, therefore always check the vehicle surroundings directly with your eyes while using the system.*
Also, before using the system, always make sure that the vehicle can be parked/stopped in the parking/stopping space.

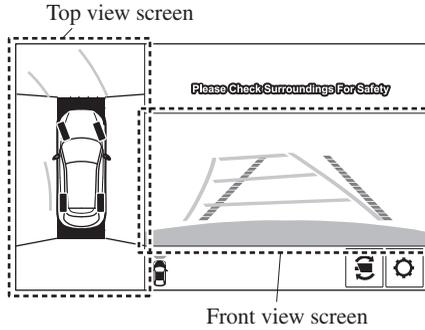
NOTE

- *If there are water droplets, snow, or mud on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If the camera lens is especially dirty, wash it off with mild detergent.*
- *If the area where the camera is installed, such as the liftgate or door mirrors, has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the camera (position, installation angle) may have shifted. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If the camera is subjected to excessive changes in temperature such as by pouring hot water on the camera during cold weather, the 360°View Monitor may not operate normally.*
- *If the lead-acid battery voltage is low, the screen might be temporarily difficult to view, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- *The 360°View Monitor has limitations. Objects under the bumper or near both ends of the bumper cannot be displayed.*
- *Obstructions above the upper image range of the camera are not displayed.*
- *Under the following conditions, the screen might be difficult to view, however this does not indicate a problem.*
 - *The temperature near the lens is high/low.*
 - *Rainy conditions, water droplets on the camera, or high humidity.*
 - *Mud or foreign matter near the camera.*
 - *Extremely bright light such as sunlight or headlights hitting the camera lens directly.*
- *Because the 360°View Monitor camera uses a special lens, the distance displayed on the screen differs from the actual distance.*
- *Obstructions displayed on the screen may appear differently than in actuality. (Obstructions may appear fallen, larger, or longer than they actually are.)*
- *Do not apply stickers to a camera or the area around it. In addition, do not install accessories or an illuminated number/character number plate to the area around a camera. Otherwise, the camera may not correctly display the surrounding conditions.*

▼ Types of Images Displayed on the Screen

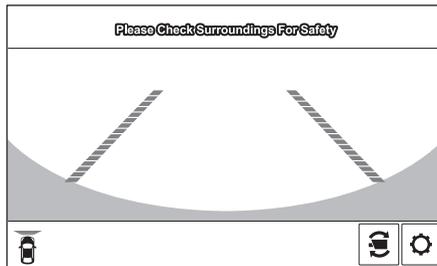
Top view/Front view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the vehicle front.



Front wide view

Displays the image of the front of the vehicle (wide-area).



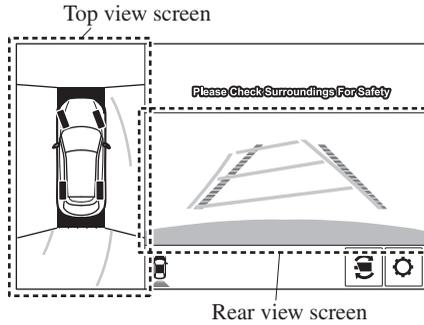
Side view

Displays the image of the left and right sides of the vehicle.



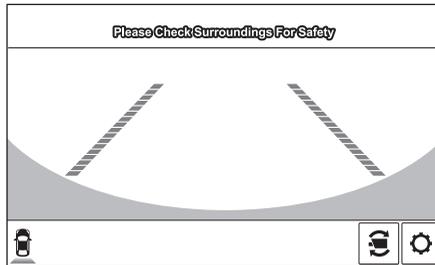
Top view/Rear view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle.



Rear wide view

Displays the image of the rear of the vehicle (wide-area).



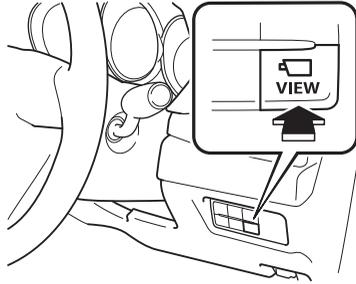
▼ How to Use the System

Top view/Front view, Front wide view, Side view

Indication

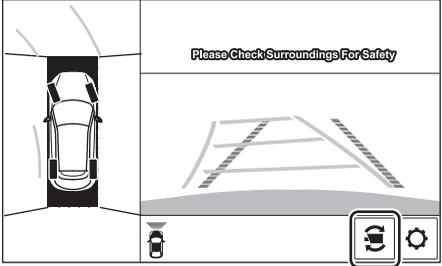
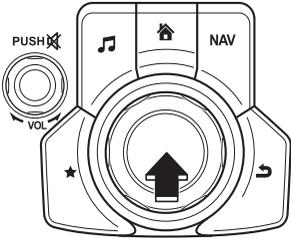
Images are displayed on the screen when the 360°View Monitor switch is pressed with all of the following conditions met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The selector lever is in a position other than R.



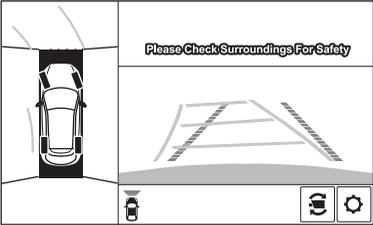
Display switching

You can change the displayed screen by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view is displayed.

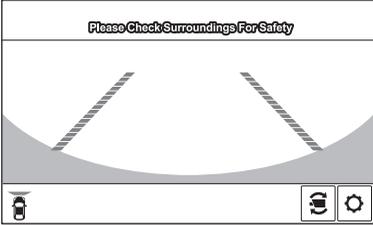


Switch camera icon

Top view/Front view



Front wide view



Side view



NOTE

- *When the selector lever is in R position, the displayed screen does not switch to the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view.*
- *Display of the top view/front view, front wide view, or the side view stops even with the display conditions met if any of the following conditions occurs.*
 - *When a switch around the commander knob is pressed.*
 - *The selector lever is shifted to P position (displayed when the selector lever is in a position other than P).*
 - ***(Displayed when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph))***
 - *4 minutes and 30 seconds have passed.*
 - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster.*
 - ***(Displayed when the vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster)***
 - *The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360°View Monitor switch.*
 - *4 minutes and 22 seconds have passed from the point when the vehicle speed was less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph) after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360° View Monitor switch.*
- *The 360°View Monitor displays the previously displayed screen.*
- *The 360° View Monitor settings can be changed as follows.*

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

 - *Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction.*
 - *Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ignition is switched ON.*

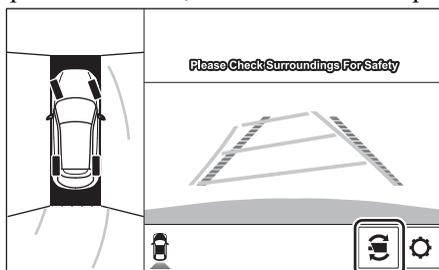
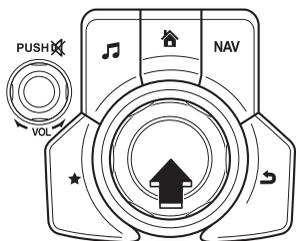
Top view/Rear view, Rear wide view

The top view/rear view, rear wide view displays when all of the following conditions are met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- Selector lever is in R position.

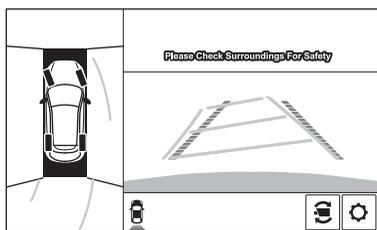
Display switching

The displayed screen can be switched by pressing the commander knob or by touching the switch camera icon on the screen while the top view/rear view, rear wide view is displayed.

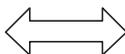
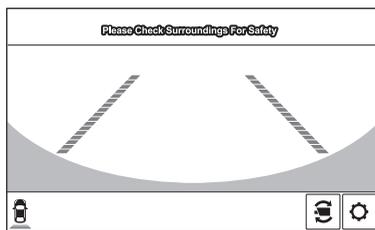


Switch camera icon

Top view/Rear view



Rear wide view



NOTE

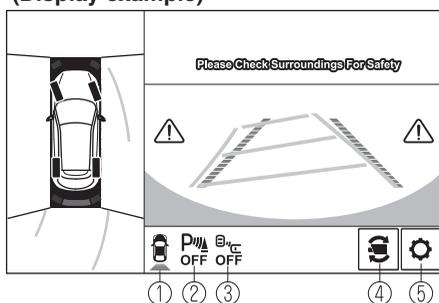
- The top view/rear view and rear wide view automatically display whether or not the 360° View Monitor switch is turned on or off when shifting the selector lever to R position.
- The setting can be changed to display the top view/front view when shifting from reverse to a forward gear without operating the 360° View Monitor switch to check the front of the vehicle while parallel parking.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Screen operation/icon

Always stop the vehicle when adjusting the 360°View Monitor image quality.

Do not adjust the 360°View Monitor image quality while driving. If you adjust the 360° View Monitor image quality (such as brightness, contrast, tone, and colour density) while driving, it could lead to an unexpected accident.

(Display example)



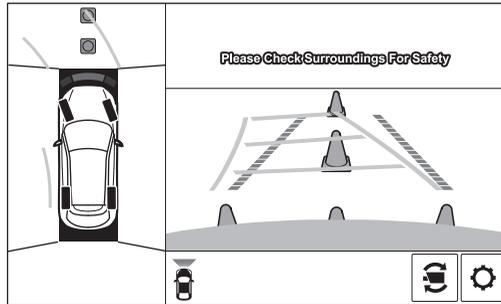
	Display/Icon	Content
①	View status icon	Indicates which image is displayed among the front view/front wide view/side view/rear view/rear wide view.
②	Parking sensor status icon	Indicates that the parking sensor has a problem or it is switched off.
③	Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) status icon	Indicates that the radar sensor (rear) has a problem or it is turned off.
④	Switch camera icon	Each time the screen is touched, the display screen switches.
⑤	Setting icon	The image quality for the 360°View Monitor can be adjusted.

▼ Top View/Front View

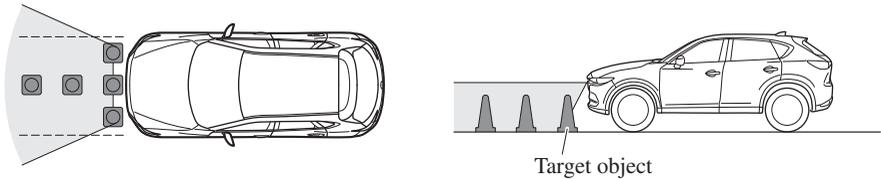
Use the top view/front view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Display range

(Screen display)

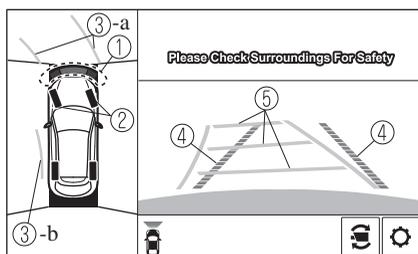


(Actual condition)



NOTE

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
 - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.
 - Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.
 - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
 - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
 - The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen

	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the edge of the front bumper is expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. • The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/yellow)	Indicates the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. • The yellow lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.

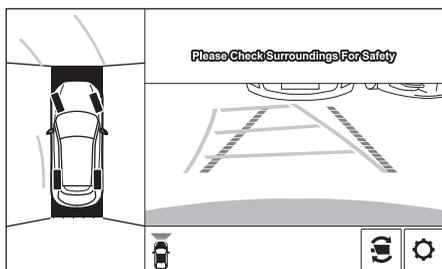
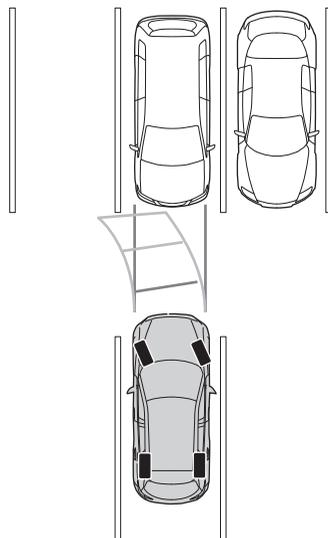


The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.

For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound.
Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.

NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

How to use the projected vehicle path line function**(Screen display)****(Actual condition)**

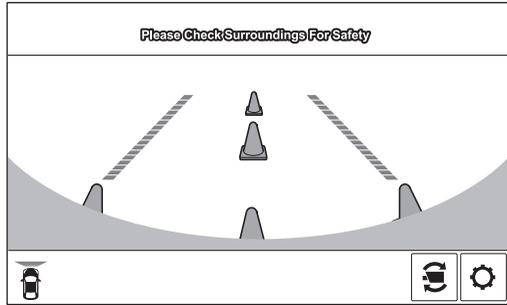
Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines.
Drive the vehicle forward while turning the steering wheel so that no obstructions come within the projected vehicle path lines.

▼ Front Wide View

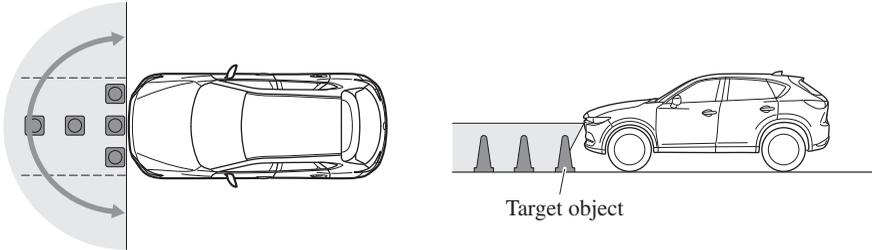
Use the front wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop or entering a T-shaped intersection and intersection.

Display range

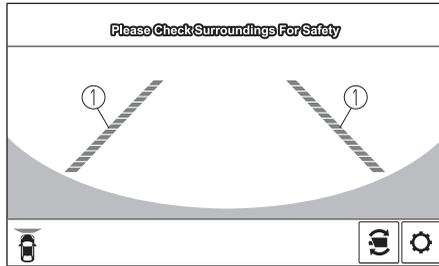
(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



Viewing the screen



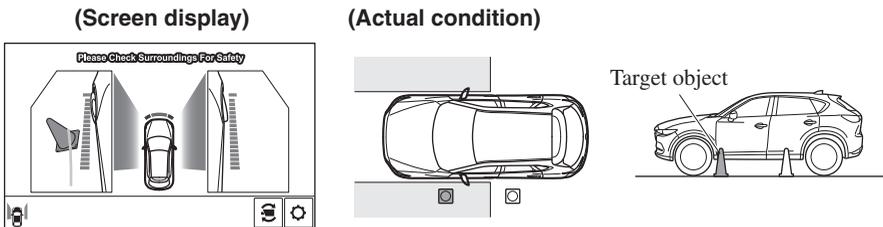
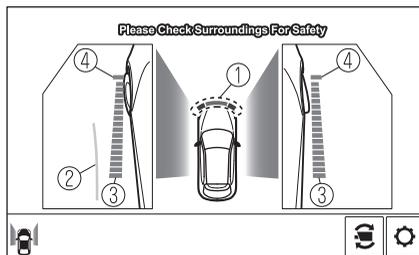
	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	<p>Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the front end of the bumper. • The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the front end of the bumper.

NOTE

- The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/front view or side view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.
- The front wide view screen displays the image in front of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

▼ Side View

Use the side view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

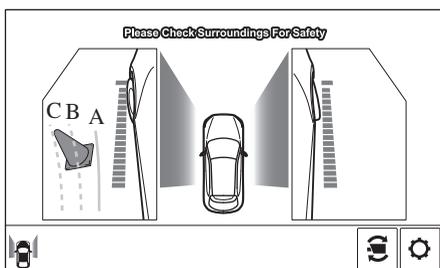
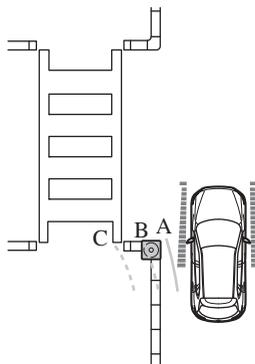
Display range**Viewing the screen**

	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.
②	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. The projected vehicle path lines (yellow) indicate the path the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.

	Display/Icon	Content
③	Vehicle parallel guide lines (blue)	Indicates the approximate vehicle width including the door mirrors.
④	Vehicle front end guide lines (blue)	Indicates the point about 0.25 m (9.8 in) from the front edge of the vehicle (front edge of the bumper).

NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

How to use the projected vehicle path line function**(Screen display)****(Actual condition)**

Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines.

Turn the steering wheel so that the projected vehicle path lines travel inside of the obstruction (A), and drive the vehicle forward until it passes the obstruction.

If the projected vehicle path lines are on an obstruction (B) or outside of the obstruction (C), the vehicle may contact the obstruction when turning the vehicle sharply.

CAUTION

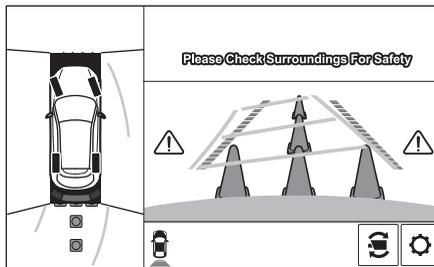
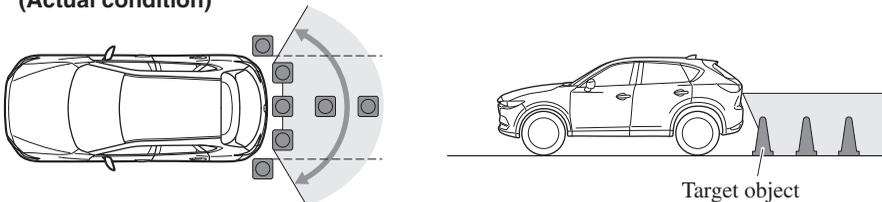
- The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.
- Do not turn the steering wheel any more until the vehicle has passed the obstruction, even if the obstruction is not visible on the side view image. If the steering wheel is turned even more, the vehicle may contact the obstruction if it is turned sharply.

NOTE

- Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen and the actual conditions, always check the safety of the surrounding area using the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.
- Even though the object displayed on the screen, such as a road curb or a division line of a parking space, and the vehicle parallel guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.

▼ Top View/Rear View

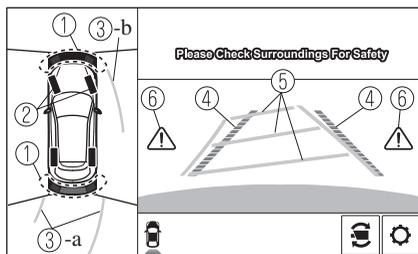
Use the top view/rear view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Range of displayed screen image**(Screen display)****(Actual condition)****NOTE**

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
 - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the whole screen may be affected and it may display in that colour.
 - Obstructions displayed in the rear view may not display on the top view screen.

- If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
- Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
- The entire screen may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Parking sensor view	Displays the parking sensor detection condition when the parking sensor is activated. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.
②	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
③	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the rear wheels are expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the outer side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
④	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> · The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. · The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

	Display/Icon	Content
⑤	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (red/yellow)	<p>These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. • The yellow lines indicate the points about 1 m (39 in) and 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.
⑥	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	<p>Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated.</p> <p>For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-129.</p>

NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

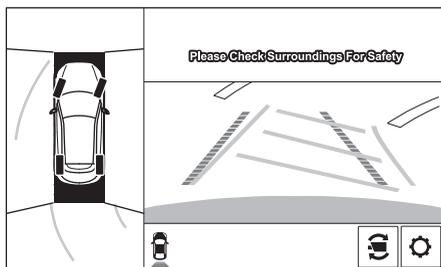
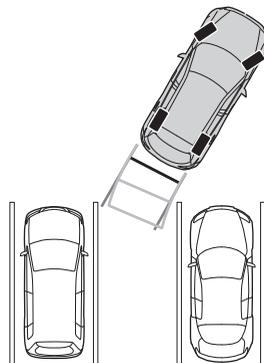
How to use the projected vehicle path line function

- *The front of the vehicle swings out wide when turning the steering wheel while reversing. Maintain sufficient distance between the vehicle and an obstruction.*
- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.*
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-282.

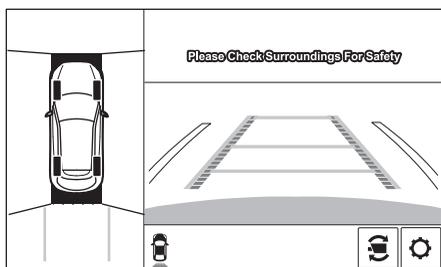
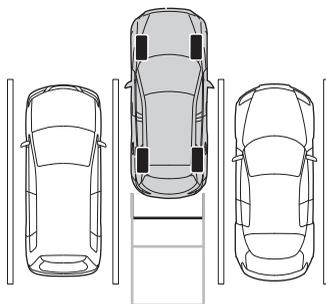
NOTE

- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen, such as indicated in the following, and the actual conditions when parking, always check the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.*
 - *Even though the back end of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen and distance guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
 - *When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, even though the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
- *The following shows an example of vehicle parking with the steering wheel turned to the right while backing up the vehicle. When backing into a parking space from the opposite direction, the steering operation is reversed.*

1. Back the vehicle into the parking space by turning the steering wheel so that the vehicle enters the centre of the parking space.

(Screen display)**(Actual condition)**

2. After the vehicle starts entering the parking space, stop and adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal, and then continue backing up slowly.
3. Once the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are parallel, straighten the wheels and back the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

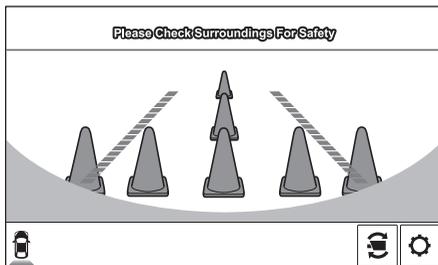
(Screen display)**(Actual condition)**

▼ Rear Wide View

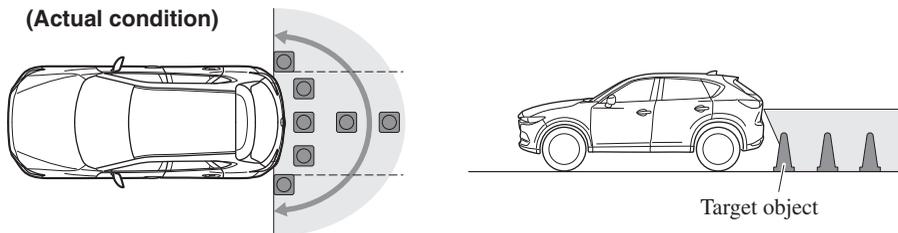
Use the rear wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Range of displayed screen image

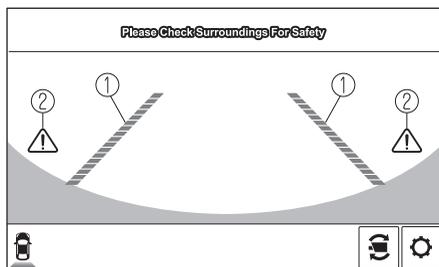
(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
①	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (red/blue)	<p>These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (20 in) from the rear end of the bumper. • The blue lines indicate the points from about 0.5 m (20 in) and up to 2 m (79 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

	Display/Icon	Content
②	Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights	Indicates when the Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) has operated. For details, refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA). Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-129.

NOTE

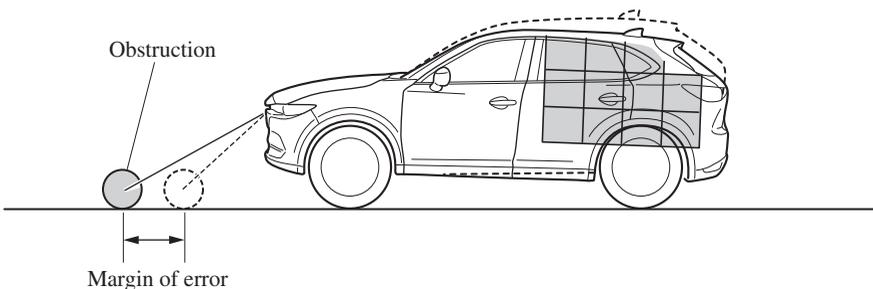
- The parking sensor obstruction detection indication does not display. Switch the screen display to the top view/rear view display if the parking sensor warning sound is activated.
- The rear wide view screen displays the image at the rear of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

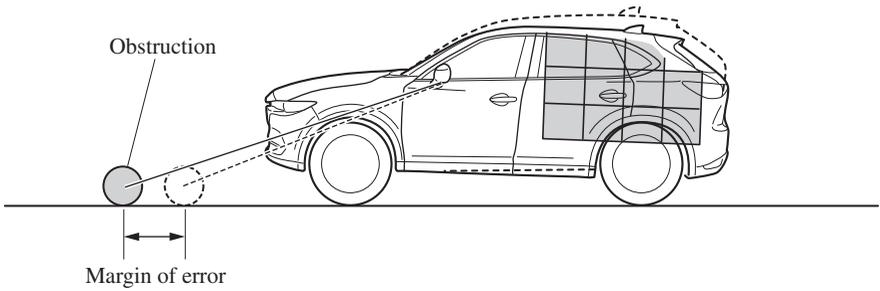
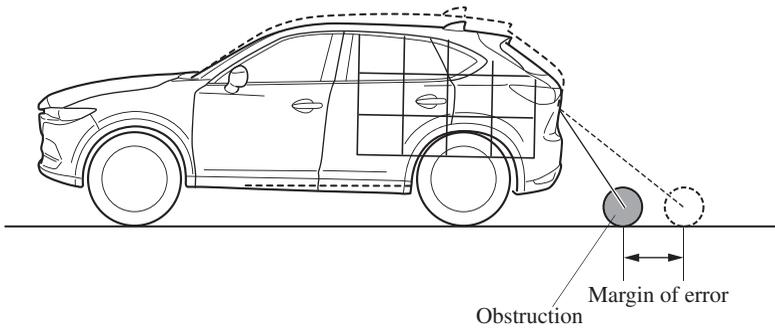
▼ Margin of Error Between Road Surface on Screen and Actual Road Surface

There might be some margin of error between the road surface appearing on the screen and the actual road surface. A margin of error in the perceived distance could lead to an accident, therefore be aware of the following conditions which can more easily produce errors in the perceived distance.

The vehicle tilts due to weight of passengers and cargo.

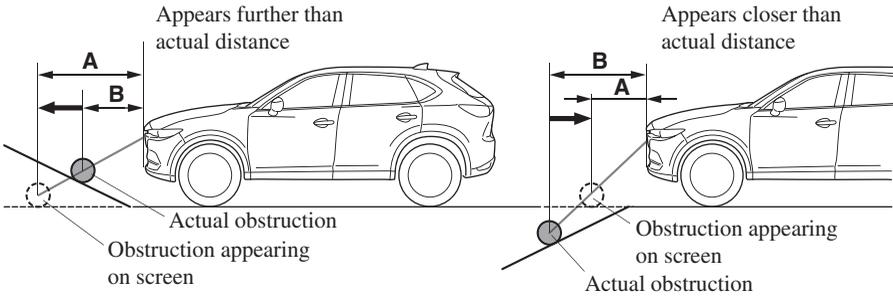
If the vehicle is tilted, obstructions picked up by a camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Front camera

Side camera**Rear camera****There is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle**

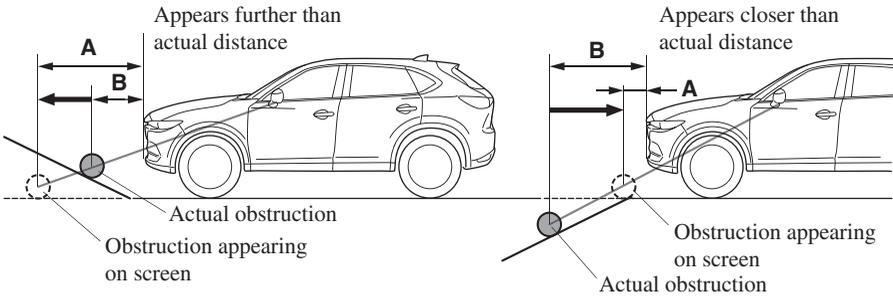
If there is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle, obstructions picked up by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Front camera



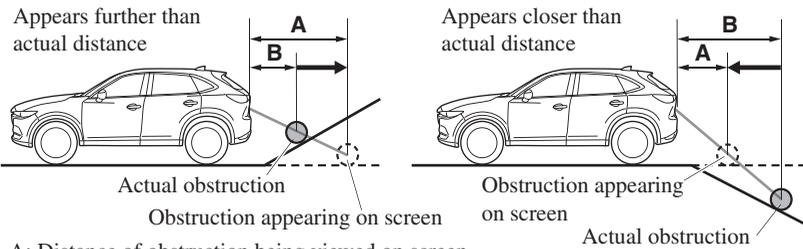
A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

Side camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

Rear camera



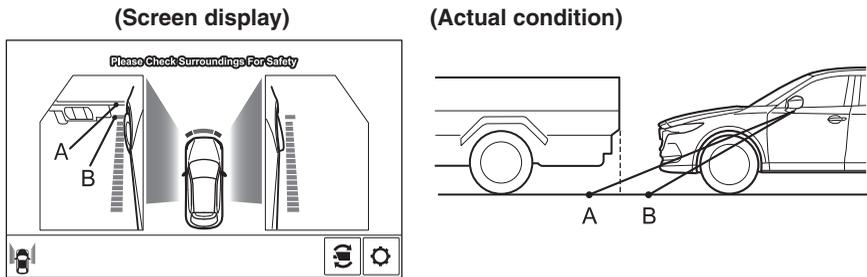
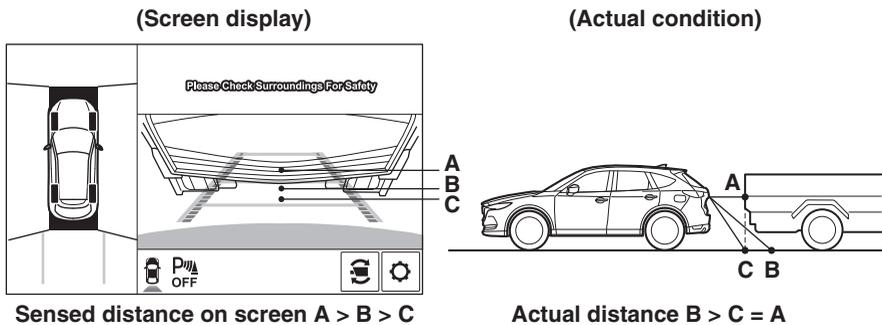
A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

NOTE

If the vehicle is on a slope, obstructions taken by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Three-dimensional object at vehicle front or rear

Because the vehicle front end guide lines (side camera) or the distance guide lines (rear camera) are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

Side camera**Rear camera****▼ System Problem Indication**

Centre display indication	Cause	Action to be taken
“No image signal reception” is displayed	The control unit might be damaged.	Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Screen is pitch-black and blank	The camera might be damaged.	

360° View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))*

▼ 360° View Monitor

The 360°View Monitor consists of the following functions which assist the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle using various indications in the centre display and a warning sound while the vehicle is being driven at low speeds or while parking.

- **Top view**

The top view displays an image of the vehicle from directly above on the centre display by combining the images taken from the 4 cameras set on all sides of the vehicle. The top view displays on the left side of the screen when the front view or rear view screen is being displayed. The top view assists the driver in checking the area surrounding the vehicle when the vehicle is moving forward or in reverse.

- **Front view/front wide view**

The image from the front of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The view from the front assists the driver in checking the front of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front of the vehicle.

- **Side view**

The images taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle are displayed on the centre display.

The side view assists the driver in checking the front sides of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the front left and right sides of the vehicle.

- **Rear view/rear wide view**

The image from the rear of the vehicle is displayed on the centre display.

The image from the rear assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle by displaying guide lines on the displayed image taken from the rear of the vehicle.

- **Parking sensor**

If there are any obstructions near the vehicle while the top view/side view is displayed, an obstruction detection indication turns on around the bumper in the centre display.

The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors to detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and notifies the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction using sound and an obstruction detection indication.

Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-291.

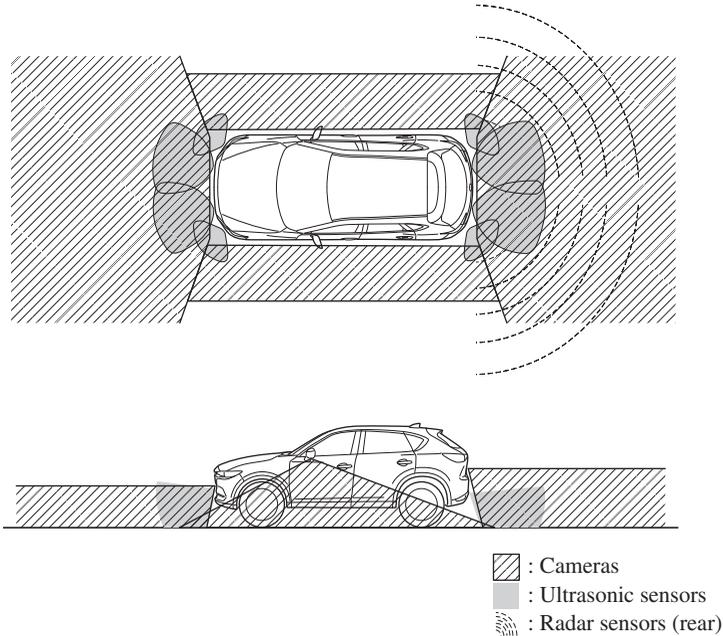
- **Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)**

If there is the possibility of a collision with an approaching vehicle while the rear view/rear wide view is displayed, a warning is displayed on the centre display.

The Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) uses rear side radar sensor to detect vehicles approaching from the rear left and right sides of the vehicle, and it assists the driver in checking the rear of the vehicle while reversing by flashing the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning lights and activating the warning sound.

Refer to Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA) on page 4-129.

360°View Monitor Range



! WARNING

Always confirm the safety of the area around the vehicle with the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving:

The 360°View Monitor is an auxiliary device which assists the driver in checking the safety of the area around the vehicle.

The shooting range of the cameras and detection range of the sensors are limited. For example, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots where an obstruction may not be visible. In addition, the extended vehicle width lines and projected vehicle path lines are only to be used as references, and the images on the screen may differ from the actual conditions.

⚠ CAUTION

- Do not use the 360°View Monitor under any of the following conditions.
 - Icy or snow-covered roads.
 - Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.
 - The front or rear doors are not fully closed.
 - The vehicle is on a road incline.
 - The door mirrors are retracted.
- Do not hit the front/rear camera, front bumper, liftgate, and door mirrors forcefully. The camera position or installation angle may shift.
- The cameras are waterproof. Do not disassemble, modify, or remove a camera.
- The camera cover is made of hard plastic, therefore do not apply oil film remover, organic solvents, wax, or coating agents. If any such agent gets on the camera cover, wipe it off using a soft cloth immediately.
- Do not rub the camera lens forcefully, or clean it with an abrasive or hard brush. Otherwise, it could scratch the camera lens and negatively affect the images.
- Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for repair, painting, or replacement of the front/rear camera, front bumper, liftgate and door mirrors.
- Heed the following cautions to assure that the 360°View Monitor operates normally.
 - Do not modify the vehicle suspensions or lower/raise the vehicle body, or both.
 - Always use tyres of the specified type and size for the front and rear wheels. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for tyre replacement.
- When the display is cold, images may leave trails or the screen might be darker than usual, making it difficult to check the vehicle surroundings. Always confirm the safety at the front and around the vehicle visually when driving.
- The method for parking/stopping the vehicle using the 360°View Monitor differs depending on the road circumstances/conditions and the vehicle conditions. When and how much you turn the steering wheel will differ depending on the situation, therefore always check the vehicle surroundings directly with your eyes while using the system.
Also, before using the system, always make sure that the vehicle can be parked/stopped in the parking/stopping space.

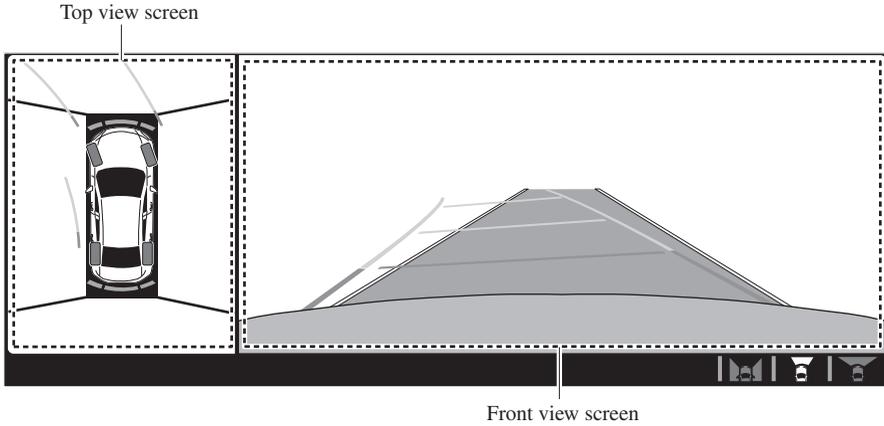
NOTE

- *If there are water droplets, snow, or mud on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If the camera lens is especially dirty, wash it off with mild detergent.*
- *If the camera lens is touched or there is any dirt on it, it could affect the screen image. Wipe the lens using a soft cloth.*
- *If the area where the camera is installed, such as the front bumper, liftgate or door mirrors, has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the camera (position, installation angle) may have shifted. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If the camera is subjected to excessive changes in temperature such as by pouring hot water on the camera during cold weather, the 360°View Monitor may not operate normally.*
- *If the lead-acid battery voltage is low, the screen might be temporarily difficult to view, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- *The 360°View Monitor has limitations. Objects under the bumper or near both ends of the bumper cannot be displayed.*
- *Obstructions above the upper image range of the camera are not displayed.*
- *Under the following conditions, the screen might be difficult to view, however this does not indicate a problem.*
 - *The temperature near the lens is high/low.*
 - *Rainy conditions, water droplets on the camera, or high humidity.*
 - *Mud or foreign matter near the camera.*
 - *Extremely bright light such as sunlight or headlights hitting the camera lens directly.*
 - *The surroundings are illuminated by vehicle lights, fluorescent lights, or LED lights (display may flicker).*
 - *Extremely small dark or white dots appear on the screen (dots may flicker).*
- *Because the 360°View Monitor camera uses a special lens, the distance displayed on the screen differs from the actual distance.*
- *Obstructions displayed on the screen may appear differently than in actuality. (Obstructions may appear fallen, larger, or longer than they actually are.)*
- *Do not apply stickers to a camera or the area around it. In addition, do not install accessories or an illuminated number/character number plate to the area around a camera. Otherwise, the camera may not correctly display the surrounding conditions.*
- *Only rear and rear wide images displayed on the monitor from the 360° view monitor camera are reversed images (mirror images).*
- **Free/open source software information**
This product includes free/open sources. Information about the licensing and source code is available at the following URL.
<https://www.denso.com/global/en/opensource/svss/mazda/>

▼ Types of Images Displayed on the Screen

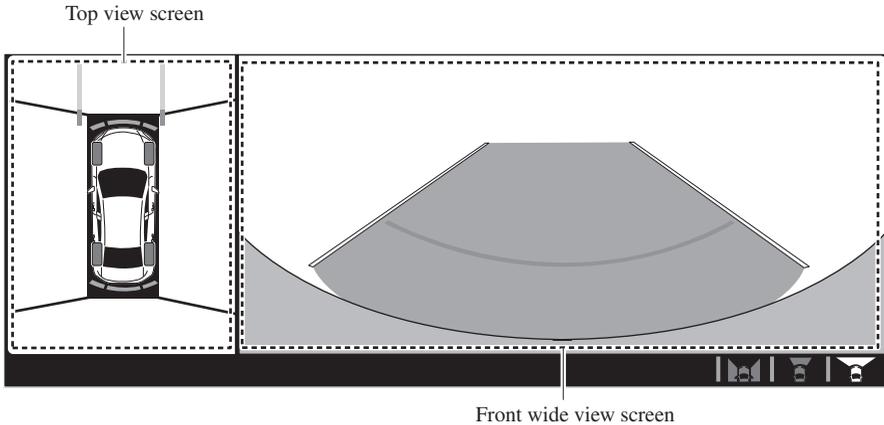
Top view/Front view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the vehicle front.



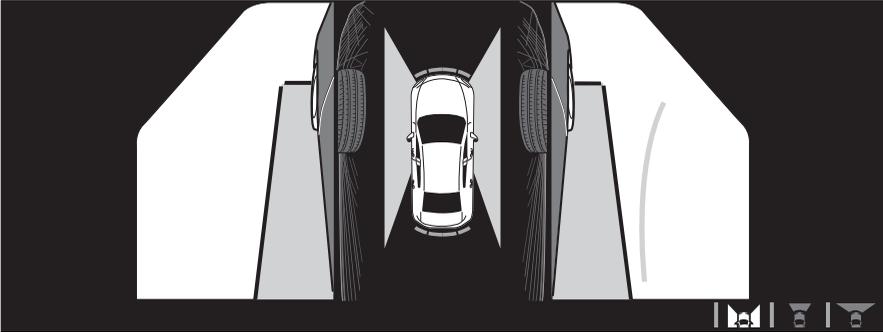
Top view/Front wide view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the front of the vehicle (wide-area).



Side view

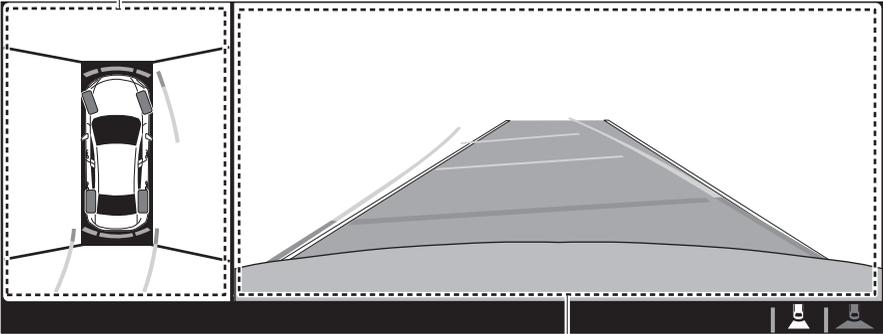
Displays the image of the left and right sides of the vehicle.



Top view/Rear view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle.

Top view screen

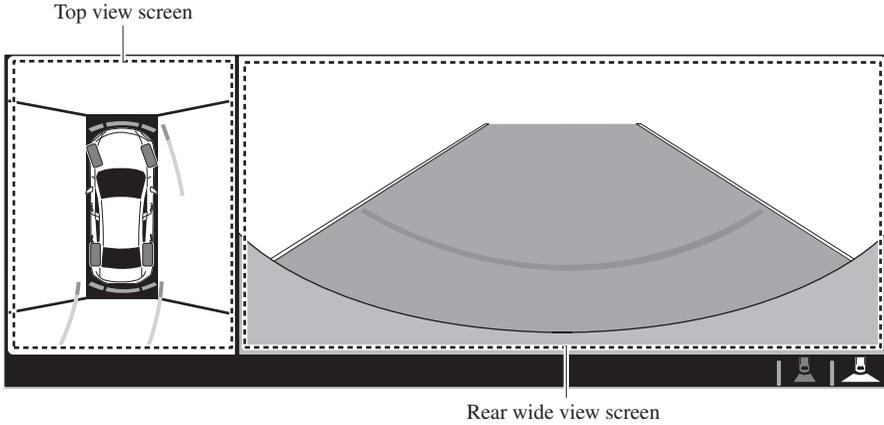


Rear view screen

i-ACTIVSENSE

Top view/Rear wide view

Displays the image of the area around the vehicle and the rear of the vehicle (wide-area).



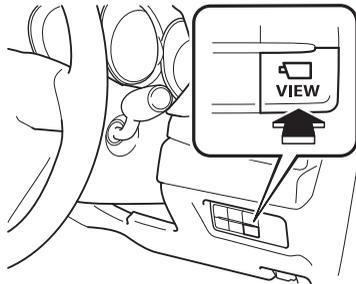
▼ How to Use the System

Top view/Front view, Top view/Front wide view, Side view

Indication

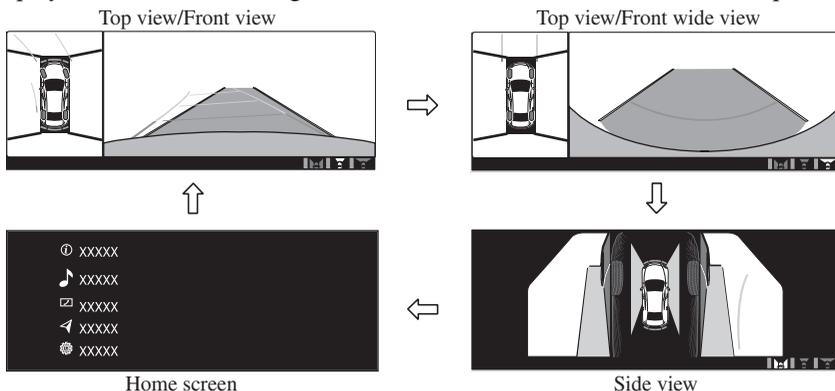
Images are displayed on the screen when the 360°View Monitor switch is pressed with all of the following conditions met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The selector lever is in a position other than R.



Display switching

The displayed screen can be changed each time the 360°view monitor switch is pressed.

**NOTE**

- When the selector lever is in R position, the displayed screen does not switch to the top view/front view, top view/front wide view, or the side view.
- Display of the top view/front view, top view/front wide view, or the side view stops even with the display conditions met if any of the following conditions occurs.
 - When a switch around the commander knob is pressed.
 - The selector lever is shifted to P position (displayed when the selector lever is in a position other than P).
 - **(Displayed when vehicle speed is less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph))**
 - 4 minutes and 30 seconds have passed.
 - The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster.
 - **(Displayed when the vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster)**
 - The vehicle speed is about 15 km/h (9.3 mph) or faster after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360°View Monitor switch.
 - 4 minutes and 22 seconds have passed from the point when the vehicle speed was less than 15 km/h (9.3 mph) after 8 seconds have passed since pressing the 360°View Monitor switch.
- The 360°View Monitor settings can be changed as follows.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
 - Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction.
 - Automatic display of the 360°View Monitor when the ignition is switched ON.
 - Screen priority level when the system launches.

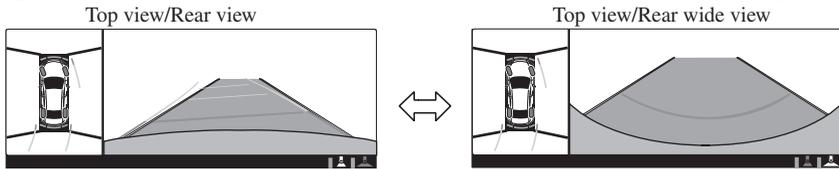
Top view/Rear view, Top view/Rear wide view

The top view/rear view, top view/rear wide view displays when all of the following conditions are met.

- The ignition is switched ON.
- Selector lever is in R position.

Display switching

The displayed screen can be changed each time the 360°view monitor switch is pressed.



NOTE

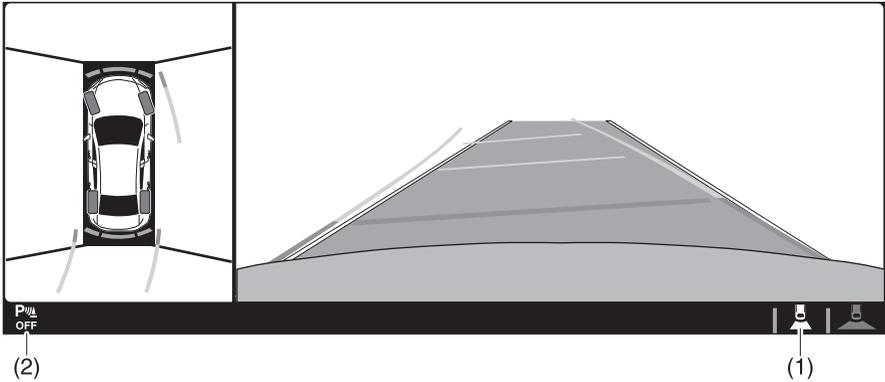
- The top view/rear view and top view/rear wide view automatically display whether or not the 360°View Monitor switch is turned on or off when shifting the selector lever to R position.
- The top view/rear view and top view/rear wide view displays the previously displayed screen.
- The setting can be changed to display the top view/front view when shifting from reverse to a forward gear without operating the 360°View Monitor switch to check the front of the vehicle while parallel parking.
Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

Screen operation/icon



Always stop the vehicle when adjusting the 360°View Monitor image quality.

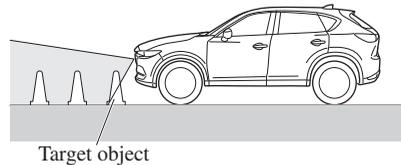
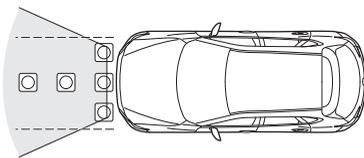
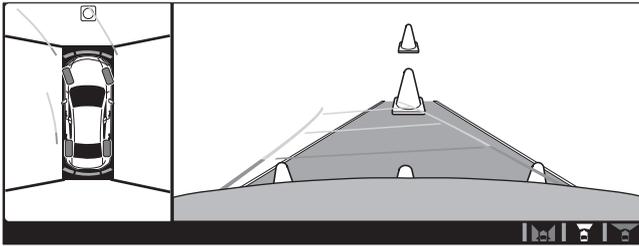
Do not adjust the 360°View Monitor image quality while driving. If you adjust the 360°View Monitor image quality (such as brightness, contrast, tone, and colour density) while driving, it could lead to an unexpected accident.



	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	View status icon	Indicates which image is displayed among the front view/front wide view/side view/rear view/rear wide view.
(2)	Parking sensor status icon	Indicates that the parking sensor has a problem or it is switched off.

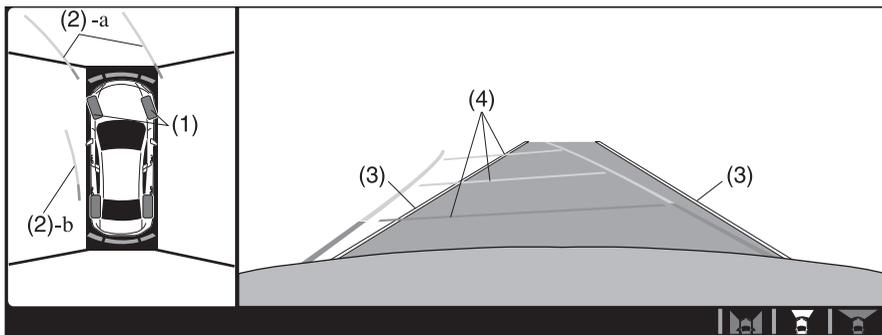
▼ Top View/Front View

Use the top view/front view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Display range**NOTE**

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
 - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the screen area for each camera may be affected and it may display in that colour.
 - Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.
 - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
 - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
 - The screen area for each camera may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
(2)	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow & red)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the edge of the front bumper is expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
(3)	Extended vehicle width lines (blue)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle.
(4)	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (yellow & red)	Indicates the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (19 in) from the front end of the bumper. • The yellow lines indicate the points about 1.0 m (39 in) and 2.0 m (78 in) from the front end of the bumper.

CAUTION

The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.

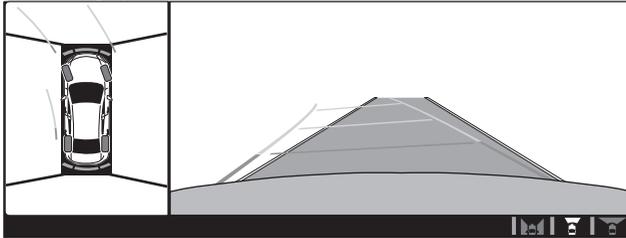
For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-291.

NOTE

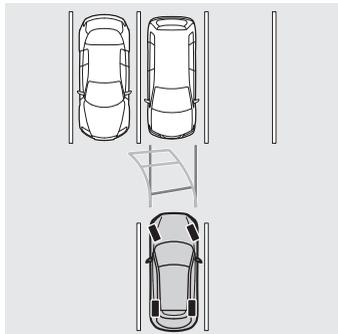
The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

(Screen display)



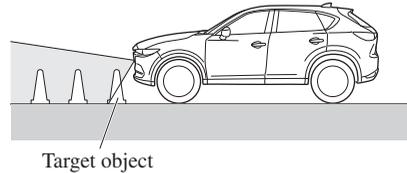
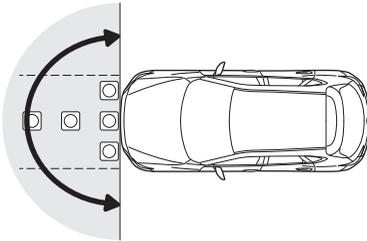
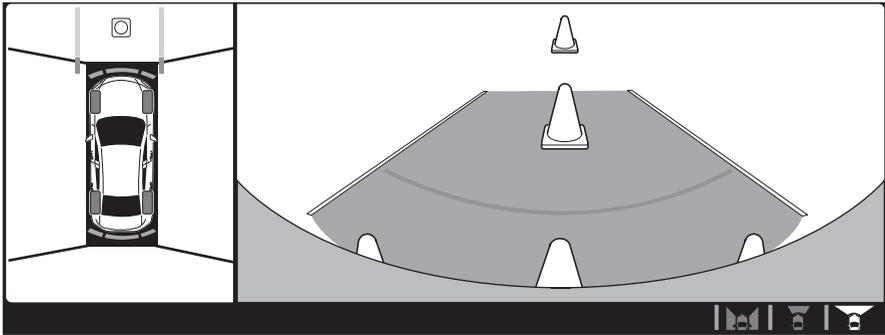
(Actual condition)



Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines. Drive the vehicle forward while turning the steering wheel so that no obstructions come within the projected vehicle path lines.

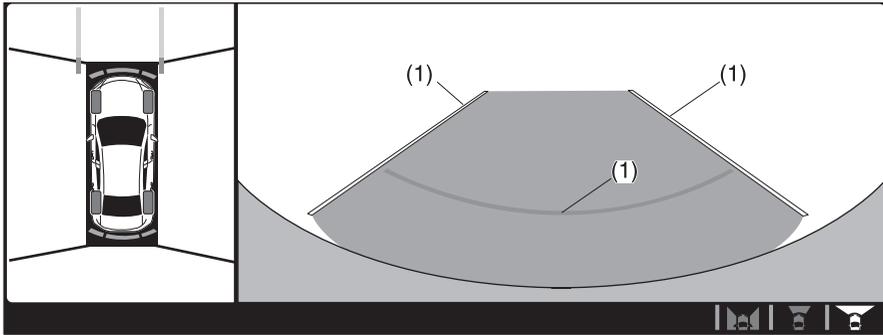
▼ Top View/Front Wide View

Use the top view/front wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop or entering a T-shaped intersection and intersection.

Display range**NOTE**

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
 - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the screen area for each camera may be affected and it may display in that colour.
 - Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.
 - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
 - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
 - The screen area for each camera may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (blue & red)	Indicates the approximate width of the vehicle and the distance (from front end of bumper) in front of the vehicle. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (19 in) from the front end of the bumper.

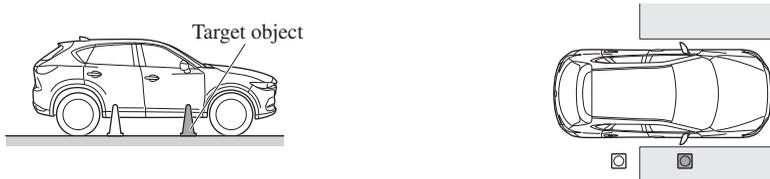
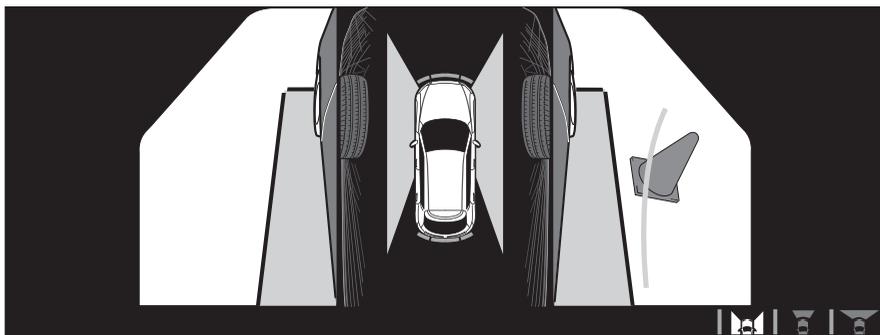
NOTE

The front wide view screen displays the image in front of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

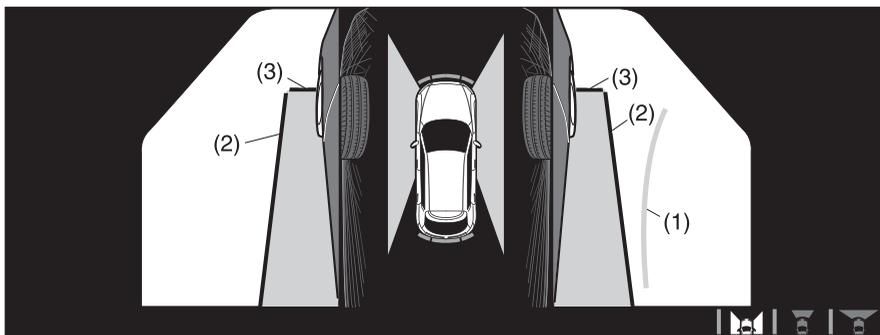
▼ Side View

Use the side view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Display range



Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. The projected vehicle path lines (yellow) indicate the path the inner side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
(2)	Vehicle parallel guide lines (blue)	Indicates the approximate vehicle width including the door mirrors.

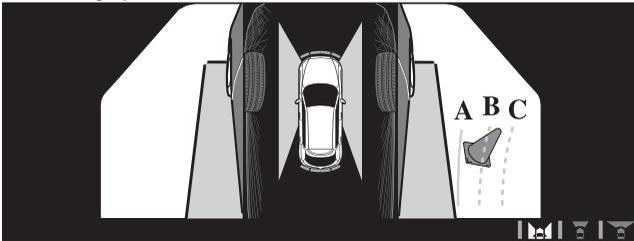
	Display/Icon	Content
(3)	Vehicle front end guide lines (blue)	Indicates the point about 0.25 m (9.8 in) from the front edge of the vehicle (front edge of the bumper).

NOTE

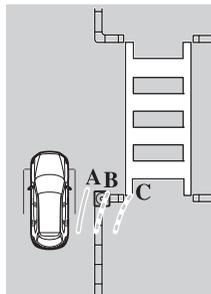
The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



Make sure that there are no obstructions within the projected vehicle path lines. Turn the steering wheel so that the projected vehicle path lines travel inside of the obstruction (A), and drive the vehicle forward until it passes the obstruction. If the projected vehicle path lines are on an obstruction (B) or outside of the obstruction (C), the vehicle may contact the obstruction when turning the vehicle sharply.

CAUTION

- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving.*
- For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound.*

Refer to *Parking Sensor System* on page 4-291.

- Do not turn the steering wheel any more until the vehicle has passed the obstruction, even if the obstruction is not visible on the side view image. If the steering wheel is turned even more, the vehicle may contact the obstruction if it is turned sharply.

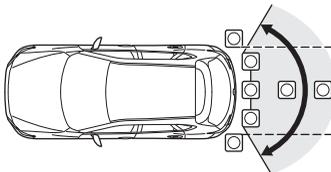
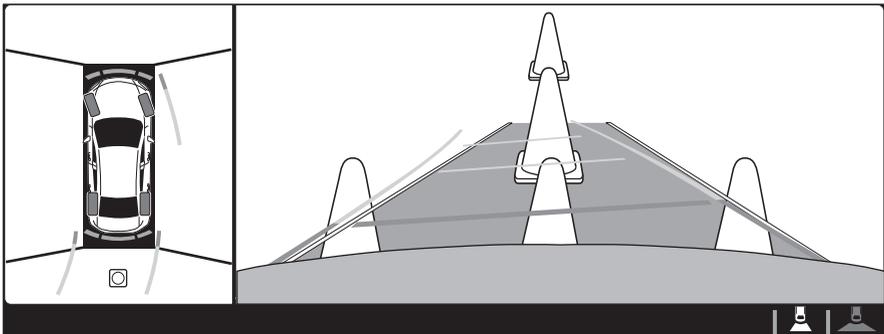
NOTE

- Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen and the actual conditions, always check the safety of the surrounding area using the mirrors and directly with your eyes when driving.
- Even though the object displayed on the screen, such as a road curb or a division line of a parking space, and the vehicle parallel guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.

▼ Top View/Rear View

Use the top view/rear view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Range of displayed screen image

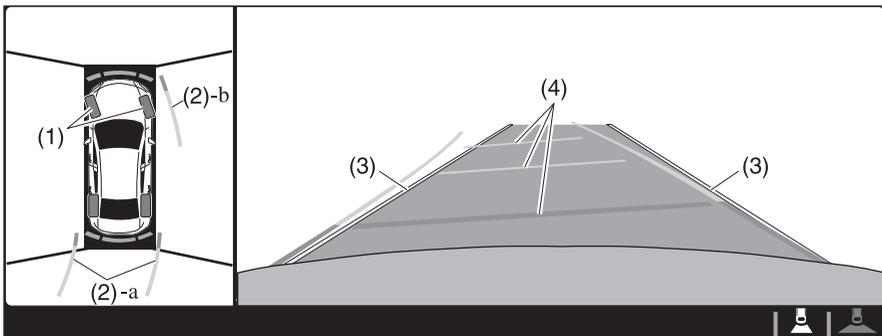


NOTE

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.

- If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the screen area for each camera may be affected and it may display in that colour.
- Obstructions displayed in the rear view may not display on the top view screen.
- If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
- Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
- The screen area for each camera may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen



	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	Tyre icon	Indicates the tyre direction. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation.
(2)	Projected vehicle path lines (yellow & red)	Indicates the approximate projected path of the vehicle. Moves in conjunction with the steering wheel operation. a) Indicates the path where the edge of the rear bumper is expected to travel. b) Indicates the path where the outer side of the vehicle is expected to travel.
(3)	Extended vehicle width lines (blue)	These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle.
(4)	Projected vehicle path distance guide lines (yellow & red)	These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper). <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red line indicates the point about 0.5 m (19 in) from the rear end of the bumper. • The yellow lines indicate the points about 1.0 m (39 in) and 2.0 m (78 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

NOTE

The setting can be changed so that the projected vehicle path lines are not displayed. Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

How to use the projected vehicle path line function

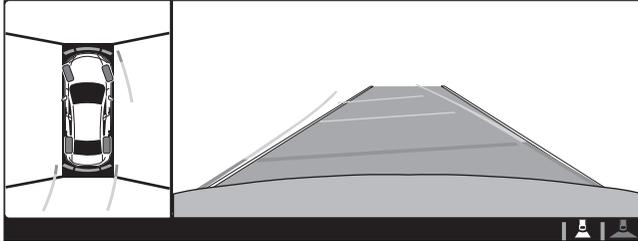
- *The front of the vehicle swings out wide when turning the steering wheel while reversing. Maintain sufficient distance between the vehicle and an obstruction.*
- *The parking sensor detection range has limitations. For example, obstructions closing in from the side and objects short in height may not be detected. Always confirm the safety around the vehicle visually when driving. For details, refer to the parking sensor obstruction detection indication and warning sound. Refer to Parking Sensor System on page 4-291.*

NOTE

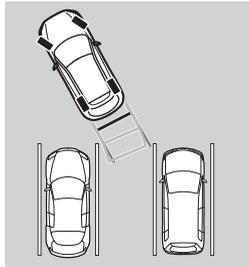
- *Because there might be a difference between the image displayed on the screen, such as indicated in the following, and the actual conditions when parking, always check the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.*
 - *Even though the back end of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen and distance guide lines appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
 - *When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, even though the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear parallel, they may not actually be parallel.*
- *The following shows an example of vehicle parking with the steering wheel turned to the left while backing up the vehicle. When backing into a parking space from the opposite direction, the steering operation is reversed.*

1. Back the vehicle into the parking space by turning the steering wheel so that the vehicle enters the centre of the parking space.

(Screen display)



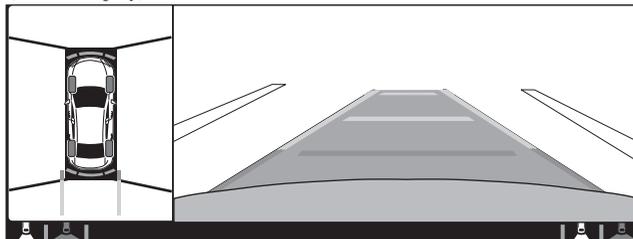
(Actual condition)



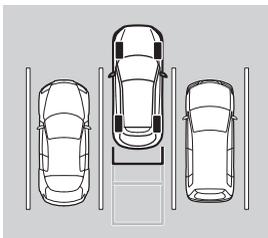
2. After the vehicle starts entering the parking space, stop and adjust the steering wheel so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal, and then continue backing up slowly.

3. Once the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are parallel, straighten the wheels and back the vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

(Screen display)



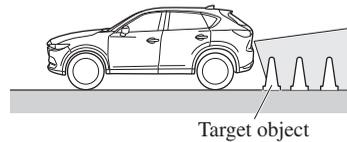
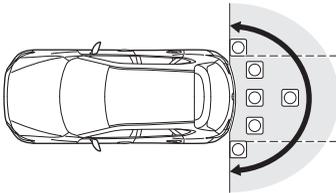
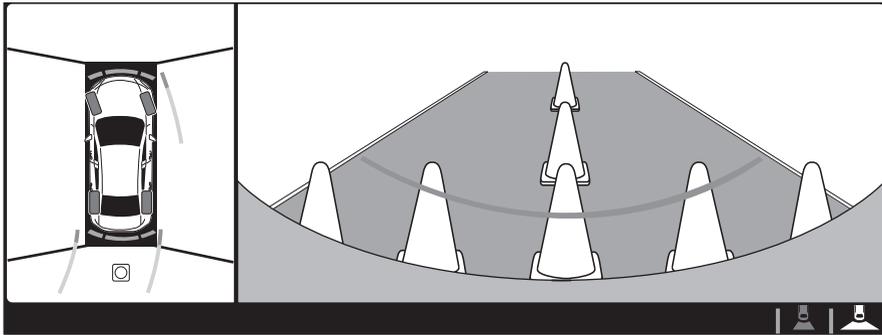
(Actual condition)



▼ Top View/Rear Wide View

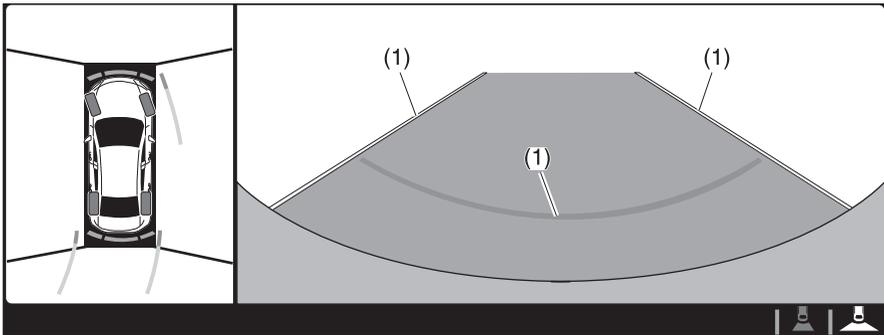
Use the top view/rear wide view to assist in checking the safety of the surrounding area when accelerating from a stop, parking, or stopping the vehicle.

Range of displayed screen image



NOTE

- In the top view screen, the areas in black at the front and rear of the vehicle image and the seams where each of the camera images merge are blind spots.
- Because images displayed in the top view screen are processed from each camera, the top view screen may display in the following ways.
 - If an image containing an object with a conspicuous colour is picked up by any of the cameras, the screen area for each camera may be affected and it may display in that colour.
 - Obstructions displayed in the front view may not display on the top view screen.
 - If the position or angle of each camera changes due to tilting of the vehicle, the image may appear distorted.
 - Lines on the road may appear distorted at the seams where each of the camera images merge.
 - The screen area for each camera may appear bright/dark depending on the illumination level around any of the cameras.

Viewing the screen

	Display/Icon	Content
(1)	Extended vehicle width lines and distance guide lines (blue & red)	<p>These guide lines indicate the approximate width of the vehicle and distance to a point measured from the rear of the vehicle (from the end of the bumper).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The red lines indicate the points up to about 0.5 m (19 in) from the rear end of the bumper.

NOTE

The top view/rear wide view screen displays the image at the rear of the vehicle at a wide angle and corrects the image to help detect approaching obstructions from the side. Therefore, it differs from the actual view.

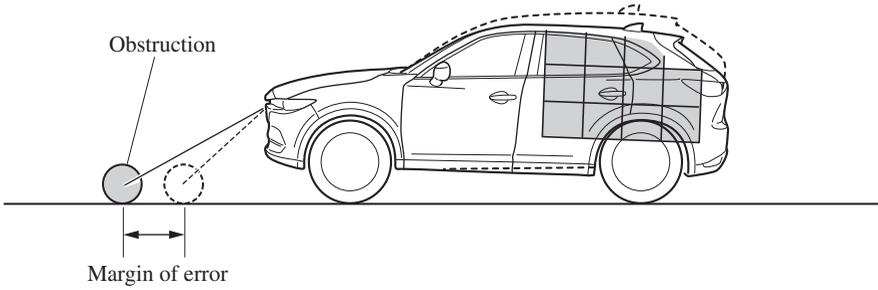
▼ Margin of Error Between Road Surface on Screen and Actual Road Surface

There might be some margin of error between the road surface appearing on the screen and the actual road surface. A margin of error in the perceived distance could lead to an accident, therefore be aware of the following conditions which can more easily produce errors in the perceived distance.

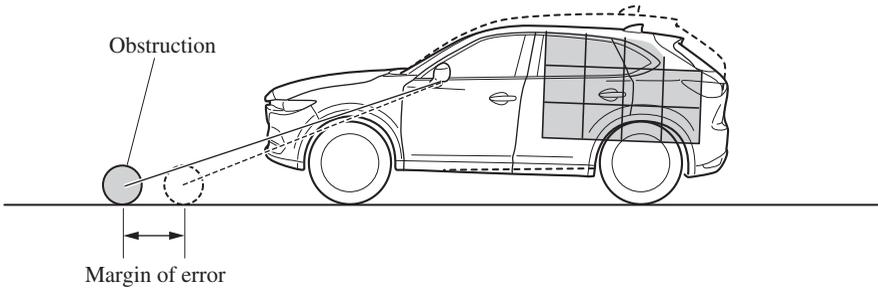
The vehicle tilts due to weight of passengers and cargo.

If the vehicle is tilted, obstructions picked up by a camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

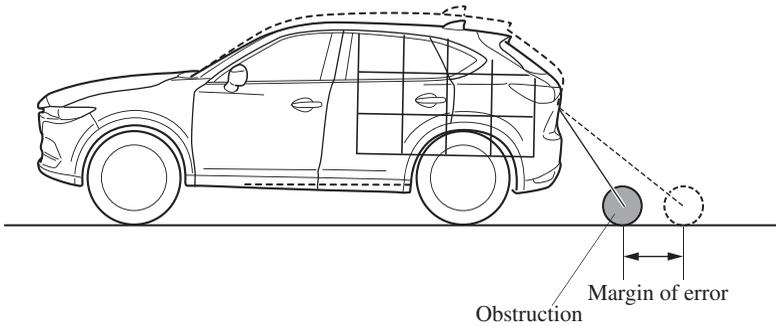
Front camera



Side camera



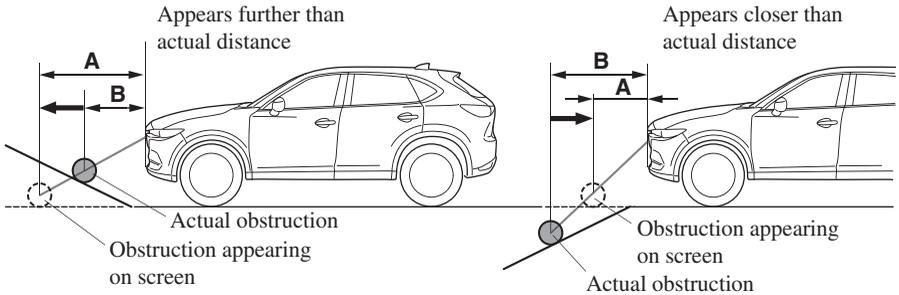
Rear camera



There is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle

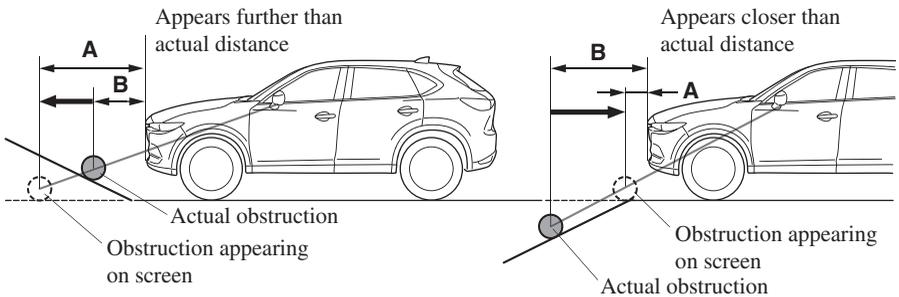
If there is a steep up or down grade in the road at the front or rear of the vehicle, obstructions picked up by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Front camera



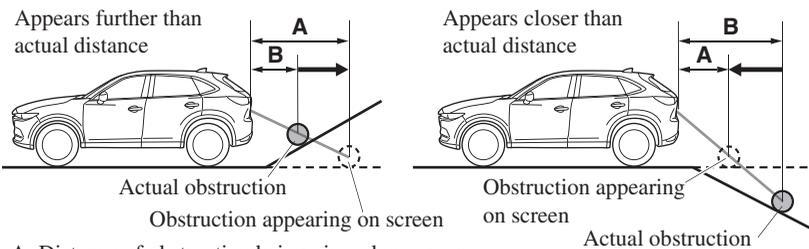
A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

Side camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

Rear camera



A: Distance of obstruction being viewed on screen
 B: Actual distance of obstruction from vehicle

NOTE

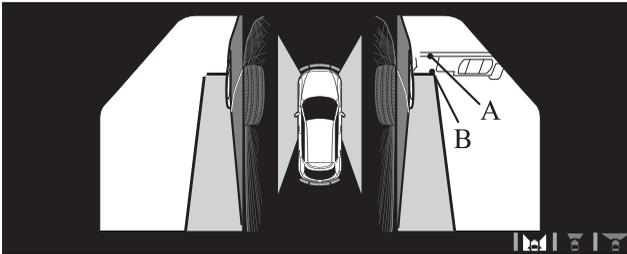
If the vehicle is on a slope, obstructions taken by the camera can appear farther or closer than the actual distance from the vehicle.

Three-dimensional object at vehicle front or rear

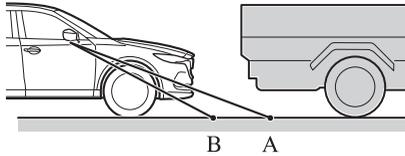
Because the vehicle front end guide lines (side camera) or the distance guide lines (rear camera) are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

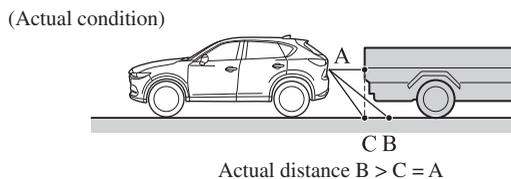
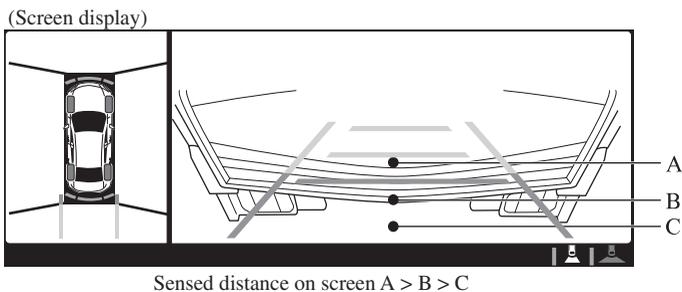
Side camera

(Screen display)



(Actual condition)



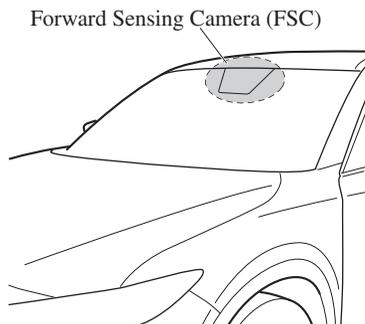
Rear camera**▼ System Problem Indication**

Centre display indication	Cause	Action to be taken
"No camera signal." is displayed	The control unit might be damaged.	Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
Screen is pitch-black and blank	The camera might be damaged.	

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)

Your vehicle is equipped with a Forward Sensing Camera (FSC). The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is positioned near the rearview mirror and used by the following systems.

- High Beam Control System (HBC)
- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
- Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)



The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) determines the conditions ahead of the vehicle while travelling at night and detects traffic lanes. The distance in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) can detect objects varies depending on the surrounding conditions.

WARNING

Do not modify the suspension:

If the vehicle height or inclination is changed, the system will not be able to correctly detect vehicles ahead. This will result in the system not operating normally or mistakenly operating, which could cause a serious accident.

CAUTION

➤ *Do not apply accessories, stickers or film to the windscreen near the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*

If the area in front of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens is obstructed, it will cause the system to not operate correctly. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.

- Do not disassemble or modify the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
Disassembly or modification of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) will cause a malfunction or mistaken operation. Consequently, each system may not operate normally which could lead to an unexpected accident.
- Heed the following cautions to assure the correct operation of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
 - Be careful not to scratch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens or allow it to get dirty.
 - Do not remove the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cover.
 - Do not place objects on the instrument panel which reflect light.
 - Always keep the windscreen glass around the camera clean by removing dirt or fogging. Use the windscreen defroster to remove fogging on the windscreen.
 - Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) regarding cleaning the interior side of the windscreen around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
 - Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) before performing repairs around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).
 - The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is installed to the windscreen. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for windscreen repair and replacement.
 - When cleaning the windscreen, do not allow glass cleaners or similar cleaning fluids to get on the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens. In addition, do not touch the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) lens.
 - When performing repairs around the rearview mirror, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 - Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) regarding cleaning of the camera lens.
 - Do not hit or apply strong force to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or the area around it. If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is severely hit or if there are cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris in the area around it, stop using the following systems and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
 - High Beam Control System (HBC)
 - Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)
 - Driver Attention Alert (DAA)
 - Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)
 - Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)
 - Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)
 - Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)
 - Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)

- *Smart Brake Support (SBS)*
- *The direction in which the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) is pointed has been finely adjusted. Do not change the installation position of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) or remove it. Otherwise, it could result in damage or malfunction.*
- *Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle as the system may not operate normally.*
- *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) includes a function for detecting a soiled windscreen and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow on the windscreen. In such cases, the system cannot accurately determine a vehicle ahead and may not be able to operate normally. Always drive carefully and pay attention to the road ahead.*

NOTE

- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot detect target objects correctly, and each system may be unable to operate normally.*
 - *The height of the vehicle ahead is low.*
 - *You drive your vehicle at the same speed as the vehicle ahead.*
 - *Headlights are not turned on during the night or when going through a tunnel.*
- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly.*
 - *Under bad weather condition, such as rain, fog and snow.*
 - *The window washer is being used or the windscreen wipers are not used when it's raining.*
 - *Ice, fog, snow, frost, rainfall, dirt, or foreign matter such as a plastic bag is stuck on the windscreen.*
 - *Trucks with low loading platforms and vehicles with an extremely low or high profile.*
 - *When driving next to walls with no patterning (including fences and longitudinally striped walls).*
 - *The tail lights of the vehicle ahead are turned off.*
 - *A vehicle is outside the illumination range of the headlights.*
 - *The vehicle is making a sharp turn, or ascending or descending a steep slope.*
 - *Entering or exiting a tunnel.*
 - *Heavy luggage is loaded causing the vehicle to tilt.*
 - *Strong light is shone at the front of the vehicle (back light or high-beam light from on-coming vehicles).*
 - *There are many light emitters on the vehicle ahead.*
 - *When the vehicle ahead is not equipped with tail lights or the tail lights are turned off at nighttime.*

- *Elongated luggage or cargo is loaded onto installed roof rails and covers the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *Exhaust gas from the vehicle in front, sand, snow, and water vapour rising from manholes and grating, and water splashed into the air.*
- *When towing a malfunctioning vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is driven with tyres having significantly different wear.*
- *The vehicle is driven on down slopes or bumpy roads.*
- *There are water puddles on the road.*
- *The surroundings are dark such as during the night, early evening, or early morning, or in a tunnel or indoor parking lot.*
- *The illumination brightness of the headlights is reduced or the headlight illumination is weakened due to dirt or a deviated optical axis.*
- *The target object enters the blind spot of the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).*
- *A person or object bursts onto the road from the shoulder or cuts right in front of you.*
- *You change lanes and approach a vehicle ahead.*
- *When driving extremely close to the target object.*
- *Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.*
- *The vehicle ahead has a special shape. For example, a vehicle towing a trailer house or a boat, or a vehicle carrier carrying a vehicle with its front pointed rearward.*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to backlight or fog, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction.*
 - *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*
 - *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
 - *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*
 - *Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) warning indication*
 - *Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) warning indication*
 - *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) cannot operate normally due to high temperatures, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a malfunction. Cool down the area around the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) such as by turning on the air conditioner.*
 - *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*

- *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
- *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*
- *Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) warning indication*
- *Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) warning indication*
- *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) detects that the windscreen is dirty or foggy, the system functions related to the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) are temporarily stopped and the following warning lights turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem. Remove the dirt from the windscreen or press the defroster switch and defog the windscreen.*
- *High Beam Control System (HBC) warning light (amber)*
- *Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) warning light (amber)*
- *Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning indication*
- *Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) warning indication*
- *Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) warning indication*
- *Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) warning indication (amber)*
- *If there are recognizable cracks or damage caused by flying gravel or debris on the windscreen, always have the windscreen replaced. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for replacement.*
- *The recognises pedestrians when all of the following conditions are met:*
 - *The Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) height of a pedestrian is about 1 to 2 meters.*
 - *An outline such as the head, both shoulders, or the legs can be determined.*
- *In the following cases, the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) may not be able to detect target objects correctly:*
 - *Multiple pedestrians are walking, or there are groups of people.*
 - *A pedestrian is close to a separate object.*
 - *A pedestrian is crouching, lying, or slouching.*
 - *A pedestrian suddenly jumps into the road right in front of the vehicle.*
 - *A pedestrian opens an umbrella, or is carrying large baggage or articles.*

- *A pedestrian is in a dark location such as during the night, or blends into the background by wearing clothes matching the background colour.*

Radar Sensor (Front)

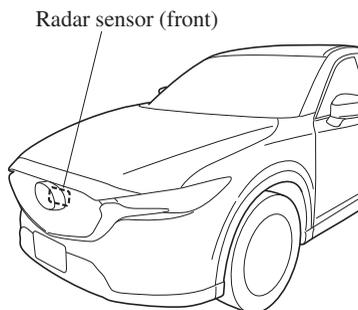
Your vehicle is equipped with a radar sensor (front).

The following systems also use the radar sensor (front).

- Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)
- Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)
- Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)

The radar sensor (front) functions by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle ahead or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.

The radar sensor (front) is mounted behind the front emblem.



If “Front radar blocked” is displayed in the multi-information display of the instrument cluster, clean the area around the radar sensor (front).



Heed the following precautions to assure correct operation of each system.

- Do not adhere stickers (including transparent stickers) to the surface of the radiator grille and front emblem in and around the radar sensor (front), and do not replace the radiator grille and front emblem with any product that is not a genuine product designed for use with the radar sensor (front).
- The radar sensor (front) includes a function for detecting soiling of the radar sensor's front surface and informing the driver, however, depending on the conditions, it may require time to detect or it may not detect plastic shopping bags, ice or snow. If this occurs, the system may not operate correctly, therefore always keep the radar sensor (front) clean.
- Do not install a grille guard.
- If the front part of the vehicle has been damaged in a vehicle accident, the position of the radar sensor (front) may have moved. Stop the system immediately and always have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

- Do not use the front bumper to push other vehicles or obstructions such as when pulling out of a parking space. Otherwise, the radar sensor (front) could be hit and its position deviated.
- Do not remove, disassemble, or modify the radar sensor (front).
- For repairs, replacement or paint work around the radar sensor (front), consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- Do not modify the suspension. If the suspension are modified, the vehicle's posture could change and the radar sensor (front) may not be able to correctly detect a vehicle ahead or an obstruction.

NOTE

- Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions correctly and each system may not operate normally.
 - The rear surface of a vehicle ahead does not reflect radio waves effectively, such as an unloaded trailer or an automobile with a loading platform covered by a soft top, vehicles with a hard plastic tailgate, and round-shaped vehicles.
 - Vehicles ahead with low vehicle height and thus less area for reflecting radio waves.
 - Visibility is reduced due to a vehicle ahead casting off water, snow, or sand from its tyres and onto your windscreen.
 - The luggage compartment is loaded with heavy objects or the rear passenger seats are occupied.
 - Ice, snow, or soiling is on the front surface of the front emblem.
 - During inclement weather such as rain, snow, or sand storms.
 - When driving near facilities or objects emitting strong radio waves.
- Under the following conditions, the radar sensor (front) may not be able to detect vehicles ahead or obstructions.
 - The beginning and end of a curve.
 - Roads with continuous curves.
 - Narrow lane roads due to road construction or lane closures.
 - The vehicle ahead enters the radar sensor's blind spot.
 - The vehicle ahead is running abnormally due to accident or vehicle damage.
 - Roads with repeated up and down slopes
 - Driving on poor roads or unpaved roads.
 - The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is extremely short.
 - A vehicle suddenly comes close such as by cutting into the lane.
- To prevent incorrect operation of the system, use tyres of the same specified size, manufacturer, brand, and tread pattern on all four wheels. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns or tyre pressures on the same vehicle (Including the temporary spare tyre).
- If the battery power is weak, the system may not operate correctly.

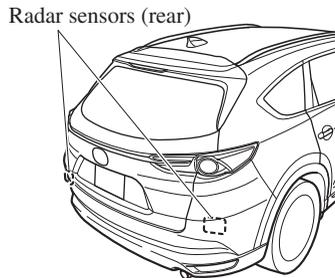
- When driving on roads with little traffic and few vehicles ahead or obstructions for the radar sensor (front) to detect, "Front radar blocked" may be temporarily displayed, however, this does not indicate a problem.*
- The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

Radar Sensors (Rear)

Your vehicle is equipped with radar sensors (rear). The following systems also use the radar sensors (rear).

- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)

The radar sensors (rear) function by detecting the radio waves reflected off a vehicle approaching from the rear or an obstruction sent from the radar sensor.



The radar sensors (rear) are installed inside the rear bumper, one each on the left and right sides.

Always keep the surface of the rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) clean so that the radar sensors (rear) operate normally. Also, do not apply items such as stickers.

Refer to Exterior Care on page 6-46.



If the rear bumper receives a severe impact, the system may no longer operate normally. Stop the system immediately and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

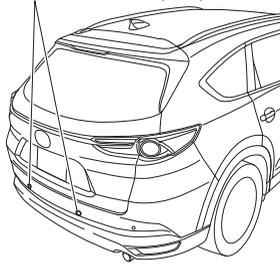
- *The detection ability of the radar sensors (rear) has limitations. In the following cases, the detection ability may lower and the system may not operate normally.*
 - *The rear bumper near the radar sensors (rear) has become deformed.*
 - *Snow, ice or mud adheres to the radar sensors (rear) on the rear bumper.*
 - *Under bad weather conditions such as rain, snow and fog.*
- *Under the following conditions, the radar sensors (rear) cannot detect target objects or it may be difficult to detect them.*
 - *Stationary objects on a road or a road side such as small, two-wheeled vehicles, bicycles, pedestrians, animals, and shopping carts.*

- *Vehicle shapes which do not reflect radar waves well such as empty trailers with a low vehicle height and sports cars.*
- *Vehicles are shipped with the direction of the radar sensors (rear) adjusted for each vehicle to a loaded vehicle condition so that the radar sensors (rear) detect approaching vehicles correctly. If the direction of the radar sensors (rear) has deviated for some reason, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *For repairs or replacement of the radar sensors (rear), or bumper repairs, paintwork, and replacement near the radar sensors, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Turn off the system while pulling a trailer or while an accessory such as a bicycle carrier is installed to the rear of the vehicle. Otherwise, the radio waves emitted by the radar will be blocked causing the system to not operate normally.*
- *The radar sensors are regulated by the relevant radio wave laws of the country in which the vehicle is driven. If the vehicle is driven abroad, authorization from the country in which the vehicle is driven may be required.*

Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)

The ultrasonic sensors (rear) function by emitting ultrasonic waves which are reflected off obstructions at the rear and the returning ultrasonic waves are picked up by the ultrasonic sensors (rear).

Ultrasonic sensor (rear)



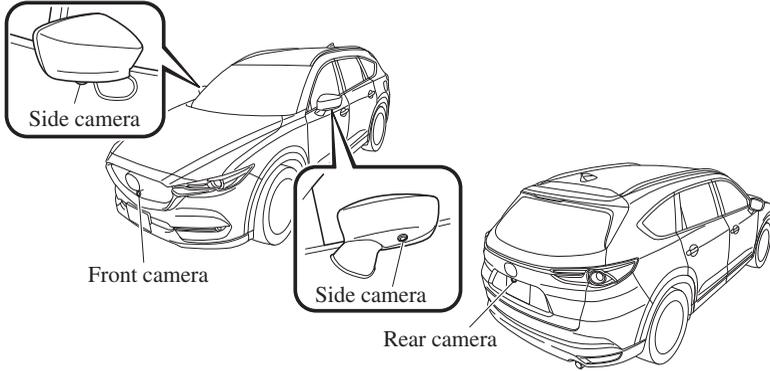
The ultrasonic sensors (rear) are mounted in the rear bumper.

Front Camera/Side Cameras/Rear Camera*

Your vehicle is equipped with a front camera, side cameras, and a rear camera. The 360° View Monitor uses each camera.

The front camera, side cameras, and rear camera shoot images of the area surrounding the vehicle.

Each camera is installed to the following positions.



Diesel Particulate Filter (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

The diesel particulate filter collects and removes most of the particulate matter (PM) in the exhaust gas of a diesel engine. PM collected by the diesel particulate filter is cleared during normal driving, however, PM may not be removed and the diesel particulate filter indicator light may illuminate under the following conditions:

- If the vehicle is driven at 15 km/h (9 mph) or less continuously.
- If the vehicle is repeatedly driven for a short period of time (10 minute or less) or driven while the engine is cold.
- If the vehicle is idled for a long time.

When “Soot Accumulation in DPF too high” is indicated

The particulate matter (PM) cannot be removed automatically and the amount of collected PM reaches a specified amount. After the engine has sufficiently warmed up (engine coolant temperature of 80 °C or more), depress the accelerator pedal and drive the vehicle at a speed of 20 km/h or more for about 15 to 20 minutes to eliminate the PM.

When “DPF malfunction” is indicated

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

CAUTION

If the vehicle continues to be driven with “Soot Accumulation in DPF too high” indicated in the display, the particulate matter (PM) increases and the indication may change to “DPF malfunction”. If the indication changes to “DPF malfunction”, have the vehicle inspected immediately at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). If the vehicle is not inspected and continues to be driven, the engine may malfunction.

NOTE

- *When “DPF malfunction” is indicated in the display, the engine output is restricted to protect the diesel particulate filter.*
- *The engine sound and exhaust gas smell may change when PM is being removed while driving.*

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

The Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) monitors the pressure for each tyre.

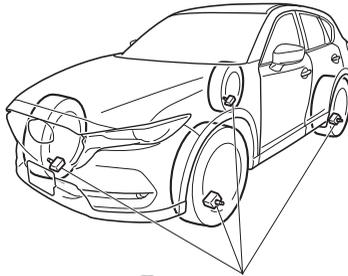
If tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres, the system will inform the driver via the warning light in the instrument cluster and by the warning beep sound.

Refer to Contact expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected on page 7-26.

Refer to Taking Action on page 7-33.

Refer to Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep on page 7-45.

The tyre pressure sensors installed on each wheel send tyre pressure data by radio signal to the receiver unit in the vehicle.



Tyre pressure sensors

NOTE

When the ambient temperature is low due to seasonal changes, tyre temperatures are also lower. When the tyre temperature decreases, the air pressure decreases as well. The TPMS warning light may illuminate more frequently. Visually inspect the tyres daily before driving, and check tyre pressures monthly with a tyre pressure gauge. When checking tyre pressures, use of a digital tyre pressure gauge is recommended.

TPMS does not alleviate your need to check the pressure and condition of all four tyres regularly.

CAUTION

- *Each tyre, including the spare (if provided), should be checked monthly when cold and inflated to the inflation pressure recommended by the vehicle manufacturer on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label. (If your vehicle has tyres of a different size than the size indicated on the vehicle placard or tyre inflation pressure label, you should determine the proper tyre inflation pressure for those tyres.)*

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

As an added safety feature, your vehicle has been equipped with a tyre pressure monitoring system (TPMS) that illuminates a low tyre pressure telltale when one or more of your tyres is significantly under-inflated. Accordingly, when the low tyre pressure telltale illuminates, you should stop and check your tyres as soon as possible, and inflate them to the proper pressure. Driving on a significantly under-inflated tyre causes the tyre to overheat and can lead to tyre failure. Under-inflation also reduces fuel efficiency and tyre tread life, and may affect the vehicle's handling and stopping ability.

Please note that the TPMS is not a substitute for proper tyre maintenance, and it is the driver's responsibility to maintain correct tyre pressure, even if under-inflation has not reached the level to trigger illumination of the TPMS low tyre pressure telltale.

Your vehicle has also been equipped with a TPMS malfunction indicator to indicate when the system is not operating properly.

The TPMS malfunction indicator is combined with the low tyre pressure telltale. When the system detects a malfunction, the telltale will flash for approximately one minute and then remain continuously illuminated. This sequence will continue upon subsequent vehicle start-ups as long as the malfunction exists. When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tyre pressure as intended. TPMS malfunctions may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of replacement or alternate tyres or wheels on the vehicle that prevent the TPMS from functioning properly. Always check the TPMS malfunction telltale after replacing one or more tyres or wheels on your vehicle to ensure that the replacement or alternate tyres and wheels allow the TPMS to continue to function properly.

- *To avoid false readings, the system samples for a little while before indicating a problem. As a result it will not instantaneously register a rapid tyre deflation or blow out.*

▼ System Error Activation

When the warning light flashes, there may be a system malfunction. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

A system error activation may occur in the following cases:

- When there is equipment or a device near the vehicle using the same radio frequency as that of the tyre pressure sensors.
- When a metallic device such as a non-genuine navigation system is equipped near the centre of the instrument panel, which may block radio signals from the tyre pressure sensor to the receiver unit.
- When using the following devices in the vehicle that may cause radio interference with the receiver unit.
 - A digital device such as a personal computer.
 - A current converter device such as a DC-AC converter.
- When excess snow or ice adheres to the vehicle, especially around the wheels.
- When the tyre pressure sensor batteries are exhausted.
- When using a wheel with no tyre pressure sensor installed.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

- When using tyres with steel wire reinforcement in the sidewalls.
- When using tyre chains.

▼ Tyres and Wheels



When inspecting or adjusting the tyre air pressures, do not apply excessive force to the stem part of the wheel unit. The stem part could be damaged.

Changing tyres and wheels

The following procedure allows the TPMS to recognise a tyre pressure sensor's unique ID signal code whenever tyres or wheels are changed, such as changing to and from winter tyres.

NOTE

Each tyre pressure sensor has a unique ID signal code. The signal code must be registered with the TPMS before it can work. The easiest way to do it is to have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), change your tyre and complete ID signal code registration.

When having tyres changed at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer)

When an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), changes your vehicle's tyres, they will complete the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code registration.

When changing tyres yourself

If you or someone else changes tyres, you or someone else can also undertake the steps for the TPMS to complete the ID signal code registration.

1. After tyres have been changed, switch the ignition ON, then back to ACC or OFF.
2. Wait for about 15 minutes.
3. After about 15 minutes, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes and the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code will be registered automatically.

NOTE

If the vehicle is driven within about 15 minutes of changing tyres, the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light will flash because the sensor ID signal code would not have been registered. If this happens, park the vehicle for about 15 minutes, after which the sensor ID signal code will register upon driving the vehicle for 10 minutes.

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System

Replacing tyres and wheels



- When replacing/repairing the tyres or wheels or both, have the work done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), or the tyre pressure sensors may be damaged.
- The wheels equipped on your Mazda are specially designed for installation of the tyre pressure sensors. Do not use non-genuine wheels, otherwise it may not be possible to install the tyre pressure sensors.

Be sure to have the tyre pressure sensors installed whenever tyres or wheels are replaced.

When having a tyre or wheel or both replaced, the following types of tyre pressure sensor installations are possible.

- The tyre pressure sensor is removed from the old wheel and installed to the new one.
- The same tyre pressure sensor is used with the same wheel. Only the tyre is replaced.
- A new tyre pressure sensor is installed to a new wheel.

NOTE

- *The tyre pressure sensor ID signal code must be registered when a new tyre pressure sensor is purchased. For purchase of a tyre pressure sensor and registration of the tyre pressure sensor ID signal code, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

- *When reinstalling a previously removed tyre pressure sensor to a wheel, replace the grommet (seal between valve body/sensor and wheel) for the tyre pressure sensor.*

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))*

The rear view monitor provides visual images of the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

WARNING

Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes:

Reversing the vehicle by only looking at the screen is dangerous as it may cause an accident or a collision with an object. The rear view monitor is only a visual assist device when reversing the vehicle. The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

CAUTION

- Do not use the rear view monitor under the following conditions: Using the rear view monitor under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in injury or vehicle damage or both.
 - Icy or snow-covered roads.
 - Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.
 - The liftgate is not fully closed.
 - The vehicle is on a road incline.
- When the display is cold, images may course across the monitor or the screen and may be dimmer than usual, which could cause difficulty in confirming the surrounding conditions of the vehicle. Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes.
- Do not apply excessive force to the camera. The camera position and angle may deviate.
- Do not disassemble, modify, or remove it as it may no longer be waterproof.
- The camera cover is made of plastic. Do not apply degreasing agents, organic solvents, wax, or glass coating agents to the camera cover. If any are spilled on the cover, wipe off with a soft cloth immediately.
- Do not rub the camera cover forcefully with an abrasive or hard brush. The camera cover or lens may be scratched which might affect the images.

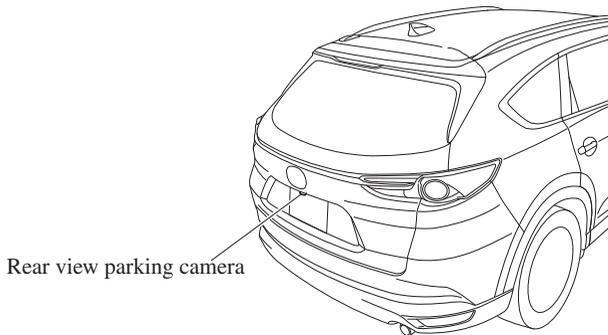
NOTE

- If water, snow, or mud is stuck on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If it cannot be wiped off, use a mild detergent.
- If the camera temperature changes rapidly (Hot to cold, cold to hot), the rear view monitor may not operate correctly.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

- *When replacing the tyres, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Replacing the tyres could result in deviation of the guide lines which appear on the display.*
- *If the vehicle's front, side, or rear has been involved in a collision, the alignment of the rear view parking camera (location, installation angle) may have deviated. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If “No Video Signal Available” is indicated in the display, there could be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

▼ Rear View Parking Camera Location



▼ Switching to the Rear View Monitor Display

Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position with the ignition switched ON to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.

NOTE

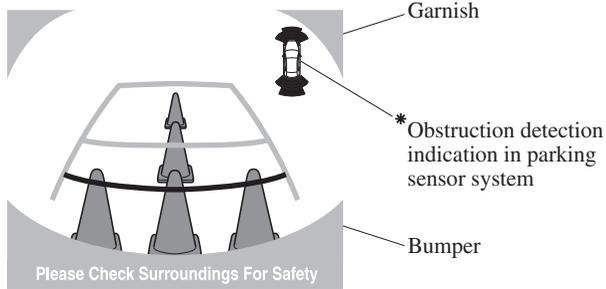
When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) position to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

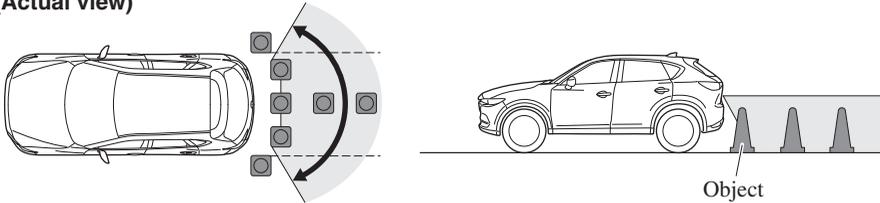
▼ Displayable Range on the Screen

The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

(Screen display)



(Actual view)



NOTE

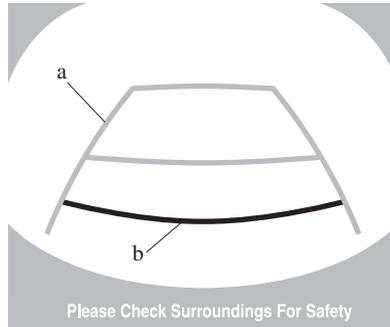
- The displayable range varies depending on the vehicle and road conditions.
- The displayable range is limited. Objects under the bumper or around the bumper ends cannot be displayed.
- The distance appearing in the displayed image is different from the actual distance because the rear view parking camera is equipped with a specific lens.
- Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).
- Some optionally installed vehicle accessories may be picked up by the camera. Do not install any optional parts that can interfere with the camera view, such as illuminating parts or parts made of reflective material.
- It may be difficult to see the display under the following conditions, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.
 - In darkened areas.
 - When the temperature around the lens is high/low.
 - When the camera is wet such as on a rainy day or during periods of high humidity.
 - When foreign material such as mud is stuck around the camera.
 - When the camera lens reflects sunlight or headlight beams.
- Image display may be delayed if the temperature around the camera is low.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

▼ Viewing the Display

Guide lines which indicate the width of the vehicle (yellow) are displayed on the screen as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle in comparison to the width of the parking space you are about to back into.

Use this display view for parking your vehicle in a parking space or garage.



a) Vehicle width guide lines (yellow)

Guide lines serve as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle.

b) Distance guide lines

These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the vehicle's rear (from the end of the bumper).

The red and yellow lines indicate the points about 0.5 m (19 in) for the red line and 1.0 m (39 in) for the yellow lines from the rear bumper (at the centre point of each of the lines).



The guide lines on the screen are fixed lines. They are not synced to the driver's turning of the steering wheel. Always be careful and check the area to the vehicle's rear and the surrounding area directly with your eyes while backing up.

▼ Rear View Monitor Operation

The operation of the rear view monitor when reversing the vehicle varies depending on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions. The amount of steering and the timing also varies depending on conditions, so confirm the surrounding conditions directly with your eyes and steer the vehicle in accordance with the conditions.

Be well aware of the above cautions prior to using the rear view monitor.

NOTE

Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).

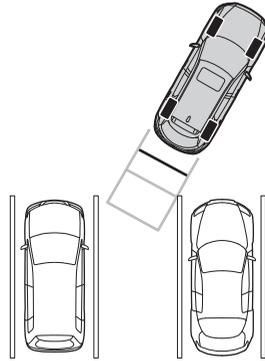
Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

1. Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.
2. Confirming the surrounding conditions, reverse the vehicle.
3. After your vehicle begins entering the parking space, continue backing up slowly so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal.

(Display condition)



(Vehicle condition)

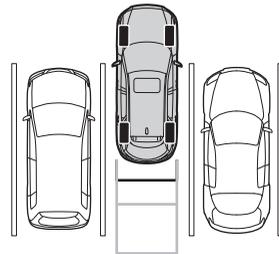


4. Continue to adjust the steering wheel until the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to the left and right sides of the parking space.
5. Once they are parallel, straighten the wheels and back your vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position. (If the parking space has division lines, check whether the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.)

(Display condition)



(Vehicle condition)



6. When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) position to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

NOTE

Because there may be a difference between the displayed image, such as indicated below, and the actual conditions when parking, always verify the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.

- In the image of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen, the back end and distance guide lines may appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.
- When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.

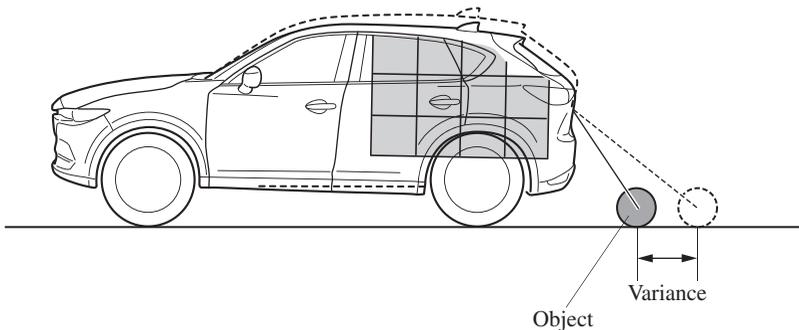


▼ Variance Between Actual Road Conditions and Displayed Image

Some variance occurs between the actual road and the displayed road. Such variance in distance perspective could lead to an accident. Note the following conditions that may cause a variance in distance perspective.

When the vehicle is tilted due to the weight of passengers and load

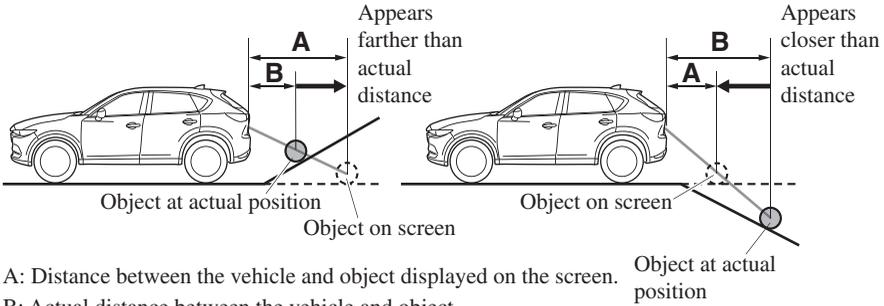
When the vehicle rear is lowered, the object displayed on the screen appears farther than the actual distance.



Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

When there is a steep grade behind the vehicle

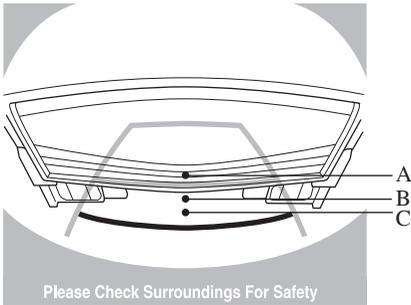
When there is a steep upgrade (downgrade) behind the vehicle, the object displayed on the screen appears farther (downgrade: closer) than the actual distance.



Three-dimensional object on vehicle rear

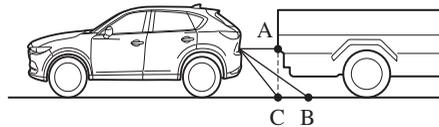
Because the distance guide lines are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

(Screen display)



Sensed distance on screen $A > B > C$

(Actual condition)



(Actual distance) $B > C = A$

▼ Picture Quality Adjustment



Always adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while the vehicle is stopped:

Do not adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the picture quality of the rear view monitor such as brightness, contrast, colour, and tint while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to an accident.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Picture quality adjustment must be done while the selector lever is in reverse (R) position. There are 4 settings which can be adjusted including, brightness, contrast, tint, and colour. When adjusting, pay sufficient attention to the vehicle surroundings.

1. Select the  icon on the screen to display the tabs.
2. Select the desired tab item.
3. Adjust the brightness, contrast, tint, and colour using the slider.
If you need to reset, press the reset button.
4. Select the  icon on the screen to close the tab.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))*

The rear view monitor provides visual images of the rear of the vehicle when reversing.

WARNING

Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes:

Reversing the vehicle by only looking at the screen is dangerous as it may cause an accident or a collision with an object. The rear view monitor is only a visual assist device when reversing the vehicle. The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

CAUTION

- Do not use the rear view monitor under the following conditions: Using the rear view monitor under the following conditions is dangerous and could result in injury or vehicle damage or both.
 - Icy or snow-covered roads.
 - Tyre chains or a temporary spare tyre is installed.
 - The liftgate is not fully closed.
 - The vehicle is on a road incline.
- When the display is cold, images may course across the monitor or the screen and may be dimmer than usual, which could cause difficulty in confirming the surrounding conditions of the vehicle. Always drive carefully confirming the safety of the rear and the surrounding conditions by looking directly with your eyes.
- Do not apply excessive force to the camera. The camera position and angle may deviate.
- Do not disassemble, modify, or remove it as it may no longer be waterproof.
- The camera cover is made of plastic. Do not apply degreasing agents, organic solvents, wax, or glass coating agents to the camera cover. If any are spilled on the cover, wipe off with a soft cloth immediately.
- Do not rub the camera cover forcefully with an abrasive or hard brush. The camera cover or lens may be scratched which might affect the images.

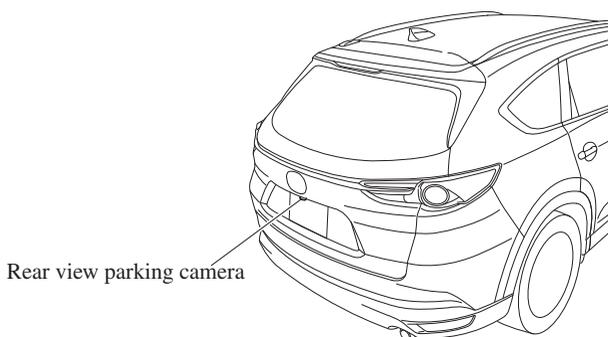
NOTE

- If water, snow, or mud is stuck on the camera lens, wipe it off using a soft cloth. If it cannot be wiped off, use a mild detergent.
- If the camera temperature changes rapidly (Hot to cold, cold to hot), the rear view monitor may not operate correctly.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

- *When replacing the tyres, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). Replacing the tyres could result in deviation of the guide lines which appear on the display.*
- *If the vehicle's front, side, or rear has been involved in a collision, the alignment of the rear view parking camera (location, installation angle) may have deviated. Always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected.*
- *If “No camera signal.” is indicated in the display, there could be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

▼ Rear View Parking Camera Location



▼ Switching to the Rear View Monitor Display

Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position with the ignition switched ON to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.

NOTE

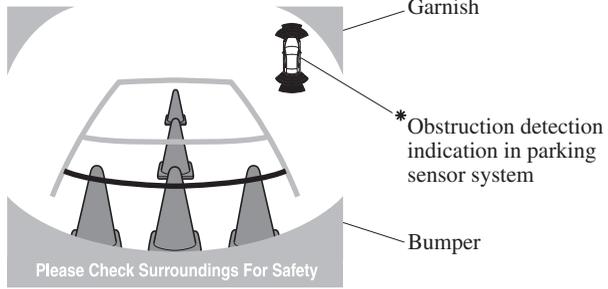
When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) position to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

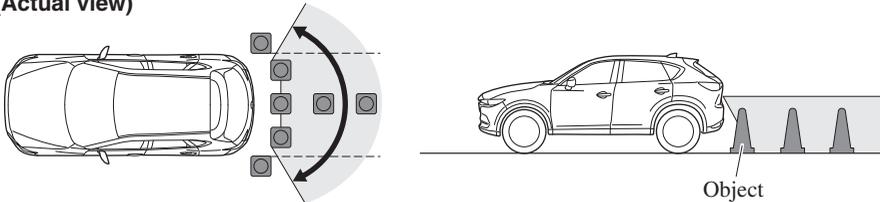
▼ Displayable Range on the Screen

The images on the screen may be different from the actual conditions.

(Screen display)



(Actual view)



NOTE

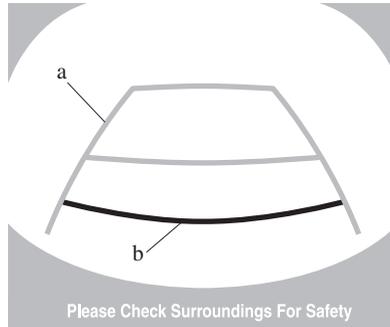
- The displayable range varies depending on the vehicle and road conditions.
- The displayable range is limited. Objects under the bumper or around the bumper ends cannot be displayed.
- The distance appearing in the displayed image is different from the actual distance because the rear view parking camera is equipped with a specific lens.
- Some optionally installed vehicle accessories may be picked up by the camera. Do not install any optional parts that can interfere with the camera view, such as illuminating parts or parts made of reflective material.
- It may be difficult to see the display under the following conditions, however, it does not indicate a malfunction.
 - In darkened areas.
 - When the temperature around the lens is high/low.
 - When the camera is wet such as on a rainy day or during periods of high humidity.
 - When foreign material such as mud is stuck around the camera.
 - When the camera lens reflects sunlight or headlight beams.
- Image display may be delayed if the temperature around the camera is low.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

▼ Viewing the Display

Guide lines which indicate the width of the vehicle (yellow) are displayed on the screen as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle in comparison to the width of the parking space you are about to back into.

Use this display view for parking your vehicle in a parking space or garage.



a) Vehicle width guide lines (yellow)

These guide lines serve as a reference to the approximate width of the vehicle.

b) Distance guide lines.

These guide lines indicate the approximate distance to a point measured from the vehicle's rear (from the end of the bumper).

- The red and yellow lines indicate the points about 0.5 m (19.7 in) for the red line and 1.0 m (39.4 in) for the yellow lines from the rear bumper (at the centre point of each of the lines).



The guide lines on the screen are fixed lines. They are not synced to the driver's turning of the steering wheel. Always be careful and check the area to the vehicle's rear and the surrounding area directly with your eyes while backing up.

▼ Rear View Monitor Operation

The operation of the rear view monitor when reversing the vehicle varies depending on the traffic, road, and vehicle conditions. The amount of steering and the timing also varies depending on conditions, so confirm the surrounding conditions directly with your eyes and steer the vehicle in accordance with the conditions.

Be well aware of the above cautions prior to using the rear view monitor.

NOTE

Images displayed on the monitor from the rear view parking camera are reversed images (mirror images).

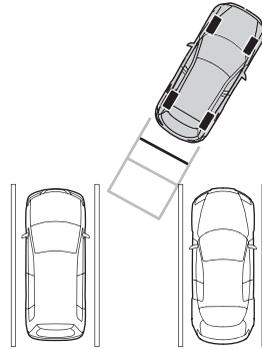
Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

1. Shift the selector lever to reverse (R) position to switch the display to the rear view monitor display.
2. Confirming the surrounding conditions, reverse the vehicle.

(Display condition)



(Vehicle condition)

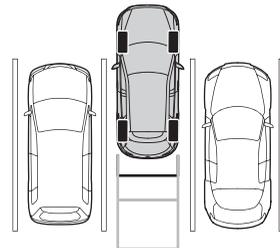


3. After your vehicle begins entering the parking space, continue backing up slowly so that the distance between the vehicle width lines and the sides of the parking space on the left and right are roughly equal.
4. Continue to adjust the steering wheel until the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to the left and right sides of the parking space.
5. Once they are parallel, straighten the wheels and back your vehicle slowly into the parking space. Continue checking the vehicle's surroundings and then stop the vehicle in the best possible position.

(Display condition)



(Vehicle condition)



6. When the selector lever is shifted from reverse (R) to another selector lever position, the screen returns to the previous display.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

NOTE

- If the parking space has division lines, straighten the wheels when the vehicle width guide lines are parallel to them.
- Because there may be a difference between the displayed image, such as indicated below, and the actual conditions when parking, always verify the safety at the rear of the vehicle and the surrounding area directly with your eyes.
- In the image of the parking space (or garage) displayed on the screen, the back end and distance guide lines may appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.
- When parking in a space with a division line on only one side of the parking space, the division line and the vehicle width guide line appear aligned in the monitor, but they may not actually be aligned on the ground.



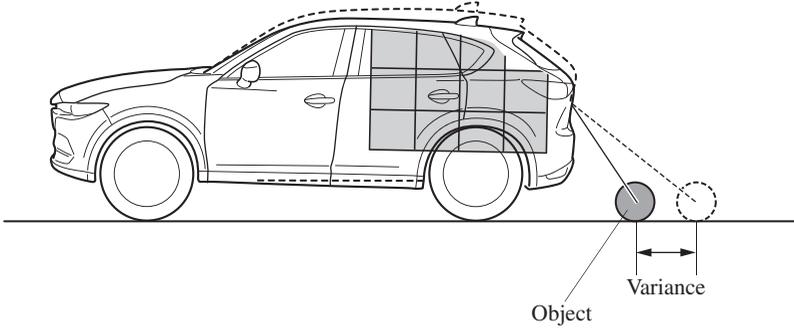
▼ Variance Between Actual Road Conditions and Displayed Image

Some variance occurs between the actual road and the displayed road. Such variance in distance perspective could lead to an accident. Note the following conditions that may cause a variance in distance perspective.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

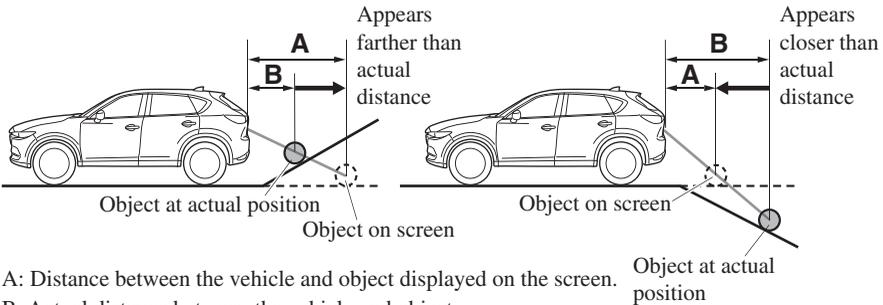
When the vehicle is tilted due to the weight of passengers and load

When the vehicle rear is lowered, the object displayed on the screen appears farther than the actual distance.



When there is a steep grade behind the vehicle

When there is a steep upgrade (downgrade) behind the vehicle, the object displayed on the screen appears farther (downgrade: closer) than the actual distance.



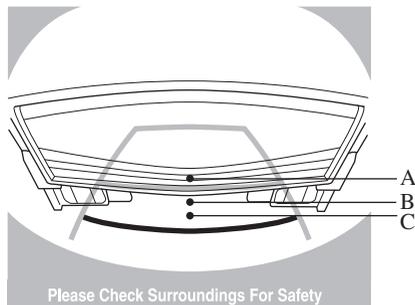
A: Distance between the vehicle and object displayed on the screen.
B: Actual distance between the vehicle and object.

Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Three-dimensional object on vehicle rear

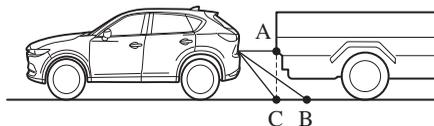
Because the distance guide lines are displayed based on a flat surface, the distance to the three-dimensional object displayed on the screen is different from the actual distance.

(Screen display)



Sensed distance on screen $A > B > C$

(Actual condition)



(Actual distance) $B > C = A$

▼ Picture Quality Adjustment



WARNING

Always adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while the vehicle is stopped:

Do not adjust the picture quality of the rear view monitor while driving the vehicle. Adjusting the picture quality of the rear view monitor such as brightness, contrast, colour, and tint while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to an accident.

Picture quality adjustment can be done while the selector lever is in reverse (R).

There are 4 settings which can be adjusted including, brightness, contrast, tint, and colour. When adjusting, pay sufficient attention to the vehicle surroundings.

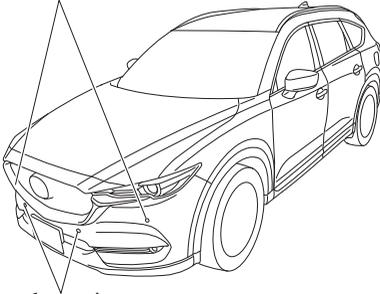
1. Select the  icon on the screen to display the tabs.
2. Select the desired tab item.
3. Adjust the brightness, contrast, tint, and colour using the slider.
If you need to reset, press the reset button.
4. Select the  icon on the screen to close the tab.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

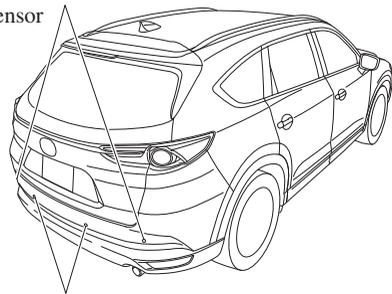
The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors which detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and a buzzer sound and detection indicator notify the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction.

*Front corner ultrasonic sensor



*Front ultrasonic sensor

Rear ultrasonic sensor



Rear corner ultrasonic sensor

*Some models.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the parking sensor system and be sure to confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving:

This system can assist the driver in operating the vehicle in the forward and backward directions while parking. The detection ranges of the sensors are limited, therefore, driving the vehicle while relying only on the system may cause an accident. Always confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.

NOTE

- Do not install any accessories within the detection ranges of the sensors. It may affect the system operation.
- Depending on the type of obstruction and the surrounding conditions, the detection range of a sensor may narrow, or the sensors may not be able to detect obstructions.
- The system may not operate normally under the following conditions:
 - Mud, ice, or snow is adhering to the sensor area (Returns to normal operation when removed).
 - The sensor area is frozen (Returns to normal operation when the ice is thawed).
 - The sensor is covered by a hand.
 - The sensor is excessively shocked.

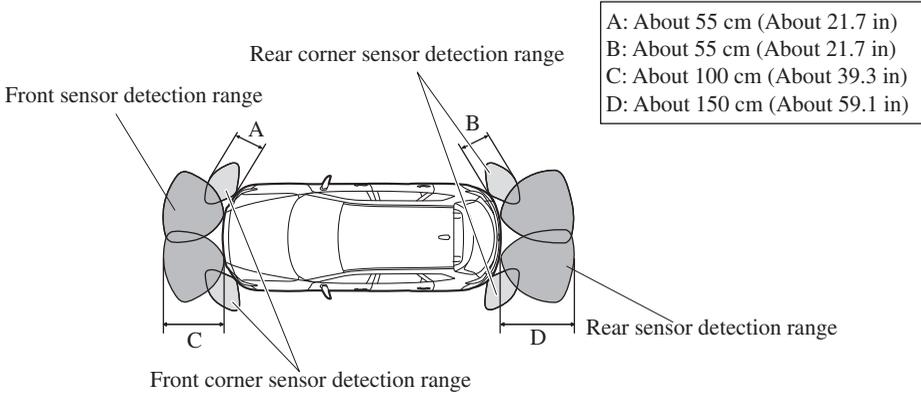
Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

- *The vehicle is excessively tilted.*
- *Under extremely hot or cold weather conditions.*
- *The vehicle is driven on bumps, inclines, gravel, or grass covered roads.*
- *Anything which generates ultrasound is near the vehicle, such as another vehicle's horn, the engine sound of a motorcycle, the air brake sound of a large-sized vehicle, or another vehicle's sensors.*
- *The vehicle is driven in heavy rain or in road conditions causing water-splash.*
- *A commercially-available wing pole or an aerial for a radio transmitter is installed to the vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is moving towards a tall or square curbstone.*
- *An obstruction is too close to the sensor.*
- *Obstructions under the bumper may not be detected. Obstructions that are lower than the bumper or thin which may have been initially detected may no longer be detected as the vehicle approaches more closely to the obstruction.*
- *The following types of obstructions may not be detected:*
 - *Thin objects such as wire or rope*
 - *Things which absorb sonic waves easily such as cotton or snow*
 - *Angular shaped objects*
 - *Very tall objects, and those which are wide at the top*
 - *Small, short objects*
- *Always have the system inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if any shock is applied to the bumpers, even in a minor accident. If the sensors are deviated, they cannot detect obstructions.*
- *The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate or the indicator light does not illuminate when the parking sensor switch is turned on. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *The system may have a malfunction if the beep sound which indicates a system malfunction is heard and the indicator light flashes. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *The beeper which indicates a system malfunction may not be heard if the ambient temperature is extremely cold, or mud, ice, or snow adheres to the sensor area. Remove any foreign material from the sensor area.*
- *When installing a trailer hitch, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

▼ Sensor Detection Range

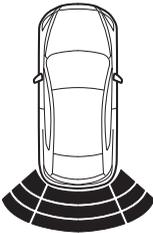
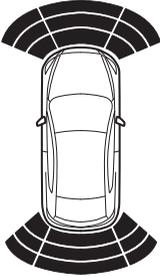
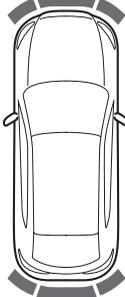
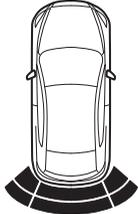
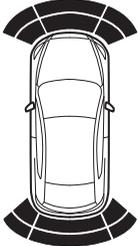
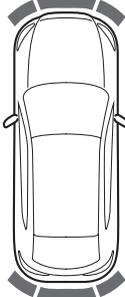
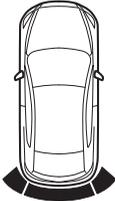
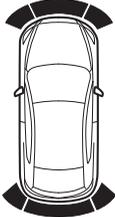
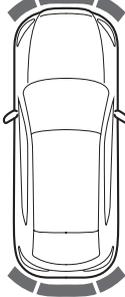
The sensors detect obstructions within the following range.



Viewing distance display

Display		Distance between vehicle and obstruction		
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor*/Front corner ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear Corner ultrasonic sensor
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Green	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 100—60 cm (39.4—23.6 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 150—60 cm (59.1—23.6 in)

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Display		Distance between vehicle and obstruction		
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor ² /Front corner ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear Corner ultrasonic sensor
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Yellow 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—14.9 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.7—14.9 in)
		Amber 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.8 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15—9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.8 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (15—9.8 in)
		Red 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.8 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.8 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

▼ Parking Sensor System Operation

Vehicles without front ultrasonic sensor/front corner ultrasonic sensor

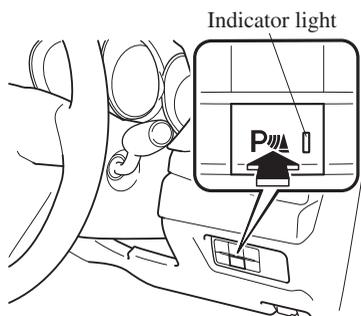
The parking sensors can be used when the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON.

Vehicles with front ultrasonic sensor/front corner ultrasonic sensor

When the parking sensor switch is pressed with the ignition switched ON, the buzzer sounds and the indicator light turns on.

When the ignition is switched ON with the parking sensor activated, the indicator light turns on.

Press the switch again to stop the operation.



Operation conditions

The parking sensor system can be used when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The parking sensor switch is turned on.

NOTE

- The detection indicator and buzzer of the front ultrasonic sensors/front corner ultrasonic sensors do not operate when the selector lever is in the P position.
- The detection indicator and buzzer sound do not activate when the parking brake is applied.

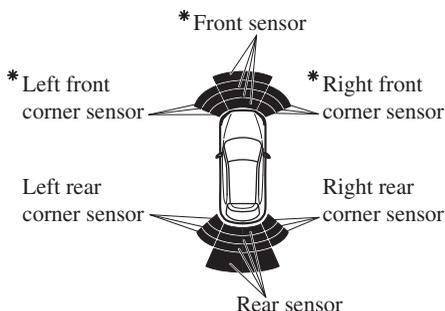
▼ Obstruction Detection Indication

The position of a sensor which has detected an obstruction is indicated. The gauge illuminates in different areas depending on the distance to an obstruction detected by the sensor.

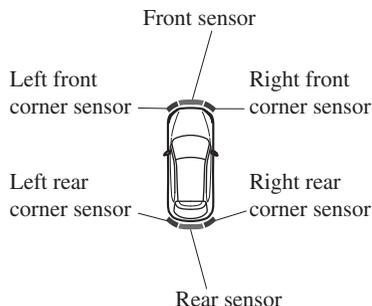
Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

As the vehicle approaches closer to an obstruction, the zone in the gauge closer to the vehicle illuminates.

Without 360° view monitor



With 360° view monitor



* Some models

NOTE

The detection indicator can switch between display and non-display.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

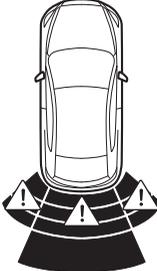
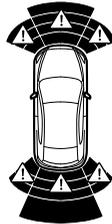
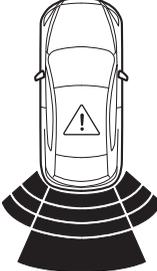
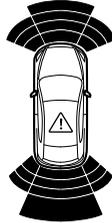
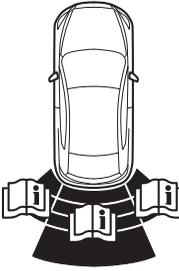
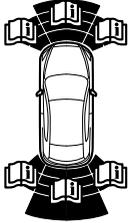
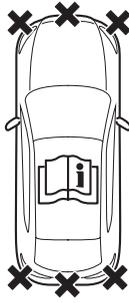
(Vehicles with 360° View Monitor)

When the detection indicator is set to "Display", even with the 360° view monitor not displayed, if a front ultrasonic sensor or a front corner ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction, the 360° view monitor switches automatically to display. When an obstruction is no longer detected, the display switches to the display before the obstruction was detected. However, while the 360° view monitor is displayed, it continues to display no matter if an obstruction is detected or not.

System problem notification

If a problem occurs, the driver is notified of the problem by the following indications.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

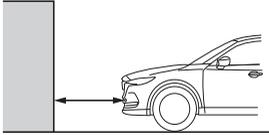
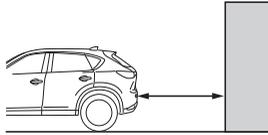
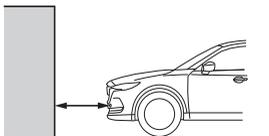
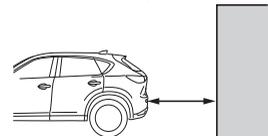
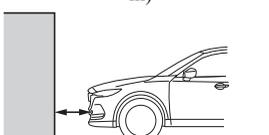
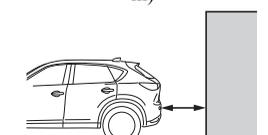
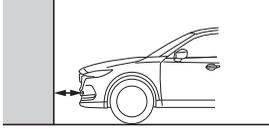
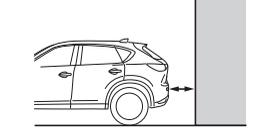
	Detection Indicator			Solution
	Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	
	Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor		
Disconnection				The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
System malfunction				The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
Frost/soiling				Foreign matter may be on the sensor area corresponding to the obstruction detection indication shown. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Parking Sensor Warning Beep

The beeper sounds as follows while the system is operating.

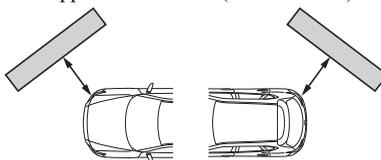
Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Front Ultrasonic Sensor*, Rear Ultrasonic Sensor

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound*1
	Front ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor	
Farthest distance	Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in) 	Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in) 	Slow intermittent sound
Far distance	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Continuous sound

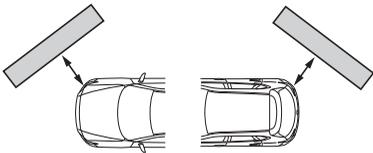
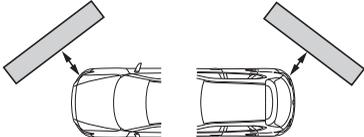
*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

Front Corner Ultrasonic Sensor*, Rear Corner Ultrasonic Sensor

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front corner ultrasonic*/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor	
Far distance	Approx. 55—38 cm (21.6—14.9 in) 	Medium intermittent sound

*Some models.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))

Distance detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front corner ultrasonic*/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor	
Middle distance	<p>Approx. 38—25 cm (14.9—9.8 in)</p> 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	<p>Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)</p> 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

NOTE

If an obstruction is detected in a zone for 6 seconds or more, the beep sound is stopped (except for the close-distance zone). If the same obstruction is detected in another zone, the corresponding beep sound is heard.

▼ When Warning Indicator/Beep is Activated

The system notifies the driver of an abnormality by activating the beep sound and the indicator light.

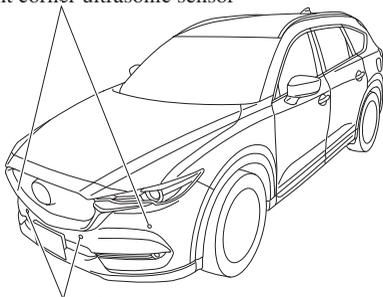
Indicator/Beep	How to check
The indicator light flashes when the parking sensor switch is pressed at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The beep sound is not heard.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The intermittent sound of the buzzer is heard 5 times.	Remove any foreign material from the sensor area. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
A certain obstruction detection indicator is continuously displayed.	Refer to Obstruction Detection Indication on page 4-286.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

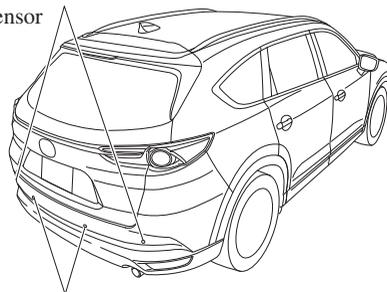
The parking sensors use ultrasonic sensors which detect obstructions around the vehicle when the vehicle is driven at low speeds, such as during garage or parallel parking, and a buzzer sound and detection indicator notify the driver of the approximate distance from the vehicle to the surrounding obstruction.

*Front corner ultrasonic sensor



*Front ultrasonic sensor

Rear ultrasonic sensor



Rear corner ultrasonic sensor

*Some models.

WARNING

Do not rely completely on the parking sensor system and be sure to confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving:

This system can assist the driver in operating the vehicle in the forward and backward directions while parking. The detection ranges of the sensors are limited, therefore, driving the vehicle while relying only on the system may cause an accident. Always confirm the safety around your vehicle visually when driving.

NOTE

- Do not install any accessories within the detection ranges of the sensors. It may affect the system operation.
- Depending on the type of obstruction and the surrounding conditions, the detection range of a sensor may narrow, or the sensors may not be able to detect obstructions.
- The system may not operate normally under the following conditions:
 - Mud, ice, or snow is adhering to the sensor area (Returns to normal operation when removed).
 - The sensor area is frozen (Returns to normal operation when the ice is thawed).
 - The sensor is covered by a hand.
 - The sensor is excessively shocked.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

- *The vehicle is excessively tilted.*
- *Under extremely hot or cold weather conditions.*
- *The vehicle is driven on bumps, inclines, gravel, or grass covered roads.*
- *Anything which generates ultrasound is near the vehicle, such as another vehicle's horn, the engine sound of a motorcycle, the air brake sound of a large-sized vehicle, or another vehicle's sensors.*
- *The vehicle is driven in heavy rain or in road conditions causing water-splash.*
- *A commercially-available wing pole or an aerial for a radio transmitter is installed to the vehicle.*
- *The vehicle is moving towards a tall or square curbstone.*
- *An obstruction is too close to the sensor.*
- *Obstructions under the bumper may not be detected. Obstructions that are lower than the bumper or thin which may have been initially detected may no longer be detected as the vehicle approaches more closely to the obstruction.*
- *The following types of obstructions may not be detected:*
 - *Thin objects such as wire or rope*
 - *Things which absorb sonic waves easily such as cotton or snow*
 - *Angular shaped objects*
 - *Very tall objects, and those which are wide at the top*
 - *Small, short objects*
- *Always have the system inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if any shock is applied to the bumpers, even in a minor accident. If the sensors are deviated, they cannot detect obstructions.*
- ***(With front ultrasonic sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***

The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate or the indicator light does not illuminate when the parking sensor switch is turned on. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(Without ultrasonic front sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***

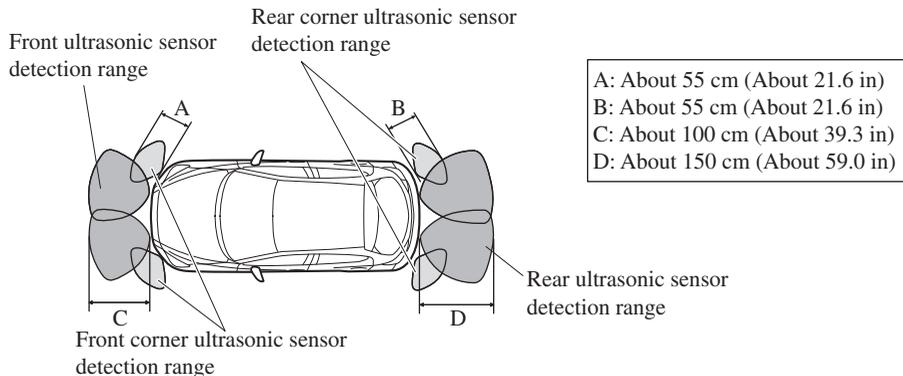
The system may have a malfunction if the beep does not operate. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- ***(With front ultrasonic sensor and front ultrasonic corner sensor)***

The system may have a malfunction if the beep sound which indicates a system malfunction is heard and the indicator light flashes. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- *The beeper which indicates a system malfunction may not be heard if the ambient temperature is extremely cold, or mud, ice, or snow adheres to the sensor area. Remove any foreign material from the sensor area.*
- *When installing a trailer hitch, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

▼ Sensor Detection Range

The sensors detect obstructions within the following range.

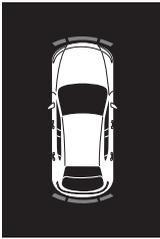
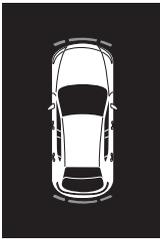


Viewing distance display

Display		Distance between vehicle and obstruction		
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor*/Front corner ultrasonic sensor*	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor*
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Green 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in)
		Yellow 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.6—14.9 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 55—38 cm (21.6—14.9 in)

*Some models.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Display			Distance between vehicle and obstruction	
Without 360° view monitor		With 360° view monitor	Front ultrasonic sensor [*] /Front corner ultrasonic sensor [*]	Rear ultrasonic sensor/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor [*]
Without front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor	With front ultrasonic sensor and front corner ultrasonic sensor			
		Amber 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 40—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (14.9—9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Approx. 38—25 cm (14.9—9.8 in)
		Red 	Front ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) Front corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)	Rear ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) Rear corner ultrasonic sensor: Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in)

▼ Parking Sensor System Operation

Vehicles without front sensor/front corner sensor

The parking sensors can be used when the selector lever is shifted to the R position with the ignition switched ON.

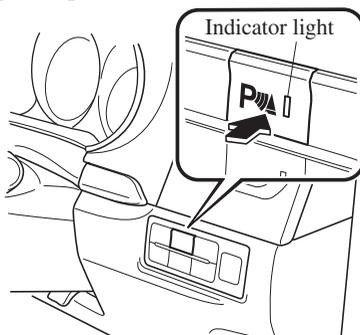
Vehicles with front sensor/front corner sensor

When the parking sensor switch is pressed with the ignition switched ON, the buzzer sounds and the indicator light turns on.

When the ignition is switched ON with the parking sensor activated, the indicator light turns on.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Press the switch again to stop the operation.



NOTE

When the ignition is switched OFF, the system status before it was turned off is maintained. For example, if the ignition is switched OFF while the parking sensor is activated, the system will be activated when the ignition is switched ON the next time.

Operation conditions

The parking sensor system can be used when all of the following conditions are met:

- The ignition is switched ON.
- The parking sensor switch is turned on.

NOTE

- *The detection indicator and buzzer of the front sensors/front corner sensors do not operate when the selector lever is in the P position.*
- *The detection indicator and buzzer sound do not activate when the parking brake is applied.*

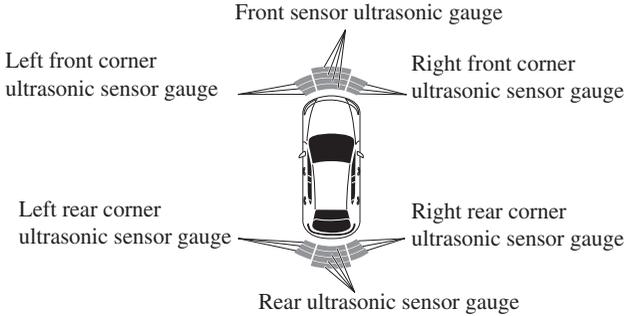
▼ Obstruction Detection Indication

The position of a sensor which has detected an obstruction is indicated. The gauge illuminates in different areas depending on the distance to an obstruction detected by the sensor.

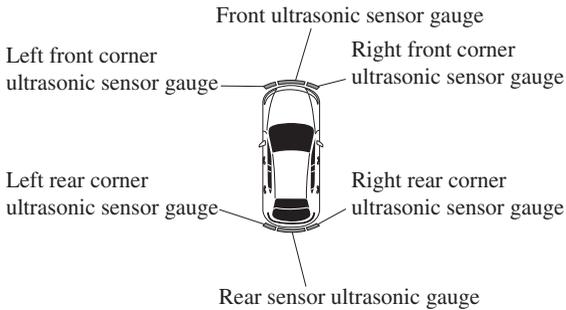
As the vehicle approaches closer to an obstruction, the zone in the gauge closer to the vehicle illuminates.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Without 360°view monitor



With 360°view monitor



NOTE

The detection indicator can be switched between display and non-display and the buzzer volume can be changed.

Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

(Vehicles with 360° View Monitor)

When the detection indicator is set to "Display", even with the 360° view monitor not displayed, if a front ultrasonic sensor or a front corner ultrasonic sensor detects an obstruction, the 360° view monitor switches automatically to display. When an obstruction is no longer detected, the display switches to the display before the obstruction was detected. However, while the 360° view monitor is displayed, it continues to display no matter if an obstruction is detected or not.

System problem notification

The indication displays if the system has a malfunction.

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Without 360°view monitor



With 360°view monitor



Check the reason for the indication displaying on the centre display or multi-information display.

Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.

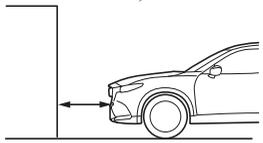
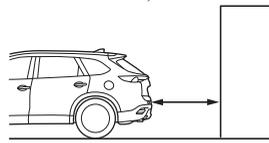
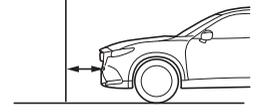
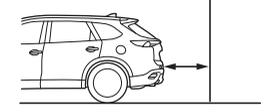
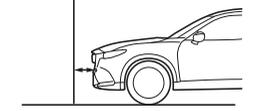
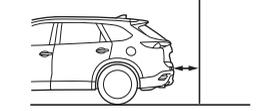
▼ Parking Sensor Warning Beep

The beeper sounds as follows while the system is operating.

Front ultrasonic sensor*, Rear ultrasonic sensor

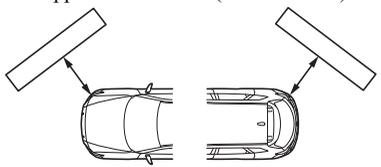
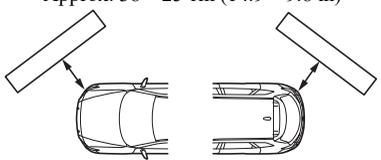
Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound* ¹
	Front ultrasonic sensor	Rear ultrasonic sensor	
Farthest distance	Approx. 100—60 cm (39.3—23.6 in) 	Approx. 150—60 cm (59.0—23.6 in) 	Slow intermittent sound

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

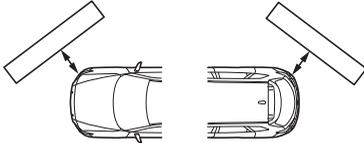
Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction		Beeper sound*1
	Front ultrasonic sensor	Rear ultrasonic sensor	
Far distance	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Approx. 60—45 cm (23.6—17.7 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Approx. 45—35 cm (17.7—13.7 in) 	Fast intermittent sound
Close distance	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Within approx. 35 cm (13.7 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

Front corner ultrasonic sensor*, Rear corner ultrasonic sensor*

Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front corner ultrasonic sensor/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor	
Far distance	Approx. 55—38 cm (21.6—14.9 in) 	Medium intermittent sound
Middle distance	Approx. 38—25 cm (14.9—9.8 in) 	Fast intermittent sound

Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))

Distance Detection area	Distance between vehicle and obstruction	Beeper sound*1
	Front corner ultrasonic sensor/Rear corner ultrasonic sensor	
Close distance	Within approx. 25 cm (9.8 in) 	Continuous sound

*1 The rate at which the intermittent sound beeps increases as the vehicle approaches the obstruction.

NOTE

- If an obstruction is detected in a zone for 6 seconds or more, the beep sound is stopped (except for the close-distance zone). If the same obstruction is detected in another zone, the corresponding beep sound is heard.

▼ When Warning Indicator/Beep is Activated

The system notifies the driver of an abnormality by activating the beep sound and the indicator light.

Indicator/Beep	How to check
The indicator light flashes when the parking sensor switch is pressed at a vehicle speed of 10 km/h (6 mph) or less.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The beep sound is not heard.	The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.
The intermittent sound of the buzzer is heard 5 times.	Remove any foreign material from the sensor area. If the system does not recover, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
A certain obstruction detection indicator is continuously displayed.	Refer to Obstruction Detection Indication on page 4-286.

MEMO

5

Interior Features

Use of various features for ride comfort, including air-conditioning and audio system.

Air-Conditioning System	5-2
Operating Tips.....	5-2
Vent Operation (Front).....	5-3
Front Air Conditioner.....	5-5
Vent Operation (Rear).....	5-9
Rear Air Conditioner.....	5-11

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]	5-14
What is Mazda Connect ?.....	5-14
Mazda Connect Basic Operations.....	5-17

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]	5-31
What is Mazda Connect ?.....	5-31

Mazda Connect Basic Operations.....	5-35
--	------

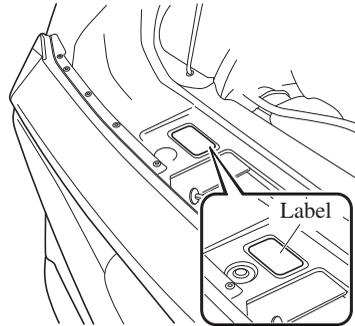
Interior Equipment	5-48
Sunvisors.....	5-48
Interior Lights.....	5-48
Accessory Sockets.....	5-53
USB Power Outlet*.....	5-54
Wireless Charger (Qi)*.....	5-56
Cup Holder.....	5-60
Bottle Holder.....	5-61
Storage Compartments.....	5-62
Sunshade (Rear Door Window)*	5-67

Air-Conditioning System

Operating Tips

- Operate the air-conditioning system with the engine running.
- To prevent the battery from being discharged, do not leave the fan control switch on for a long period of time with the ignition switched ON when the engine is not running.
- The airflow amount may decrease slightly while the i-stop function is operating.
- Clear all obstructions such as leaves, snow and ice from the bonnet and the air inlet in the cowl grille to improve the system efficiency.
- Use the air-conditioning system to defog the windows and dehumidify the air.
- The recirculate mode should be used when driving through tunnels or while in a traffic jam, or when you would like to shut off outside air for quick cooling of the interior.
- Use the outside air position for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.
- If the vehicle has been parked in direct sunlight during hot weather, open the windows to let warm air escape, then run the air-conditioning system.
- Run the air conditioner about 10 minutes at least once a month to keep internal parts lubricated.
- Have the air conditioner checked before the weather gets hot. Lack of refrigerant may make the air conditioner less efficient.
The refrigerant specifications are indicated on a label attached to the inside of the engine compartment. If the wrong type of refrigerant is used, it could result in a serious malfunction of

the air conditioner. Consult a professional, government certified repairer for the inspection or repair because a special device is required for the air conditioner maintenance. For details, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).



Vent Operation (Front)

▼ Adjusting the Vents

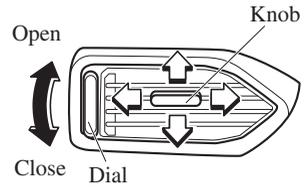
Directing airflow

To adjust the direction of airflow, move the adjustment knob.

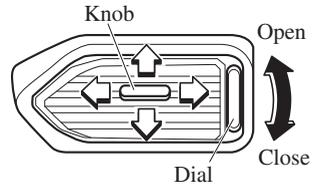
NOTE

- When using the air conditioner under humid ambient temperature conditions, the system may blow fog from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.
- The air vents can be fully opened and closed by operating the dial.

Side Vents



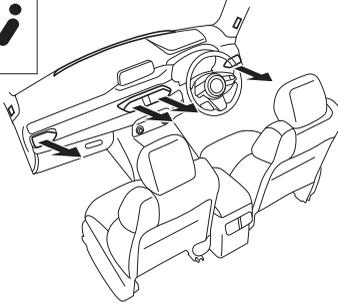
Centre Vents



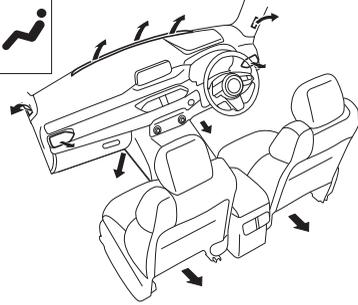
Air-Conditioning System

▼ Selecting the Airflow Mode

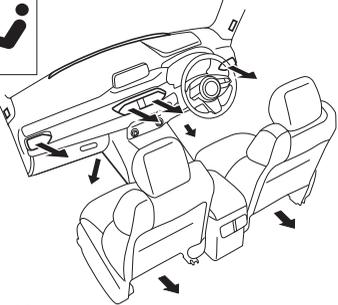
Instrument panel Vents



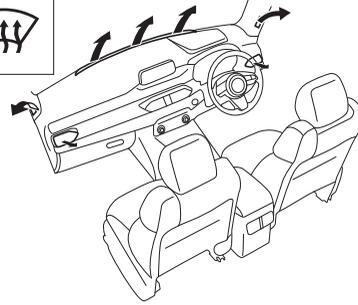
Defroster and Floor Vents



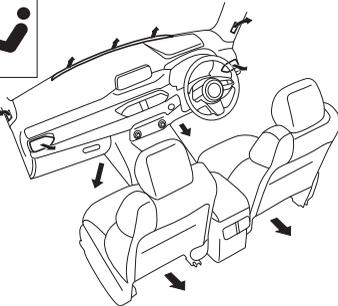
Instrument panel and Floor Vents



Defroster Vents



Floor Vents



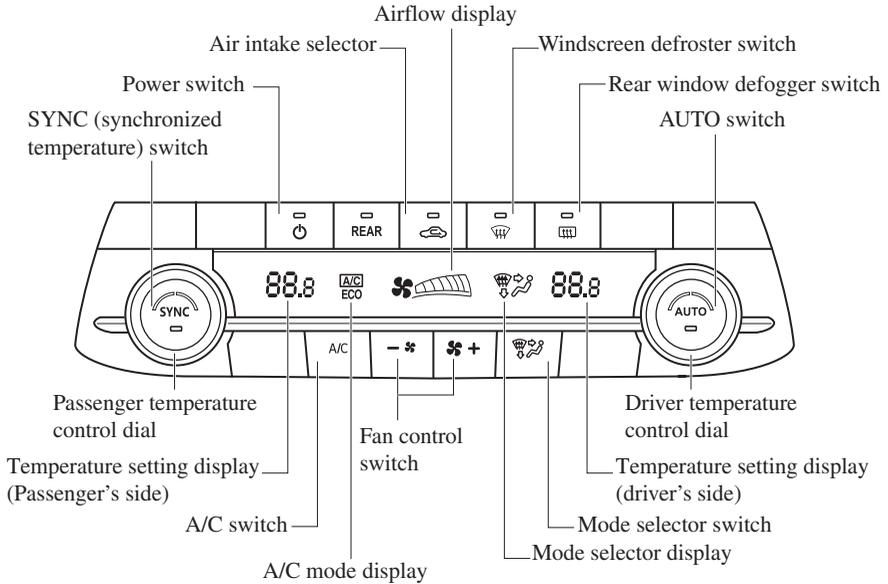
NOTE

The location airflow exits the air vents and the airflow amount may change depending on the open or close status of the air vents.

Air-Conditioning System

Front Air Conditioner

Air-conditioning system information is displayed on the display.



▼ Control Switches

AUTO switch

By pressing the AUTO switch the following functions will be automatically controlled in accordance with the selected set temperature:

- Airflow temperature
- Amount of airflow
- Selection of airflow mode
- Outside/Recirculated air selection
- Air conditioner operation
- A/C or A/C ECO selection

NOTE

AUTO switch indicator light

• When on, it indicates auto operation, and the system will function automatically.

• If any of the following switches are operated while in auto control, the AUTO switch indicator turns off.

- Mode selector switch
 - Fan control switch
 - Windscreen defroster switch
- The functions for switches other than those operated continue to operate in auto control.

Power switch (Fan On/Off)

The air-conditioning system turns on or off by pressing the power switch.

Air-Conditioning System

Temperature control dial

This dial controls temperature. Turn it clockwise for hot and anticlockwise for cold.

Turn the temperature control dial to adjust the temperature between 18 °C (64 °F) and 32 °C (90 °F).

- When the SYNC switch is on:
Turn the driver temperature control dial to control the temperature throughout the entire cabin.
- When the SYNC switch is off:
Turn the driver or front passenger temperature control dial to independently control the temperature on each side of the cabin.

NOTE

- The air-conditioning system changes to the individual operation mode (SYNC switch indicator light turns off) by turning the front passenger temperature control dial even when the SYNC switch is on, which allows individual control of the set temperature for the driver and front passenger.
- When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, “Lo” or “Hi” is displayed.
- The temperature units for the temperature setting display can be changed in conjunction with the temperature units for the outside temperature display.
(Instrument cluster Type A)
Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-26.
(Instrument cluster Type B)
Refer to Outside Temperature Display on page 4-43.

Fan control switch

The fan has 7 speeds. The selected speed will be displayed.

Mode selector switch

The desired airflow mode can be selected (page 5-4).

NOTE

- With the airflow mode set to the  position and the temperature control dial set at a medium temperature, heated air is directed to the feet and air at a comparably lower temperature will flow through the central, left and right vents.
- To set the air vent to , press the windscreen defroster switch.
- In the  position, the air conditioner is automatically turned on and the outside air position is automatically selected to defrost the windscreen.

A/C switch

Pressing the A/C switch while the AUTO switch is turned on will turn off the air conditioner (cooling/dehumidifying functions).

The on/off of the air conditioner switches each time the A/C switch is pressed.

Changes as follows each time the A/C switch is pressed.

A/C → A/C ECO → Stop

NOTE

- The air conditioner operates when the A/C switch is pressed while the air conditioner is turned off.

Air-Conditioning System

- The A/C ECO function is designed to economize use of the air-conditioning system. "A/C ECO" is displayed to indicate that the air-conditioning system is operating at optimum control.
- The air conditioner may not function when the outside temperature approaches 0 °C (32 °F).

Air intake selector

Outside or recirculated air positions can be selected. Press the switch to select outside/recirculated air positions.

Recirculated air position (indicator light turns on)

Outside air is shut off. Air within the vehicle is recirculated. Use this position when going through tunnels, driving in congested traffic (high engine exhaust areas), or when quick cooling is desired.

Outside air position (indicator light turns off)

Outside air is allowed to enter the cabin. Use this position for ventilation or windscreen defrosting.



Do not recirculate the air in the cabin during cold or rainy weather:

Recirculating the air in the cabin during cold and rainy weather is dangerous as it will cause the windows to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

SYNC (Synchronized Temperature) switch

Use the SYNC switch to change the mode between the individual operation (driver and passenger) and interconnection (simultaneous) modes.

Interconnection mode (indicator light turns on)

The set temperature for the driver and front passenger is controlled simultaneously.

Individual operation mode (indicator light turns off)

The set temperature can be controlled individually for the driver and front passenger.

Windscreen defroster switch

Press the switch to defrost the windscreen and front door windows.

Refer to Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging on page 5-8.

Rear window defogger switch

Press the rear window defogger switch to defrost the rear window.

Refer to Rear Window Defogger on page 4-75.

▼ Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner

1. Press the AUTO switch. Selection of the airflow mode, air intake selector and amount of airflow will be automatically controlled.
2. Use the temperature control dial to select a desired temperature.
If you want to set the temperature on the front passenger's side separately

Air-Conditioning System

from the driver's side, turn the front passenger temperature control dial to switch the mode automatically to the individual operation mode and set the temperature for the front passenger's side.

To turn off the system, press the power switch.

NOTE

- Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.
- Setting the temperature to maximum hot or cold will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.
- When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until the engine has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.

▼ Windscreen Defrosting and Defogging

Press the windscreen defroster switch. In this position, the outside air position is automatically selected, and the air conditioner automatically turns on. The air conditioner will directly dehumidify the air to the front windscreen and side windows on page 5-4. Airflow amount will be increased.

⚠ WARNING

Set the temperature control to the hot or warm position when defogging (☼ position):

Using the ☼ position with the temperature control set to the cold position is dangerous as it will cause the outside of the windscreen to fog up. Your vision will be hampered, which could lead to a serious accident.

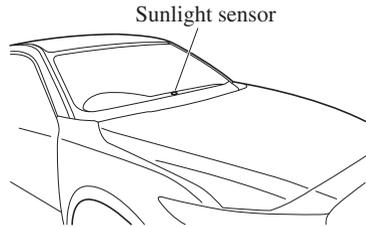
NOTE

Use the temperature control dial to increase the air flow temperature and defog the windscreen more quickly.

▼ Sunlight/Interior temperature sensor

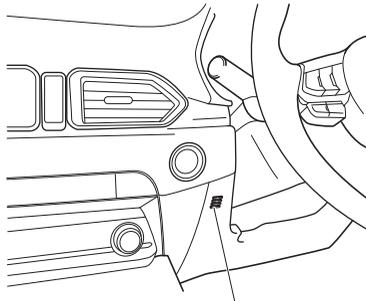
Sunlight sensor

Do not place objects on the sunlight sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



Interior temperature sensor

Do not cover the interior temperature sensor. Otherwise, the interior temperature may not adjust correctly.



Interior temperature sensor

Vent Operation (Rear)

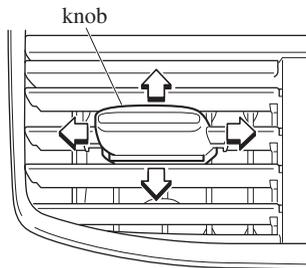
▼ Adjusting the Vents

Directing airflow

You can direct air flow by moving the adjustment knob.

NOTE

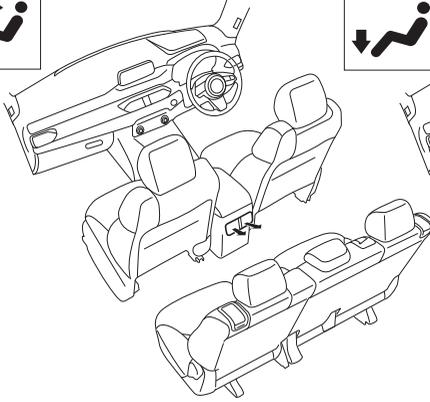
When using the air conditioner, mist may come out from the vents. This is not a sign of trouble but a result of humid air being suddenly cooled.



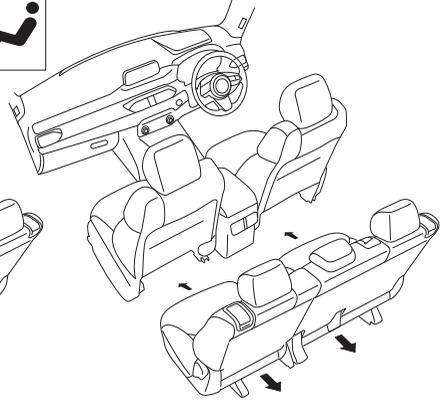
Air-Conditioning System

▼ Selecting the Airflow Mode

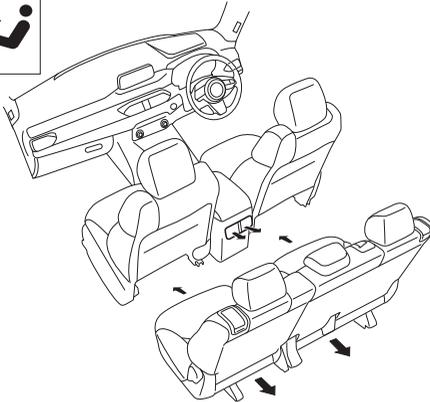
Instrument panel Vents



Floor Vents



Instrument panel and Floor Vents



Air-Conditioning System

Operate the temperature control switch to adjust the temperature between 18 °C (64 °F) and 32 °C (90 °F).

NOTE

When the temperature control switch is set to the maximum or minimum, “Hi” or “Lo” is indicated on the display.

Fan control switch

The fan has five speeds. The selected speed will be displayed.

Mode selector switch

The desired airflow mode can be selected. Refer to Selecting the Airflow Mode on page 5-10.

▼ Operation of Automatic Air Conditioner

Operation from front seats

1. Turn the front air conditioner on.
2. Press the rear switch. The rear air conditioner operates.
3. Selection of the airflow mode, airflow amount and temperature will be automatically controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side.

NOTE

- *Set the control dial to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.*
- *If the AUTO switch is pressed while the front A/C switch is off, the rear air conditioner operates only to circulate air.*

- *Setting the temperature to the maximum high or low will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.*
- *When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.*
- *When the rear air conditioner is controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side, “SYNC” is displayed on the rear screen.*
- *When operating the fan switch of the front air conditioner while the rear air conditioner is operating automatically, the airflow amount of the rear air conditioner may change.*

Operation from rear seats

1. Turn the front air conditioner on.
2. Press the AUTO switch. The selection of the airflow mode and airflow amount will be automatically controlled.
3. Use the temperature control switch to set the desired temperature.

NOTE

- *Set the control switch to the recommended temperature of 25 °C (77 °F), and then adjust it as desired.*
- *If the AUTO switch is pressed while the front A/C switch is off, the rear air conditioner operates only to circulate air.*
- *Setting the temperature to the maximum high or low will not provide the desired temperature at a faster rate.*

Air-Conditioning System

- *When selecting heat, the system will restrict airflow until it has warmed to prevent cold air from blowing out of the vents.*
- *When the rear air conditioner is operated automatically, "AUTO" is displayed on the rear screen.*
- *When the rear air conditioner is controlled to the same temperature setting as the front air conditioner for the driver's side, "SYNC" is displayed on the rear screen.*

To turn off the system, press the Power switch.

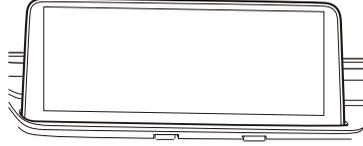
Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

What is Mazda Connect ?

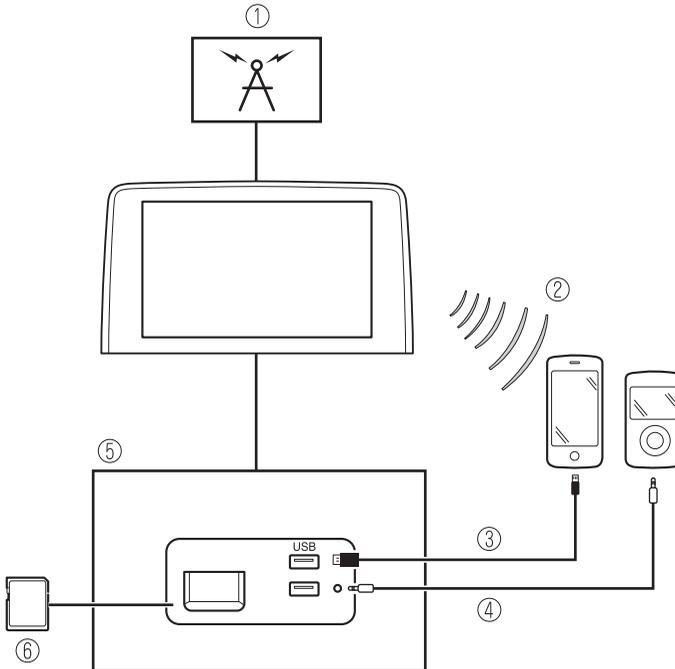
▼ What is Mazda Connect ?

For vehicles with the following display type, refer to the following page because your vehicle is equipped with Mazda Connect (Type B).

Refer to What is Mazda Connect ? 5-31.



This manual only indicates a part of the information for Mazda Connect. For details, check the Web owner's manual at the Mazda site for each country.

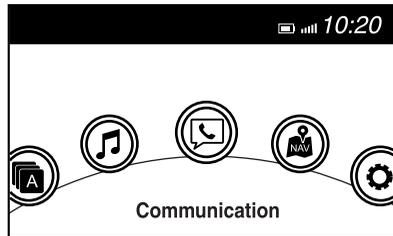


1. Radio
2. Bluetooth® Audio/Hands-Free Call/SMS (Short Message Service)/E-mail
3. USB Audio
4. AUX
5. USB port*1/Auxiliary jack*1/SD card slot*2

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

6. SD card (Navigation system)

- *1 The location of the USB slot/auxiliary jack differs depending on the specifications.
- *2 The SD card slot is for the navigation system only. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot and used.



Icon	Function
	<p>Applications Information such as average fuel economy, maintenance, and warnings can be verified. In addition, Apple CarPlay, and Android™ can be selected. Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.</p>
	<p>Entertainment Operates audio such as the radio. The audio source most recently used is displayed. An audio source which cannot be used at that time is skipped and the previous audio source is displayed. To change the audio source, select the  icon displayed at the bottom of the screen.</p>
	<p>Communication Bluetooth® related functions are available.</p>
	<p>Navigation Navigation screen is displayed. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. The compass may not indicate the correct bearing when the vehicle is stopped or traveling at a slow speed.</p>
	<p>Settings Overall setting menu (Such as display, sound, Bluetooth® and Language). Depending on the grade and specification, the screen display may differ.</p>

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

WARNING

Always adjust Mazda Connect while the vehicle is stopped:

Do not adjust Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle.

Adjusting Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident.

Even if the audio remote control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the selector lever:

Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the selector lever is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

Do not adjust a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle:

Adjusting a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust a mobile device or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.

CAUTION

For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

NOTE

- Do not use Mazda Connect for a long time with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery power could be depleted.*
- If a mobile phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system. However, this does not indicate a problem.*

Mazda Connect Basic Operations

▼ Mazda Connect Basic Operations

NOTE

The explanation of functions described in this manual may differ from the actual operation, and the shapes of screens and buttons and the letters and characters displayed may also differ from the actual appearance.

Additionally, depending on future software updates, the content may successively change without notice.

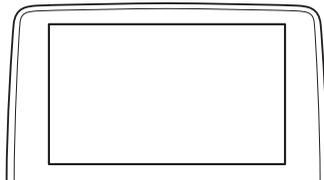
▼ Touch Panel Operation



Do not press the screen strongly or press it with a sharp-pointed object. Otherwise, the screen could be damaged.

NOTE

For safety reasons, operation of the centre display is disabled while the vehicle is being driven. However, items not displayed in grey can be operated using the commander switch while the vehicle is being driven.

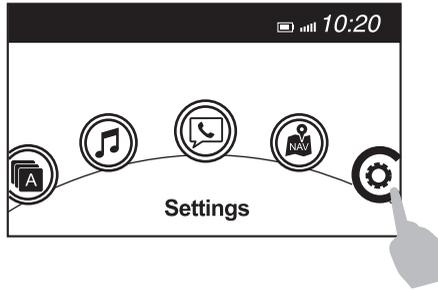


Touch & Tap

1. Touch or tap on the item indicated on the screen.

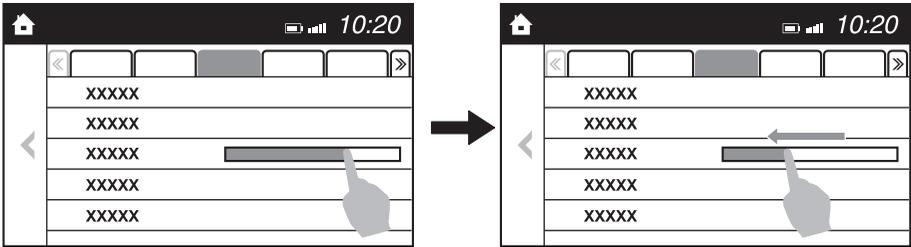
Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

2. The operation is launched and the next item is displayed.



Slide

1. Touch the setting item displaying a slider bar.
2. Touch the slider with your finger and move to the desired level.



Swipe

1. Touch the screen with your finger and move up or down.
2. Items which were not displayed can be displayed.



Return to previous screen

1. Touch the .

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

Displaying the home screen

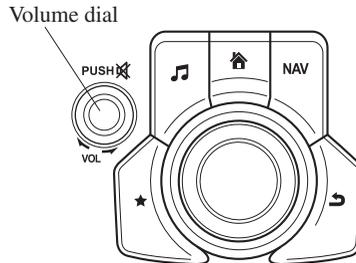
1. Touch the .

▼ Commander Switch Operation

NOTE

For safety reasons, some operations are disabled while the vehicle is being driven.

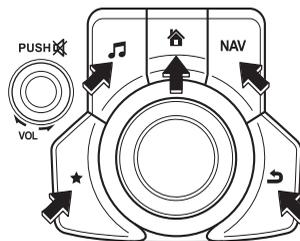
Volume dial operation



Press the volume dial to mute and pause. However, while an audio source which cannot be paused such as FM radio is playing, only mute is available. Press the volume dial again to resume the audio.

Turn the volume dial to adjust the volume. The volume increases by turning the dial clockwise, and decreases by turning it anticlockwise.

Switches around commander knob



The following operations can be done by pressing the switches around the commander knob.

 : Displays the home screen.

 : Displays the Entertainment screen.

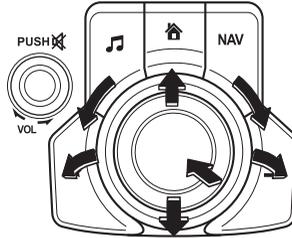
NAV : Displays the Navigation screen. For operation of the Navigation screen, refer to the navigation system manual. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

★ : Displays the Favourites screen. Long-press to store particular items in Favourites. (Radio, phonebook and destination of the navigation system can be programmed.)

↶ : Returns to previous screen.

Commander knob operation



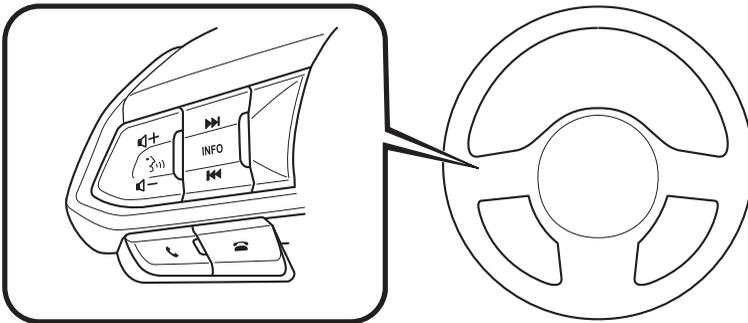
(Selection of icons on screen)

1. Tilt or turn the commander knob and move the cursor to the desired icon.
2. Press the commander knob and select the icon.

NOTE

Long-press operation of the commander knob is also possible for some functions.

▼ Audio Remote Control Switch Operation

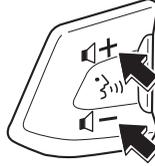


Adjusting the Volume

To increase the volume, press up the volume switch (+).

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

To decrease the volume, press down the volume switch (—).



Seek Switch

AM/FM radio

Press the seek switch (⏪, ⏩). The radio switches to the next/previous stored station in the order that it was stored.

Press and hold the seek switch (⏪, ⏩) to seek all usable stations at a higher or lower frequency whether programmed or not.

Radio stations which have been previously stored in favourites can be called up by pressing the seek switch (⏪, ⏩) while any radio station stored in the favourite radio is being received. Radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored with each press of the switch (⏪, ⏩).



DAB radio

Press the Seek switch (⏪, ⏩) while listening to DAB radio to call up a station previously stored to the favourites list. With each operation of the switch, radio stations can be called up in the order they were stored.

Press and hold the seek switch (⏩) to go to the next station, (⏪) to return to the previous station.

USB Audio/Bluetooth® Audio

Press the seek switch (⏩) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.

Press the seek switch (⏪) within a few seconds after playback begins to track down to the beginning of the previous track.

Press the seek switch (⏪) after a few seconds have elapsed to start playback from the beginning of the current track.

Press and hold the seek switch (⏪, ⏩) to continuously switch the tracks up or down.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

Aha™/Stitcher™ Radio

Press the seek switch (▶▶) to skip forward to the beginning of the next track.

Press and hold the seek switch (▶▶) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Like”.

Press and hold the seek switch (◀◀) to evaluate the playback of the current song as “Dislike”.

Pick up/hang up the Phone, or Activate Voice Control Using the Switch

Talk button

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

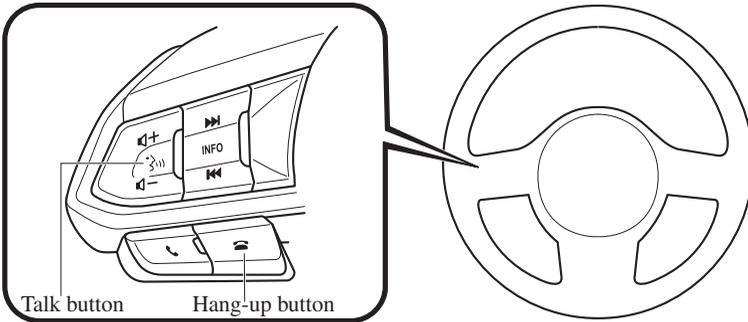
Pick-up button

Answers incoming calls. In addition, after selecting a contact or dialing a number, it places the call when the button is pressed.

Hang-up button

Ends the call or refuses an incoming call. In addition, it ends the voice recognition operation.

▼ Operation Using Voice Recognition Function



Talk button

Activates the voice recognition. In addition, it skips the voice guidance.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

Hang-up button

Ends the voice recognition operation.

Basic Operation Method

Activating Voice Recognition

Press the talk button.

Ending Voice Recognition

Use one of the following methods:

- Press the hang-up button.
- Say, “Cancel”.
- Operate the commander switch or the centre display (only when vehicle is stopped).

Skipping Voice Guidance (for faster operation)

Press and release the talk button.

Troubleshooting for Voice Recognition

If you do not understand an operation method while in the voice recognition mode, say “Tutorial” or “Help”.

Commands useable anytime during voice recognition

“Go Back” and “Cancel” are commands which can be used at anytime during voice recognition.

Returning to previous operation

To return to the previous operation, say, “Go Back” while in voice recognition mode.

Cancel

To put the Bluetooth® Hands-Free system in standby mode, say, “Cancel” while in voice recognition mode.

To prevent a deterioration in the voice recognition rate and voice quality, the following points should be observed:

- **The voice recognition cannot be performed while voice guidance or the beep sound is operating. Wait until the voice guidance or the beep sound is finished before saying a command.**
- Phone related commands are available only when a phone is connected via Bluetooth®. Make sure a phone is connected via Bluetooth® before you operate phone related voice commands.
- Music play commands, such as Play Artist and Play Album can be used only in USB audio mode.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

- Do not speak too slowly or loudly (no loud voice).
- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Dialects or different wording other than hands-free prompts cannot be recognised by voice recognition. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or be close to it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Close the windows and/or the sunroof to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle, or turn down the airflow of the air-conditioning system while Bluetooth® Hands-Free is being used.
- Make sure the vents are not directing air up towards the microphone.

Voice Command List

Voice command

When the talk button is pressed and the following command is spoken, the audio or navigation can be operated. The commands in the () can be omitted. The specified name and number are put into the {}.

Standard command

Voice command	Function
Help	Usable commands can be verified.
Tutorial	Basic voice commands and methods of use can be verified.
(Navigate/Take me/Drive) Home	Set the destination to Home.

Communication (phone) related command

Voice command	Function
Call {name in phonebook} (mobile/home/work/other) Example: "Call John Mobile"	Calls to the contact in the downloaded phonebook.
Redial	Calls to the last contact you called.
Callback	Calls to the last contact who called you.

Entertainment (audio) related command

Voice command	Function	Corresponding audio source
(Go to/Play) Bluetooth (Audio)	Switches the audio source to Bluetooth® audio. Can also switch to each audio source by similarly using commands such as FM, AM, or USB.	All
Play Artist {Artist name}	Plays the selected artist.	USB

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

Navigation related command

For the navigation screen voice commands, refer to the separate navigation system manual.

NOTE

- *Some commands cannot be used depending on the vehicle specifications.*
- *Some commands cannot be used depending on the device connection conditions and the use conditions.*
- *The commands indicated in this manual are some examples of usable voice commands. Some commands cannot be used depending on the vehicle specifications.*

▼ Appendix

Gracenote® Database

When a USB device or Bluetooth® device is connected to this unit and the audio is played, the album name, artist name, genre and title information are automatically displayed if there is a match in the vehicle's database compilation to the music being played. The information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote® music recognition service. This application or device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of Emeryville, California (“Gracenote”). The software from Gracenote (the “Gracenote Software”) enables this application to perform disc and/or file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information (“Gracenote Data”) from online servers or embedded databases (collectively, “Gracenote Servers”) and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End-User functions of this application or device.

You agree that you will use Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data to any third party. **YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.**

You agree that your non-exclusive license to use the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your license terminates, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide. You agree that Gracenote, Inc. may enforce its rights under this Agreement against you directly in its own name.

The Gracenote service uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow the Gracenote service to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page for the Gracenote Privacy Policy for the Gracenote service.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

The Gracenote Software and each item of Gracenote Data are licensed to you “AS IS.” Gracenote makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, regarding the accuracy of any Gracenote Data from in the Gracenote Servers. Gracenote reserves the right to delete data from the Gracenote Servers or to change data categories for any cause that Gracenote deems sufficient. No warranty is made that the Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers are error-free or that functioning of Gracenote Software or Gracenote Servers will be uninterrupted. Gracenote is not obligated to provide you with new enhanced or additional data types or categories that Gracenote may provide in the future and is free to discontinue its services at any time.

GRACENOTE DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. GRACENOTE DOES NOT WARRANT THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES.

© Gracenote, Inc. 2009

Updating the database

The Gracenote® media database can be updated using USB device.

1. Connect a USB device containing the software for updating Gracenote®.
2. Select the  icon on the home screen to display the Settings screen.
3. Select the **System** tab and select **Music Database Update**.
4. Select **Search**. The list of the update package stored in the USB device and the version are displayed.
5. Select the package to use the update.
6. Select **Install**.

NOTE

Gracenote® can be downloaded from the Mazda Hands-free Website.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay allows you to make calls, send or receive messages, and listen to music using your iPhone with the vehicle's audio system, or search for destinations using the maps. In addition, voice recognition operation is possible using Siri.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]



- YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY (“THE APPLICATION”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.
- TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.
- *When using Apple CarPlay, please avoid distraction and use Apple CarPlay responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.*

NOTE

- *Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and its use is subject to your agreement to the Apple CarPlay terms of use, which are included as part of the Apple iOS terms of use.*
- *When using Apple CarPlay, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your iPhone. For further details, refer to Apple’s Privacy Policy.*

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

Android Auto™

Android Auto™ is an application which allows the operation of an Android™ Smartphone using the vehicle's audio. Android Auto™ functions such as the phone, messages, music, and map can be used with the vehicle's audio system.

CAUTION

- *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF ANDROID AUTO™ (“THE APPLICATION”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY GOOGLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.*
- TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.*
- *When using Android Auto™, please avoid distraction and use Android Auto™ responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.*

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

NOTE

- *Android Auto™ is provided by Google and its use is subject to your agreement to the Android Auto™ terms of use.*
- *When using Android Auto™, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your smart phone. For further details, refer to Google's Privacy Policy.*

Trademark

- Aha™, the Aha™ logo, and the Aha™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Harman International Industries, Inc., used with permission.
- Stitcher™, the Stitcher™ logo, and the Stitcher™ trade dress are trademarks or registered trademarks of Stitcher, Inc., used with permission.
- iPhone, iPod touch, iPod nano, Siri and Apple Music are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Apple CarPlay is trademarks of Apple Inc.
- iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- “Made for iPhone” and “Made for iPod” mean that an accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone or iPod, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
Please note that the use of this accessory with iPhone or iPod may affect wireless performance.

Made for
iPhone 7 Plus
iPhone 7
iPhone SE
iPhone 6s Plus
iPhone 6s
iPhone 6 Plus
iPhone 6
iPhone 5s
iPhone 5c
iPhone 5
iPhone 4s
iPod touch (6th generation)
iPod touch (5th generation)

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type A]

iPod nano (7th generation)



- Google, Android, Android Auto and other related marks are trademarks of Google LLC.
- AudioPilot is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- Centerpoint is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- Windows Media and Microsoft are registered trademarks of Microsoft Corporation U.S. in the United States and other countries.

This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft Corporation and third parties.

Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft or an authorised Microsoft subsidiary and third parties.

- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Corporation is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



- SDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.



- Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype are either a registered trademark or a trademark of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.



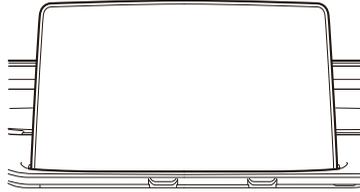
Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

What is Mazda Connect ?

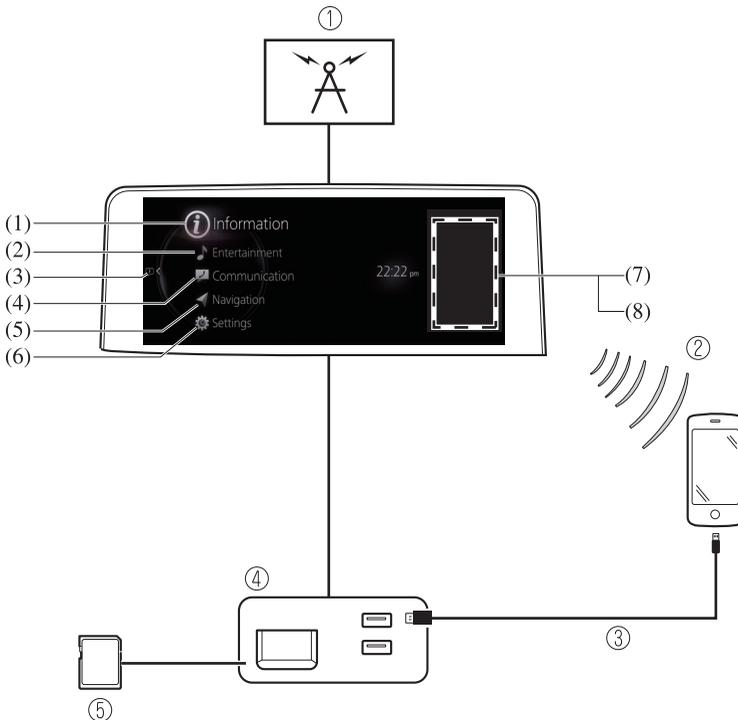
▼ What is Mazda Connect ?

For vehicles with the following display type, refer to the following page because your vehicle is equipped with Mazda Connect (Type A).

Refer to What is Mazda Connect ? on page 5-14.



This manual only indicates a part of the information for Mazda Connect. For details, check the Web owner's manual at the Mazda site for each country.



Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

2. Bluetooth® Audio/Hands-Free Call/SMS (Short Message Service)
3. USB Audio/USB Video
4. USB port*1/SD card slot*2
5. SD card (Navigation system)

*1 The position and the type of the USB port differ depending on the specification.

*2 The SD card slot is for the navigation system only. For vehicles with the navigation system, the SD card (Mazda genuine) with stored map data is inserted into the SD card slot.

No.	Menu	Explanation
(1)	Information	<p><u>Fuel Efficiency Monitor:</u> Monitor fuel efficiency in real time and view fuel efficiency history.</p> <p><u>Vehicle Status Monitor:</u> View important vehicle maintenance messages, information, and intervals.</p>
(2)	Entertainment	FM AM DAB Bluetooth USB1 Audio/USB2 Audio USB1 Video/USB2 Video Audio Off
(3)	Notifications	Displays text messages received by the mobile device paired to Mazda Connect and notifications from the vehicle. The number of notifications is displayed, and if they exceed 100, 99+ is displayed. If a serious problem occurs, the background colour changes to amber or red.
(4)	Communication	By connecting your mobile device, such as a Smartphone, to Mazda Connect via Bluetooth®, you can use the hands-free call and short message functions.
(5)	Navigation	<p>The navigation system can be used when the SD card for the navigation system is inserted.</p> <p>If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. The compass may not indicate the correct bearing when the vehicle is stopped or travelling at a slow speed.</p> <p>For the navigation system operation, refer to the navigation system manual.</p>

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

No.	Menu	Explanation
(6)	Settings	<p>You can change the settings for the Mazda Connect screen, sound settings, and the vehicle functions.</p> <p><u>In-Vehicle Displays:</u> Configures settings and content for all in-vehicle displays.</p> <p><u>Sound Settings:</u> Configures the in-vehicle listening experience.</p> <p><u>Safety Settings:</u> Configures safety and driver assistance features.</p> <p><u>Vehicle Settings:</u> Configures vehicle convenience features.</p> <p><u>Connectivity Settings:</u> Configures Bluetooth and other device connectivity settings.</p> <p><u>System Settings:</u> Configures language, time, and other general settings.</p>
(7)	Apple CarPlay	You can use Apple CarPlay by connecting an iPhone compatible with Apple CarPlay.
(8)	Android Auto	You can use Android Auto™ by connecting an Android™ Smartphone compatible with Android Auto™.

WARNING

Always adjust Mazda Connect while the vehicle is stopped:

Do not adjust Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle.

Adjusting Mazda Connect with the Commander switch while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident.

Even if the audio remote control switches are equipped on the steering wheel, learn to use the switches without looking down at them so that you can keep your maximum attention on the road while driving the vehicle.

Do not allow the connection plug cord to get tangled with the selector lever:

Allowing the plug cord to become tangled with the selector lever is dangerous as it could interfere with driving, resulting in an accident.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

Do not adjust a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle:

Adjusting a mobile device or a similar product while driving the vehicle is dangerous as it could distract your attention from the vehicle operation which could lead to a serious accident. Always adjust a mobile device or a similar product while the vehicle is stopped.



For the purposes of safe driving, adjust the audio volume to a level that allows you to hear sounds outside of the vehicle including car horns and particularly emergency vehicle sirens.

NOTE

- Do not use Mazda Connect for a long time with the engine stopped. Otherwise, the battery power could be depleted.*
- If a mobile phone or CB radio is used in or near the vehicle, it could cause noise to occur from the audio system. However, this does not indicate a problem.*

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

Mazda Connect Basic Operations

▼ Mazda Connect Basic Operations

NOTE

The explanation of functions described in this manual may differ from the actual operation, and the shapes of screens and buttons and the letters and characters displayed may also differ from the actual appearance.

Additionally, depending on future software updates, the content may successively change without notice.

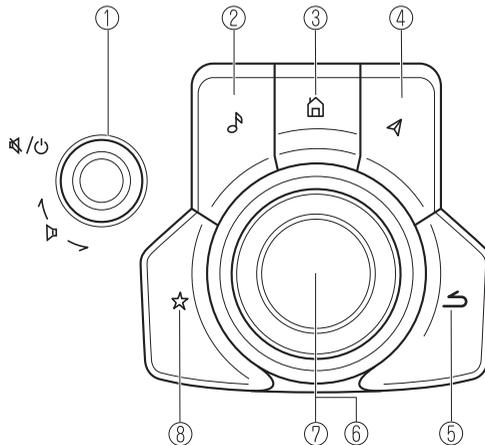
▼ Commander Switch Operation

The commander switch can be used to switch to each function and to operate each function. Set the palm of your hand on the commander knob so that your fingers can touch each of the switches.

You can switch the screens without having to look down at your hand.

NOTE

For safety reasons, some operations are disabled while driving the vehicle.



Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

The shape of the switches varies depending on the vehicle specifications.

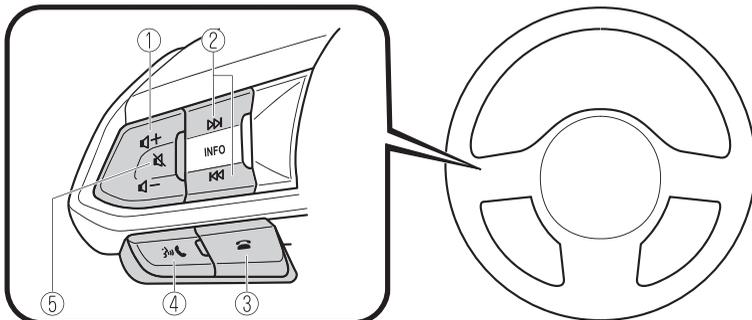
No.	Item	Explanation
1		<p><u>Volume knob:</u></p> <p>Volume adjustment</p> <p>Adjust the volume by turning the volume knob. If you adjust the volume during voice guidance, the volume of the voice guidance will change. If you adjust the volume during a hands-free call, the conversation volume will change. Press the volume knob to mute/pause the audio. Press the knob again to resume.</p> <p>Power off/on</p> <p>Press and hold to turn off the Mazda Connect power and turn off the screen. Press again to turn on the Mazda Connect power.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If you press the volume knob to mute an audio source which can be paused, such as Apple CarPlay, USB audio, or Bluetooth® audio, while it is playing, the song playback pauses. Press the volume knob again to cancel the mute and the pause at the same time. • When the Mazda Connect power is turned off and the commander switch is pressed, the Mazda Connect power turns on.
2		<p><u>Entertainment button:</u></p> <p>The audio source screen last used is displayed.</p> <p>(During Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ music playback) Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ now playing screen.</p>
3		<p><u>Home button:</u></p> <p>Displays the home screen.</p> <p>(While Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ is displayed) Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ home screen.</p> <p>(While Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ is connected) Press and hold while the Mazda Connect screen is displayed to switch the screen from Mazda Connect to Apple CarPlay or Mazda Connect to Android Auto™. In addition, press and hold while the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ screen is displayed to switch to the Mazda Connect screen.</p>

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

No.	Item	Explanation
4		<p>Map button:</p> <p>Displays the navigation screen. In order for the navigation system to function, the SD card for the navigation system is required. If the SD card for the navigation system is not inserted, the compass indicating the direction in which the vehicle is moving is displayed. For the navigation system operation, refer to the navigation system manual.</p> <p>(During Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ route guidance) Displays the Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ map screen.</p> <p>NOTE <i>With an active Mazda Navigation route, pressing the Map button will repeat the navigation voice guidance.</i></p>
5		<p>Back button:</p> <p>Returns to previous screen.</p>
6		<p>Commander knob (selection):</p> <p>Rotate or slide the commander knob to highlight/select the on-screen functions you want to use.</p>
7		<p>Commander knob (select):</p> <p>Depress the commander knob to select the desired on-screen function you want to use.</p>
8		<p>Favourites button:</p> <p>Displays the favourites screen. Press and hold to register AM/FM stations, contacts, navigation destinations, or any highlighted menu items to create easily accessible shortcuts.</p>

▼ Audio Remote Control Switch Operation

The audio remote control switch is on the left side of the steering wheel. You can operate basic audio functions, pick up/hang up the phone, or activate voice control using the switch.



Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

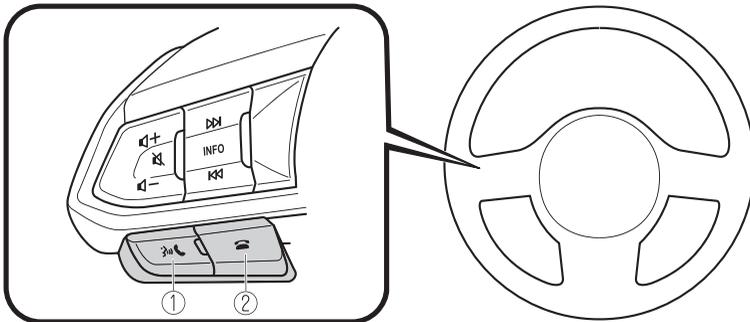
The shape of the switches may differ depending on the vehicle specifications.

No.	Item	Explanation
1		<p><u>Volume adjustment button:</u></p> <p>Press the (+) or (-) button to adjust the volume.</p> <p>If you adjust the volume during voice guidance, the volume of the voice guidance will change.</p> <p>If you adjust the volume during a hands-free call, the conversation volume will change.</p>
2	 <p>(SEEK UP)</p> <p>(SEEK DOWN)</p>	<p><u>Seek Switch:</u></p> <p>Selecting a radio station</p> <p>(FM/AM radio) Radio stations saved to your Favourites can be selected by pressing the seek switch while listening to FM/AM radio. The station will change to the previous or next favourite station each time you press the seek switch. If you want to manually tune to the next available station before or after the currently selected station, press and hold the seek switch until it beeps and the tuner will select the next available station.</p> <p>(DAB radio) You can call up radio stations registered to your Favourites by pressing the seek switch while listening to DAB radio. The radio station changes each time you press the seek switch.</p> <p>In addition, if you press and hold the seek switch until you hear a beep, the service switches to the next or previous service. If there is no next or previous service in the selected Ensemble, Ensemble switches.</p> <p>Playback Control</p> <p>Music and video files can be cued when listening to stored content via USB, Bluetooth®, and audio or video.</p> <p>Slide the volume knob right to skip to the next track or slide it to the left to go back to the previous track. You can also slide and hold the volume knob to fast forward or rewind the track.</p>
3		<p><u>Hang-up button:</u></p> <p>(During a call) Press the button to end the call.</p> <p>(While receiving a call) Press the button to refuse a call.</p>
4		<p><u>Talk/Pick-up button:</u></p> <p>(While receiving a call) Press the button to answer the call.</p>

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

No.	Item	Explanation
5		<p><u>Mute button:</u> Press the button to mute. Press it again to cancel the mute.</p> <p><i>NOTE</i> <i>If you press the mute button to mute an audio source which can be paused, such as Apple CarPlay, USB audio, or Bluetooth® audio, while it is playing, the song playback pauses. Press the mute button again to cancel the mute and the pause at the same time.</i></p>

▼ Operation Using Voice Recognition Function



The shape of the switches may differ depending on the vehicle specifications.

No.	Item	Explanation
1		<p><u>Talk/Pick-up button:</u> When the button is pressed, the voice recognition top screen is displayed and the voice recognition is activated.</p> <p><i>(While voice guidance is being announced)</i> Press the button to skip the voice guidance.</p>
2		<p><u>Hang-up button:</u> Press the button to end the voice recognition.</p>

Voice recognition activation

When the talk/pick-up button on the audio remote control switch is pressed, top screen of the voice recognition will be displayed.

NOTE

When an Apple CarPlay or Android Auto™ compatible device is connected, the Mazda Connect voice recognition system is disabled to allow the use of Siri or Android Auto™ voice recognition at any time with the talk/pick-up button.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

Commands usable at any time

“Help” - Can be used to check for usable voice commands.

“Back” - Returns to the previous screen. When a voice command is spoken while on the telephone number input screen, the content that was previously input is deleted.

“Cancel”- The voice recognition is ended.

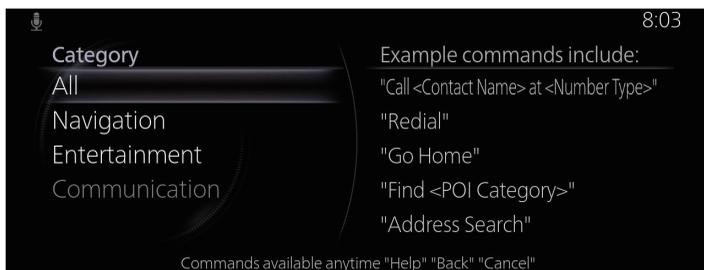
Ending voice recognition

Do any one of the following operations:

- Press the hang-up button.
- Press and hold the talk/Pick-up button.
- Say the word, “Cancel”.

Convenient operating tips for using the voice recognition function

Examples of effective voice commands in various categories are displayed on the voice recognition screen.



NOTE

- The voice command examples shown in this manual are only a partial list of the available commands. Some commands may be unusable depending on the vehicle specifications.
- Some commands cannot be used depending on the device connection conditions and the use conditions.
- When the Barge-In setting is on, voice commands can be made even while the voice guidance is being announced. For details on Barge-In, refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.
- For details on voice commands which can be used on the navigation screen, refer to the navigation system manual.

To prevent misunderstood voice commands, be aware of the following points:

- Connect your mobile phone to Bluetooth® before operating the mobile phone using voice recognition.
- After pressing the talk/pick-up button, wait for the beep before speaking a command.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

- Speaking in a slightly louder voice will improve voice recognition, but an excessively loud voice is unnecessary. Try to speak in a slightly louder voice than when talking to other passengers in the vehicle.
- You do not need to speak slowly. Speak at a normal speed.
- When calling a person in the device's phonebook, the recognition rate increases the longer the name is. Errors may occur with names that are short such as “Mama”, “Home”, or “wife”.
- Speak clearly, without pausing between words or numbers.
- Voice commands other than those specified, cannot be recognised. Speak in the wording specified by the voice commands.
- It is not necessary to face the microphone or be near it. Speak the voice commands while maintaining a safe driving position.
- Close the windows and the sunroof* to reduce loud noises from outside the vehicle and to prevent the airflow of the air-conditioning system from being a disturbance when using Bluetooth® Hands-Free.
- Make sure that the air flow from the air conditioner is not blowing on the microphone.
- If the voice recognition is poor with the guidance volume set to high, set the Barge-In to OFF.

Examples of available voice commands

The specified name and number are put into the {}.

Common

- Back
- Help (You can listen to help guidance at each screen.)
- {Line Number} (You can select the line number on the screen.)
- Next Page
- Previous Page
- Cancel

Menu

- All
- Navigation
- Entertainment
- Communication

Setting

- Voice Recognition Settings
- Display Off

Music

- Play Artist (You can also use “Play Artist {Artist name}”).)

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

- Play Album (You can also use “Play Album {Album Name}”.)
- Play Playlist (You can also use “Play Playlist {Playlist Name}”.)
- Play Song (You can also use “Play Song {Song Name}”.)
- Play Audiobook (You can also use “Play Audiobook {Audiobook Name}”.)
- Play Podcast (You can also use “Play Podcast {Podcast Name}”.)

Radio

- Tune to {Frequency} AM
- Tune to {Frequency} FM
- Tune to {AM Station Name}
- Tune to {FM Station Name}
- Tune to DAB {DAB Station Name}

Source

- Change Source (You can also use “Change Source to USB”^{*1} and “USB”^{*1}.)
- Audio OFF (You can also use “Change Source to Audio OFF”.)

Phone

- Dial Phone Number (You can also use “Dial {Phone Number}”.)
- Call History
- Call a Contact (You can also use “Call {Contact Name}” and “Call {Contact Name} at {Number Type}”.)
- Redial

*1 : Audio source names other than “USB” can also be used as follows:

Bluetooth/AM/FM/DAB/USB 1 Audio/USB 2 Audio/USB 1 Video/USB 2 Video

▼ Appendix

Gracenote® Database

When connecting a USB audio device or Bluetooth® audio device to this unit and playing audio, the unit searches the database stored in the vehicle for the album art. If there is a match in the vehicle's database compilation to the music being played, the album art is displayed. The database information stored in this device uses database information in the Gracenote® music recognitions service.



For information related to the most recent Gracenote® database which can be used and how to install it, go to the Mazda Hands Free Website:

<http://www.mazdahandsfree.com>

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

Apple CarPlay



- YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY (“THE APPLICATION”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE”, WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS.
- AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC.
- IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE. TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.
- When using Apple CarPlay, please avoid distraction and use Apple CarPlay responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

NOTE

- *Apple CarPlay is provided by Apple and its use is subject to your agreement to the Apple CarPlay terms of use, which are included as part of the Apple iOS terms of use.*
- *When using Apple CarPlay, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your iPhone. For further details, refer to Apple's Privacy Policy.*

Android Auto™



- *YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF ANDROID AUTO™ (“THE APPLICATION”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND MAZDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATION AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NONINFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, MAZDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATION, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY GOOGLE, ITS AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; MAZDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATION OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC.*

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE. TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL MAZDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATION OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATION OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATION.

- *When using Android Auto™, please avoid distraction and use Android Auto™ responsibly. Stay fully aware of driving conditions and always obey applicable laws.*

NOTE

- *Android Auto™ is provided by Google and its use is subject to your agreement to the Android Auto™ terms of use.*
- *When using Android Auto™, location, speed, and other vehicle data is transferred to your smart phone. For further details, refer to Google Privacy Policy.*

Trademark

- iPhone, iPod touch, iPod nano, Siri and Lightning are trademarks of Apple Inc., registered in the U.S. and other countries.
- Apple CarPlay is a trademark of Apple Inc.
- Use of the Apple CarPlay logo means that a vehicle user interface meets Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this vehicle or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards. Please note that the use of this product with iPhone, iPod may affect wireless performance.
- iOS is a trademark or registered trademark of Cisco in the U.S. and other countries and is used under license.
- “Made for iPhone” and “Made for iPod” mean that an accessory has been designed to connect specifically to iPhone or iPod, and has been certified by the developer to meet Apple performance standards. Apple is not responsible for the operation of this device or its compliance with safety and regulatory standards.
Please note that the use of this accessory with iPhone or iPod may affect wireless performance.

Made for
iPhone 11 Pro Max
iPhone 11 Pro
iPhone 11

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

iPhone XS Max
iPhone XS
iPhone XR
iPhone X
iPhone 8 Plus
iPhone 8
iPhone 7 Plus
iPhone 7
iPhone SE
iPhone 6s Plus
iPhone 6s
iPhone 6 Plus
iPhone 6
iPhone 5s
iPod touch (7th generation)
iPod touch (6th generation)



- Google, Android, Android Auto and other related marks are trademarks of Google LLC.
- AudioPilot is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- Centerpoint is a registered trademark of Bose Corporation.
- This product is protected by certain intellectual property rights of Microsoft. Use or distribution of such technology outside of this product is prohibited without a license from Microsoft.
- This product is licensed under the MPEG-4 patent portfolio license, AVC patent portfolio license and VC-1 patent portfolio license for the personal use of a consumer or other uses in which it does not receive remuneration to (i) encode video in compliance with the MPEG-4 Visual Standard, AVC Standard and VC-1 Standard (“MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video”) and (ii) decode MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video that was encoded by a consumer engaged in a personal activity and/or was obtained from a video provider licensed to provide MPEG-4/AVC/VC-1 Video. No license is granted or shall be implied for any other use.

Additional information may be obtained from MPEG LA, L.L.C. See <http://www.mpegla.com>.

Mazda Connect [Mazda Connect Type B]

- The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Panasonic Corporation is under license. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.



- SDHC Logo is a trademark of SD-3C, LLC.



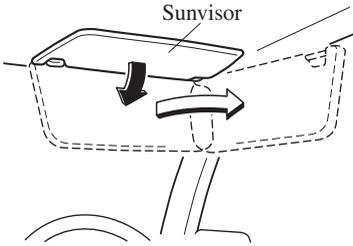
- Gracenote, the Gracenote logo and logotype, "Powered by Gracenote" and Gracenote MusicID are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Gracenote, Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.



Interior Equipment

Sunvisors

When you need a sunvisor, lower it for use in front or swing it to the side.

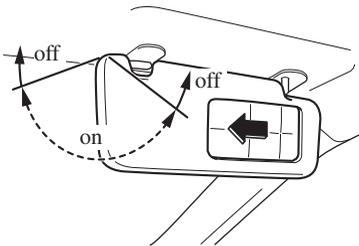


▼ Vanity Mirrors

To use the vanity mirror, lower the sunvisor.

The vanity mirror light will illuminate when you open the cover.

To prevent the lead-acid battery from being discharged, the vanity mirror will only illuminate in the tilt range shown in the figure.



Interior Lights

NOTE

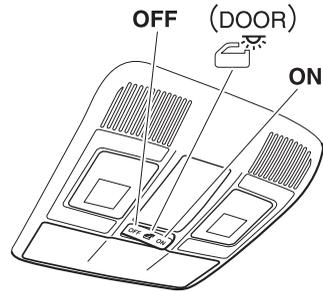
- Do not leave the lights on for long periods while the engine is turned off. Otherwise the battery power could be depleted.

Overhead Lights

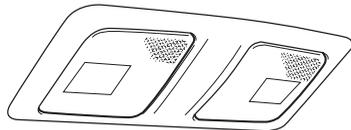
Type A

Switch Position	Overhead Lights
OFF	Light off
DOOR	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> · Light is on when any door is open · Light is on or off when the illuminated entry system is on
ON	Light on

Front

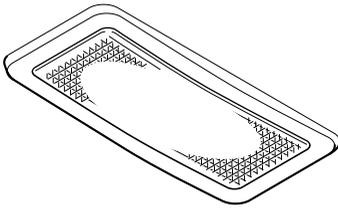


Centre



Interior Equipment

Rear



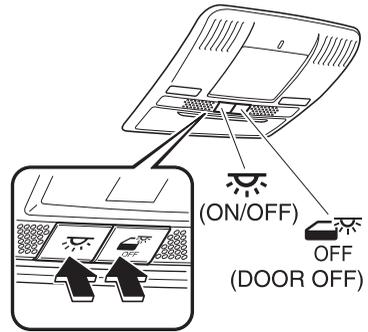
NOTE

The rear overhead light and the centre map lights also turn on and off when the front overhead light switch is operated.

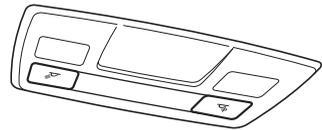
Type B

Switch	Overhead Lights
 (DOOR OFF)	The DOOR OFF switch can be switched between the DOOR position and DOOR OFF position. <p>DOOR position</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The lights turn on when any of the doors is opened. The lights turn on/off in conjunction with the illuminated entry system. <p>DOOR OFF position</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> The lights do not turn on even if any of the doors is opened. The lights do not turn on/off in conjunction with the illuminated entry system.
 (ON/OFF)	Press the switch to turn it on. Press the switch again to turn off the lights.

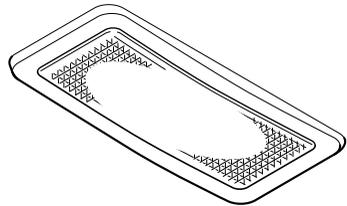
Front



Centre



Rear

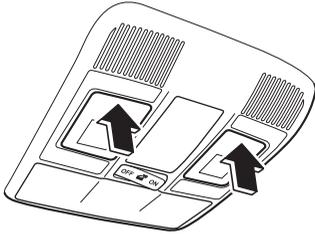


Interior Equipment

Front Map Lights

Type A

When the overhead light switch is in the door or off position, press the lens to illuminate the front map lights, and then press the lens again to turn them off.



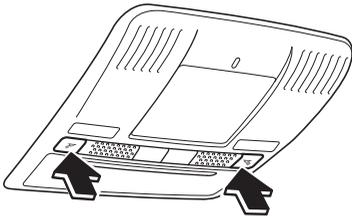
NOTE

The front map lights will not turn off even if the lens is pressed in the following cases:

- The overhead light switch is in the ON position.
- The overhead light switch is in the door position with the door open.
- The illuminated entry system is on.

Type B

Press the switch to illuminate the front map lights, and then press the switch again to turn them off.



NOTE

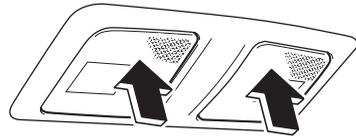
The front map lights will not turn off even if the switch is pressed in the following cases:

- The overhead lights turn on by operating the overhead ON/OFF switch (☞).
- The overhead lights turn on in conjunction with a door opening/closing.
- The illuminated entry system is on.

Centre Map Lights

Type A

When the overhead light switch is in the door or off position, press the lens to illuminate a centre map light, and then press the lens again to turn it off.



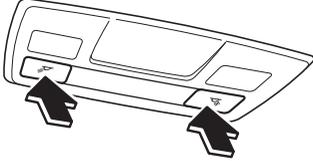
NOTE

- Once the centre map lights have been turned off, they will turn on and off depending on the position to which the overhead light is switched.
- The centre map lights will not turn off even if the lens is pressed in the following cases:
 - The overhead light switch is ON.
 - The overhead light switch is in the door position with the door open.
 - The illuminated entry system is on.

Interior Equipment

Type B

Press the switch to illuminate the centre map lights, and then press the switch again to turn them off.

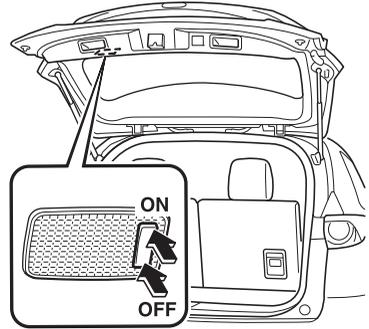


NOTE

- Once the centre map lights have been turned off, they will turn on and off in conjunction with the overhead light operation.
- The centre map lights will not turn off even if the switch is pressed in the following cases:
 - The overhead lights turn on by operating the overhead ON/OFF switch (☀️).

- The overhead lights turn on in conjunction with a door opening/closing.
- The illuminated entry system is on.

Luggage Compartment Lights

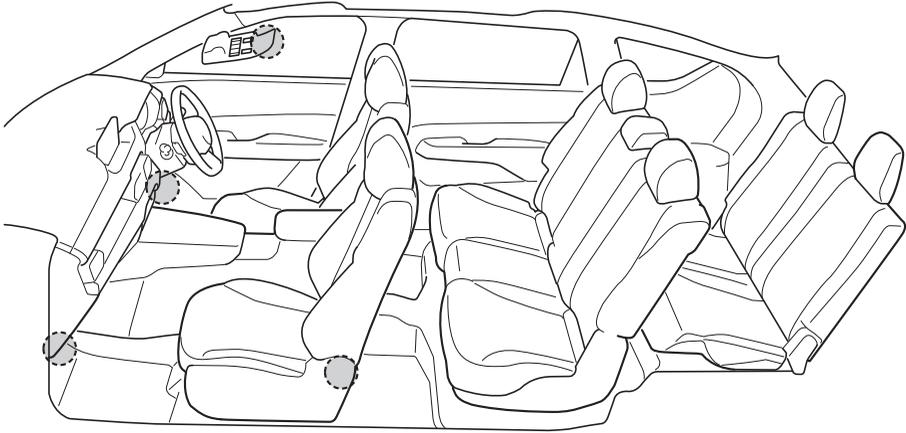


Switch Position	Luggage Compartment Light
OFF	Light off
ON	Light on when the liftgate is open

Interior Equipment

Ambient Light*

The ambient lights continuously turn on when the ignition is switched ON.
The ambient lights dim when the position lights or headlights are turned on.



 Ambient light

NOTE

- The ambient lights turn on or off in conjunction with the illuminated entry system when the ignition is switched OFF.
 - The ambient light illumination level can be changed while the position lights or headlights are turned on.
- Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

▼ Illuminated Entry System

The overhead lights turn on when any of the following operations is done with the overhead light switch in the DOOR position.

The ambient light turns on regardless of the overhead light switch position.

- The driver's door is unlocked with the ignition is switched OFF.
- The ignition is switched OFF with all doors closed.

NOTE

- The illumination time differs depending on the operation.
 - **Lead-acid battery saver**
If an interior light is left on with the ignition switched OFF, the light turns off automatically after a certain period of time has passed to prevent lead-acid battery depletion.
 - The operation of the illuminated entry system can be changed.
- Refer to the Settings section in the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual.

· **(Type B)**

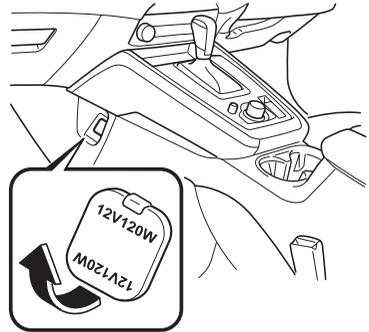
The illumination entry system does not operate in conjunction with the overhead lights when the overhead lights are turned on using the overhead light ON/OFF switch.

Accessory Sockets

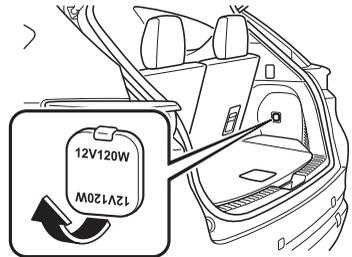
Only use genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent requiring no greater than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).

The ignition must be switched to ACC or ON.

Front



Rear



CAUTION

- To prevent accessory socket damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:
 - Do not use accessories that require more than 120 W (DC 12 V, 10 A).
 - Do not use accessories that are not genuine Mazda accessories or the equivalent.

Interior Equipment

- Close the cover when the accessory socket is not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the accessory socket.
- Correctly insert the plug into the accessory socket.
- Do not insert the cigarette lighter into the accessory socket.
- Noise may occur on the audio playback depending on the device connected to the accessory socket.
- Depending on the device connected to the accessory socket, the vehicle's electrical system may be affected, which could cause the warning light to illuminate. Disconnect the connected device and make sure that the problem is resolved. If the problem is resolved, disconnect the device from the socket and switch the ignition off. If the problem is not resolved, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

NOTE

To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the socket for long periods with the engine off or idling.

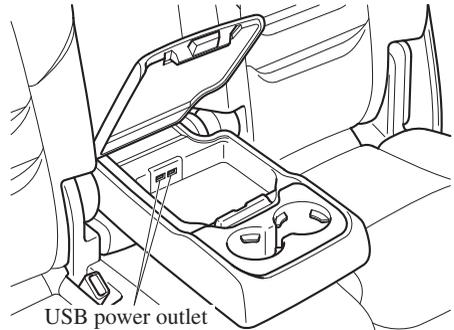
USB Power Outlet*

Second-row seat

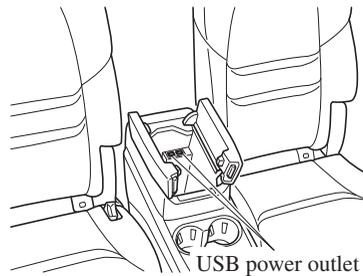
The USB power outlets can be used regardless of whether the ignition is switched to ACC or ON.

Only use USB devices that have a maximum power consumption of 10.5W (DC5V, 2.1A) or below.

6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type



Captain seat and second-row seat console type



⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent USB power outlets damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:

- Do not use USB devices that require more than 10.5 W (DC 5 V, 2.1 A).
- Close the lid when the USB power outlets are not in use to prevent foreign objects and liquids from getting into the USB power outlets.
- Correctly connect the USB connector into the USB power outlets.

NOTE

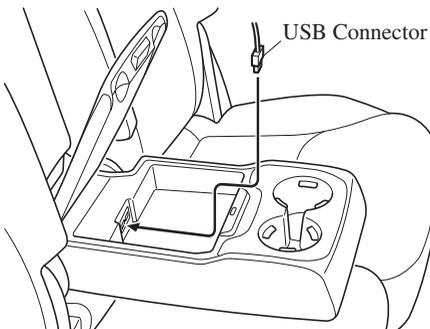
- The USB power outlets are designed only for charging and they cannot be used for connecting to the vehicle's audio system.
- To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the USB power outlets for long periods with the engine off or idling.

How to connect

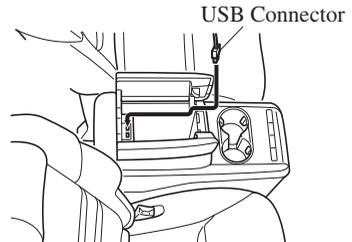
The groove in the armrest box can be used to pass the cord of the device into the box to connect it to the USB power outlets.

1. Open the lid.
2. Route the cord through the groove in the armrest box and insert the USB connector into the USB power outlets.

6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type



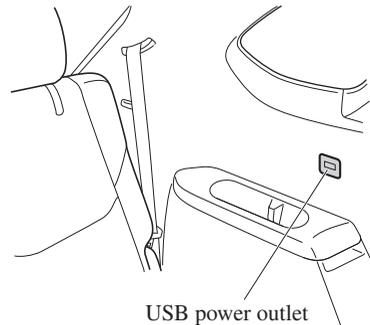
Captain seat and second-row seat console type



Third-row seat

The USB power outlets can be used regardless of whether the ignition is switched to ACC or ON.

Only use USB devices that have a maximum power consumption of 12.5W (DC5V, 2.5A) or below.



⚠ CAUTION

To prevent USB power outlets damage or electrical failure, pay attention to the following:

- Do not use USB devices that require more than 12.5 W (DC 5 V, 2.5 A).
- Correctly connect the USB connector into the USB power outlets.

Interior Equipment

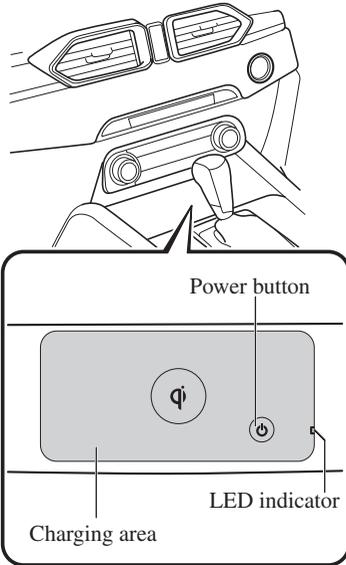
NOTE

- The USB power outlets are designed only for charging and they cannot be used for connecting to the vehicle's audio system.
- To prevent discharging of the battery, do not use the USB power outlets for long periods with the engine off or idling.

Wireless Charger (Qi)*

You can charge mobile devices such as Smartphones which comply with the Qi Wireless Charging standard.

Only use mobile devices that have a maximum power consumption of 5 W, or 15 W or below. The maximum power consumption differs depending on the mobile device.



WARNING

Radio waves from the Wireless Charger (Qi) may affect the operation of medical devices such as implanted-type cardiac pacemakers or defibrillators.

- Before using the Wireless Charger (Qi) near people who use medical devices, ask the medical device manufacturer or your physician if radio waves from the Wireless Charger (Qi) will affect the device.
- The Wireless Charger (Qi) can be disabled to prevent it from affecting medical devices. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.

Heed the following cautions. Otherwise, the Wireless Charger (Qi) may malfunction or be damaged, which could cause a fire, burns due to heat generation, or an accident such as electrical shock.

- Do not install, remove, disassemble, or change the wiring of the Wireless Charger (Qi). If the Wireless Charger (Qi) needs to be installed or removed, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
- Do not use the Wireless Charger (Qi) when it is malfunctioning. In addition, if smoke, abnormal noise, or abnormal smell is emitted from the Wireless Charger (Qi), stop the vehicle in a safe place, switch the ignition OFF, and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

- When using the Wireless Charger (Qi) to store items on, turn off the Wireless Charger (Qi).
- Do not place any metal object between the charging area and the mobile device. Also, do not apply items such as a metallic sticker to the Wireless Charger (Qi).
- When charging, do not place any item other than the mobile device to be charged on the Wireless Charger (Qi). In addition, do not place any metal object, IC card, coin, or magnetic item near the charging area.
- Remove dust or dirt from the charging area before use.
- Do not apply strong force or impact to the Wireless Charger (Qi) or get it wet.
- Use only mobile devices which support the Wireless Charger (Qi).

How to use

1. Start the engine.
2. The power for the Wireless Charger (Qi) turns on and the LED indicator turns on.
 - The power can be turned on/off by pressing the power button on the Wireless Charger (Qi) for about 3 seconds.
 - When the power is turned off, the LED indicator turns off.
3. Place a device compliant with the Qi Wireless Charging standard in the centre of the charging area on the tray.
 - The LED indicator turns on in amber or green when charging starts.

Interior Equipment

- For details on the LED indicator, refer to the following LED indicator table.
- Charging starts when all the doors and liftgate are closed.
- The function to reduce noise on the radio operates if the power button is pressed for about 1 second during charging. Use it when noise occurs on the radio due to interference by the Wireless Charger (Qi). Press the power button again for about 1 second to cancel the function.

LED indicator

The status of the Wireless Charger (Qi) can be checked using the LED indicator.

Status	Illumination/flash pattern
OFF	Does not turn on
Stand-by (charging is possible)	Turns on in white
Normal charging	Turns on in amber
Fast charging*1	Turns on in green
Normal charging (charging efficiency is low)	Flashes in amber
Fast charging*1 (charging efficiency is low)	Flashes in green
Stand-by (charging is not possible)	Flashes in white
Charging is stopped due to high temperature or foreign matter detected	Flashes in red
Charging is stopped due to internal problem or malfunction	Turns on in red

*1 Some mobile devices can switch between normal charging and fast charging.

CAUTION

- *While a mobile device is placed on the charging area, keep the vehicle key away from the Wireless Charger (Qi). The vehicle key may not be detected due to radio wave interference by the Wireless Charger (Qi).*
- *Charging may not operate normally under the following conditions:*
 - *The mobile device is fully charged.*
 - *There is foreign matter between the mobile device and the charging area.*
 - *The temperature of the mobile device is high.*
 - *The mobile device is placed with the charging side facing upward.*
 - *The mobile device is placed in a position extremely deviating from the centre of the charging area.*
 - *Your vehicle is in an area where strong radio waves or electrical noise occur such as near a television tower, power plant, or airport.*
 - *The Near Field Communication (NFC) function setting of the mobile device is on (depends on the model of the mobile device).*
- *Keep the following items away from the charging area. Otherwise the data stored on the mobile device could be erased or the device could malfunction.*
 - *Magnetic items such as magnets, magnetic cards, and magnetic recording media.*
 - *High precision devices such as wristwatches.*

- Before using the Wireless Charger (Qi), make sure to back up the data stored on the mobile device. The data on the mobile device could be deleted.
- Do not wipe the Wireless Charger (Qi) using oil, alcohol, or thinner, or spray hairspray or insecticide onto it. Otherwise, it could cause damage or cracking.
- Do not leave mobile devices in the cabin. The temperature inside the cabin may become very hot, causing the devices to malfunction.

NOTE

- A mobile device larger than the charging area cannot be charged. In addition, even if the mobile device is in the charging area, the charging efficiency may decrease or charging may not be possible depending on where the mobile device is placed.
- If the function to reduce noise on the radio is used, fast charging may be disabled depending on the mobile device being charged.
- If the LED indicator is flashing in amber or green, the charging efficiency is low. Check that there is no foreign matter between the mobile device and the charging area, and position the mobile device near the centre of the charging area.
- Depending on the mobile device case or accessories used, the mobile device may not charge, or the charging efficiency may be reduced resulting in a longer charging time. If charging does not start even when a mobile device is placed on the charging area, remove the mobile device case or any accessories.
- While the keyless entry is operating, charging may stop temporarily, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- During charging, the Wireless Charger (Qi) and the mobile device become warm, however, this does not indicate a problem.
- If the mobile device temperature rises during charging, charging may stop due to the protection function of the device. If that happens, wait until the mobile device cools down sufficiently and then recharge it.
- When using the Wireless Charger (Qi), applications using the Near Field Communication (NFC) function may activate, but this does not indicate a problem with the Wireless Charger (Qi).
- While i-stop is operating, charge amount may be temporarily restricted and charging may be temporarily cancelled, however, this does not indicate a problem.

Interior Equipment

Trademarks

“Qi” and the Qi symbol are trademarks or registered trademarks of the Wireless Power Consortium (WPC).



Cup Holder

WARNING

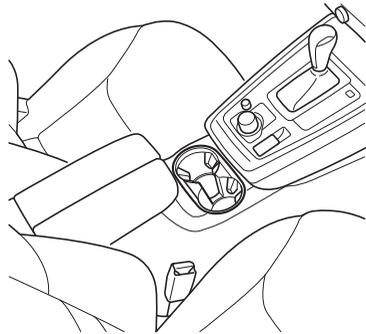
Never use a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving:

Using a cup holder to hold hot liquids while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. If the contents spill, you could be scalded.

Do not put anything other than cups or drink cans in cup holders:

Putting objects other than cups or drink cans in a cup holder is dangerous. During sudden braking or manoeuvring, occupants could be hit and injured, or objects could be thrown around the vehicle, causing interference with the driver and the possibility of an accident. Only use a cup holder for cups or drink cans.

▼ Front



▼ Rear

Second-row seat

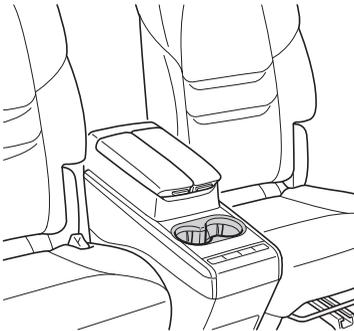
Cup holders are located in the armrest/second-row seat console.

Interior Equipment

6:4 split adjustable-type bench seat type

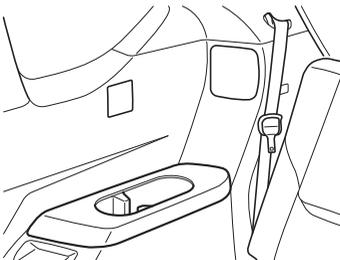


Captain seat and second-row seat console type



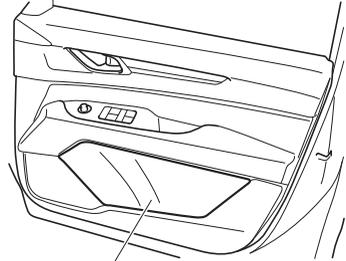
Third-row seat

Cup holders are located in the third-row seat side trims.



Bottle Holder

Bottle holders are on the inside of the doors.



Bottle holder

CAUTION

Do not use the bottle holders for containers without caps. The contents may spill when opening/closing the door or while driving the vehicle.

Interior Equipment

Storage Compartments

! WARNING

Keep storage boxes closed when driving:

Driving with the storage boxes open is dangerous. To reduce the possibility of injury in an accident or a sudden stop, keep the storage boxes closed when driving.

When loading cargo, make sure that it is completely secured:

If the cargo is not completely secured, it may move or collapse while driving or during sudden braking, resulting in injury or an accident.

Do not put articles in storage spaces with no lid:

Putting articles in storage spaces with no lid is dangerous as they could be thrown around the cabin if the vehicle is suddenly accelerated and cause injury depending on how the article is stored.

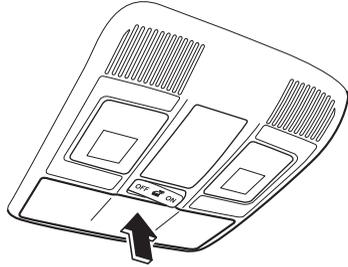
! CAUTION

Do not leave lighters or eyeglasses in the storage boxes while parked under the sun. A lighter could explode or the plastic material in eyeglasses could deform and crack from high temperature.

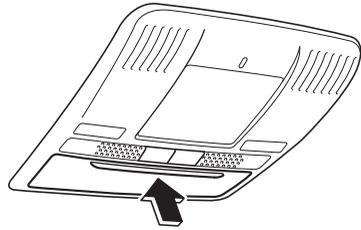
▼ Overhead Console

This console box is designed to store eyeglasses or other accessories. Push and release to open.

Type A

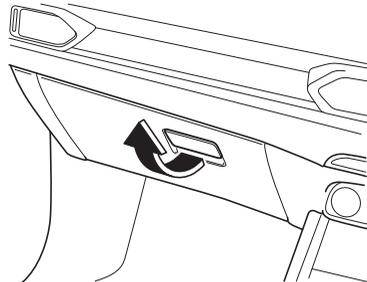


Type B



▼ Glove Compartment

To open the glove compartment, pull the latch toward you.

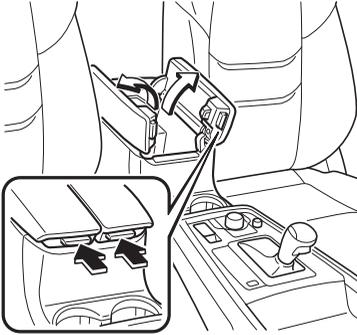


To close the glove compartment, firmly press in the centre of the glove compartment lid.

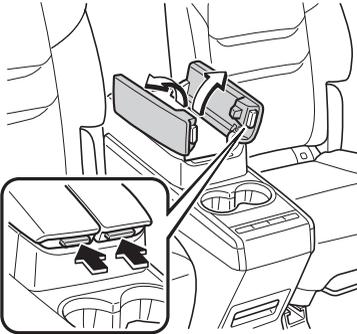
▼ Centre Console

To open, push the button.

Front



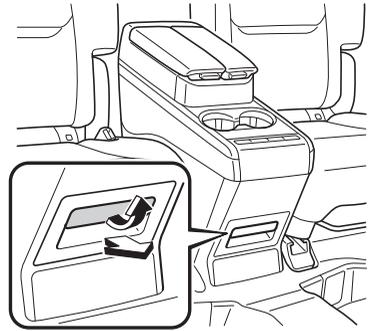
Rear*



▼ (Second-row Seat Console Box with Armrest) Storage Box*

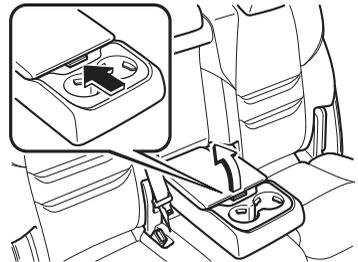
⚠ CAUTION

Store the armrests when the storage box is not in use. Otherwise, your foot might get caught when changing seats and fall down resulting in injury.



▼ Armrest Box*

To open, push the button and pull up the lid.

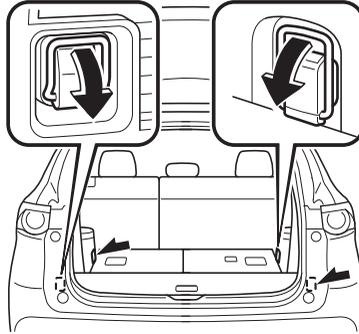


Interior Equipment

▼ Luggage Compartment

Cargo Securing Loops

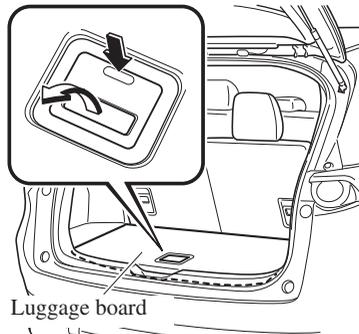
Use the loops in the luggage compartment to secure cargo with a rope or net. The tensile strength of the loops is 196 N (20 kgf, 44 lbf). Do not apply excessive force to the loops as it will damage them.



Cargo Sub-Compartment

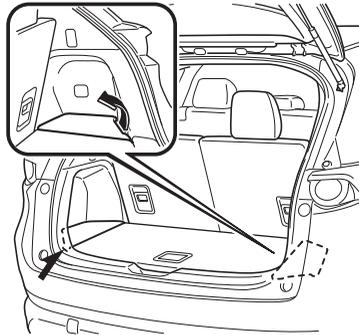
Centre cargo sub-compartment

Raise the luggage board to put small items in the cargo sub-compartment.



Side cargo sub-compartment

Insert your hand into the clearance and open the sideboard to put small items in the cargo sub-compartment.

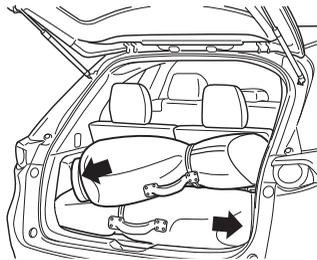
**NOTE****Loading golf bags**

(Some golf bags may not fit using the following methods depending on their sizes.)

Up to two golf bags can be carried in the luggage compartment.

Bottom: Place the first golf bag in the luggage compartment with the bottoms pointed to the right.

Top: Place the second golf bag with its bottom pointed to the left in the luggage compartment.



The arrows indicate the bottoms of the golf bags.

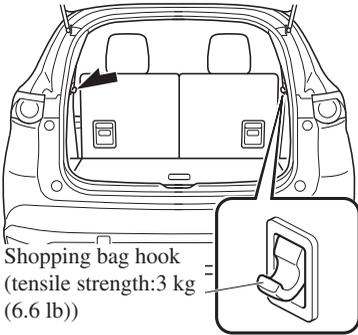
Interior Equipment

▼ Shopping Bag Hook

The shopping bag hook can be used for hanging shopping bags.

CAUTION

Do not hang excessive weight on the shopping bag hook as it could be damaged.



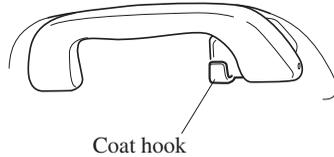
▼ Rear Coat Hooks

WARNING

Never hang heavy or sharp objects on the assist grips and coat hooks:

Hanging heavy or sharp-ended objects such as a coat hanger from the assist grips or coat hooks is dangerous as they can fly off and hit an occupant in the cabin if a curtain air bag was to deploy, which could result in serious injury or death.

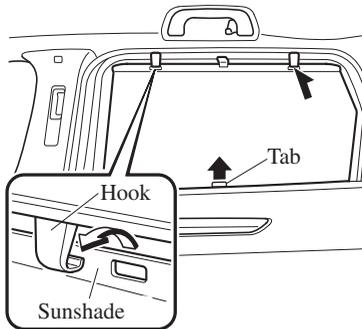
Always hang clothes on the coat hooks and the assist grips without hangers.



Sunshade (Rear Door Window)*

The sunshades are equipped to the windows on both sides of the second-row seats.

Hold the tab and pull the sunshade upward and hook the slots.



To return the sunshade to its original position, unhook the sunshade and retract it slowly.

CAUTION

- *Securely hook the sunshade. Otherwise, the sunshade may retract suddenly resulting in injury such as fingers get pinched.*
- *Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using a sunshade while a window is open could cause it to unhook and flap around inside the cabin where it can hit someone sitting near the window, resulting in injury.*

MEMO

6

Maintenance and Care

How to keep your Mazda in top condition.

Essential Information.....	6-2	Window Washer Fluid.....	6-18
Introduction.....	6-2	Body Lubrication.....	6-19
Scheduled Maintenance.....	6-3	Wiper Blades.....	6-19
Scheduled Maintenance.....	6-3	Battery.....	6-24
Owner Maintenance.....	6-6	Key Battery Replacement.....	6-27
Owner Maintenance		Tyres.....	6-29
Precautions.....	6-6	Light Bulbs.....	6-33
Bonnet.....	6-8	Fuses.....	6-37
Engine Compartment		Emission Control Maintenance	
Overview.....	6-10	(Australia).....	6-44
Engine Oil.....	6-12	Appearance Care.....	6-46
Engine Coolant.....	6-16	Exterior Care.....	6-46
Brake Fluid.....	6-17	Interior Care.....	6-52

Essential Information

Introduction

Be careful not to hurt yourself when inspecting your vehicle, replacing a tyre, or doing some kind of maintenance such as car washing.

In particular, wear thick work gloves such as cotton gloves when touching areas that are difficult to see while inspecting or working on your vehicle. Doing inspections or procedures with your bare hands could cause injury.

If you are unsure about any procedure this manual describes, we strongly urge you to have a reliable and qualified technician perform the work, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Authorised Mazda technicians and genuine Mazda parts are dedicated to your vehicle. Without this expertise and the parts that have been designed and made especially for your Mazda, inadequate, incomplete, and insufficient servicing may result in problems. This could lead to vehicle damage or an accident and injuries.

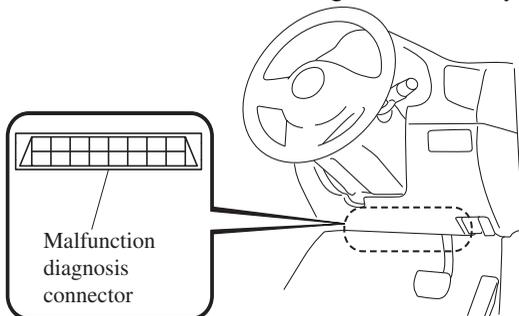
For expert advice and quality service, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

The owner should retain evidence that proper maintenance has been performed as prescribed.

A claim against a warranty will not qualify if it results from lack of maintenance and not from defective material or authorised workmanship.

The malfunction diagnosis connector is designed exclusively for connecting the specially designed device to perform on-board diagnosis.

Do not connect any devices other than the specially designed malfunction diagnosis devices for servicing. If any device other than the malfunction diagnosis device is connected, it may affect the vehicle's electrical devices or lead to damage such as battery depletion.



Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance

NOTE

After the prescribed period, continue to follow the described maintenance at the recommended intervals.

Emission control and related systems

The ignition and fuel systems are highly important to the emission control system and to efficient engine operation. Do not tamper with them.

All inspections and adjustments must be made by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Australia and New Zealand

Maintenance Interval	Number of years or kilometres, whichever comes first																
	Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
	Petrol ×1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195	210	225	240
Diesel ×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160	
SKYACTIV-G 2.5																	
Fuel filter											R						
Spark plugs									R								R
SKYACTIV-D 2.2																	
Fuel filter			R				R			R			R				R
SKYACTIV-G 2.5 AND SKYACTIV-D 2.2																	
Engine oil & filter*1*2	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Air filter*3	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	C	R	C	
Drive belts*4	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling system	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine coolant*5	Replace at first 200,000 km or 10 years; after that, every 100,000 km or 5 years																
Fuel lines and hoses	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Battery*6	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake lines, hoses and connections	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake fluid*7	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I	I/R	I
Parking brake	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Vacuum brake booster and hose	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Disc brakes	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering operation and linkages	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Scheduled Maintenance

Maintenance Interval	Number of years or kilometres, whichever comes first																
	Years	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16
	Petrol ×1000 km	15	30	45	60	75	90	105	120	135	150	165	180	195	210	225	240
	Diesel ×1000 km	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100	110	120	130	140	150	160
Front and rear suspension, ball joints and wheel bearing axial play	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Driveshaft dust boots		I		I		I		I		I		I		I		I	
Exhaust system and heat shields					I					I						I	
Bolts and nuts on chassis and body	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T	T
All electrical system* ⁸	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cabin air filter (if equipped)	C	R	C	R	C	R	C	R	C	R	C	R	C	R	C	R	C
Tyres (including spare tyre) (with inflation pressure adjustment)	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tyre rotation* ⁹	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Road test	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
M-MDS check of Vehicle Management and Safety Systems	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

Chart symbols:

I: Inspect: Inspect and clean, repair, adjust, fill up, or replace if necessary.

R: Replace

L: Lubricate

C: Clean

T: Tighten

D: Drain

Remarks:

*1 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, replace the engine oil and oil filter more often than the recommended intervals.

- Driving in dusty conditions
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
- Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only
- Driving in extremely hot conditions
- Driving in mountainous conditions continually

*2 For SKYACTIV-D 2.2, reset the engine oil data whenever replacing the engine oil regardless of the message/wrench indicator light display.

*3 If the vehicle is operated in very dusty or sandy areas, clean and if necessary, replace the air filter more often than the recommended intervals.

*4 Also inspect the air conditioner drive belts, if equipped.

If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, inspect the drive belts at every 10,000 km or 1 year.

- Driving in dusty conditions
- Extended periods of idling or low speed operation
- Driving for long period in cold temperatures or driving regularly at short distance only

Scheduled Maintenance

- d) Driving in extremely hot conditions
- e) Driving in mountainous conditions continually
- f) Driving for long period in extremely wet or heavy rain condition
- *5 Use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.
- *6 Inspect the battery electrolyte level and outer appearance. The sealed battery only requires an outer appearance inspection.
- *7 If the brakes are used extensively (for example, continuous hard driving or mountain driving) or if the vehicle is operated in extremely humid climates, replace the brake fluid annually.
- *8 This is a full function check of electrical systems such as lights, wiper and washer systems (including wiper blades), and power windows.
- *9 If the vehicle is operated primarily under any of the following conditions, rotate the tyres more often than the recommended intervals.
 - a) Driving on bumpy roads, gravel roads, snowy roads or dirt roads
 - b) Driving uphill and downhill frequently
 - c) Repeated short-distance driving
 - d) On roads having many roundabouts

NOTE

Please ask an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to check Mazda computer network to ensure there are no outstanding campaign or recall actions on the vehicle.

Owner Maintenance Precautions

Routine Service

We highly recommend that these items be inspected before driving.

- Engine Oil Level (page 6-15)
- Engine Coolant Level (page 6-16)
- Brake Fluid Level (page 6-17)
- Washer Fluid Level (page 6-18)
- Battery Maintenance (page 6-25)
- Tyre Inflation Pressure (page 6-29)

Improper or incomplete service may result in problems. This section gives instructions only for items that are easy to perform.

As explained in the Introduction (page 6-2), several procedures can be done only by a qualified service technician with special tools.

Improper do-it yourself maintenance during the warranty period may affect warranty coverage. For details, read the separate Mazda Warranty statement provided with the vehicle. If you are unsure about any servicing or maintenance procedure, have it done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

There are strict environmental laws regarding the disposal of waste oil and fluids. Please dispose of your waste properly and with due regard to the environment.

Entrust the oil and fluid changes of your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).



Do not perform maintenance work if you lack sufficient knowledge and experience or the proper tools and equipment to do the work. Have maintenance work done by a qualified technician:

Performing maintenance work on a vehicle is dangerous if not done properly. You can be seriously injured while performing some maintenance procedures.

If you must run the engine while working under the bonnet, make certain that you remove all jewellery (especially rings, bracelets, watches, and necklaces) and all neckties, scarves, and similar loose clothing before getting near the engine or cooling fan which may turn on unexpectedly:

Working under the bonnet with the engine running is dangerous. It becomes even more dangerous when you wear jewellery, loose clothing or have long hair or a long beard. Either can become entangled in moving parts and result in injury.



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.

Do not leave items in the engine compartment:

After you have finished checking or doing servicing in the engine compartment, do not forget and leave items such as tools or rags in the engine compartment.

Tools or other items left in the engine compartment could cause engine damage or a fire leading to an unexpected accident.

Owner Maintenance

Bonnet

⚠ WARNING

Always check that the bonnet is closed and securely locked:

A bonnet that is not closed and securely locked is dangerous as it could fly open while the vehicle is moving and block the driver's vision which could result in a serious accident.

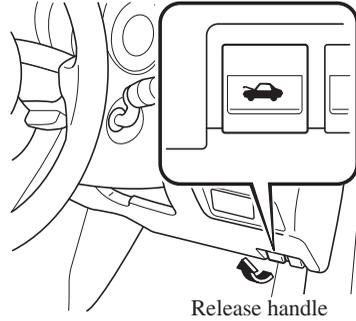
▼ Opening the Bonnet

⚠ WARNING

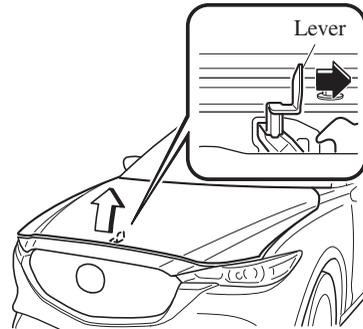
Do not pull the bonnet's release handle after the active bonnet has activated:

Pulling the release handle while the active bonnet is operating is dangerous as it will raise the bonnet further and obstruct vision. In addition, the bonnet cannot be lowered manually, therefore do not attempt to forcefully push the bonnet back down. Otherwise, it could deform the bonnet or cause injury. If the active bonnet has activated, always consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

1. With the vehicle parked, pull the release handle to unlock the bonnet.

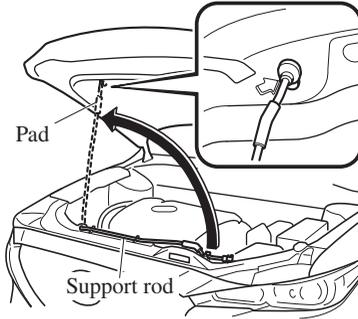


2. Insert your hand into the bonnet opening, slide the latch lever to the right, and lift up the bonnet.



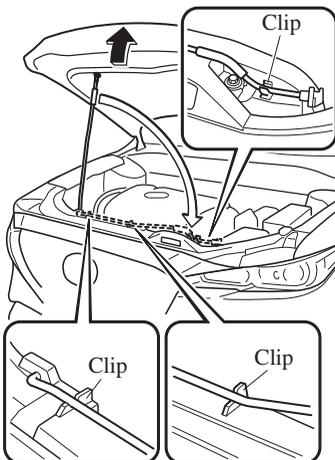
3. Grasp the support rod in the padded area and secure it in the support rod

hole indicated by the arrow to hold the bonnet open.



▼ Closing the Bonnet

1. Check under the bonnet area to make certain all filler caps are in place and all loose items (e.g. tools, oil containers, etc.) have been removed.
2. Lift the bonnet, grasp the padded area on the support rod, and secure the support rod in the clip. Verify that the support rod is secured in the clip before closing the bonnet.



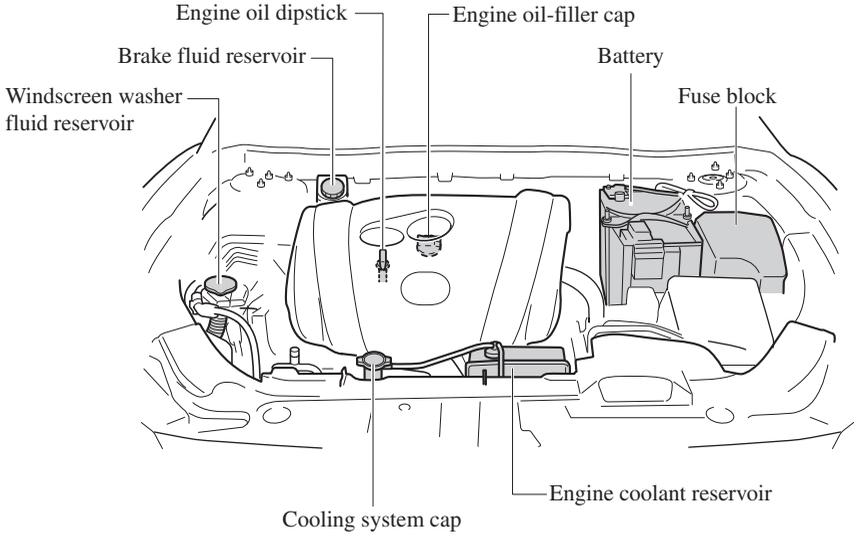
3. Lower the bonnet slowly to a height of about 20 cm (7.9 in) above its closed position and then let it drop.

⚠ CAUTION

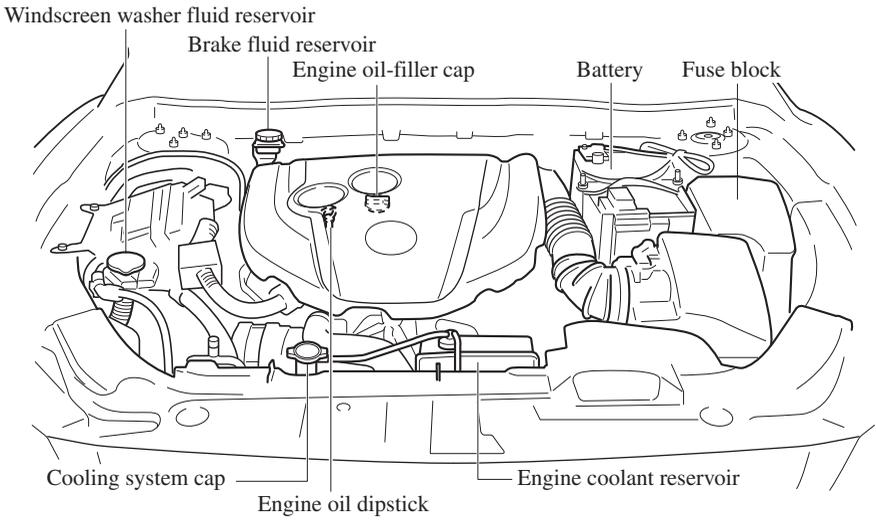
When closing the bonnet, do not push it excessively such as by applying your weight. Otherwise, the bonnet could be deformed.

Engine Compartment Overview

SKYACTIV-G 2.5



SKYACTIV-D 2.2



Owner Maintenance

Engine Oil

NOTE

Changing the engine oil should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Recommended Oil

In order to follow the maintenance interval (page 6-3) and to protect the engine from damage caused by poor lubrication, it is vitally important to make use of engine oil with the correct specification. Do not use oils which do not meet the specification and requirements listed. Use of unsuitable oil may lead to engine damage which is not covered by the Mazda Warranty.

Engine oil viscosity, or thickness, has an effect on fuel economy and cold-weather operation (starting and oil flow).

Low-viscosity engine oils can provide improved fuel economy and cold-weather performance.

(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers	
Grade	
API SL or higher	

(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

Temperature Range SAE Viscosity Numbers		
Grade		
ACEA C3	0W-30	
	5W-30	

(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

Use API service SL or higher.

(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

Use ACEA C3.

When choosing an oil, consider the temperature range your vehicle will operate in before the next oil change.

Then select the recommended viscosity from the chart.



➤ *Using oils of viscosity besides those recommended for specific temperature ranges could result in engine damage.*

➤ **(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)**

*SKYACTIV-D 2.2 uses specified oil. Please confirm the specification in owner's manual. **If engine oil other than the specified oil is used, the Diesel Particulate Filter effective period of use will be shortened or the Diesel Particulate Filter may be damaged.***

New Zealand

Mazda recommends using Mazda Motor Oil which has been specifically designed and tested to meet the stringent Mazda Engineering Standards (MES) for your Mazda. To ensure engine longevity is not compromised particularly under the harsh climatic conditions existing in New Zealand, we only recommend using genuine Mazda engine oil which is available throughout the Mazda Repairer network.

If Mazda Motor Oil is not selected for use, always use an engine oil meeting the specifications.

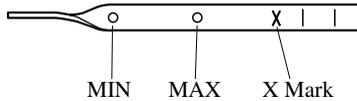
NOTE**(SKYACTIV-G 2.5)**

- *It is normal for all engines to consume engine oil under normal driving conditions. Engine oil consumption may be as high as 0.8 L/1,000 km (1 L/800 miles). This may be as a result of evaporation, internal ventilation or burning of the lubricating oil in the working engine. Oil consumption may be higher when the engine is new due to the running-in process. Oil consumption is also dependant on engine speed and engine load. Under extreme driving conditions, oil consumption may be higher.*

Owner Maintenance

(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

- Inspect the engine oil level periodically. When inspecting the engine oil, if the engine oil level exceeds the "X" mark on the dipstick, replace the engine oil. This should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). When replacing the engine oil, inspect the oil level using the oil dipstick and refill so that the engine oil level is within the range between MIN and MAX as shown in the figure.



(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

Whenever the engine oil is replaced, the vehicles engine control unit needs to be reset as soon as possible. Otherwise the wrench indicator light or engine oil warning light may turn on. To reset the engine control unit, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or refer to the vehicle engine control unit reset procedure on page 6-14.

▼ Vehicle Engine Control Unit Reset Procedure (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

After replacing the engine oil, have a repair shop such as an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer), perform the initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value. If the value recorded by the computer is not initialized, the wrench indicator light may not turn off or it may turn on earlier than normal.

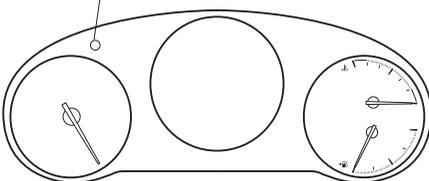
NOTE

The initialization (engine oil data resetting) of the recorded value can be performed using the instrument panel illumination knob in the instrument cluster as following:

- Switch the ignition OFF.
- Switch the ignition ON with the instrument panel illumination knob pressed and continue pressing the knob for about 5 seconds until the master warning light  flashes.

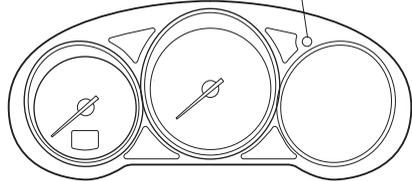
Type A

Instrument panel illumination knob



Type B

Instrument panel illumination knob

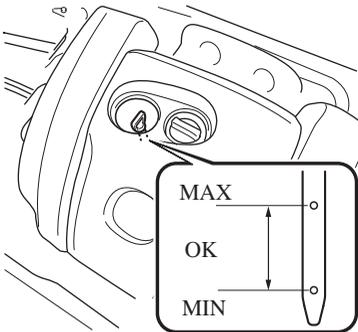


3. After the master warning light  flashes for several seconds, the initialization is completed.

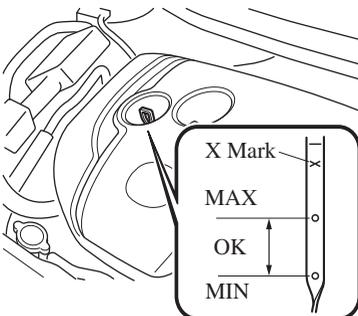
▼ Inspecting Engine Oil Level

1. Be sure the vehicle is on a level surface.
2. Warm up the engine to normal operating temperature.
3. Turn it off and wait at least 5 minutes for the oil to return to the sump.
4. Pull out the dipstick, wipe it clean, and reinsert it fully.

SKYACTIV-G 2.5



SKYACTIV-D 2.2



NOTE

(SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

When inspecting the engine oil level, pull out the dipstick straight without twisting. In addition, when inserting the dipstick, always insert it without twisting so that the "X" mark faces the front of the vehicle.

5. Pull it out again and examine the level. The level is normal if it is between the MIN and MAX marks. If it is near or below MIN, add enough oil to bring the level to MAX.

CAUTION

Do not overfill the engine oil. This may cause engine damage.

6. Make sure the O-ring on the dipstick is positioned properly before reinserting the dipstick.
7. Reinsert the dipstick fully.

Owner Maintenance

Engine Coolant

▼ Inspecting Coolant Level

WARNING

Do not use a match or live flame in the engine compartment. DO NOT ADD COOLANT WHEN THE ENGINE IS HOT:

A hot engine is dangerous. If the engine has been running, parts of the engine compartment can become very hot. You could be burned. Carefully inspect the engine coolant in the coolant reservoir, but do not open it.



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.



Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:

When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

NOTE

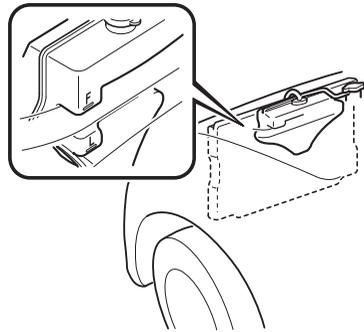
Changing the coolant should be done by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Inspect the antifreeze protection and coolant level in the coolant reservoir at least once a year—at the beginning of the winter season—and before travelling where temperatures may drop below freezing.

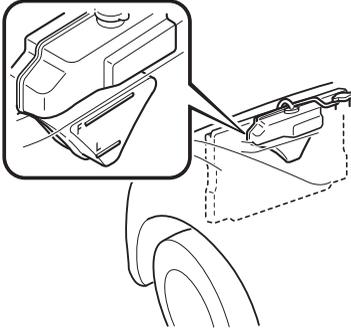
Inspect the condition and connections of all cooling system and heater hoses. Replace any that are swollen or deteriorated.

The coolant should be at full in the radiator and between the F and L marks on the coolant reservoir when the engine is cool.

SKYACTIV-G 2.5



SKYACTIV-D 2.2



If it is at or near L, add enough coolant to the coolant reservoir to provide freezing and corrosion protection and to bring the level to F.

Securely tighten the coolant reservoir tank cap after adding coolant.

CAUTION

- Radiator coolant will damage paint. Rinse it off quickly if spilled.
- If the "FL22" mark is shown on or near the cooling system cap, use of FL-22 is recommended when replacing engine coolant. Using engine coolant other than FL-22 may cause serious damage to the engine and cooling system.



FL22 

If the coolant reservoir is empty or new coolant is required frequently, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Brake Fluid

▼ Inspecting Brake Fluid Level

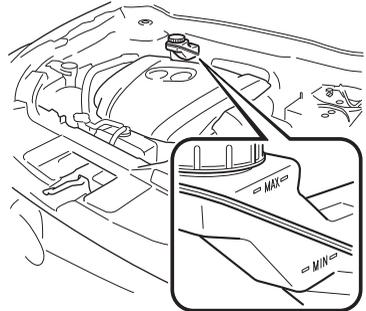
WARNING

If the brake fluid level is low, have the brakes inspected:

A low brake fluid level is dangerous. A low level could indicate brake lining wear or a brake system leak which could cause the brakes to fail and lead to an accident.

Inspect the fluid level in the reservoir regularly. It should be kept between the MAX and MIN lines.

The level normally drops with accumulated distance, a condition associated with wear of brake linings. If it is excessively low, have the brake system inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).



Owner Maintenance

Window Washer Fluid

▼ Inspecting Washer Fluid Level

⚠ WARNING

Use only windscreen washer fluid or plain water in the reservoir:

Using radiator antifreeze as washer fluid is dangerous. If sprayed on the windscreen, it will dirty the windscreen, affect your visibility, and could result in an accident.

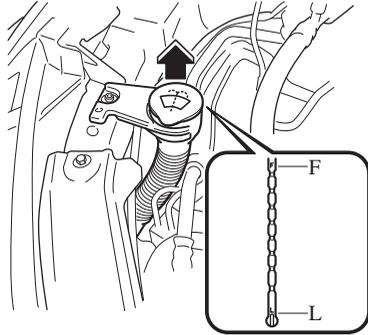
⚠ CAUTION

Do not use soapy water or engine antifreeze in the reservoir as it could cause paint discolouration or pump damage.

Add washer fluid under any of the following conditions.

- The top of the fluid level is low.
- The Low Washer Fluid Level Warning Indication/Warning Light (if equipped) turns on.

- The top of the fluid level is lower than L (if equipped).



Use plain water if washer fluid is unavailable.

But use only washer fluid in cold weather to prevent it from freezing.

NOTE

Front and rear washer fluid is supplied from the same reservoir.

Body Lubrication

All moving points of the body, such as door and bonnet hinges and locks, should be lubricated each time the engine oil is changed. Use a nonfreezing lubricant on locks during cold weather.

Make sure the bonnet's secondary latch keeps the bonnet from opening when the primary latch is released.

Wiper Blades

CAUTION

- *Hot waxes applied by automatic car washers have been known to affect the wiper's ability to clean windows.*
- *To prevent damage to the wiper blades, do not use petrol, paraffin, paint thinner, or other solvents on or near them.*
- *When the wiper lever is in the AUTO position and the ignition is switched ON, the wipers may move automatically in the following cases:*
 - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched.*
 - *If the windscreen above the rain sensor is wiped with a cloth.*
 - *If the windscreen is struck with a hand or other object.*
 - *If the rain sensor is struck with a hand or other object from inside the vehicle.*

Be careful not to pinch hands or fingers as it may cause injury, or damage the wipers. When washing or servicing the vehicle, make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Contamination of either the windscreen or the blades with foreign matter can reduce wiper effectiveness. Common sources are insects, tree sap, and hot wax treatments used by some commercial car washes.

If the blades are not wiping properly, clean the window and blades with a good cleaner or mild detergent; then rinse thoroughly with clean water. Repeat if necessary.

Owner Maintenance

▼ Replacing Windscreen Wiper Blades

When the wipers no longer clean well, the blades are probably worn or cracked. Replace them.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent damage to the wiper arms and other components, do not try to sweep the wiper arm by hand.
- Do not bend the blade rubber unnecessarily when replacing it. Otherwise, the metal stiffener in the blade may deform and the windscreen wiper operation may be adversely affected.

NOTE

When raising both windscreen wiper arms, raise the driver's side wiper arm first. When lowering the wiper arms, slowly lower the wiper arm from the passenger's side first while supporting it with your hand. Forcefully lowering the wiper arms could damage the wiper arm and blade, and may scratch or crack the windscreen.

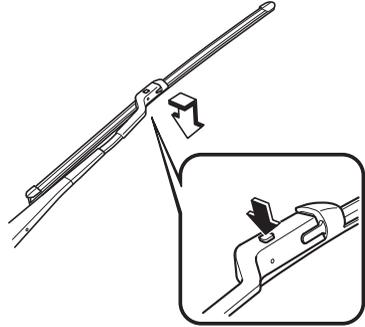
Replace the wiper blades using the following procedure.

1. Raise the wiper arm.

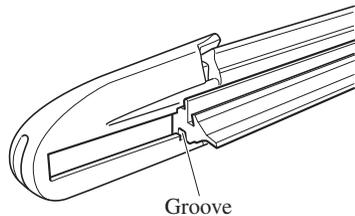
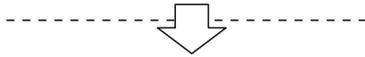
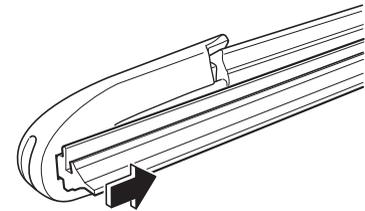
⚠ CAUTION

To prevent damage to the windscreen let the wiper arm down easily, do not let it slap down on the windscreen.

2. Slide the blade component in the direction of the arrow while pressing the wiper arm tab to remove the blade component from the wiper arm.

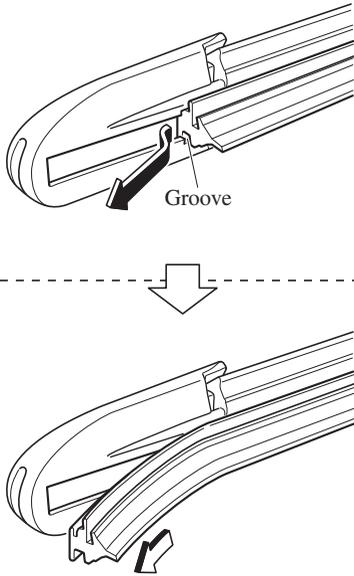


3. Pull the blade rubber in the direction of the arrow and slide it to a position where the blade holder groove can be checked.

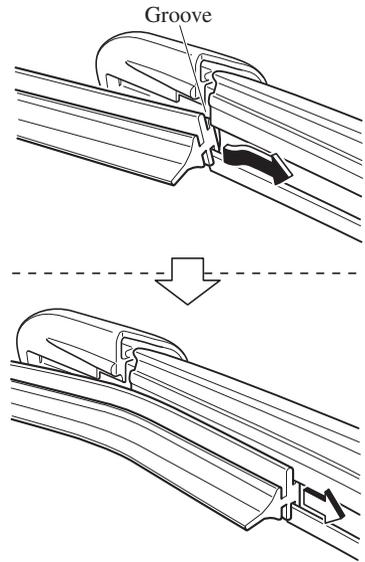


Owner Maintenance

4. Pull the end of the blade rubber from the blade holder groove in the direction of the arrow and remove the blade rubber from the blade holder.

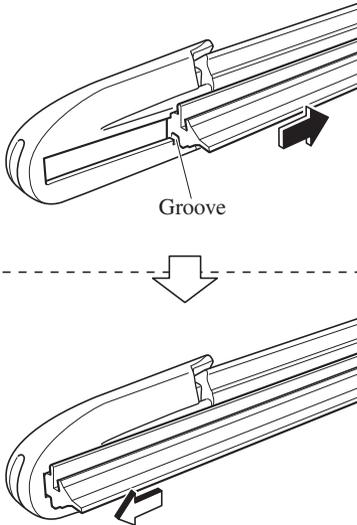


5. Insert the end of the new blade rubber into the groove of the blade holder until it contacts the end of the blade holder.

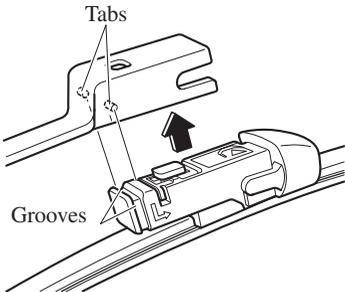


Owner Maintenance

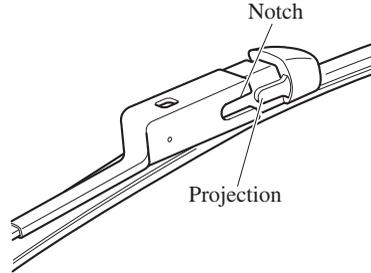
6. After pulling the blade rubber in the direction of the arrow and sliding the blade rubber to a position to check the blade holder groove, slide the blade rubber end in the opposite direction.



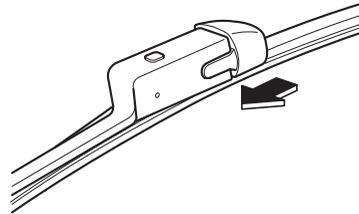
7. Make sure that the blade rubber is correctly installed to the blade holder.
8. Align the wiper arm tabs with the blade component grooves.



9. Align the blade component projection with the wiper arm notch.



10. Slide the blade component and install it to the wiper arm.



11. Slowly lower the wiper arm onto the windscreen.

▼ Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade

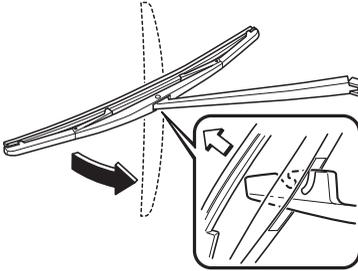
When the wiper no longer cleans well, the blade is probably worn or cracked. Replace it.



To prevent damage to the wiper arm and other components, do not move the wiper by hand.

Owner Maintenance

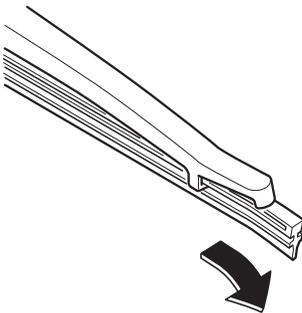
1. Raise the wiper arm and rotate the wiper blade to the right until it unlocks, then remove the blade.



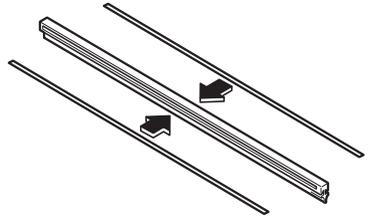
! CAUTION

To prevent damage to the rear window, do not let the wiper arm fall on it.

2. Pull down the blade rubber and slide it out of the blade holder.



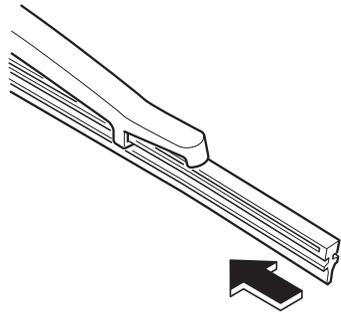
3. Remove the metal stiffeners from the blade rubber and install them in the new blade.



! CAUTION

Do not bend or discard the stiffeners. You need to use them again.

4. Carefully insert the new blade rubber. Then install the blade assembly in the reverse order of removal.



Owner Maintenance

Battery

WARNING



Read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting to ensure safe and correct handling:



Always wear eye protection when working near the battery:

Working without eye protection is dangerous. Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause blindness if splashed into your eyes. Also, hydrogen gas produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode.



Wear eye protection and protective gloves to prevent contact with battery fluid:

Spilled battery fluid is dangerous.

Battery fluid contains SULPHURIC ACID which could cause serious injuries if it gets in eyes, or on the skin or clothing. If this happens, immediately flush your eyes with water for 15 minutes or wash your skin thoroughly and get medical attention.



Always keep batteries out of the reach of children:

Allowing children to play near batteries is dangerous. Battery fluid could cause serious injuries if it gets in the eyes or on the skin.



Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (-) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:

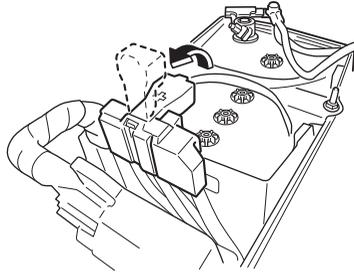
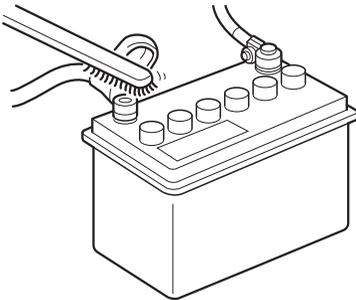
Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.



Keep all flames and sparks away from open battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from open battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid: Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

NOTE

Before performing battery maintenance, remove the battery cover.

**▼ Battery Maintenance**

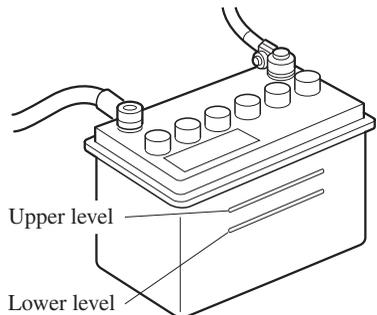
To get the best service from a battery:

- Keep it securely mounted.
- Keep the top clean and dry.
- Keep terminals and connections clean, tight, and coated with petroleum jelly or terminal grease.
- Rinse off spilled electrolyte immediately with a solution of water and baking soda.

- If the vehicle will not be used for an extended time, disconnect the battery leads and charge the battery every 6 weeks.

▼ Inspecting Electrolyte Level

A low level of electrolyte fluid will cause the battery to discharge quickly.



Owner Maintenance

Inspect the electrolyte level at least once a week. If it is low, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for the electrolyte level.

▼ Battery Replacement

Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for battery replacement.

Key Battery Replacement

If the buttons on the transmitter are inoperable and the operation indicator light does not flash, the battery may be dead.

Replace with a new battery before the transmitter becomes unusable.

The following conditions indicate that the battery power is low:

- The messages are displayed in the instrument cluster for about 30 seconds after the engine is switched OFF.
- The system does not operate and the operation indicator light on the transmitter does not flash when the buttons are pressed.
- The system's operational range is reduced.

Do not attempt to replace the key battery yourself.

Incorrect battery replacement operation may damage the key. Replacing the battery at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) is recommended.

Owner Maintenance

WARNING



-Button/coin battery is hazardous and is to be kept away from children (whether the battery is new or used);

-Button/coin battery can cause severe or fatal injuries in 2 hours or less if it is swallowed or placed inside any part of the body;

-Medical attention should be sought immediately if it is suspected the button/coin battery has been swallowed or placed inside any part of the body.

-If it is suspected a button/coin battery has been swallowed or otherwise placed inside any part of the body, a person should contact the Australian Poisons Information Centre on 13 11 26 immediately for 24/7 fast, expert advice.'

-When disposing of batteries, wrap tape around the terminals to insulate them. Mixing with other metals or batteries may cause heat generation, rupture, or ignition.
When disposing of batteries, dispose of it under the ordinance of each local government.

Tyres

For reasons of proper performance, safety, and better fuel economy, always maintain recommended tyre inflation pressures and stay within the recommended load limits and weight distribution.

WARNING

Using Different Tyre Types:

Driving your vehicle with different types of tyres is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking; leading to loss of control.

Except for the limited use of the temporary spare tyre, use only the same type tyres (radial, bias-belted, bias-type) on all four wheels.

Using Wrong-Sized Tyres:

Using any other tyre size than what is specified for the vehicle (page 9-11) is dangerous. It could seriously affect ride, handling, ground clearance, tyre clearance, and speedometer calibration. This could cause you to have an accident. Use only tyres that are the correct size specified for the vehicle.

▼ Tyre Inflation Pressure

WARNING

Always inflate the tyres to the correct pressure:

Overinflation or underinflation of tyres is dangerous. Adverse handling or unexpected tyre failure could result in a serious accident.

Refer to Tyres on page 9-11.

Use only a Mazda-genuine tyre valve cap:

Use of a non-genuine part is dangerous as the correct tyre air pressure cannot be maintained if the tyre valve becomes damaged. If the vehicle is driven under this condition, the tyre air pressure will decrease which could result in a serious accident. Do not use any part for the tyre valve cap that is not a Mazda-genuine part.

Inspect all tyre pressures monthly (including the spare) when the tyres are cold. Maintain recommended pressures for the best ride, handling, and minimum tyre wear.

Refer to the specification charts (page 9-11).

NOTE

- *Always check tyre pressure when tyres are cold.*
- *Warm tyres normally exceed recommended pressures. Do not release air from warm tyres to adjust the pressure.*
- *Underinflation can cause reduced fuel economy, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and poor sealing of the tyre bead, which will deform the wheel and cause separation of tyre from rim.*
- *Overinflation can produce a harsh ride, uneven and accelerated tyre wear, and a greater possibility of damage from road hazards.*

Keep your tyre pressure at the correct levels. If one frequently needs inflating, have it inspected.

Owner Maintenance

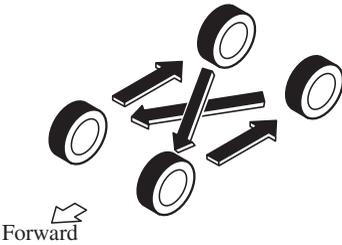
▼ Tyre Rotation

⚠ WARNING

Rotate tyres periodically:

Irregular tyre wear is dangerous. To equalize tread wear for maintaining good performance in handling and braking, rotate the tyres every 10,000 km (6,250 miles), or sooner if irregular wear develops.

During rotation, inspect them for correct balance.



Do not include (TEMPORARY USE ONLY) spare tyre in rotation.

Also, inspect them for uneven wear and damage. Abnormal wear is usually caused by one or a combination of the following:

- Incorrect tyre pressure
- Improper wheel alignment
- Out-of-balance wheel
- Severe braking

After rotation, inflate all tyre pressures to specification (page 9-11) and inspect the wheel nuts for tightness.

⚠ CAUTION

Rotate unidirectional tyres and radial tyres that have an asymmetrical tread pattern or studs only from front to rear, not from side to side. Tyre performance will be reduced if rotated from side to side.

▼ Replacing a Tyre



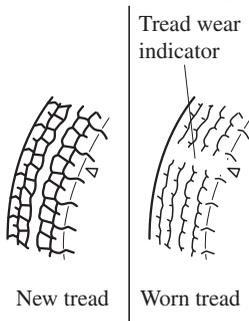
Always use tyres that are in good condition:

Driving with worn tyres is dangerous. Reduced braking, steering, and traction could result in an accident.

Replace all four tyres at the same time:
Replacing just one tyre is dangerous. It could cause poor handling and poor braking resulting in loss of vehicle control. Mazda strongly recommends that you replace all four tyres at the same time.

If a tyre wears evenly, a wear indicator will appear as a solid band across the tread.

Replace the tyre when this happens.



You should replace the tyre before the band crosses the entire tread.

▼ Temporary Spare Tyre

Inspect the temporary spare tyre at least monthly to make sure it is properly inflated and stored.

NOTE

The temporary spare tyre condition gradually deteriorates even if it has not been used.

The temporary spare tyre is easier to handle because of its construction which is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre. This tyre should be used only for an emergency and only for a short distance.

Use the temporary spare tyre only until the conventional tyre is repaired, which should be as soon as possible.

Refer to Tyre on page 9-11.



- *Do not use your temporary spare tyre rim with a snow tyre or a conventional tyre. Neither will properly fit and could damage both tyre and rim.*
- *The temporary spare tyre has a tread life of less than 5,000 km (3,000 miles). The tread life may be shorter depending on driving conditions.*
- *The temporary spare tyre is for limited use, however, if the tread wear solid-band indicator appears, replace the tyre with the same type of temporary spare (page 6-31).*

Owner Maintenance

▼ Replacing a Wheel



Always use wheels of the correct size on your vehicle:

Using a wrong-sized wheel is dangerous. Braking and handling could be affected, leading to loss of control and an accident.



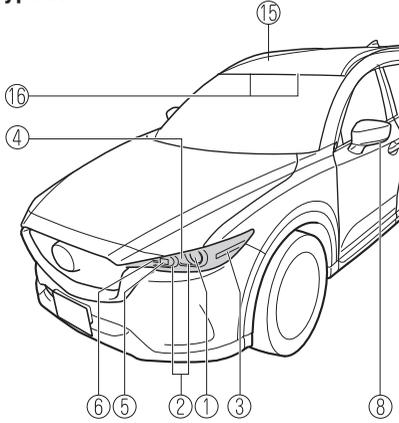
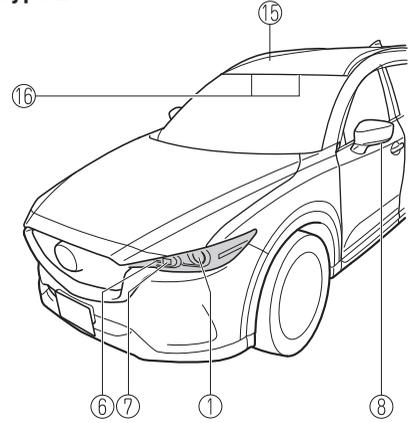
A wrong-sized wheel may adversely affect:

- *Tyre fit*
- *Wheel and bearing life*
- *Ground clearance*
- *Snow-chain clearance*
- *Speedometer calibration*
- *Headlight aim*
- *Bumper height*

NOTE

- *When replacing a wheel, make sure the new one is the same as the original factory wheel in diameter, rim width, and offset (inset/outset).*
- *For details, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

Proper tyre balancing provides the best riding comfort and helps reduce tread wear. Out-of-balance tyres can cause vibration and uneven wear, such as cupping and flat spots.

Light Bulbs**Type A****Type B**

- ① Headlights (High/Low beam)
- ② Running lights/Position lights
- ③ Headlights (Wide-range low beam)*
- ④ Running lights
- ⑤ Headlights (High beam)*
- ⑥ Front direction indicator lights
- ⑦ Position lights
- ⑧ Side direction indicator lights
- ⑨ Brake lights/Tail lights

Owner Maintenance

- ⑩ Rear direction indicator lights
- ⑪ Tail lights*
- ⑫ Reverse lights
- ⑬ High-mount brake light
- ⑭ Number plate lights
- ⑮ Front overhead lights/Front map lights
- ⑯ Vanity mirror lights
- ⑰ Centre map lights
- ⑱ Rear overhead light
- ⑲ Luggage compartment light



When removing the lens or lamp unit using a flathead screwdriver, make sure that the flathead screwdriver does not contact the interior terminal. If the flathead screwdriver contacts the terminal, a short circuit may occur.

NOTE

- *To replace the bulb, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*
- *Use the protective cover and carton for the replacement bulb to dispose of the old bulb promptly and out of the reach of children.*

▼ Replacing Exterior Light Bulbs

All the exterior light bulbs are LED type. The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Replacing Interior Light Bulbs

The interior lights have either LEDs or normal bulbs.

LED type

- Front overhead lights/Front map lights
- Centre map lights
- Rear overhead light
- Vanity mirror lights
- Luggage compartment light

The LED bulb cannot be replaced as a single unit because it is an integrated unit. The LED bulb has to be replaced with the unit. If a replacement is necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

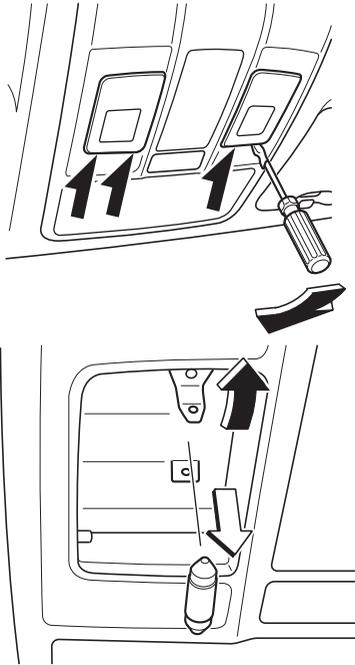
Bulb type

Front overhead lights/Front map lights, Centre map lights, Rear overhead light, Vanity mirror lights

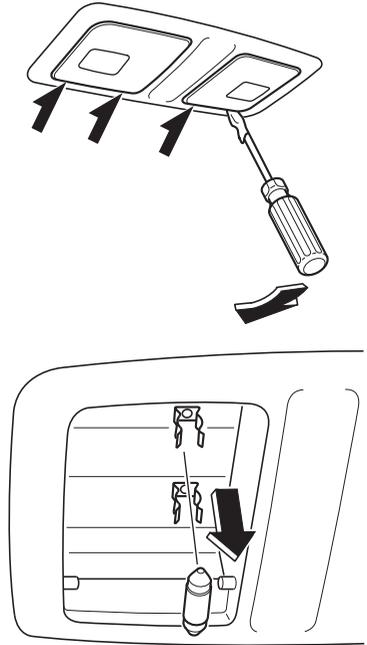
1. Wrap a flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens, and then remove the lens by carefully prying on the edge of the lens with a flathead screwdriver.
2. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.

Owner Maintenance

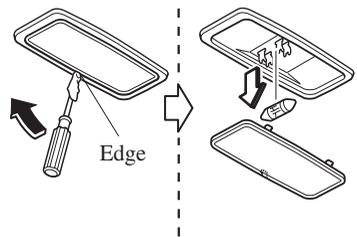
Front overhead lights/Front map lights



Centre map lights

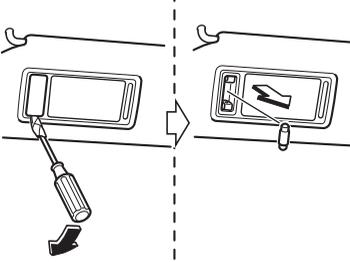


Rear overhead light

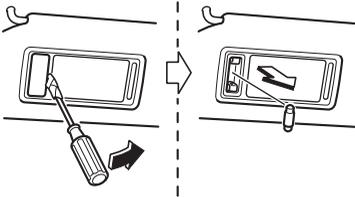


Owner Maintenance

Vanity mirror lights Driver's seat



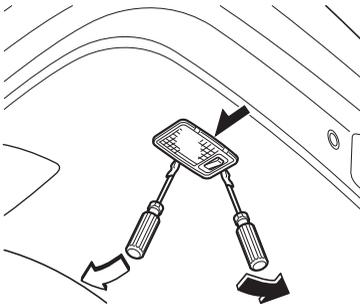
Passenger's seat



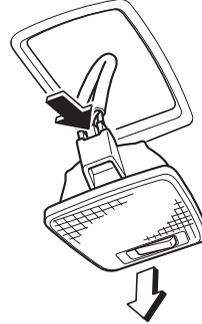
3. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Luggage compartment light

1. Wrap a small flathead screwdriver with a soft cloth to prevent damage to the lens and remove the lens unit by carefully prying on the edge of the lens unit with the flathead screwdriver.



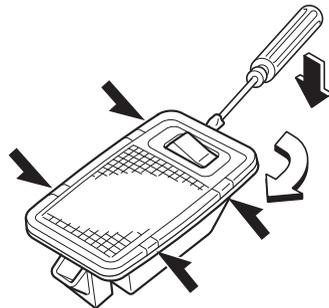
2. Disconnect the electrical connector from the bulb by pressing the tab on the connector with your finger and pulling the connector.



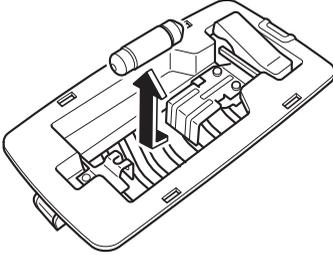
CAUTION

When replacing the bulb always disconnect the connector first. Otherwise, electric and electronic devices could be shorted.

3. Insert the flathead screwdriver into the gap between the lens and the lens unit, and then slide the screwdriver to detach the lens.



4. Disconnect the bulb by pulling it out.



5. Install the new bulb in the reverse order of the removal procedure.

Fuses

Your vehicle's electrical system is protected by fuses.

If any lights, accessories, or controls do not work, inspect the appropriate circuit protector. If a fuse has blown, the inside element will be melted.

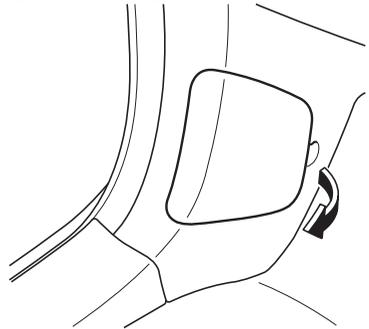
If the same fuse blows again, avoid using that system and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

▼ Fuse Replacement

Replacing the fuses on the vehicle's left side

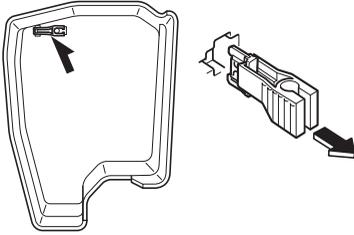
If the electrical system does not work, first inspect the fuses on the vehicle's left side.

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Open the fuse panel cover.

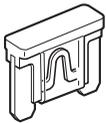


Owner Maintenance

3. Pull the fuse straight out with the fuse puller provided on the fuse block located in the engine compartment.



4. Inspect the fuse and replace it if it is blown.



Normal



Blown

5. Insert a new fuse of the same amperage rating, and make sure it fits tightly. If it does not fit tightly, have an expert install it. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

If you have no spare fuses, borrow one of the same rating from a circuit not essential to vehicle operation, such as the AUDIO or OUTLET circuit.

CAUTION

Always replace a fuse with a genuine Mazda fuse or equivalent of the same rating. Otherwise you may damage the electric system.

6. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

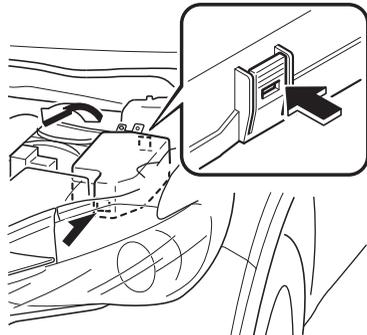
Replacing the fuses under the bonnet

If the headlights or other electrical components do not work and the fuses in the cabin are normal, inspect the fuse block under the bonnet.

If a fuse is blown, it must be replaced.

Follow these steps:

1. Make sure the ignition is switched off, and other switches are off.
2. Remove the fuse block cover.



3. If any fuse but the MAIN fuse is blown, replace it with a new one **of the same amperage rating.**



Normal



Blown

! WARNING

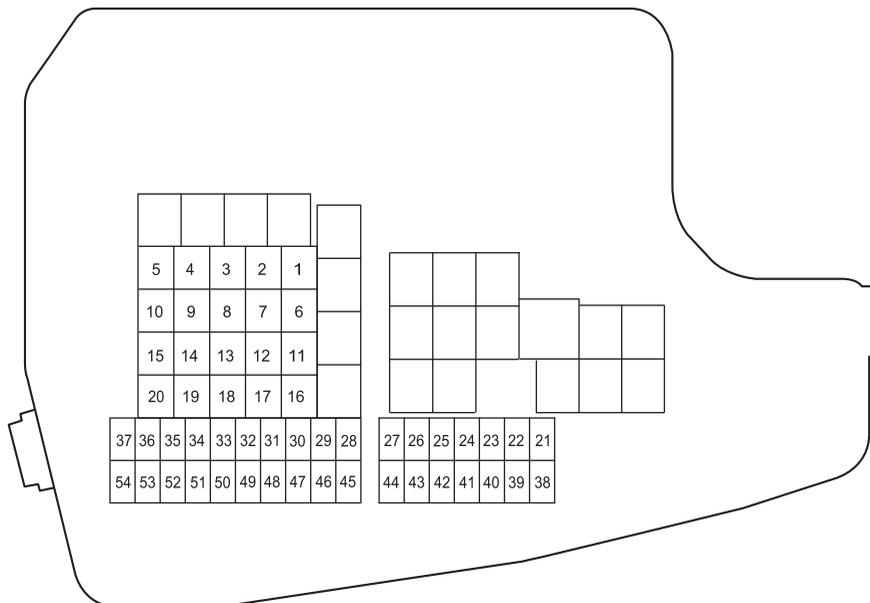
Do not replace the main fuse by yourself. Have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform the replacement: Replacing the fuse by yourself is dangerous because the MAIN fuse is a high current fuse. Incorrect replacement could cause an electrical shock or a short circuit resulting in a fire.

4. Reinstall the cover and make sure that it is securely installed.

Owner Maintenance

▼ Fuse Panel Description

Fuse block (Engine compartment)



DESCRIPTION	FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT	
1	CABIN.+B	50 A	For protection of various circuits
2	IG2	30 A	For protection of various circuits
3	INJECTOR ENG.SUB	30 A	Engine control system*
4	SCR1 EVVT	20 A	Engine control system*
5	P.WINDOW1	30 A	Power seat*
6	R.HEATER	20 A	Air conditioner
7	ADD FAN DE	40 A	Cooling fan*
8	WIPER.DEI	20 A	Mirror defogger
9	DEFOG	30 A	Rear window defogger
10	DCDC DE	40 A	For protection of various circuits*
11	EPB R	20 A	Electric parking brake (EPB) (RH)
12	EPB L	20 A	Electric parking brake (EPB) (LH)
13	AUDIO DCDC REG	30 A	Power seat*

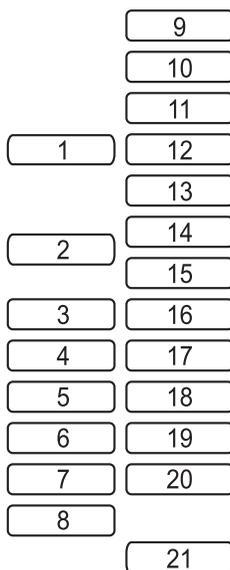
Owner Maintenance

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
14	FAN GE	30 A	Cooling fan*
15	ENG.MAIN	40 A	Engine control system
16	ABS/DSC M	50 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
17	FAN DE	40 A	Cooling fan*
18	WIPER	20 A	Front window wiper and washer
19	HEATER	40 A	Air conditioner
20	ADD FAN GE	30 A	Cooling fan*
21	ENGINE.IG1	7.5 A	Engine control system
22	C/U IG1	15 A	For protection of various circuits
23	AUDIO2	7.5 A	Audio system
24	METER2	7.5 A	Instrument cluster
25	ENGINE3	15 A	Engine control system
26	ENGINE2	15 A	Engine control system
27	ENGINE1	15 A	Engine control system*
28	AT	15 A	Transaxle control system, Ignition switch
29	H/CLEAN	20 A	—
30	A/C	7.5 A	Air conditioner
31	AT PUMP	15 A	Transaxle control system
32	HORN	15 A	Horn
33	R.WIPER	15 A	Rear window wiper
34	H/L HI	20 A	Headlight (High beam)
35	ST.HEATER	15 A	Heated steering system*
36	FOG	15 A	—
37	ENG.+B	7.5 A	Engine control system
38	H/L LOW L	15 A	Headlight low beam (LH)
39	ENGINE4	15 A	Engine control system*
40	INTERIOR1	15 A	For protection of various circuits
41	METER1	10 A	Instrument cluster
42	SRS1	7.5 A	Air bag
43	AUDIO1	15 A	Audio system
44	BOSE	25 A	Audio system, Bose Sound System-equipped model*
45	ABS/DSC S	30 A	ABS, Dynamic stability control system
46	FUEL PUMP	15 A	Fuel system*
47	FUEL WARM	25 A	Fuel warmer*
48	TAIL	15 A	Tail lights, Number plate lights

Owner Maintenance

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
49	SCR2 FUEL PUMP2	25 A	—
50	HAZARD	25 A	Hazard warning flashers, Direction indicator lights, Tail lights, Position lights
51	H/L LOW R	15 A	Headlight low beam (RH)
52	OUTLET	25 A	Accessory sockets
53	STOP	10 A	Brake lights
54	ROOM	25 A	For protection of various circuits

Fuse block (Left side)



DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
1	P.SEAT D	30 A	Power seat*
2	P.WINDOW3	30 A	Power windows
3	R.OUTLET3	15 A	—
4	P.WINDOW2	25 A	Power windows
5	ESCL	15 A	Electronic steering lock
6	D.LOCK	25 A	Power door locks
7	SEAT WARM	20 A	Seat warmer*

Owner Maintenance

DESCRIPTION		FUSE RATING	PROTECTED COMPONENT
8	SUNROOF	10 A	Sunroof*
9	F.OUTLET	15 A	Accessory sockets
10	MIRROR	7.5 A	Power control mirror
11	R.OUTLET1	15 A	Accessory sockets
12	SCR3	15 A	—
13	SCR4	15 A	—
14	R.OUTLET2	15 A	Accessory sockets*
15	USB	7.5 A	USB power outlet*
16	PLG	20 A	Power liftgate*
17	M.DEF	7.5 A	Mirror defogger
18	R.SEAT W	20 A	Rear seat warmer*
19	INTERIOR2	15 A	Audio system
20	AT IND	7.5 A	AT shift indicator
21	P.SEAT P	30 A	Power seat*

Owner Maintenance

Emission Control Maintenance (Australia)

Emission control maintenance is periodically required to ensure proper emission control and engine performance. Refer to scheduled maintenance (page 6-3) for information on when and how to perform the following inspections and servicing items.

For owners with a Mazda Workshop Manual, refer to the sections on Predelivery Inspection and Scheduled Maintenance.

▼ Engine

Drive belts

Inspect the belts for cracks and other damage. Replace if necessary.

Engine oil

SKYACTIV-G 2.5

When changing the engine oil, use API SL or higher oil of the proper viscosity for your climate.

SKYACTIV-D 2.2

When changing the engine oil, use ACEA C3 oil of the proper viscosity for your climate.

Change it more frequently during heavy use under any of these conditions:

1. Dusty environment
2. Extended idling or low-speed operations
3. Driving for a prolonged period in cold temperatures or in an extremely humid climate
4. Repeated short-distance driving

Oil filter

Do not fail to change the oil filter as prescribed. As with the engine oil, under severe driving conditions, the filter should be changed more frequently.

Cooling system

When inspecting hoses (including the heater hose), connections, and clamps, look for leaks, swellings, cracks, and other damage. Replace any defective hose or part.

Engine coolant

Change the coolant and flush the cooling system as prescribed.

▼ Fuel System and Air-Intake Control System

Fuel lines and hoses

When inspecting the fuel pipes, hoses, connections and clamps, look for leaks, deterioration, and other damage.

Replace any defective hose or part.

Air filter

Besides replacing the filter regularly, always replace it if it is torn or otherwise damaged. Inspect and replace it more often than prescribed if the vehicle is used in very dusty or sandy areas.

▼ Ignition System (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

Spark plugs

To maintain proper engine operation and emission control, spark plugs must always be in good condition.

▼ Evaporative Emission Control System

When inspecting evaporative line hoses and connections (including the fuel tank and filler cap), apply pressure to determine pressure-holding capacity. Replace any damaged or deteriorated parts.

▼ Exhaust Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

E.G.R. system

The EGR valve must function properly and no leaks can be evident in the pipes and connections. Replace any damaged part.

Clean the pipes, valve and connections from time to time.



Do not touch the EGR pipes while the engine is running or until they have cooled off after the engine is stopped:

EGR pipes are extremely hot during engine operation and for a while after operation. Touching them could cause severe burns.

Appearance Care

Exterior Care

The paintwork on your Mazda represents the latest technical developments in composition and methods of application.

Environmental hazards, however, can harm the paint's protective properties, if proper care is not taken.

Here are some examples of possible damage, with tips on how to prevent them.

Etching Caused by Acid Rain or Industrial Fallout

Occurrence

Industrial pollutants and vehicle emissions drift into the air and mix with rain or dew to form acids. These acids can settle on a vehicle's finish. As the water evaporates, the acid becomes concentrated and can damage the finish.

And the longer the acid remains on the surface, the greater the chance is for damage.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you suspect that acid rain has settled on your vehicle's finish.

Damage Caused by Bird Dropping, Insects, or Tree Sap

Occurrence

Bird droppings contain acids. If these are not removed they can eat away the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork.

When insects stick to the paint surface and decompose, corrosive compounds form. These can erode the clear and colour base coat of the vehicle's paintwork if they are not removed.

Tree sap will harden and adhere permanently to the paint finish. If you scratch the sap off while it is hard, some vehicle paint could come off with it.

Prevention

It is necessary to have your Mazda washed and waxed to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. This should be done as soon as possible.

Bird droppings can be removed with a soft sponge and water. If you are travelling and these are not available, a moistened tissue may also take care of the problem. The cleaned area should be waxed according to the instructions in this section.

Insects and tree sap are best removed with a soft sponge and water or a commercially available chemical cleaner.

Another method is to cover the affected area with dampened newspaper for 1 to 2 hours. After removing the newspaper, rinse off the loosened debris with water.

Water Marks

Occurrence

Rain, fog, dew, and even tap water can contain harmful minerals such as salt and lime. If moisture containing these minerals settles on the vehicle and evaporates, the minerals will concentrate and harden to form white rings. The rings can damage your vehicle's finish.

Prevention

It is necessary to wash and wax your vehicle to preserve its finish according to the instructions in this section. These steps should be taken immediately after you find water marks on your vehicle's finish.

Paint Chipping

Occurrence

Paint chipping occurs when gravel thrown in the air by another vehicle's tyres hits your vehicle.

How to avoid paint chipping

Keeping a safe distance between you and the vehicle ahead reduces the chances of having your paint chipped by flying gravel.

NOTE

- *The paint chipping zone varies with the speed of the vehicle. For example, when travelling at 90 km/h (56 mph), the paint chipping zone is 50 m (164 ft).*
- *In low temperatures a vehicle's finish hardens. This increases the chance of paint chipping.*

- *Chipped paint can lead to rust forming on your Mazda. Before this happens, repair the damage by using Mazda touch-up paint according to the instructions in this section. Failure to repair the affected area could lead to serious rusting and expensive repairs.*

Follow **all** label and container directions when using a chemical cleaner or polish. Read all warnings and cautions.

▼ Maintaining the Finish

Washing



- *When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, the windscreen wipers may operate automatically in the following cases:*
 - *The area of the windscreen above the rain sensor is touched or wiped with a cloth.*
 - *The windscreen or the rain sensor area in the cabin is hit.*

When the ignition is switched ON and the wiper lever is in the AUTO position, do not touch the windscreen or the windscreen wipers. Otherwise, the windscreen wipers will operate automatically which could catch your fingers or damage the windscreen wipers.

When removing ice or snow, or cleaning the windscreen, always make sure the wiper lever is in the OFF position.

Appearance Care

- Do not spray water in the engine compartment. Otherwise, it could result in engine-starting problems or damage to electrical parts.
- When washing and waxing the vehicle, be careful not to apply excessive force to any single area of the vehicle roof or the aerial. Otherwise, you could dent the vehicle or damage the aerial.
- **(Vehicles with hands-free liftgate)**
When washing the vehicle, turn off the hands-free liftgate using the Mazda Connect or do not bring the transmitter into the area around the liftgate. Otherwise, the liftgate could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident. Refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-16.

To help protect the finish from rust and deterioration, wash your Mazda thoroughly and frequently, at least once a month, with lukewarm or cold water.

If the vehicle is washed improperly, the paint surface could be scratched. Here are some examples of how scratching could occur.

Scratches occur on the paint surface when:

- The vehicle is washed without first rinsing off dirt and other foreign matter.
- The vehicle is washed with a rough, dry, or dirty cloth.
- The vehicle is washed at a car wash that uses brushes that are dirty or too stiff.
- Cleansers or wax containing abrasives are used.

NOTE

- Mazda is not responsible for scratches caused by automatic car washes or improper washing.
- Scratches are more noticeable on vehicles with darker paint finishes.

To minimize scratches on the vehicle's paint finish:

- Rinse off any dirt or other foreign matter using lukewarm or cold water before washing.
- Use plenty of lukewarm or cold water and a soft cloth when washing the vehicle. Do not use a nylon cloth.
- Rub gently when washing or drying the vehicle.
- Take your vehicle only to a car wash that keeps its brushes well maintained.
- Do not use abrasive cleansers or wax that contain abrasives.



- Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may damage the protective coating; also, cleaners and detergents may discolour or deteriorate the paint.

Pay special attention to removing salt, dirt, mud, and other foreign material from the underside of the wings, and make sure the drain holes in the lower edges of the doors and rocker panels are clean.

Insects, tar, tree sap, bird droppings, industrial fallout, and similar deposits can damage the finish if not removed

immediately. When prompt washing with plain water is ineffective, use a mild soap made for use on vehicles.

Thoroughly rinse off all soap with lukewarm or cold water. Do not allow soap to dry on the finish.

After washing the vehicle, dry it with a clean chamois to prevent water spots from forming.



Dry off brakes that have become wet by driving slowly, releasing the accelerator pedal and lightly applying the brakes several times until the brake performance returns to normal:

Driving with wet brakes is dangerous. Increased stopping distance or the vehicle pulling to one side when braking could result in a serious accident. Light braking will indicate whether the brakes have been affected.

When using an automatic car wash

- Retract the door mirrors.
- The automatic car wash brushes could reduce the paint lustre or hasten paint deterioration.

When using a high water pressure car wash

High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of car wash machine. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle, the force of the spray could damage or deform the molding, affect the sealability of parts, and

allow water to penetrate the interior. Keep a sufficient space (30 cm (12 in) or more) between the nozzle and the vehicle. In addition, do not spend too much time spraying the same area of the vehicle, and be very careful when spraying between gaps in doors and around windows.

Waxing

Your vehicle needs to be waxed when water no longer beads on the finish. Always wash and dry the vehicle before waxing it. In addition to the vehicle body, wax the metal trim to maintain its lustre.

1. Use wax which contains no abrasives. Wax containing abrasives will remove paints and could damage bright metal parts.
2. Use a good grade of natural wax for metallic, mica, and solid colours.
3. When waxing, coat evenly with the sponge supplied or a soft cloth.
4. Wipe off the wax with a soft cloth.



(Vehicles with hands-free liftgate)

When waxing the vehicle, turn off the hands-free liftgate using the Mazda Connect or do not bring the transmitter into the area around the liftgate. The liftgate could open unexpectedly resulting in an accident.

Refer to Power Liftgate on page 3-16.

NOTE

A spot remover to remove oil, tar, and similar materials will usually also take off the wax. Rewax these areas even if the rest of the vehicle does not need it.

Appearance Care

▼ Paint Damage Touch-up

Repair damage to the finish caused by stone chipping, damage during parking etc., by using Mazda touch-up paint before rust begins to form. First, remove the dirt and grease with a clean soft cloth.

If rust has already begun to form:

1. Remove rust completely with sandpaper.
2. Wipe with a clean soft cloth.
3. Apply rust preventive primer to the area.
4. After drying it completely, apply a suitable top coat material to the area.

Of course there will be no problem if you assign the work to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Cavity Protection

Cavities are treated for protection at the factory, but additional protective treatment after the vehicle has been put into use will extend the life of the body.

Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) concerning this additional precaution.

▼ Bright-Metal Maintenance

- Use tar remover to remove road tar and insects. Never do this with a knife or similar tool.
- To prevent corrosion on bright-metal surfaces, apply wax or chrome preservative and rub it to a high lustre.
- During cold weather or in coastal areas, cover bright-metal parts with a coating of wax or preservative heavier than usual. It would also help to coat them

with noncorrosive petroleum jelly or some other protective compound.

CAUTION

Do not use steel wool, abrasive cleaners, or strong detergents containing highly alkaline or caustic agents on chrome-plated or anodised aluminium parts. This may result in damage to the protective coating and cause discolouration or paint deterioration.

▼ Undercoating

This special coating is applied to the critical parts of the underside to protect vehicles from damage caused by chemicals or stones. This coating is liable to be damaged with time. Check this coating periodically.

Should repairs be necessary, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). They are well informed on how repairs should be made.

▼ Aluminium Wheel Maintenance

A protective coating is provided over the aluminium wheels. Special care is needed to protect this coating.

CAUTION

Do not use any detergent other than mild detergent. Before using any detergent, verify the ingredients. Otherwise, the product could discolour or stain the aluminium wheels.

NOTE

- Do not use a wire brush or any abrasive cleaner, polishing compound, or solvent on aluminium wheels. They may damage the coating.
- Always use a sponge or soft cloth to clean the wheels.
Rinse the wheels thoroughly with lukewarm or cold water. Also, be sure to clean the wheels after driving on dusty or salted roads to help prevent corrosion.
- Avoid washing your vehicle in an automatic car wash that uses high-speed or hard brushes.

▼ Plastic Part Maintenance

- When cleaning the plastic lenses of the lights, do not use petrol, paraffin, rectified spirit, paint, thinner, highly acidic detergents, or strongly alkaline detergents. Otherwise, these chemical agents can discolour or damage the surfaces resulting in a significant loss in functionality. If plastic parts become inadvertently exposed to any of these chemical agents, flush with water immediately.
- If plastic parts such as the bumpers become inadvertently exposed to chemical agents or fluids such as petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid, it could cause discolouration, staining, or paint peeling. Wipe off any such chemical agents or fluids using a soft cloth immediately.
- High water temperature and high water pressure car washers are available depending on the type of high pressure car washer device. If the car washer nozzle is put too close to the vehicle or aimed at one area for an extended period of time, it could deform plastic parts or damage the paint.
- Do not use wax containing compounds (polish). Otherwise, it could result in paint damage.
- In addition, do not use an electrical or air tool to apply wax. Otherwise, the frictional heat generated could result in deformation of plastic parts or paint damage.

Appearance Care

Interior Care

WARNING

Do not spray water into the vehicle cabin:
Spraying water into the vehicle cabin is dangerous as electrical devices such as the audio and switches could get wet resulting in a malfunction or vehicle fire.

NOTE

- Do not wipe the interior using alcohol, chlorine bleach, or organic solvents such as thinner, benzene, and petrol. Otherwise, it may cause discoloration or stains.
- Rubbing hard with a stiff brush or cloth may cause damage.

If the vehicle interior becomes soiled by any of the following, wipe it off immediately using a soft cloth.

Leaving it uncleaned could cause discoloration, stains, cracks, or peeling of the coating, and it will make it hard to wipe off later.

- Beverage or fragrance
- Grease or oil
- Soiling

▼ Seat Belt Maintenance

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
3. Before retracting seat belts which have been pulled out for cleaning, dry them

off thoroughly and make sure there is no remaining moisture on them.

WARNING

If a seat belt appears frayed or has abrasions, have it replaced by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer):

If a seat belt is used under such a condition, it cannot function at its full capacity which could result in serious injury or death.

Use a mild detergent to remove soiling from a seat belt:

If organic solvents are used for cleaning the seat belts or they become stained or bleached, there is the possibility of them becoming weakened and as a result, they may not function at their full capacity which could cause serious injury or death.

NOTE

Clean seat belts diligently if they get dirty. Leaving them uncleaned will make it difficult to clean them later, and it may affect the smooth retracting of the seat belt.

▼ Vinyl Upholstery Maintenance

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼ Upholstery and Synthetic Leather Maintenance

Fabric

1. Clean the soiled area by lightly dabbing it with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

Synthetic leather

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼ Leather Upholstery Maintenance*

1. Remove dust and sand using a vacuum cleaner.
2. Wipe off the soiled area with a soft cloth and a suitable, special cleaner or a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (about 5%) diluted with water.
3. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.
4. Remove moisture with a dry, soft cloth and allow the leather to further dry in a well-ventilated, shaded area. If the leather gets wet such as from rain, remove the moisture and dry it as soon as possible.

NOTE

- Because genuine leather is a natural material, its surface is not uniform and it may have natural scars, scratches, and wrinkles.
- To maintain the quality for as long as possible, periodical maintenance, about twice a year, is recommended.
- If the leather upholstery comes into contact with any of the following, clean it immediately.
Leaving it uncleaned could cause premature wear, mold, or stains.

- Sand or dirt
- Grease or oil, such as hand cream
- Alcohol, such as in cosmetic or hair dressing items
- If the leather upholstery gets wet, promptly remove moisture with a dry cloth. Remaining moisture on the surface may cause deterioration such as hardening and shrinkage.
- Exposure to direct sunlight for long periods may cause deterioration and shrinkage. When parking the car under direct sunlight for long periods, shade the interior using sunshades.
- Do not leave vinyl products on the leather upholstery for long periods. They may affect the leather quality and colouring. If the cabin temperature becomes hot, the vinyl may deteriorate and adhere to the genuine leather.

Appearance Care

▼ Plastic Part Maintenance



Do not use polishing agents. Depending on the product ingredients, they could cause discolouration, stains, cracks or peeling of the coating.

▼ Instrument Panel Top (Soft pad) Maintenance

Extremely soft material is used for the soft pad surface. If the soft pad surface is rubbed harshly with a dry cloth, it could result in the surface being damaged and leaving white scratch marks.

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5%) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

▼ Panel Maintenance

If a panel becomes soiled, wipe it off with a soft cloth soaked in clean water and thoroughly wrung out.

If some areas require further cleaning, use the following procedure:

1. Wipe the soiled area with a soft cloth soaked in a mild detergent (approx. 5 %) diluted with water.
2. Wipe off the remaining detergent using a cloth soaked in clean water and wrung out well.

NOTE

Be particularly careful when cleaning shiny surface panels and metallic parts such as plating as they can be scratched easily.

▼ Active Driving Display Maintenance

The dust-proof sheet has a coating. When cleaning, do not use a hard or rough-surface cloth, or cleaning detergent. In addition, if a chemical solvent gets on the active driving display, wipe it off immediately. The dust-proof sheet could be damaged and the surface coating could be scratched. Use a fine, soft cloth such as those used for cleaning eyeglasses.

NOTE

Use of compressed air when cleaning the dust-proof sheet is recommended.

▼ Cleaning the Window Interiors

If the windows become covered with an oily, greasy, or waxy film, clean them with glass cleaner. Follow the directions on the container.



- *Do not scrape or scratch the inside of the window glass. It could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*
- *When washing the inside of the window glass, use a soft cloth dampened in lukewarm water, gently wiping the thermal filaments and the aerial lines. Use of glass cleaning products could damage the thermal filaments and the aerial lines.*

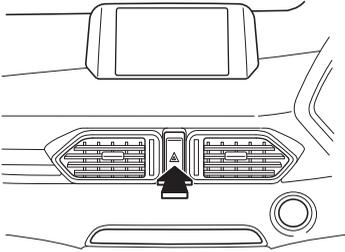
Helpful information on what to do if a problem arises with the vehicle.

Parking in an Emergency	7-2		
Parking in an Emergency.....	7-2		
Flat Tyre	7-3		
Spare Tyre and Tool Storage.....	7-3		
Changing a Flat Tyre.....	7-7		
Battery Runs Out	7-12		
Jump-Starting.....	7-12		
Emergency Starting	7-15		
Starting a Flooded Engine (SKYACTIV-G 2.5).....	7-15		
Push-Starting.....	7-15		
Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	7-16		
Overheating	7-17		
Overheating.....	7-17		
Emergency Towing	7-19		
Towing Description.....	7-19		
			Towing Hooks..... 7-21
		Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds	7-23
		If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes.....	7-23
		Message Indicated on Display.....	7-37
		Message Indicated in Multi- information Display.....	7-39
		Warning Sound is Activated.....	7-42
		When Liftgate Cannot be Opened	7-48
		When Liftgate Cannot be Opened.....	7-48
		Active Driving Display Does Not Operate	7-49
		If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate.....	7-49

Parking in an Emergency

Parking in an Emergency

The hazard warning lights should always be used when you stop on or near a roadway in an emergency.



The hazard warning lights warn other drivers that your vehicle is a traffic hazard and that they must take extreme caution when near it.



Depress the hazard warning flasher and all the direction indicators will flash. The hazard warning indicator lights in the instrument cluster flash simultaneously.

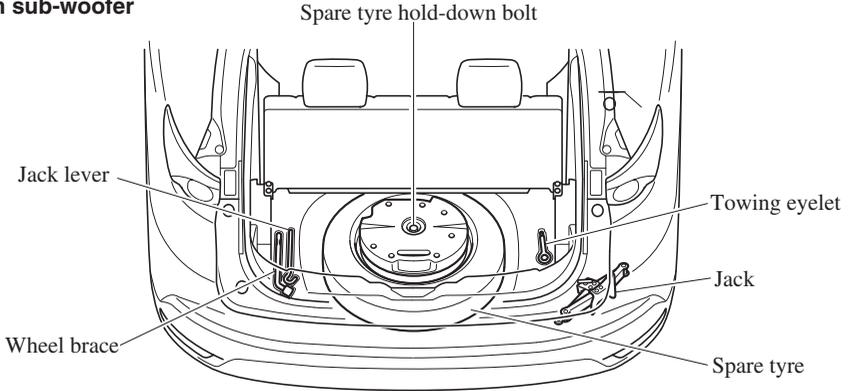
NOTE

- *The direction indicators do not work when the hazard warning lights are on.*
- *Check local regulations about the use of hazard warning lights while the vehicle is being towed to verify that it is not in violation of the law.*

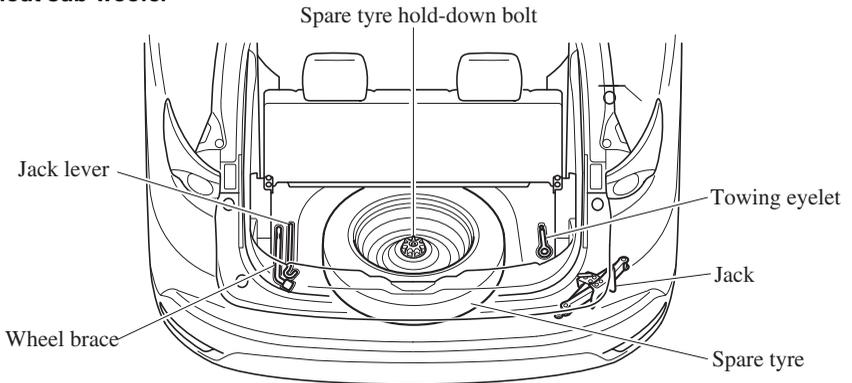
Spare Tyre and Tool Storage

Spare tyre and tools are stored in the locations illustrated in the diagram.

With sub-woofer



Without sub-woofer

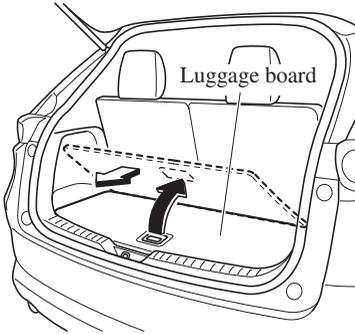


Flat Tyre

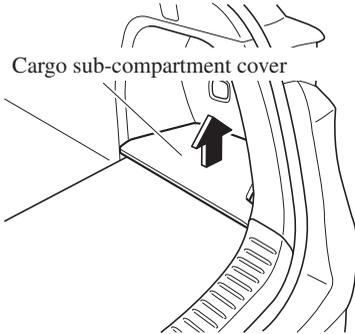
▼ Jack

To remove the jack

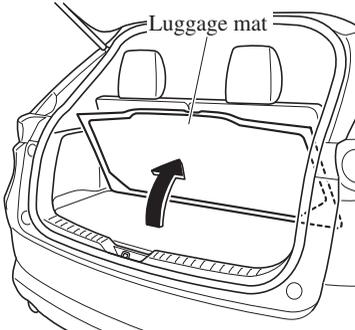
1. Open the luggage board, and remove it.



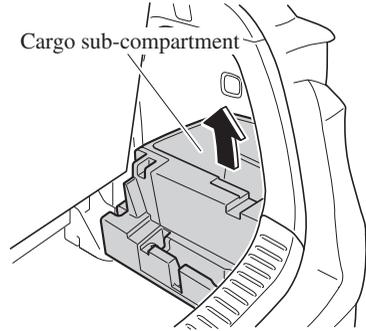
2. Remove the cargo sub-compartment cover on the right side.



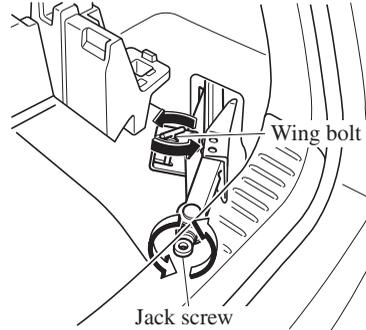
3. Lift the luggage mat.



4. Remove the cargo sub-compartment.



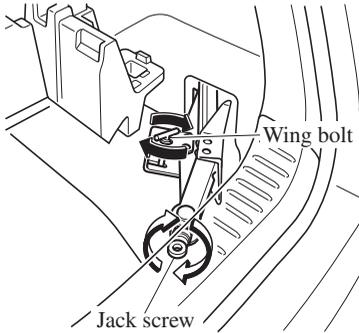
5. Turn the wing bolt and jack screw anticlockwise.



To secure the jack

1. Insert the wing bolt into the jack with the jack screw pointing back and turn the wing bolt clockwise to temporarily tighten it.

2. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure.



3. Turn the wing bolt completely to secure the jack.

NOTE

If the jack is not completely secured, it could rattle while driving. Make sure the jack screw is sufficiently tightened.

4. Insert the cover tabs and install the cover.

NOTE

Verify that the cover is securely installed.

Maintenance

- Always keep the jack clean.
- Make sure the moving parts are kept free from dirt or rust.
- Make sure the screw thread is adequately lubricated.

▼ Spare Tyre

Your Mazda has a temporary spare tyre. The temporary spare tyre is lighter and smaller than a conventional tyre, and is designed only for emergency use and should be used only for VERY short periods. Temporary spare tyres should NEVER be used for long drives or extended periods.

⚠ WARNING

Do not install the temporary spare tyre on the front wheels (driving wheels):

Driving with the temporary spare tyre on one of the front driving wheels is dangerous. Handling will be affected. You could lose control of the vehicle, especially on ice or snow bound roads, and have an accident. Move a regular tyre to the front wheel and install the temporary spare tyre to the rear.

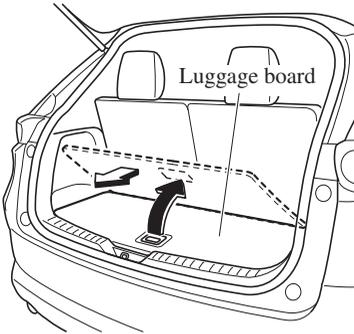
⚠ CAUTION

- *When using the temporary spare tyre, driving stability may decrease compared to when using only the conventional tyre. Drive carefully.*
- *To avoid damage to the temporary spare tyre or to the vehicle, observe the following precautions:*
 - *Do not exceed 80 km/h (50 mph).*
 - *Avoid driving over obstacles. Also, do not drive through an automatic car wash. This tyre's diameter is smaller than a conventional tyre, so the ground clearance is reduced.*
 - *Do not use a tyre chain on this tyre because it will not fit properly.*
 - *Do not use your temporary spare tyre on any other vehicle, it has been designed only for your Mazda.*
 - *Use only one temporary spare tyre on your vehicle at the same time.*

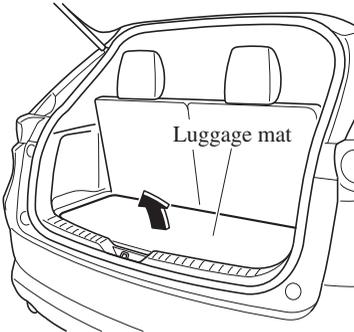
Flat Tyre

To remove the spare tyre

1. Open the luggage board, and remove it.

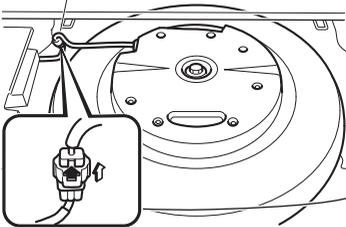


2. Remove the luggage mat.



3. For vehicles equipped with a sub-woofer, uncouple the connector.

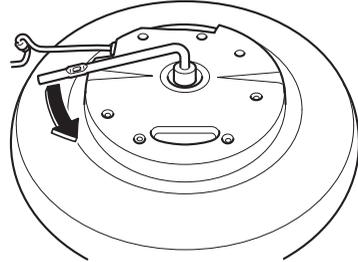
Connector



NOTE

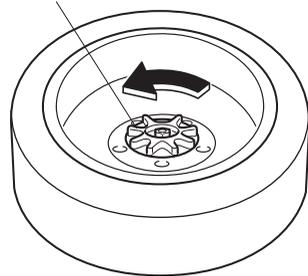
Extra strength may be required to uncouple the connector. Be sure to squeeze the tab firmly.

4. For vehicles equipped with a sub-woofer, loosen the hold-down bolt and remove the woofer and spare tyre.



For vehicles not equipped with a sub-woofer, turn the spare tyre hold-down bolt anticlockwise and remove the spare tyre.

Spare tyre hold-down bolt



To secure the spare tyre

Store the spare tyre in the reverse order of removal. After storing, verify that the spare tyre is stored securely.

Changing a Flat Tyre

NOTE

If the following occurs while driving, it could indicate a flat tyre.

- *Steering becomes difficult.*
- *The vehicle begins to vibrate excessively.*
- *The vehicle pulls in one direction.*

If you have a flat tyre, drive slowly to a level spot that is well off the road and out of the way of traffic to change the tyre. Stopping in traffic or on the shoulder of a busy road is dangerous.

! WARNING

Be sure to follow the directions for changing a tyre:

Changing a tyre is dangerous if not done properly. The vehicle can slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

Never allow anyone inside a vehicle supported by a jack:

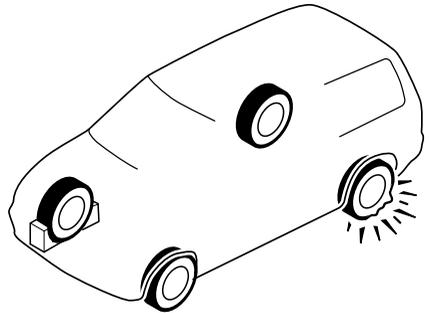
Allowing someone to remain in a vehicle supported by a jack is dangerous. The occupant could cause the vehicle to fall resulting in serious injury.

NOTE

Make sure the jack is well lubricated before using it.

1. Park on a hard, level surface off the right-of-way and firmly set the parking brake.

2. Shift into Park (P) and turn off the engine.
3. Turn on the hazard warning flasher.
4. Have passengers get out of the vehicle and away from the vehicle and traffic.
5. Remove any luggage, the jack, tools, and spare tyre (page 7-3).
6. Block the wheel diagonally opposite the flat tyre. When blocking a wheel, place a tyre block both in front and behind the tyre.



NOTE

When blocking a tyre, use rocks or wood blocks of sufficient size if possible to hold the tyre in place.

▼ Removing a Flat Tyre

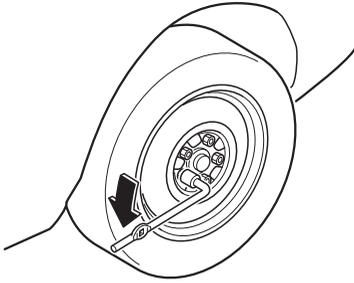
! WARNING

When jacking-up a vehicle, always shift the selector lever to P position, apply the parking brake, and place wheel blocks in the position diagonally opposed to the jack:

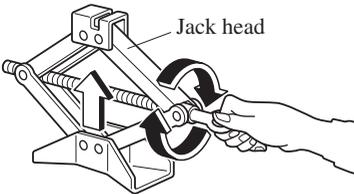
Changing a flat tyre without using wheel blocks is dangerous because the vehicle may move and fall off the jack even with the selector lever is in P position, which could result in an accident.

Flat Tyre

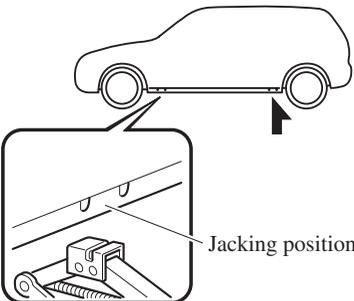
1. Loosen the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise one turn each, but do not remove any wheel nuts until the tyre has been raised off the ground.



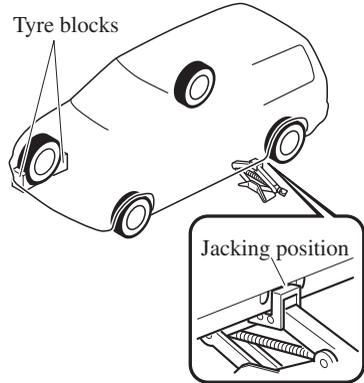
2. Place the jack on the ground.
3. Turn the jack screw in the direction shown in the figure and adjust the jack head so that it is close to the jack-up position.



4. Place the jack under the jack-up position closest to the tyre being changed with the jack head squarely under the jack-up point.



5. Continue raising the jack head gradually by rotating the screw with your hand until the jack head is inserted into the jack-up position.



WARNING

Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual: Attempting to jack the vehicle in positions other than those recommended in this manual is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure or even kill someone. Use only the front and rear jacking positions recommended in this manual.

Do not jack up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or place any objects on or under the jack: Jacking up the vehicle in a position other than the designated jack-up position or placing objects on or under the jack is dangerous as it could deform the vehicle body or the vehicle could fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

Use only the jack provided with your Mazda:

Using a jack that is not designed for your Mazda is dangerous. The vehicle could slip off the jack and seriously injure someone.

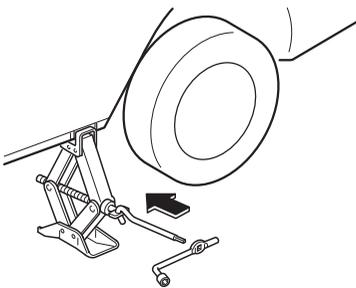
Never place objects under the jack:

Jacking the vehicle with an object under the jack is dangerous. The jack could slip and someone could be seriously injured by the jack or the falling vehicle.

NOTE

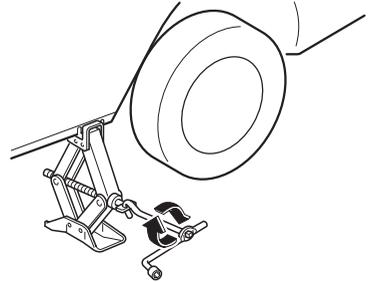
When raising the jack head into the jacking position and aligning the groove in the jack head with the rail under the vehicle body, the top of the jack head contacts the vehicle's underbody without the rail contacting the bottom of the groove.

6. Insert the jack lever and attach the wheel brace to tyre jack.



7. Turn the jack handle clockwise and raise the vehicle high enough so that the spare tyre can be installed. Before removing the wheel nuts, make sure

your Mazda is firmly in position and that it cannot slip or move.



! WARNING

Do not jack up the vehicle higher than is necessary:

Jacking up the vehicle higher than is necessary is dangerous as it could destabilize the vehicle resulting in an accident.

Do not start the engine or shake the vehicle while it is jacked up:

Starting the engine or shaking the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could cause the vehicle to fall off the jack resulting in an accident.

Never go under the vehicle while it is jacked up:

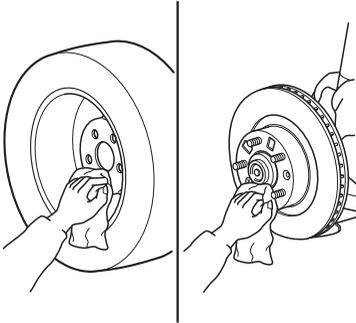
Going under the vehicle while it is jacked up is dangerous as it could result in death or serious injury if the vehicle were to fall off the jack.

8. Remove the wheel nuts by turning them anticlockwise; then remove the wheel and centre cap.

Flat Tyre

▼ Mounting the Spare Tyre

1. Remove dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel and hub, including the hub bolts, with a cloth.



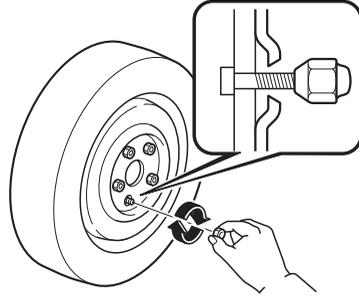
⚠ WARNING

Make sure the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and wheel nuts are clean before changing or replacing tyres:

When changing or replacing a tyre, not removing dirt and grime from the mounting surfaces of the wheel, hub and hub bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident.

2. Mount the spare tyre.

3. Install the wheel nuts with the bevelled edge inward; tighten them by hand.

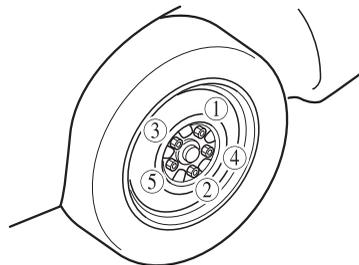


⚠ WARNING

Do not apply oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts and do not tighten the wheel nuts beyond the recommended tightening torque:

Applying oil or grease to wheel nuts and bolts is dangerous. The wheel nuts could loosen while driving and cause the tyre to come off, resulting in an accident. In addition, wheel nuts and bolts could be damaged if tightened more than necessary.

4. Turn the wheel brace anticlockwise and lower the vehicle.
5. Use the wheel brace to tighten the nuts in the order shown.



If you are unsure of how tight the nuts should be, have them inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Nut tightening torque	
N·m (kgf·m, ft·lbf)	108—147 (12—14, 80—108)

 **WARNING**

Always securely and correctly tighten the wheel nuts:

Improperly or loosely tightened wheel nuts are dangerous. The wheel could wobble or come off. This could result in loss of vehicle control and cause a serious accident.

Be sure to reinstall the same nuts you removed or replace them with metric nuts of the same configuration:

Because the wheel studs and wheel nuts on your Mazda have metric threads, using a non-metric nut is dangerous. On a metric stud, it would not secure the wheel and would damage the stud, which could cause the wheel to slip off and cause an accident.

6. Remove the tyre blocks and store the tools and jack.
7. Store the damaged tyre in the luggage compartment.
8. Check the inflation pressure. Refer to Tyres on page 9-11.
9. Have the flat tyre repaired or replaced as soon as possible.

 **WARNING**

Do not drive with any tyres that have incorrect air pressure:

Driving on tyres with incorrect air pressure is dangerous. Tyres with incorrect pressure could affect handling and result in an accident. When you check the regular tyres' air pressure, check the spare tyre, too.

NOTE

To prevent the jack and tool from rattling, store them properly.

Battery Runs Out

Jump-Starting

Jump-starting is dangerous if done incorrectly. So follow the procedure carefully. If you feel unsure about jump-starting, we strongly recommend that you have a competent service technician do the work.



Follow These Precautions Carefully:

To ensure safe and correct handling of the battery, read the following precautions carefully before using the battery or inspecting it.



Keep flames and sparks away from open battery cells and do not allow metal tools to contact the positive (+) or negative (-) terminal of the battery when working near a battery. Do not allow the positive (+) terminal to contact the vehicle body:

Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.



Keep all flames and sparks away from open battery cells because hydrogen gas is produced from open battery cells while charging the battery or adding battery fluid:

Flames and sparks near open battery cells are dangerous. Hydrogen gas, produced during normal battery operation, could ignite and cause the battery to explode. An exploding battery can cause serious burns and injuries. Keep all flames including cigarettes and sparks away from open battery cells.

Do not jump-start a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level:

Jump-starting a frozen battery or one with a low fluid level is dangerous. It may rupture or explode, causing serious injury.

Connect the negative lead to a good ground point away from the battery:

Connecting the end of the second jumper lead to the negative (-) terminal of the discharged battery is dangerous.

A spark could cause the gas around the battery to explode and injure someone.

Battery Runs Out

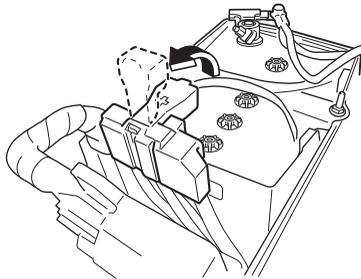
Route the jumper leads away from parts that will be moving:

Connecting a jumper lead near or to moving parts (cooling fans, belts) is dangerous. The lead could get caught when the engine starts and cause serious injury.



Use only a 12 V booster system. You can damage a 12 V starter, ignition system, and other electrical parts beyond repair with a 24 V power supply (two 12 V batteries in series or a 24 V motor generator set).

1. Move the booster vehicle so that its battery is as close as possible to your vehicle's battery.
2. Make sure that the power such as for the headlights and air conditioner is turned off.
3. Remove the battery cover.



4. Turn off the booster vehicle's engine and connect the jumper leads in the following order.
Make sure that the jumper leads are securely connected so that they do not disconnect due to engine vibrations.

1st lead

- ① Positive (+) terminal on the discharged battery
- ② Positive (+) terminal on booster vehicle's battery

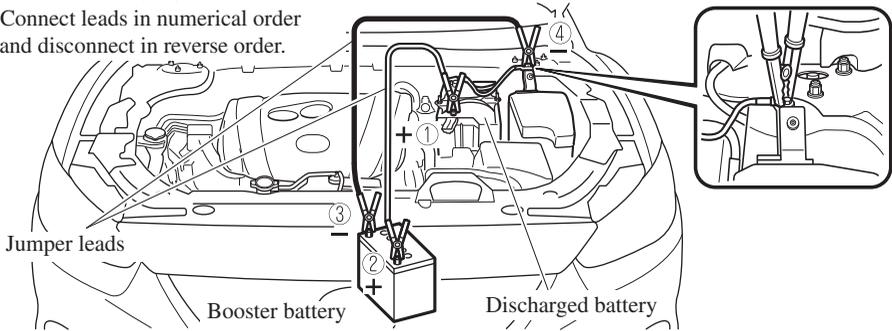
2nd lead

- ③ Negative (-) terminal on booster vehicle's battery

Battery Runs Out

④ Location shown in the figure (do not connect to the negative (-) terminal of the battery)

Connect leads in numerical order and disconnect in reverse order.



5. Start the booster vehicle's engine and rev the engine.
6. Start the engine of your vehicle. Run the engines for about 3 minutes to temporarily charge the battery of your vehicle.
7. Disconnect the jumper leads in the reverse order of their connection.
8. Install the battery cover.
9. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

Starting a Flooded Engine (SKYACTIV-G 2.5)

If the engine fails to start, it may be flooded (excessive fuel in the engine).

Follow this procedure:

1. If the engine does not start within 5 seconds on the first try, wait 10 seconds and try again.
2. Make sure the parking brake is on.
3. Depress the accelerator all the way and hold it there.
4. Depress the brake pedal, then press the push button start. If the engine starts, release the accelerator immediately because the engine will suddenly rev up.
5. If the engine fails to start, crank it without depressing the accelerator.

If the engine still does not start using the previous procedure, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Push-Starting

Do not push-start your Mazda.



Never tow a vehicle to start it:

Towing a vehicle to start it is dangerous. The vehicle being towed could surge forward when its engine starts, causing the 2 vehicles to collide. The occupants could be injured.

NOTE

You cannot start a vehicle with an automatic transaxle by pushing it.

Emergency Starting

Running Out of Fuel (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)

 **CAUTION**

Do not try starting the engine for more than 10 seconds at a time. Doing so, could damage the starter. If the engine does not start on the first try wait about 20 seconds before trying again.

If your vehicle runs out of fuel, add at least 10 L (2.6 US gal, 2.2 Imp gal) of diesel fuel, and try to restart the engine. Because air can get into fuel lines when a vehicle runs out of fuel, your engine may take longer to start. If the engine does not start the first time, try starting it several more times. If it still does not start, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Overheating

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on, the vehicle loses power, or you hear a loud knocking or pinging noise, the engine is probably too hot.

WARNING



Pull over to a safe location, then switch the ignition off and make sure the fan is not running before attempting to work near the cooling fan:

Working near the cooling fan when it is running is dangerous. The fan could continue running indefinitely even if the engine has stopped and the engine compartment temperature is high. You could be hit by the fan and seriously injured.



Do not remove either cooling system cap when the engine and radiator are hot:

When the engine and radiator are hot, scalding coolant and steam may shoot out under pressure and cause serious injury.

Open the bonnet ONLY after steam is no longer escaping from the engine:

Steam from an overheated engine is dangerous. The escaping steam could seriously burn you.

If the high engine coolant temperature warning light turns on:

1. Drive safely to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way.
2. Shift into park (P).
3. Apply the parking brake.
4. Turn off the air conditioner.
5. Check whether coolant or steam is escaping from the engine compartment.

If steam is coming from the engine compartment:

Do not go near the front of the vehicle. Stop the engine. Wait until the steam dissipates, then open the bonnet and start the engine.

If neither coolant nor steam is escaping:

Open the bonnet and idle the engine until it cools.

CAUTION

If the cooling fan does not operate while the engine is running, the engine temperature will increase. Stop the engine and call an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

6. Make sure the cooling fan is operating, then turn off the engine after the temperature has decreased.
7. When cool, check the coolant level.

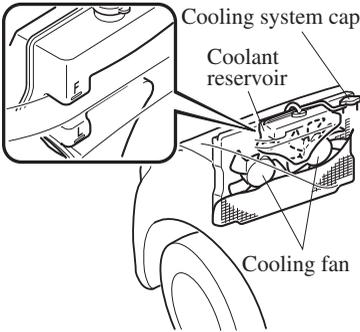
Overheating

If it is low, look for coolant leaks from the radiator and hoses.

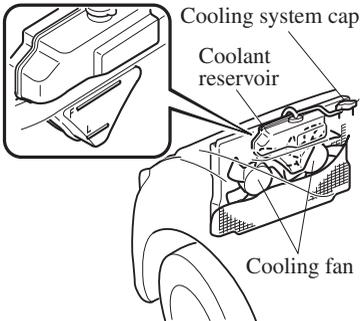
If you find a leak or other damage, or if coolant is still leaking:

Stop the engine and call an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

SKYACTIV-G 2.5



SKYACTIV-D 2.2



If you find no problems, the engine is cool, and no leaks are obvious:

Carefully add coolant as required (page 6-16).

CAUTION

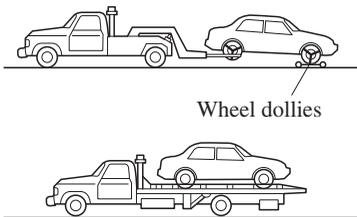
If the engine continues to overheat or frequently overheats, have the cooling system inspected. The engine could be seriously damaged unless repairs are made. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Emergency Towing

Towing Description

We recommend that towing be done only by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a commercial tow-truck service.

Proper lifting and towing are necessary to prevent damage to the vehicle. Particularly when towing a AWD vehicle, where all the wheels are connected to the drive train, proper transporting of the vehicle is absolutely essential to avoid damaging the drive system. Government and local laws must be followed.



A towed FWD vehicle should have its drive wheels (front wheels) off the ground. If excessive damage or other conditions prevent this, use wheel dollies.

When towing a FWD vehicle with the rear wheels on the ground, release the parking brake.

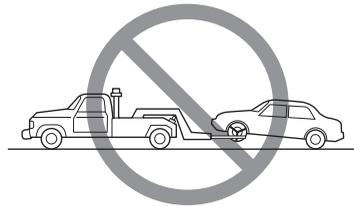
Refer to Electric Parking Brake (EPB) on page 4-79.

A towed AWD vehicle must have all its wheels off the ground.

⚠ WARNING

Always tow a AWD vehicle with all four wheels off the ground:

Towing a AWD vehicle with either the front or rear wheels on the ground is dangerous as the drive train could be damaged, or the vehicle could trail away from the tow truck and cause an accident. If the drive train has been damaged, transport the vehicle on a flatbed truck.



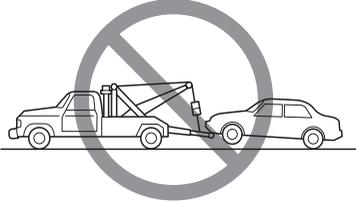
⚠ CAUTION

➤ *Do not tow the vehicle pointed backward with driving wheels on the ground. This may cause internal damage to the transaxle.*

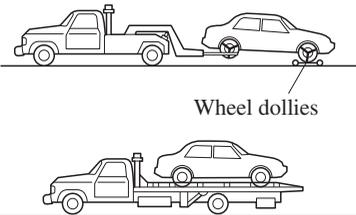


Emergency Towing

- Do not tow with sling-type equipment. This could damage your vehicle. Use wheel-lift or flatbed equipment.



- If the parking brake cannot be released when towing the vehicle, transport the vehicle with all front and rear wheels raised off the ground as shown in the figure. If the vehicle is towed without raising the wheels off the ground, the brake system could be damaged.



If towing service is not available in an emergency, the vehicle may be towed with all four wheels on the ground using the towing hook at the front of the vehicle. Only tow the vehicle on paved surfaces for short distances at low speeds.

CAUTION

Follow these instructions when towing the vehicle with all wheels on the ground.

1. Shift to the N position.
2. Switch the ignition to ON.
3. Release the parking brake.

Refer to Electric Parking Brake (EPB) on page 4-79.

Remember that power assist for the brakes and steering will not be available when the engine is not running.

Towing Hooks

⚠ CAUTION

- The towing eyelet should be used in an emergency (to get the vehicle out of a ditch or a snow bank, for example).
- When using the towing eyelets, always pull the lead or chain in a straight direction with respect to the eyelet. Never apply a sideways force.

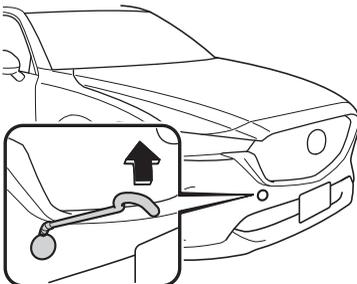
NOTE

When towing with chain or lead, wrap the chain or lead with a soft cloth near the bumper to prevent damage to the bumper.

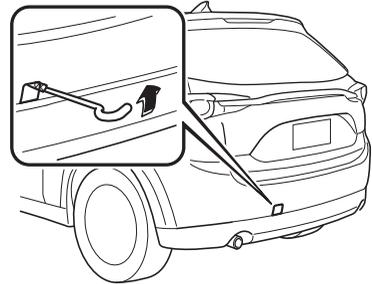
▼ Towing Hooks

1. Remove the towing eyelet and the wheel brace from the luggage compartment (page 7-3).
2. Wrap a flathead screwdriver or similar tool with a soft cloth to prevent damage to a painted bumper, and open the cap located on the front or rear bumper.

Front



Rear



⚠ CAUTION

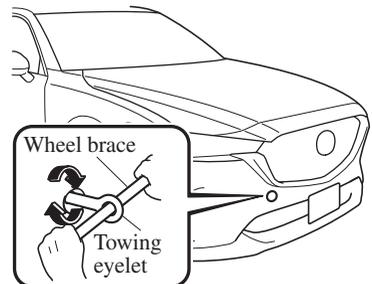
Do not use excessive force as it may damage the cap or scratch the painted bumper surface.

NOTE

Remove the cap completely and store it so as not to lose it.

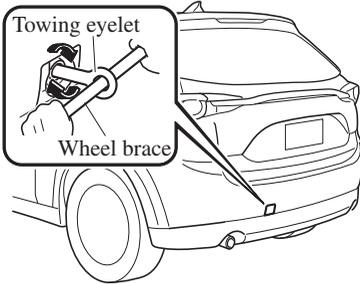
3. Securely install the towing eyelet using the wheel brace.

Front



Emergency Towing

Rear



4. Hook the towing rope to the towing eyelet.

CAUTION

- *If the towing eyelet is not securely tightened, it may loosen or disengage from the bumper when towing the vehicle. Make sure that the towing eyelet is securely tightened to the bumper.*
- *Be careful not to damage the towing eyelet and towing hook, vehicle body, or transaxle system when towing under the following conditions:*
 - *Do not tow a vehicle heavier than yours.*
 - *Do not suddenly accelerate your vehicle as it will apply a severe shock to the towing eyelet and towing hook or rope.*
 - *Do not attach any rope other than to the towing eyelet and towing hook.*

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes

If any warning light turns on/flashes, take appropriate action for each light. There is no problem if the light turns off, however if the light does not turn off or turns on/flashes again, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

The details for some warnings can be viewed on the centre display or multi-information display (Type A/Type B) in the instrument cluster.

Centre display

Mazda Connect (Type A)

1. If the warning light is turned on, select the  icon on the home screen to display the Applications screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select “Warning Guidance” to display the current warnings.
4. Select the applicable warning to view the warning details.

Mazda Connect (Type B)

1. Select “Information” on the home screen.
2. Select “Vehicle Status Monitor”.
3. Select the applicable warning to view the warning details.

NOTE

You can also display the currently occurring warning by sliding the commander knob to the left while on the home screen of the centre display.

Multi-information display (Type A/Type B)

1. Press the INFO switch on the steering switch to display the warning indication screen.
Refer to Multi-information Display (Type A) on page 4-21.
Refer to Multi-information Display (Type B) on page 4-39.

▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

If any of the following warning lights turns on, the system may have a malfunction. Stop the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Brake System Warning Light</p>	<p>If the brake system warning light remains illuminated the brake fluid may be low or there could be a problem with the brake system. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> WARNING </div> <p>Do not drive with the brake system warning light illuminated. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:</p> <p><i>Driving with the brake system warning light illuminated is dangerous. It indicates that your brakes may not work at all or that they could completely fail at any time. If this light remains illuminated, after checking that the parking brake is fully released, have the brakes inspected immediately.</i></p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> CAUTION </div> <p><i>In addition, the effectiveness of the braking may diminish so you may need to depress the brake pedal more strongly than normal to stop the vehicle.</i></p>
 <p>Electronic Brake Force Distribution System Warning</p>	<p>If the electronic brake force distribution control unit determines that some components are operating incorrectly, the control unit may illuminate the brake system warning light and the ABS warning light simultaneously. The problem is likely to be the electronic brake force distribution system.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> WARNING </div> <p>Do not drive with both the ABS warning light and brake warning light illuminated. Have the vehicle towed to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the brakes inspected as soon as possible:</p> <p><i>Driving when the brake system warning light and ABS warning light are illuminated simultaneously is dangerous. When both lights are illuminated, the rear wheels could lock more quickly in an emergency stop than under normal circumstances.</i></p>
 <p>Charging System Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>If the warning light illuminates while driving, it indicates a malfunction of the alternator or of the charging system. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: flex; align-items: center;"> CAUTION </div> <p><i>Do not continue driving when the charging system warning light is illuminated because the engine could stop unexpectedly.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Engine Oil Warning Light</p>	<p>This warning light indicates low engine oil pressure.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  CAUTION </div> <p><i>Do not run the engine if the oil pressure is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.</i></p> <p>If the light illuminates or the warning indication is displayed while driving:</p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Drive to the side of the road and park off the right-of-way on level ground. 2. Turn off the engine and wait 5 minutes for the oil to drain back into the sump. 3. Inspect the engine oil level. (page 6-15) If it's low, add the appropriate amount of engine oil while being careful not to overfill. <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  CAUTION </div> <p><i>Do not run the engine if the oil level is low. Otherwise, it could result in extensive engine damage.</i></p> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> 4. Start the engine and check the warning light. <p>If the light remains illuminated even though the oil level is normal or after adding oil, stop the engine immediately and have your vehicle towed to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>(Red)</p> <p>High Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The light flashes when the engine coolant temperature is extremely high, and illuminates when the engine coolant temperature increases further.</p> <p><u>Handling Procedure</u></p> <p>Flashing light</p> <p>Drive slowly to reduce engine load until you can find a safe place to stop the vehicle and wait for the engine to cool down.</p> <p>Illuminated light</p> <p>This indicates the possibility of overheating. Park the vehicle in a safe place immediately and stop the engine.</p> <p>Refer to Overheating on page 7-17.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  CAUTION </div> <p><i>Do not drive the vehicle with the high engine coolant temperature warning light illuminated. Otherwise, it could result in damage to the engine.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

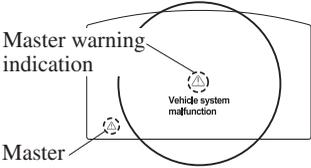
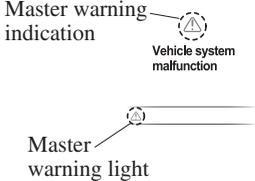
Signal	Warning
 <p>Power Steering Malfunction Indication</p>	<p>The message is displayed if the electric power steering has a malfunction. If the message is displayed, stop the vehicle in a safe place and do not operate the steering wheel. There is no problem if the message in the display turns off after a while. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if the message is displayed continuously.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • If the message is displayed, the power steering will not operate normally. In this case, the steering wheel can still be operated, however, the operation may feel heavy compared to normal, or the steering wheel could vibrate when turning. • Repeatedly jerking the steering wheel left and right while the vehicle is stopped or moving extremely slowly will cause the power steering system to go into protective mode which will make the steering feel heavy, but this does not indicate a problem. If this occurs, park the vehicle safely and wait several minutes for the system to return to normal.

▼ Contact Expert Repairer (We Recommend Authorised Mazda Repairer) and Have Vehicle Inspected

If any of the following warning lights or the indicator light turns on/flashes, the system may have a malfunction. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have your vehicle inspected.

Signal	Warning
 <p>ABS Warning Light</p>	<p>If the ABS warning light stays on while you're driving, the ABS control unit has detected a system malfunction. If this occurs, your brakes will function normally as if the vehicle had no ABS. Should this happen, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the engine is jump-started to charge the battery, uneven rpm occurs and the ABS warning light may illuminate. If this occurs, it is the result of the weak battery and does not indicate an ABS malfunction. Recharge the battery. • The brake assist system does not operate while the ABS warning light is illuminated.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Master Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>Multi-information Display (Type A/Type B)</p> <div style="display: flex; justify-content: space-around;"> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Multi-information Display</p> <p>Type A</p>  </div> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>Type B</p>  </div> </div> <p>(Master warning indication) Displays when notification of the system malfunctions is required. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p>(Master warning light) The master warning light displays when a warning message occurs. This indicates a malfunction with the vehicle system. Check the message indicated in the display and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). For details, refer to the explanations for the warning/indicator lights, in the warning/indicator lights section, which match the symbol in the upper part of the display. If a message is not indicated in the display, operate the INFO switch to display the “Warning” screen. Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display (Type A) on page 4-21. Refer to Message Indicated in Multi-information Display (Type B) on page 4-39.</p>
 <p>Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The warning light illuminates when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Indication/Indicator Light</p>	<p>This warning has the following functions:</p> <p><u>Parking brake warning/Indicator light inspection</u> The light illuminates when the parking brake is applied with the ignition switched to START or ON. It turns off when the parking brake is released.</p> <p><u>When the light is turned on</u> If the light remains turned on even if the parking brake is released, an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p><u>When the light is flashing</u> The light flashes if the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) has a malfunction. If the light remains flashing even if the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is operated, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.</p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Check Engine Light</p>	<p>If this light illuminates while driving, the vehicle may have a problem. It is important to note the driving conditions when the light illuminated and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p>The check engine light may illuminate in the following cases:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The engine's electrical system has a problem. • The emission control system has a problem. • (Except SKYACTIV-D 2.2) The fuel tank level being very low or approaching empty. <p>If the check engine light remains on, or it flashes continuously, do not drive at high speeds and consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  WARNING </div> <p><i>If the check engine light turns on, do not disconnect the battery leads.</i> <i>If the battery leads are disconnected and then reconnected, the engine could be damaged and catch on fire.</i></p>
<p>i-stop (Amber) i-stop Warning Light</p>	<p><u>When the light is turned on</u></p> <p>A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. • The light continues to remain on even though the i-stop OFF switch has been pressed while the engine is running. <p><u>When the light is flashing</u></p> <p>The light continues to flash if the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
<p>AT Automatic Trans- axle Warning Indi- cation</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed when the transaxle has a problem.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">  CAUTION </div> <p><i>If the transaxle warning indication is displayed, the transaxle has an electrical problem. Continuing to drive your Mazda in this condition could cause damage to your transaxle. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
<p>4WD AWD Warning Indication*</p>	<p>“4WD system malfunction” is displayed</p> <p>The indication is displayed under the following conditions. The system may have a malfunction. Have the vehicle checked at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When there is a malfunction in the AWD system. • When there is a large difference between the tyre size of the front and rear wheels. <p>“4WD system high-load” is displayed</p> <p>The indication is displayed under the following conditions. Park the vehicle in a safe place and check that the warning indication light turns off, and then drive the vehicle. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) if the indication is continuously displayed.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • When the differential oil temperature is excessively high. • When there is a large difference between the front and rear wheel rotation, such as when trying to remove the vehicle from mud.
 <p>(Turns on) TCS/DSC Indicator Light</p>	<p>If the light stays on, the TCS, DSC or the brake assist system may have a malfunction and they may not operate correctly. Take your vehicle to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Light</p>	<p>A system malfunction is indicated if the warning light constantly flashes, constantly illuminates or does not illuminate at all when the ignition is switched ON. If any of these occur, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. The system may not operate in an accident.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  WARNING </div> <p><i>Never tamper with the air bag/pretensioner systems and always have an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) perform all servicing and repairs: Self-servicing or tampering with the systems is dangerous. An air bag/pretensioner could accidentally activate or become disabled causing serious injury or death.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Active Bonnet Warning Light</p>	<p>The light turns on when the ignition is switched on for an operation check, and turns off a few seconds later.</p> <p>A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. • Remains turned on/flashing. <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center; font-weight: bold; font-size: 1.2em;">  WARNING </div> <p>Do not drive the vehicle with the active bonnet warning light turned on or flashing: <i>Driving the vehicle with the active bonnet warning light turned on or flashing is dangerous as the active bonnet mechanism may not activate normally and function as intended in the event the vehicle were to contact a pedestrian.</i></p>
 <p>(Flashing) Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light</p>	<p>If the tyre pressure monitoring system has a malfunction, the tyre pressure warning light flashes. Have your vehicle checked by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center; font-weight: bold; font-size: 1.2em;">  WARNING </div> <p>If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking: <i>If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.</i></p> <p><i>To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a tyre repair station.</i></p> <p>Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light: <i>Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>(Amber) KEY Warning Indication</p>	<p>“Keyless System malfunction” is displayed This message is displayed if the advanced keyless entry & push button start system has a problem. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; margin: 10px 0;">  CAUTION </div> <p><i>If the message is indicated, or the push button start indicator light (amber) flashes, the engine may not start. If the engine cannot be started, try starting it using the emergency operation for starting the engine, and have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible. Refer to Emergency Operation for Starting the Engine on page 4-9.</i></p> <p>“Set Power to OFF” is displayed This message is displayed when the driver's door is opened without switching the ignition off.</p> <p>“Key not found” is displayed This message is displayed when any of the following operations is performed with the key out of the operational range or placed in areas inside the cabin where it is difficult for the key to be detected.</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The push button start is pressed with the ignition switched off • The ignition is switched on • All doors are closed without switching the ignition off
 <p>Security Indicator Light</p>	<p>If the engine does not start with the correct key, and the security indicator light remains illuminated or flashing, try the following: Make sure the key is within the operational range for signal transmission. Switch the ignition off, and then restart the engine. If the engine does not start after 3 or more tries, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>(Amber) High Beam Control System (HBC) Warning Indication/Warning Light*</p>	<p>The light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p>NOTE <i>If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) field of view is impaired during bad weather conditions (such as rain, fog, and snow) and when the windscreen is dirty, the warning indication/warning light for the High Beam Control System (HBC) may display/turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem.</i></p>
 <p>(Amber) Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) Warning Indication/Warning Light*</p>	<p>The light remains turned on if there is a problem with the system. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p>NOTE <i>If the Forward Sensing Camera (FSC) field of view is impaired during bad weather conditions (such as rain, fog, and snow) and when the windscreen is dirty, the warning indication/warning light for the Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH) may display/turn on. However, this does not indicate a problem.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning
 <p>Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Indication</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed if there is any malfunction in the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM). Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <p>NOTE <i>If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause. However, it does not indicate a malfunction.</i></p>
 <p>Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF Indicator Light</p>	<p>A problem in the system may be indicated under the following conditions. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> • The light does not turn on when the ignition is switched ON. • The light remains on even when the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) system can be operated. • The light turns on while driving the vehicle. <p>NOTE <i>If the vehicle is driven on a road with less traffic and few vehicles that the radar sensors can detect, the system may pause (The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) OFF indicator light in the instrument cluster illuminates). However, it does not indicate a malfunction.</i></p>
 <p>(Amber) Driver Attention Alert (DAA) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>(Amber) Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Warning Indication</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Warning Indication*</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

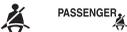
Signal	Warning
 <p>Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Warning Indication</p>	<p>The message is displayed when the system has a malfunction. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The system does not operate when the warning message is displayed.</p> <div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  CAUTION </div> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> ➤ <i>Always use tyres for all wheels that are of the specified size, and the same manufacture, brand, and tread pattern. In addition, do not use tyres with significantly different wear patterns on the same vehicle. If such improper tyres are used, the system may not operate normally.</i> ➤ <i>When an emergency spare tyre is used, the system may not operate normally.</i>
 <p>LED Headlight Warning Light</p>	<p>This light illuminates if there is a malfunction in the LED headlight. Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>

▼ Taking Action

Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 <p>Smart Brake Support/Smart City Brake Support (SBS/SCBS) Warning Indication</p>	<p>The warning indication is displayed if the windscreen or the radar sensor are dirty, or there is a malfunction in the system.</p>	<p>Verify the reason why the warning indication is displayed on the centre display. If the reason why the warning indication is displayed is due to a dirty windscreen, clean the windscreen. If the warning indication is displayed because of a dirty radar sensor, clean the front emblem. For any other reasons, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).</p>
 <p>Low Fuel Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The light turns on when the remaining fuel is about 9.0 L (2.3 US gal, 1.9 Imp gal).</p> <p>NOTE <i>The light illumination timing may vary because fuel inside the fuel tank moves around according to the driving conditions and the vehicle posture.</i></p>	<p>Add fuel.</p>
 <p>Engine Oil Level Warning Light</p>	<p>This warning light indicates that the engine oil level is around the MIN mark (page 6-15).</p>	<p>Add 1 L (0.3 US gal, 0.2 Imp gal) of engine oil (page 6-12).</p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 <p>Seat Belt Warning Light (Front seat)</p>	<p>The seat belt warning light turns on if the driver or front passenger's seat is occupied and the seat belt is not fastened with the ignition switched ON.</p> <p>If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened (only when the front passenger's seat is occupied) and the vehicle is driven at a speed faster than about 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes. After a short time, the warning light stops flashing, but remains illuminated. If a seat belt remains unfastened, the warning light flashes again for a given period of time.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> - If the driver or front passenger's seat belt is unfastened after the warning light turns on, and the vehicle speed exceeds 20 km/h (12 mph), the warning light flashes again. - To allow the front passenger occupant classification sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger's seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference. - If a small child is seated on the front passenger's seat, the warning light may not operate. 	<p>Fasten the seat belts.</p>
 <p>(Red) Seat Belt Warning Light (Rear seat)</p>	<p>If the rear seat belts are not fastened while the ignition is switched ON, the driver and the passenger are alerted by the warning light.</p> <p>The warning light operates even if there is no passenger on the rear seat.</p> <p>NOTE</p> <p>If a rear seat belt is not fastened by a certain period of time after the engine has been started, the warning light turns off.</p>	<p>Fasten the seat belts.</p>
 <p>Door-Ajar/Liftgate-Ajar Warning Indication/Warning Light</p>	<p>The light turns on if any door/liftgate is not closed securely.</p>	<p>Close the door/liftgate securely.</p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Signal	Warning	Action to be taken
 (White) KEY Warning Indication	The key battery is dead.	Replace the key battery (page 6-27).

Tyre Pressure Monitoring System Warning Light (Turns on)



Take the appropriate action and verify that the warning light turns off.

Warning
<p>When the warning light illuminates, and the warning beep sound is heard when tyre pressure is too low in one or more tyres.</p> <div style="background-color: black; color: white; padding: 5px; display: inline-block;">  WARNING </div> <p><i>If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, decrease vehicle speed immediately and avoid sudden manoeuvring and braking:</i> <i>If the tyre pressure monitoring system warning light illuminates or flashes, or the tyre pressure warning beep sound is heard, it is dangerous to drive the vehicle at high speeds, or perform sudden manoeuvring or braking. Vehicle drivability could worsen and result in an accident.</i> <i>To determine if you have a slow leak or a flat, pull over to a safe position where you can check the visual condition of the tyre and determine if you have enough air to proceed to a place where air may be added and the system monitored again by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) or a tyre repair station.</i></p> <p><i>Do not ignore the TPMS Warning Light:</i> <i>Ignoring the TPMS warning light is dangerous, even if you know why it is illuminated. Have the problem taken care of as soon as possible before it develops into a more serious situation that could lead to tyre failure and a dangerous accident.</i></p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Action to be taken

Inspect the tyres and adjust to the specified inflation pressure (page 6-29).

CAUTION

When replacing/repairing the tyres or wheels or both, have the work done by an Authorised Mazda Repairer, or the tyre pressure sensors may be damaged.

NOTE

- Perform tyre pressure adjustment when the tyres are cold. Tyre pressure will vary according to the tyre temperature, therefore let the vehicle stand for 1 hour or only drive it 1.6 km (1 mile) or less before adjusting the tyre pressures. When pressure is adjusted on hot tyres to the cold inflation pressure, the TPMS warning light/beep may turn on after the tyres cool and pressure drops below specification. Also, an illuminated TPMS warning light, resulting from the tyre air pressure dropping due to cold ambient temperature, may turn off if the ambient temperature rises. In this case, it will also be necessary to adjust the tyre air pressures. If the TPMS warning light illuminates due to a drop in tyre air pressure, make sure to check and adjust the tyre air pressures.*
- After adjusting the tyre air pressures, it may require some time for the TPMS warning light to turn off. If the TPMS warning light remains illuminated, drive the vehicle at a speed of at least 25 km/h (16 mph) for 10 minutes, and then verify that it turns off.*
- Tyres lose air naturally over time and the TPMS can tell if the tyres are getting too soft over time or you have a flat. However, when you find one low tyre in a set of four—that is an indication of trouble; you should have someone drive the vehicle slowly forward so you can inspect any low tyre for cuts and any metal objects sticking through tread or sidewall. Put a few drops of water in the valve stem to see if it bubbles indicating a bad valve. Leaks need to be addressed by more than simply refilling the trouble tyre as leaks are dangerous — take it to an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) which has all the equipment to fix tyres, TPMS systems and order the best replacement tyre for your vehicle.*

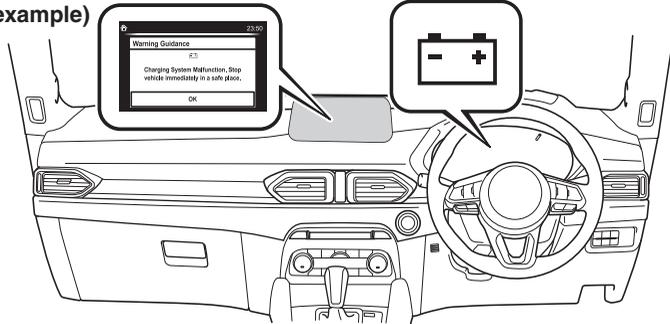
If the warning light illuminates again even after the tyre pressures are adjusted, there may be a tyre puncture.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Message Indicated on Display

If a message is displayed in the centre display, take appropriate action (in a calm manner) according to the displayed message.

(Display example)



▼ Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately

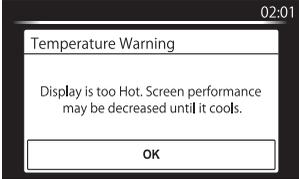
If the following messages are displayed in the centre display, a vehicle system may be malfunctioning. Stop the vehicle in a safe place and contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Display	Indicated Condition
	Displays if the engine coolant temperature has increased excessively.
	Displays if the charging system has a malfunction.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

▼ Verify Display Content

Displays in the following cases:

Display	Indicated Condition/Action to be taken
	<p>The following message is displayed when the temperature around the centre display is high.</p> <p>Lowering the temperature in the cabin or the temperature around the centre display by avoiding direct sunlight is recommended.</p>

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

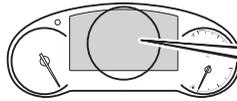
Message Indicated in Multi-information Display

If there is a notification from the vehicle, a message is displayed in the multi-information display. Check the information and take the necessary action.

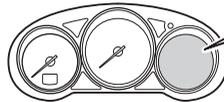
(Display example)

Instrument Cluster

Type A



Type B



Depress brake pedal to release parking brake

If the warning light turns on/flashes simultaneously or a symbol is indicated in the display, check the information regarding the warning light or symbol.

Refer to If a Warning Light Turns On or Flashes on page 7-23.

Display	Content	Action to be taken
Set Shift Lever to "P"	Indicated when the push button start is pressed while the selector lever is not in the P position.	Shift the selector lever to the P position.
Depress brake pedal to start engine	Indicated when the push button start is pressed without depressing the brake pedal.	Depress the brake pedal and press the push button start.
Steering locked	Indicated while the steering wheel is locked.	Release the steering lock.
Depress brake pedal to release parking brake	Indicates when the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is operated without depressing the brake pedal.	Operate the Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch while depressing the brake pedal.
Brake Hold Unavailable Depress Brake to Hold Position	Indicates when there is a problem with the brake related system while the vehicle is being held in a stop position by the AUTOHOLD function or during the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)/Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) stop hold control.	Depress the brake pedal. Cancel the AUTOHOLD function or the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)/Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS), and have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Display	Content	Action to be taken
Incline Too Steep Vehicle May Not Be Able to Hold Stopped Position	Indicates the possibility of the vehicle not being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function or the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)/Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) stop hold control, such as on steep slopes.	Depress and hold your foot on the brake pedal.
Brake Pedal Must Be Depressed to Deactivate Auto Hold System	Indicates when the cancel operation is done without depressing the brake pedal while the vehicle is being held in the stopped position by the AUTOHOLD function.	Cancel the AUTOHOLD function stop hold control while depressing the brake pedal.
Fast Idle Due to Diesel Injector Cleaning	Indicated when the engine speed increases because the engine is being cleaned internally.	The engine speed will increase while the engine is running an internal cleaning cycle with the selector lever in the P or N position. Do not stop the engine while the engine speed is high. When the cleaning cycle is completed, the engine speed will return to normal.
Mi-Drive Unavailable Due to System Malfunction	This message is indicated when the Mi-Drive switch is operated while there is a problem with the Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) related system.	Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
SPORT Mode Unavailable Due to Speed/Cruise Control Use	This message is indicated when SPORT mode is selected while Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), and Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) are operating.	When Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), and Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) are operating, the vehicle cannot be driven in SPORT mode.
Mi-Drive Canceled Due to System Malfunction	This message is indicated when there is a problem with the related system during Mi-Drive operation.	Have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).
SPORT Mode Canceled Due to Speed/Cruise Control Use	This message is indicated when Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), and Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) are turned on while the vehicle is being driven in SPORT mode.	When Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function), and Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) are operating, the vehicle cannot be driven in SPORT mode.
Mi-Drive Selection Temporarily Unavailable	This message is indicated when the Mi-Drive switch operation is not accepted during operation of equipment such as the ABS.	Operate the Mi-Drive switch during steady driving.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Display	Content	Action to be taken
Mi-Drive Canceled	This message is indicated when Mi-Drive is stopped by an operation other than by the driver.	If this message is indicated even though the Mi-Drive switch is operated again, have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Warning Sound is Activated

▼ Lights-On Reminder

If lights are on and the ignition is switched to ACC or off, a continuous beep sound will be heard when the driver's door is opened.

NOTE

- When the ignition is switched to ACC, the “Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep” (page 7-43) overrides the lights-on reminder.
- A personalised function is available to change the sound volume for the lights-on reminder.
Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep

If there is a problem with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner systems and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The air bag and seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

WARNING

Do not drive the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding:

Driving the vehicle with the air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep sounding is dangerous. In a collision, the air bags and the seat belt pretensioner system will not deploy and this could result in death or serious injury. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼ Seat Belt Warning Beep

Front seat

If the vehicle speed exceeds about 20 km/h (12 mph) with the driver or front passenger's seat belt unfastened, a warning beep sounds continuously. If the seat belt remains unfastened, the beep sound stops once and then continues for about 90 seconds. The beep stops after the driver or front passenger's seat belt is fastened.

NOTE

- Some models do not have the seat belt warning beep for the front passenger's seat.
- To allow the front passenger occupant classification sensor to function properly, do not place and sit on an additional seat cushion on the front passenger seat. The sensor may not function properly because the additional seat cushion could cause sensor interference.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

· *When a small child sits on the front passenger seat, it is possible that the warning beep will not operate.*

Rear seat

The warning beep only sounds if a seat belt is unfastened after being fastened.

▼ Active Bonnet Warning Beep

If there is a problem with the active bonnet and the warning light illumination, a warning beep sound will be heard for about 5 seconds every minute.

The active bonnet warning beep sound will continue to be heard for approximately 35 minutes. Have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.



Do not drive the vehicle with the active bonnet warning beep sounding:

Driving the vehicle with the active bonnet warning beep sounding is dangerous as the active bonnet mechanism may not activate normally and function as intended in the event the vehicle were to contact a pedestrian. Contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) to have the vehicle inspected as soon as possible.

▼ Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP) Warning Beep

If the driver's door is opened with the ignition switched to ACC, a beep will be heard continuously in the cabin to notify the driver that the ignition has not been switched OFF (STOP). Under this

condition, the keyless entry system will not operate, the vehicle cannot be locked, and the battery voltage will be depleted.

▼ Key Removed from Vehicle Warning Beep

Vehicles with advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard 6 times, the beep which sounds inside the vehicle will be heard 6 times.

Vehicles without advanced keyless function

If the key is taken out of the vehicle while the ignition is not switched OFF and all the doors are closed, a beep will be heard in the cabin 6 times.

NOTE

Because the key utilizes low-intensity radio waves, the Key Removed From Vehicle Warning may activate if the key is carried together with a metal object or it is placed in a poor signal reception area.

▼ Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If the request switch is pressed with the door open or ajar, or the ignition is not switched OFF with a key being carried, a beep will be heard outside for about 2 seconds to notify the driver that the door or liftgate cannot be locked.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

▼ Key Left-in-luggage Compartment Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If the key is left in the luggage compartment with all the doors locked and the liftgate closed, a beep will be heard outside for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the luggage compartment. In this case, take out the key by pressing the electric liftgate opener and opening the liftgate. The key taken out of the luggage compartment may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-7).

▼ Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)

If all the doors and luggage compartment are locked using another key while the key is left in the cabin, the beep which sounds outside of the vehicle will be heard for about 10 seconds to notify the driver that the key is in the cabin. In this case, take out the key by opening the door. A key taken out of the vehicle using this method may not operate because its functions have been temporarily stopped. To restore the key's functions, perform the applicable procedure (page 3-7).

▼ Electronic Steering Lock Warning Beep

The warning beep operates if the steering wheel is not unlocked after the push button start is pressed. (page 4-4)

▼ i-stop Warning Beep

- If the driver's door is opened while engine idling is stopped, the warning sound operates to notify the driver that engine idling is stopped. It stops when the driver's door is closed.

▼ Power Liftgate Warning Beep

If system operation precautions are necessary, the driver is notified by the warning sound.

Cautions	What to check
The beep sounds 3 times	The conditions required for the power liftgate to operate have not been met, such as an object being stuck in the liftgate.
The beep sound continues	The vehicle is being driven with the liftgate open. Stop the vehicle and close the liftgate.

▼ Power Steering Warning Buzzer

If the power steering system has a malfunction, the power steering malfunction indication is displayed and the buzzer operates at the same time. Refer to Stop Vehicle in Safe Place Immediately on page 7-23.

▼ Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Beep

The warning buzzer is activated under the following conditions:

- The vehicle is driven with the parking brake applied.
- The Electric Parking Brake (EPB) switch is pulled while the vehicle is driven.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

▼ AUTOHOLD Warning Beep

Message is displayed and beep sound is activated simultaneously for about 5 seconds when using AUTOHOLD function or when AUTOHOLD switch is operated.

Because a problem with AUTOHOLD function has occurred, AUTOHOLD function does not operate even if AUTOHOLD switch is operated.

If the message is displayed and the beep sound is activated simultaneously, have your vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Vehicle Speed Alarm

The vehicle speed alarm function is designed to alarm the driver via a single beep sound and a warning indication in the instrument cluster that the previously set vehicle speed has been exceeded. You can change the vehicle speed setting at which the warning is triggered.

▼ Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep

The warning beep sound will be heard for about 3 seconds if the tyre pressures decrease.

Refer to Tyre Pressure Monitoring System on page 4-262.

▼ Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) System Warning Beep

Driving forward

The warning beep operates when the direction indicator lever is operated to the

side where the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning light is illuminated.

NOTE

A personalised function is available to change the Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep sound volume.

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Reversing

The Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning sound is activated if there is a possibility of collision with a vehicle approaching from behind and from the rear on the left and right sides of the vehicle.

▼ Lane Departure Warning Sound

While the system is operating, if the system determines that the vehicle may depart from the lane, it sounds a warning sound.

NOTE

- *The volume of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning sound can be changed.*

- *Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).*

- *The type of the Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) warning sound can be changed.*

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

Refer to the Mazda Connect Owner's Manual or consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Excessive Speed Warning

If the vehicle speed exceeds the speed limit sign displayed on the active driving display/multi-information display, the warning sound is activated and the area around the speed limit sign displayed on the active driving display/multi-information display flashes 10 times in amber, and if the vehicle speed continues to exceed the displayed speed limit sign, the indication stops flashing and remains on.

▼ Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) System Warnings

The Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system warnings notify the driver of system problems and precautions on use when required. Check after hearing a warning beep sound.

Warning beep	What to check
While the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system is operating, a single beep sound is heard when "Front Radar Sensor Blocked" is displayed in the multi-information display.	Cancel the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system if the radar sensor (front) becomes dirty. Clean the area around the radar sensor (front).

Warning beep	What to check
The beep sounds intermittently while the vehicle is being driven.	The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead is too close. Verify the safety of the surrounding area and reduce vehicle speed.
While the Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system is operating, a single beep sound is heard when "Front Radar Sensor System Malfunction" is displayed in the multi-information display.	A malfunction in the system may be indicated. Check the centre display to verify the problem and then have your vehicle inspected by an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

▼ Speed Limiter Warning Beep

If the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more, a warning beep operates continuously. The warning beep operates until the vehicle speed decreases to the set speed or less.



If the set speed is set lower than the current vehicle speed by pressing the SET- or RES switch, the warning beep is not activated for about 30 seconds even if the vehicle speed is faster than the newly set speed by 5 km/h (3 mph). Be careful not to drive over the set speed.

Warning/Indicator Lights and Warning Sounds

NOTE

When the system is temporarily cancelled by depressing the accelerator pedal fully, the ISA display shows the cancel display. Even if the vehicle speed exceeds the set speed by about 5 km/h (3 mph) or more while the cancel display is displayed, the warning sound is not operated.

▼ Collision warning

If there is a possibility of a collision with a vehicle ahead or an obstruction at the rear of the vehicle, a warning sound is activated intermittently at the same time as the warning indications are displayed in the instrument cluster or active driving display.

When Liftgate Cannot be Opened

When Liftgate Cannot be Opened

If the lead-acid battery is dead, the liftgate cannot be unlocked and opened.

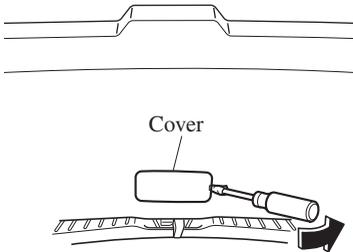
In this case, the liftgate can be unlocked by taking care of the dead lead-acid battery situation.

Refer to Jump-Starting on page 7-12.

If the liftgate cannot be unlocked even if the dead lead-acid battery situation has been resolved, the electrical system may have a malfunction.

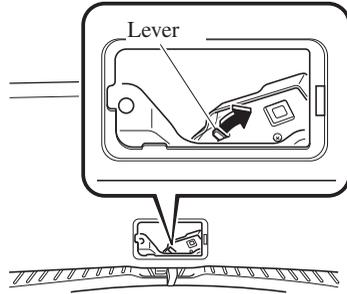
In this case, the liftgate can be opened using the following procedure as an emergency measure.

1. Wrap the end of a flathead screwdriver in a cloth and remove the cover on the interior surface of the liftgate using it.



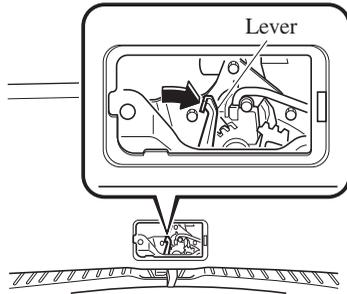
2. **(Without power liftgate)**

Turn the lever to the right to unlock the liftgate.



(With power liftgate)

Push the liftgate while pressing the lever down.



After performing this emergency measure, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) as soon as possible.

Active Driving Display Does Not Operate

If the Active Driving Display Does Not Operate

If the active driving display does not operate, switch the ignition off and then restart the engine. If the active driving display does not operate even with the engine restarted, have the vehicle inspected at an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

MEMO

8

Customer Information

Important consumer information including warranties and add-on equipment.

Warranty.....	8-2
Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country.....	8-2
Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories.....	8-3
Cell Phones.....	8-4
Cell Phones Warning.....	8-4

Recording of Vehicle Data.....	8-5
Recording of Vehicle Data.....	8-5
Declaration of Conformity.....	8-6
Declaration of Conformity.....	8-6

Warranty

Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country

Registering your vehicle in a foreign country may be problematic depending on whether it meets the specific emission and safety standards of the country in which the vehicle will be driven. Consequently, your vehicle may require modifications at personal expense in order to meet the regulations.

In addition, you should be aware of the following issues:

Satisfactory vehicle servicing may be difficult or impossible in another country.

The fuel specified for your vehicle may be unavailable.

Parts, servicing techniques, and tools necessary to maintain and repair your vehicle may be unavailable.

There might not be an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) in the country you plan to take your vehicle.

The Mazda warranty is valid only in certain countries.

Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories

Please note that technical alterations to the original state of your Mazda vehicle can affect the safety of the vehicle. Such technical alterations include not only the use of unsuitable spare parts, but also accessories, fittings or attachments, including rims and tyres.

Genuine Mazda Parts and Genuine Mazda Accessories have been specifically designed for Mazda vehicles.

Other parts and accessories than those mentioned above have not been examined and approved by Mazda unless explicitly stated by Mazda. We cannot certify the suitability of such products. Mazda is not liable for any damage caused by the use of such products.

WARNING

Be very careful in choosing and installing add-on electrical equipment, such as mobile telephones, two-way radios, stereo systems, and car alarm systems:

Incorrectly choosing or installing improper add-on equipment or choosing an improper installer is dangerous. Essential systems could be damaged, causing engine stalling, air-bag (SRS) activation, ABS/TCS/DSC inactivation, or a fire in the vehicle.

Mazda assumes no responsibility for death, injury, or expenses that may result from the installation of add-on non-genuine parts or accessories.

Cell Phones Warning

WARNING

Please comply with the legal regulations concerning the use of communication equipment in vehicles in your country:

Use of any electrical devices such as cell phones, computers, portable radios, vehicle navigation or other devices by the driver while the vehicle is moving is dangerous. Dialing a number on a cell phone while driving also ties-up the driver's hands. Use of these devices will cause the driver to be distracted and could lead to a serious accident. If a passenger is unable to use the device, pull off the right-of-way to a safe area before use. If use of a cell phone is necessary despite this warning, use a hands-free system to at least leave the hands free to drive the vehicle. Never use a cell phone or other electrical devices while the vehicle is moving and, instead, concentrate on the full-time job of driving.

Recording of Vehicle Data

Recording of Vehicle Data

This vehicle is equipped with a computer which records the following main vehicle data related to vehicle controls, operation, and other driving conditions.

Recorded data

- Vehicle conditions such as engine speed and vehicle speed
- Driving operation conditions such as accelerator and brake pedals, and information related to the environmental circumstances while the vehicle is driven
- Malfunction diagnosis information from each on-vehicle computer
- Information related to controls of other on-vehicle computers

NOTE

The recorded data may vary depending on the vehicle grade and optional equipment. Voice and images are not recorded.

Data handling

Mazda and its subcontracting parties may obtain and use the recorded data for vehicle malfunction diagnosis, research and development, and quality improvement.

Mazda will not disclose or provide any of the obtained data to a third party unless:

- An agreement from the vehicle owner (agreements from lessor and lessee for leased vehicle) is obtained
- Officially requested by the police or other law enforcement authorities

Declaration of Conformity

Declaration of Conformity

▼ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System



Declaration of Conformity

▼ Audio System

Audio Set

Model: MAZ



Mazda Connect (Type A)

Without Wireless CarPlay

Model: MAZDA_GEN_65_CMU



Declaration of Conformity

With Wireless CarPlay

Model: MAZDA_68_CMU



9

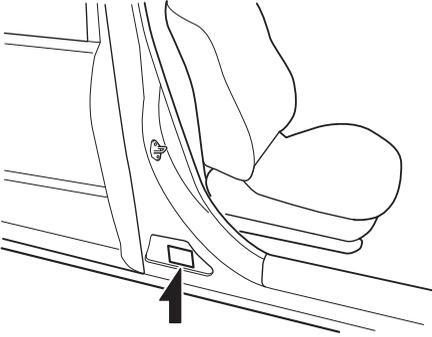
Specifications

Technical information about your Mazda.

Identification Numbers.....	9-2	Electrical System.....	9-6
Model Plate.....	9-2	Lubricant Quality.....	9-7
Chassis Number/Vehicle		Capacities.....	9-8
Identification Number.....	9-2	Dimensions.....	9-9
Tyre Pressure Label.....	9-3	Light Bulbs.....	9-10
Engine Number.....	9-3	Tyres.....	9-11
Built Date.....	9-4	Brakes.....	9-13
Vehicle Specification.....	9-5		
Engine.....	9-5		

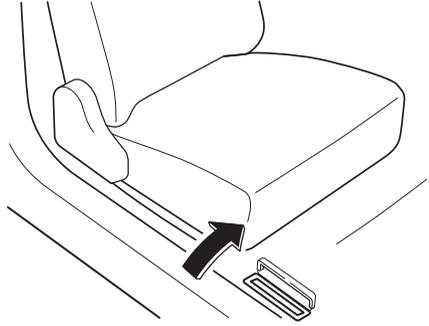
Identification Numbers

Model Plate



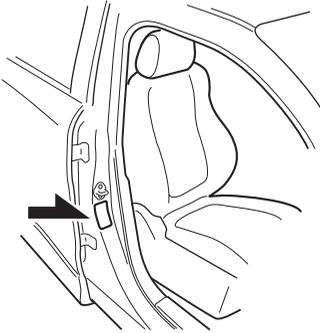
Chassis Number/Vehicle Identification Number

Open the cover shown in the figure to check the chassis number.



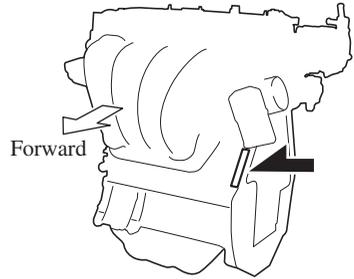
Identification Numbers

Tyre Pressure Label

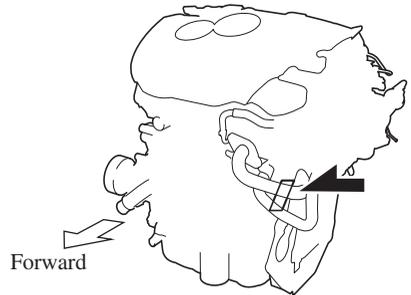


Engine Number

SKYACTIV-G 2.5



SKYACTIV-D 2.2



Identification Numbers

Built Date

The “Built Date” is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

mazda		
MODEL	P A I N T	B U I L T D A T E
		
		
VEHICLE ID. NO		
<hr/>		
Mazda Motor Corporation <small>Made in Japan</small>		

Vehicle Specification

Engine

Petrol engine

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-G 2.5
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder
Bore × Stroke	89.0 × 100.0 mm (3.50 × 3.94 in)
Displacement	2,488 ml (2,488 cc)
Compression ratio	13.0

Diesel engine

Item	Specification
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2
Type	DOHC-16V in-line, 4-cylinder
Bore × Stroke	86.0 × 94.3 mm (3.39 × 3.71 in)
Displacement	2,191 ml (2,191 cc)
Compression ratio	14.4

Vehicle Specification

Electrical System

Battery*1

Classification	Specification
SKYACTIV-G 2.5	Q-85
SKYACTIV-D 2.2	S-95

*1 The battery specification differs depending on the country or region. Check the battery installed on the vehicle and use a battery with an equal or higher performance. However, the performance of the battery may vary even among the same battery types, consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for replacement.

Spark-plug

Item	Specification	
SKYACTIV-G 2.5	Mazda Genuine spark plug*1	PE5R-18-110-A or PE5S-18-110

*1 The spark plugs provide the SKYACTIV-G its optimum performance. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) for details.



When cleaning the iridium plugs, do not use a wire brush. The fine particulate coating on the iridium alloy and platinum tips could be damaged.

Vehicle Specification

Lubricant Quality

Lubricant		Classification
Engine oil*1	SKYACTIV-G 2.5	API SL or higher
	SKYACTIV-D 2.2	ACEA C3

*1 Refer to Recommended Oil on page 6-12.

Lubricant	Classification
Coolant	FL-22 type
Automatic transaxle fluid*1	Mazda Original Oil ATF-FZ
Transfer case oil*2	Mazda Long Life Hypoid Gear Oil SG1
Rear differential oil*2	Mazda Long Life Hypoid Gear Oil SG1
Brake fluid	SAE J1703 or FMVSS116 DOT-3

*1 Periodic replacement is unnecessary.

*2 Replacement is necessary when the component is submerged in water.

Vehicle Specification

Capacities

(Approximate Quantities)

Item		SKYACTIV-G 2.5	SKYACTIV-D 2.2
Engine oil	With oil filter replacement	4.5 L (4.8 US qt, 4.0 Imp qt)	5.1 L (5.4 US qt, 4.5 Imp qt)
	Without oil filter replacement	4.3 L (4.5 US qt, 3.8 Imp qt)	4.8 L (5.1 US qt, 4.2 Imp qt)
Coolant		8.2 L (8.7 US qt, 7.2 Imp qt)	9.8 L (10 US qt, 8.6 Imp qt)
Automatic transaxle fluid		7.8 L (8.2 US qt, 6.9 Imp qt)	8.0 L (8.5 US qt, 7.0 Imp qt)
Transfer case oil		0.40 L (0.42 US qt, 0.35 Imp qt)/0.45 L (0.48 US qt, 0.40 Imp qt)	
Rear differential oil		0.35 L (0.37 US qt, 0.31 Imp qt)	
Fuel tank		72.0 L (19.0 US gal, 15.8 Imp gal)	74.0 L (19.5 US gal, 16.3 Imp gal)

Check oil and fluid levels with dipsticks or reservoir gauges.

Vehicle Specification

Dimensions

Item		Vehicle specification
Overall length		4,925 mm (193.9 in)
Overall width		1,845 mm (72.6 in)
Overall height	17 inch wheel vehicle	1,720 mm (67.2 in)
	19 inch wheel vehicle	1,725 mm (67.9 in)
Front tread		1,595 mm (62.8 in)
Rear tread		1,600 mm (63.0 in)
Wheelbase		2,930 mm (115.4 in)

Vehicle Specification

Light Bulbs

Exterior light

All the light bulbs are the LED type.

The LED bulb cannot be replaced. Consult an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer) when the replacement is necessary.

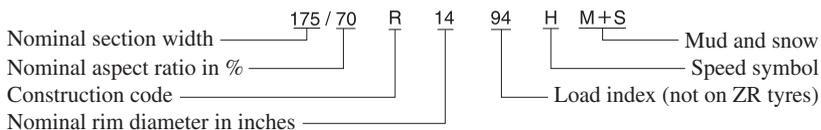
Interior light

Light bulb		Category	
		Wattage	UN-R*1
Front overhead lights/Front map lights	LED type	LED	—
	Bulb type	8	—
Centre map lights	LED type	LED	—
	Bulb type	8	—
Rear overhead light	LED type	LED	—
	Bulb type	10	—
Vanity mirror lights	LED type	LED	—
	Bulb type	2	—
Luggage compartment light	LED type	LED	—
	Bulb type	8	—
Ambient lights*		LED	—

*1 UN-R stands for United Nations Regulation.

Tyres

Sample tyre mark and its meaning



Tyre mark information

Choose the proper tyres for your vehicle using the following tyre mark information.

Speed symbol	Maximum permissible speed
Q	Up to 160 km/h (99 mph)
R	Up to 170 km/h (105 mph)
S	Up to 180 km/h (111 mph)
T	Up to 190 km/h (118 mph)
U	Up to 200 km/h (124 mph)
H	Up to 210 km/h (130 mph)
V	Up to 240 km/h (149 mph)
W	Up to 270 km/h (167 mph)
Y	Up to 300 km/h (186 mph)
ZR	Over 240 km/h (149 mph)

Tyre and inflation pressure

NOTE

The tyres have been optimally matched with the chassis of your vehicle.

When replacing tyres, Mazda recommends that you replace tyres of the same type originally fitted to your vehicle. For details, contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer).

Check the tyre pressure label for tyre size and inflation pressure page 9-3.

Vehicle Specification

Standard tyre

Tyre size		Inflation pressure	
		Up to 3 persons	—Full load
225/65R17 102H	Front	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear	230 kPa (2.3 bar, 33 psi)	280 kPa (2.8 bar, 41 psi)
225/55R19 99V	Front	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	260 kPa (2.6 bar, 38 psi)
	Rear	250 kPa (2.5 bar, 36 psi)	290 kPa (2.9 bar, 42 psi)

1 person's weight: About 75 kg

Temporary spare tyre

Tyre size	Inflation pressure
T155/80R17 100M	420 kPa (60 psi)

Wheel nut tightening torque

When installing a tyre, tighten the wheel nut to the following torque.

108—147 N·m (12—14 kgf·m, 80—108 ft·lbf)

Brakes

If you require information regarding the wear limit specification for the brake disc plates and the measurement method, please contact an expert repairer (we recommend an Authorised Mazda Repairer). The information is made freely available.

MEMO

10 **Index**

Index

A

- Accessory Socket..... 5-53
- Active Bonnet..... 2-85
- Active Bonnet Warning Beep..... 7-43
- Active Driving Display..... 4-55
- Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)..... 4-105
- Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)... 4-108
- Add-On Non-Genuine Parts and Accessories..... 8-3
- Advanced Key
 - Advanced keyless entry system.... 3-8
 - Operational range..... 3-9
- Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)..... 4-185
 - Collision warning..... 4-187
 - Stopping the Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS) system operation..... 4-187
- Air Bag Systems..... 2-66
- Air Bag/Seat Belt Pretensioner System Warning Beep..... 7-42
- Air-Conditioning System..... 5-2
 - Fully Automatic Type..... 5-5
 - Operating Tips..... 5-2
 - Rear Air Conditioner..... 5-11
 - Vent Operation (Front)..... 5-3
 - Vent Operation (Rear)..... 5-9
- Antilock Brake System (ABS)..... 4-88
- Armrest Box..... 5-63
- AUTOHOLD..... 4-82
- AUTOHOLD Warning Beep..... 7-45
- Automatic Transaxle..... 4-57
 - Active Adaptive Shift (AAS)..... 4-60
 - Automatic transaxle controls..... 4-57
 - Direct mode..... 4-65
 - Driving tips..... 4-66
 - Manual shift mode..... 4-60
 - Shift-lock system..... 4-58
 - Transaxle ranges..... 4-58

B

- Battery..... 6-24
 - Electrical system..... 9-6
 - Inspecting electrolyte level..... 6-25
 - Maintenance..... 6-25
 - Replacement..... 6-26
- Battery Runs Out..... 7-12
 - Jump-starting..... 7-12
- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-111
 - Cancelling operation of Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)..... 4-115
- Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Warning Beep..... 7-45
- Body Lubrication..... 6-19
- Bonnet Release..... 6-8
- Bottle Holder..... 5-61
- Brakes
 - Brakes..... 9-13
 - Brake assist..... 4-81
 - Electric parking brake (EPB)..... 4-79
 - Foot brake..... 4-78
 - Pad wear indicator..... 4-81
 - Warning light..... 4-80

C

- Carbon Monoxide..... 3-27
- Cell Phones..... 8-4
- Centre Console..... 5-63
- Child Restraint
 - Categories of child-restraint systems..... 2-48
 - Child-restraint precautions..... 2-43
 - Child-restraint system installation..... 2-48
 - Child-restraint system suitability for various seat positions table..... 2-52
 - Installing child-restraint systems..... 2-57
- Child Safety Locks for Rear Doors... 3-14

Collision warning.....	7-47
Coming Home Light.....	4-69
Console Box.....	5-63
Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS).....	4-146
Close proximity warning.....	4-154
Display indication.....	4-151
Setting the system.....	4-154
Stop hold control.....	4-161
Cup Holder.....	5-60

D

Defogger.....	4-75
Mirror.....	4-76
Diesel Particulate Filter.....	4-261
Direction Indicators.....	4-71
Display.....	4-19
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS).....	4-123
Indication on display.....	4-124
Door Locks.....	3-10
Driver Attention Alert (DAA).....	4-127
Driving In Flooded Area.....	3-47
Driving Tips	
Automatic transaxle.....	4-66
Driving in flooded area.....	3-47
Floor mat.....	3-44
Hazardous driving.....	3-43
Rocking the vehicle.....	3-45
Running-in period.....	3-42
Saving fuel and protection of the environment.....	3-42
Turbocharged vehicles.....	3-48
Winter driving.....	3-45
Dynamic Stability Control (DSC).....	4-91
TCS/DSC indicator light.....	4-91

E

Electric parking brake (EPB).....	4-79
-----------------------------------	------

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning BEEP.....	7-44
Electronic steering lock warning beep.....	7-44
Emergency Starting	
Push-starting.....	7-15
Running out of fuel.....	7-16
Starting a flooded engine (SKYACTIV-G 2.5).....	7-15
Emergency Stop Signal System.....	4-86
Emergency Towing	
Towing description.....	7-19
Towing hooks.....	7-21
Emission Control Maintenance.....	6-44
Air-intake control system.....	6-45
Engine.....	6-44
Evaporative emission control system.....	6-45
Exhaust emission control system.....	6-45
Fuel system.....	6-45
Ignition system.....	6-45
Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-D 2.2).....	3-26
Emission Control System (SKYACTIV-G 2.5).....	3-26
Engine	
Bonnet release.....	6-8
Coolant.....	6-16
Engine.....	9-5
Engine compartment overview....	6-10
Engine number.....	9-3
Exhaust gas.....	3-27
Oil.....	6-12
Starting.....	4-5
Essential Information.....	6-2
Excessive Speed Warning.....	7-46
Exhaust Gas.....	3-27
Exterior Care.....	6-46
Aluminium wheel maintenance..	6-50
Bright-metal maintenance.....	6-50

Index

- Cavity protection..... 6-50
- Maintaining the finish..... 6-47
- Paint damage touch-up..... 6-50
- Plastic part maintenance..... 6-51
- Undercoating..... 6-50

F

Flasher

- Hazard warning..... 4-77
- Headlights..... 4-67

Flat Tyre..... 7-3

- Mounting the spare tyre..... 7-10
- Removing a flat tyre..... 7-7

Floor Mat..... 3-44

Fluid

- Brake..... 6-17
- Washer..... 6-18

Foot Brake..... 4-78

Forward Sensing Camera (FSC).... 4-248

Front Seat..... 2-5

Fuel

- Filler flap and cap..... 3-28
- Requirements (Australia (SKYACTIV-G 2.5))..... 3-24
- Requirements (Except Australia (SKYACTIV-G 2.5))..... 3-25
- Requirements (SKYACTIV-D 2.2)..... 3-25

Fuses..... 6-37

- Panel description..... 6-40
- Replacement..... 6-37

G

Gauges..... 4-19

Glove Compartment..... 5-62

H

Hazardous Driving..... 3-43

Hazard Warning Flasher..... 4-77

Headlights

Coming home light..... 4-69

Control..... 4-67

Headlight flashing..... 4-69

High-low beam..... 4-69

Leaving home light..... 4-70

Levelling..... 4-70

Running lights..... 4-70

Head Restraint..... 2-28

High Beam Control System

(HBC)..... 4-106

High Beam Control System (HBC)

indicator light (green)..... 4-107

Hill Launch Assist (HLA)..... 4-86

Horn..... 4-76

I

If a Warning Light Turns On or

Flashes..... 7-23

If the Active Driving Display Does Not

Operate..... 7-49

Ignition

Switch..... 4-4

Ignition Not Switched Off (STOP)

Warning Beep..... 7-43

Illuminated Entry System..... 5-52

Immobilizer System..... 3-39

Inspecting Brake Fluid Level..... 6-17

Inspecting Coolant Level..... 6-16

Inspecting Engine Oil Level..... 6-15

Inspecting Washer Fluid Level..... 6-18

Inspection and Maintenance

Built Date..... 9-4

Capacities..... 9-8

Chassis number/vehicle identification number..... 9-2

Dimensions..... 9-9

Lubricant quality..... 9-7

Model plate..... 9-2

Instrument Cluster..... 4-19

Instrument Cluster (Type A)..... 4-20

Instrument Cluster (Type B).....	4-38
Instrument Cluster (Type A).....	4-20
Average fuel economy.....	4-27
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)	
Display.....	4-28
Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)	
Display.....	4-29
Current fuel economy.....	4-27
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display.....	4-30
Distance-to-empty.....	4-27
Engine coolant temperature gauge.....	4-24
Fuel gauge.....	4-25
Indication/indicator lights.....	4-33
Instrument panel illumination.....	4-25
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display.....	4-30
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display.....	4-29
Maintenance Monitor.....	4-28
Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-Drive) Display.....	4-28
Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Display.....	4-29
Multi-information display (type a).....	4-21
Odometer.....	4-24
Outside temperature display.....	4-26
Speedometer.....	4-20
Tachometer.....	4-20
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display.....	4-29
Trip meter.....	4-24
Vehicle speed alarm.....	4-28
Warning indication/warning lights.....	4-31
Warning (display indication).....	4-30
Instrument Cluster (Type B).....	4-38
Average Fuel Economy.....	4-44
Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) Display.....	4-45
Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS) Display.....	4-46
Current Fuel Economy.....	4-44
Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS) Display.....	4-46
Distance-to-empty.....	4-44
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	4-41
Fuel Gauge.....	4-42
Indication/Indicator Lights.....	4-50
Instrument Panel Illumination.....	4-42
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) Display.....	4-47
Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS) Display.....	4-46
Maintenance Monitor.....	4-45
Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) Display.....	4-46
Multi-information Display (Type B).....	4-39
Odometer.....	4-41
Outside Temperature Display.....	4-43
Speedometer.....	4-38
Tachometer.....	4-38
Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR) Display.....	4-45
Trip Meter.....	4-41
Vehicle Speed Alarm.....	4-45
Warning Indication/Warning Lights.....	4-48
Warning (display indication).....	4-47
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA).....	4-177
Activation/deactivation.....	4-182
Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) display.....	4-179

Index

- Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)
 - main indication (white)..... 4-180
 - Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA) set indication (green)..... 4-180
 - Setting the system..... 4-182
 - Speed limiter warning beep..... 4-181
 - Temporarily cancelling the system..... 4-184
 - Interior Care..... 6-52
 - Active driving display maintenance..... 6-54
 - Cleaning the window interiors..... 6-54
 - Instrument panel top (Soft pad) maintenance..... 6-54
 - Leather upholstery maintenance..... 6-53
 - Panel maintenance..... 6-54
 - Plastic part maintenance..... 6-54
 - Seat belt maintenance..... 6-52
 - Upholstery and synthetic leather maintenance..... 6-53
 - Vinyl upholstery maintenance..... 6-52
 - Interior Lights..... 5-48
 - Luggage compartment light..... 5-48
 - Map lights..... 5-48
 - Overhead light..... 5-48
 - Overhead lights..... 5-48
 - i-ACTIVSENSE..... 4-101
 - Active safety technology..... 4-101
 - Adaptive Front Lighting System (AFS)..... 4-105
 - Adaptive LED Headlights (ALH)..... 4-108
 - Advanced Smart City Brake Support (Advanced SCBS)..... 4-185
 - Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM)... 4-111
 - Camera and sensors..... 4-102
 - Cruising & Traffic Support (CTS)..... 4-146
 - Distance Recognition Support System (DRSS)..... 4-123
 - Driver Attention Alert (DAA)... 4-127
 - Forward Sensing Camera (FSC)..... 4-248
 - High Beam Control System (HBC)..... 4-106
 - Intelligent Speed Assistance (ISA)..... 4-177
 - Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane Departure Warning System (LDWS)..... 4-163
 - Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function)..... 4-133
 - Pre-crash safety technology..... 4-102
 - Radar sensors (rear)..... 4-257
 - Radar sensor (front)..... 4-254
 - Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA)..... 4-129
 - Smart Brake Support (SBS)..... 4-192
 - Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)..... 4-188
 - Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)..... 4-116
 - Ultrasonic sensor (rear)..... 4-259
 - 360°View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))..... 4-194
 - 360°view monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))..... 4-220
 - i-ACTIV AWD Operation..... 4-98
 - i-stop..... 4-11
 - Indicator light (Green)..... 4-15
 - i-stop OFF switch..... 4-16
 - Vehicle roll prevention function..... 4-17
 - Warning light (Amber)..... 4-15
 - i-stop warning beep..... 7-44
- ## J
- Jack..... 7-4
 - Jump-Starting..... 7-12

K

- Keyless Entry System..... 3-4
- Keys.....3-2
 - Key suspend function.....3-7
 - Transmitter.....3-5
- Key Left-in-luggage Compartment
Warning beep (With the advanced
keyless function)..... 7-44
- Key Left-in-vehicle Warning Beep (With
the advanced keyless function)..... 7-44
- Key Removed from Vehicle Warning
Beep.....7-43
- Key Suspend Function..... 3-7

L

- Lane Departure Warning sound..... 7-45
- Lane-change Signals..... 4-71
- Lane-Change Signals..... 4-71
- Lane-keep Assist System (LAS) & Lane
Departure Warning System
(LDWS)..... 4-163
- Leaving Home Light.....4-70
- Liftgate..... 3-14
 - When Liftgate Cannot be
Opened..... 7-48
- Lighting Control.....4-67
- Lights
 - Light bulbs.....9-10
- Lights-on Reminder..... 7-42
- Light Bulbs
 - Replacement..... 6-33
- Luggage Compartment.....5-64
 - Cargo Securing Loops.....5-64
 - Cargo Sub-Compartment.....5-64
- Luggage Compartment Light..... 5-48

M

- Maintenance
 - Information..... 6-2

- Scheduled.....6-3
- Map Lights..... 5-48
- Mazda Connect
 - Appendix (Mazda Connect (Type
A)).....5-25
 - Appendix (Mazda Connect (Type
B))..... 5-42
 - Mazda Connect Basic Operations
(Mazda Connect (Type A)).....5-17
 - Mazda Connect Basic Operations
(Mazda Connect (Type B)).....5-35
 - Mazda Connect (Mazda Connect
(Type A))..... 5-14
 - Mazda Connect (Mazda Connect
(Type B))..... 5-31
 - Mazda intelligent Drive Select (Mi-
Drive)..... 4-95
 - Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop &
Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go
function)..... 4-133
 - Close proximity warning..... 4-137
 - Display indication.....4-135
 - Setting the system..... 4-138
 - Stop hold control..... 4-144
 - Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop &
Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go
function) System Warnings..... 7-46
 - Message Indicated in Multi-information
Display..... 7-39
 - Message Indicated on Display..... 7-37
 - Meters.....4-19
 - Mirrors
 - Outside mirrors.....3-30
 - Rearview mirror..... 3-31
 - Mirror Defogger.....4-76
 - Multi-information Display (Type
A).....4-21
 - Multi-information Display (Type
B).....4-39

Index

O

- Off-Road Traction Assist
 - Off-Road Traction Assist indicator light..... 4-93
 - Off-Road Traction Assist switch..... 4-94
- Outside Mirrors..... 3-30
- Overhead Console..... 5-62
- Overhead Lights..... 5-48
- Overheating..... 7-17
- Owner Maintenance
 - Closing the bonnet..... 6-9
 - Engine compartment overview.... 6-10
 - Key battery replacement..... 6-27
 - Opening the bonnet..... 6-8
 - Owner maintenance precautions.... 6-6

P

- Parking Sensor System..... 4-282
 - Parking Sensor OFF Switch..... 4-286
 - Parking sensor system operation..... 4-286
 - Sensor detection range..... 4-284
- Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type A))
 - Parking sensor system operation..... 4-286
- Parking Sensor System (Mazda Connect (Type B))..... 4-291
 - Obstruction detection indication..... 4-295
 - Parking Sensor System Operation..... 4-294
 - Parking sensor warning beep.... 4-297
 - Sensor detection range..... 4-293
 - When warning indicator/beep is activated..... 4-299
- Power Liftgate..... 3-16
- Power Liftgate Warning Beep..... 7-44

- Power Steering..... 4-100
- Power Steering Warning Buzzer..... 7-44
- Power Windows..... 3-33

R

- Radar Sensors (Rear)..... 4-257
- Radar Sensor (Front)..... 4-254
- Rearview Mirror..... 3-31
- Rear Coat Hooks..... 5-66
- Rear Cross Traffic Alert (RCTA).... 4-129
- Rear Door Child Safety Locks..... 3-14
- Rear View Monitor..... 4-266
 - Displayable range on the screen..... 4-268
 - Picture quality adjustment..... 4-272
 - Rear view monitor operation.... 4-269
 - Rear view parking camera location..... 4-267
 - Switching to the rear view monitor display..... 4-267
 - Variance between actual road conditions and displayed image..... 4-271
 - Viewing the display..... 4-269
- Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A))..... 4-266
- Rear View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))..... 4-266
- Rear window
 - Rear Window Defogger..... 4-75
 - Rear Window Washer..... 4-75
 - Rear Window Wiper..... 4-75
- Recommended Oil..... 6-12
- Recording of Vehicle Data..... 8-5
- Registering Your Vehicle in A Foreign Country..... 8-2
- Replacement
 - Fuse..... 6-37
 - Key battery..... 6-27
 - Light bulbs..... 6-33

- Tyres..... 6-31
- Wheel..... 6-32
- Wiper..... 6-19
- Request Switch Inoperable Warning Beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-43
- Rocking the Vehicle..... 3-45
- Running-In Period..... 3-42
- S**
- Saving Fuel and Protection of the Environment..... 3-42
- Scheduled Maintenance..... 6-3
- Seats..... 2-5
 - Driving position memory..... 2-12
 - Front seat..... 2-5
 - Head restraint..... 2-28
 - Seat ventilation..... 2-33
 - Seat warmer..... 2-31
 - Second-row Seats (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)..... 2-16
 - Second-Row Seat (Captain Seat Type)..... 2-21
 - Third-row seat..... 2-26
- Seat Belt System..... 2-39
 - Automatic locking..... 2-38
 - Emergency locking..... 2-37
 - Pregnant women..... 2-37
 - Seat belt precautions..... 2-35
 - 3-point type..... 2-39
- Seat Belt Warning Beep..... 7-42
- Second-row Seats (6:4 Split Adjustable-type Bench Seat Type)..... 2-16
- Second-Row Seat (Captain Seat Type)..... 2-21
- Security System
 - Immobilizer system..... 3-39
- Shift Control System
 - Direct mode..... 4-65
- Shopping Bag Hook..... 5-66
- Smart Brake Support (SBS)..... 4-192
 - Collision warning..... 4-193
 - Stopping the Smart Brake Support (SBS) system operation..... 4-193
- Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R)..... 4-188
 - Stopping the Smart City Brake Support [Reverse] (SCBS R) system operation..... 4-191
- Spare Tyre..... 7-5
- Speed Limiter Warning Beep..... 7-46
- SRS Air Bags
 - Front passenger occupant classification system..... 2-79
 - How the SRS air bags work..... 2-73
 - Limitations to SRS air bag..... 2-77
 - Monitoring..... 2-84
 - SRS air bag deployment criteria..... 2-76
 - Supplementary restraint system components..... 2-72
- Starting the Engine..... 4-5
- Steering Wheel
 - Heated steering wheel..... 2-34
 - Horn..... 4-76
- Storage Box..... 5-63
- Storage Compartments..... 5-62
 - Armrest box..... 5-63
 - Centre console..... 5-63
 - Console box..... 5-63
 - Glove compartment..... 5-62
 - Luggage Compartment..... 5-64
 - Overhead console..... 5-62
 - Rear coat hooks..... 5-66
 - Shopping bag hook..... 5-66
 - Storage Box..... 5-63
- Sunroof..... 3-36
- Sunshade..... 3-38
- Sunshade (Rear door window)..... 5-67
- Sunvisors..... 5-48

Index

T

- Third-Row Seat..... 2-26
- Three-flash Turn Signal..... 4-71
- Towing
 - Hook..... 7-21
 - Towing caravans and trailers..... 3-49
- Towing Description..... 7-19
- Traction Control System (TCS)..... 4-89
 - TCS OFF Indicator Light..... 4-89
 - TCS OFF Switch..... 4-90
 - TCS/DSC indicator light..... 4-89
- Traffic Sign Recognition System (TSR)..... 4-116
- Trailer Stability Assist (TSA)..... 4-92
- Transmitter..... 3-5
- Trouble
 - Battery runs out..... 7-12
 - Emergency starting..... 7-15
 - Emergency towing..... 7-19
 - Flat tyre..... 7-3
 - Overheating..... 7-17
 - Parking in an emergency..... 7-2
 - When Liftgate Cannot be Opened..... 7-48
- Turn and Lane-Change Signals..... 4-71
- Tyres..... 6-29
 - Flat tyre..... 7-3
 - Replacing a tyre..... 6-31
 - Replacing a wheel..... 6-32
 - Snow tyres..... 3-46
 - Temporary spare tyre..... 6-31
 - Tyres..... 9-11
 - Tyre chains..... 3-46
 - Tyre inflation pressure..... 6-29
 - Tyre pressure label..... 9-3
 - Tyre rotation..... 6-30
- Tyre Inflation Pressure Warning Beep..... 7-45
- Tyre Pressure Monitoring System... 4-262

U

- Ultrasonic Sensor (Rear)..... 4-259
- USB Power Outlet..... 5-54

V

- Vanity Mirrors..... 5-48
- Vehicle Speed Alarm..... 7-45

W

- Warning Sound is Activated..... 7-42
 - Active bonnet..... 7-43
 - Air bag/seat belt pretensioner system warning beep..... 7-42
 - AUTOHOLD Warning Beep..... 7-45
 - Blind Spot Monitoring (BSM) warning beep..... 7-45
 - Collision warning..... 7-47
 - Electric Parking Brake (EPB) Warning Beep..... 7-44
 - Electronic steering lock warning beep..... 7-44
 - Excessive speed warning..... 7-46
 - Ignition not switched off (STOP) warning beep..... 7-43
 - i-stop warning beep..... 7-44
 - Key left-in-luggage compartment warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-44
 - Key left-in-vehicle warning beep (With the advanced keyless function)..... 7-44
 - Key removed from vehicle warning beep..... 7-43
 - Lane Departure Warning sound.. 7-45
 - Lights-on reminder..... 7-42
 - Mazda Radar Cruise Control with Stop & Go function (MRCC with Stop & Go function) system warnings..... 7-46

Power Liftgate Warning Beep.....	7-44
Power steering warning buzzer.....	7-44
Request switch inoperable warning beep (With the advanced keyless function).....	7-43
Seat belt warning beep.....	7-42
Speed limiter warning beep.....	7-46
Tyre inflation pressure warning beep.....	7-45
Vehicle speed alarm.....	7-45
Warranty.....	8-2
Windows	
Power windows.....	3-33
Windscreen Washer.....	4-74
Windscreen Wipers.....	4-72
Winter Driving.....	3-45
Wiper	
Replacing Rear Window Wiper Blade.....	6-22
Replacing windscreen wiper blades.....	6-20
Wireless Charger (Qi).....	5-56

0-9

360°View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type A)).....	4-194
---	-------

Front wide view.....	4-207
How to use the system.....	4-200
Margin of error between road surface on screen and actual road surface.....	4-216
Rear wide view.....	4-214
Side view.....	4-209
Top view/front view.....	4-205
Top view/rear view.....	4-211
Types of images displayed on the screen.....	4-198
360°view monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B)).....	4-220
360°View Monitor (Mazda Connect (Type B))	
How to use the system.....	4-226
Margin of error between road surface on screen and actual road surface.....	4-243
Side view.....	4-234
Top view/front view.....	4-230
Top view/front wide view.....	4-232
Top view/rear view.....	4-237
Top view/rear wide view.....	4-241
Types of images displayed on the screen.....	4-224

